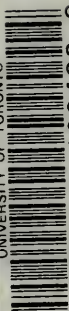


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01109482 8

UNIV. OF
TORONTO
LIBRARY

☞ The Society intends to complete, as soon as its funds will allow, the Reprints of its out-of-print Texts of the year 1866, and also of nos. 20 and 26. Dr. Otto Glauning has undertaken *Seinte Marherete*; and Dr. Furnivall has *Hali Meidenhad* in type. As the cost of these Reprints, if they were not needed, would have been devoted to fresh Texts, the Reprints will be sent to all Members in lieu of such Texts. Though called 'Reprints,' these books are new editions, generally with valuable additions, a fact not noticed by a few careless receivers of them, who have complained that they already had the volumes. As the Society's copies of the *Facsimile of the Epinal MS.* issued as an Extra Volume in 1883 are exhausted, Mr. J. H. Hessels, M.A., of St. John's Coll., Cambridge, has kindly undertaken an edition of the MS. for the Society. This will be substituted for the Facsimile as an 1883 book, and will be also issued to all the present Members.

Feb. 1905. The Original-Series Texts for 1904 were 1. No. 124, *Twenty-six Political* (t. Hen. V) and other Poems from the Digby MS. 102, &c., edited by Dr. J. Kail; 2. No. 125, Part I of the *Medieval Records of a London City Church* (St. Mary-at-Hill), A.D. 1420-1559, copied and edited by Mr. Henry Littlehales from the Church Records in the Guildhall, the cost of the setting and corrections of the text being generously borne by its Editor. This book has shown the income and outlay of the church; the drink provided for its Palm-Sunday players, its officers' excursions into Kent and Essex, its dealing with the Plague, the disposal of its goods at the Reformation, &c., &c., and has helped our members to realize the church-life of its time. The third Text was Part I of *An Alphabet of Tales*, a very interesting collection of stories for Sermons, &c., english in the Northern Dialect, about 1440, from the Latin *Alphabetum Narrationum*, and edited by Mrs. M. M. Banks from the unique MS. in the King's Library in the British Museum.

The Original-Series Texts for 1905 will be, 1. No. 127, Part II of the *Alphabet of Tales*, edited by Mrs. M. M. Banks; 2. No. 128, Part II of the *Medieval Records of a London City Church*, edited by Mr. Henry Littlehales, who will pay for its setting, as he did for that of Part I as well as its 5 Facsimiles; 3. No. 129, Part I of the englishing, ab. 1450 A.D., of the Deeds in the *Registers of Godstow Priory and Osney Abbey*, edited from the unique MSS. by the Rev. Andrew Clark, LL.D. These deeds throw much light on the early social state of England. Among the Texts for 1906 and 1907 will be Part III of the *Alphabet of Tales*, edited by Mrs. M. M. Banks, and Part I of the *Coventry Leet Book*, copied and edited for the Society by Miss M. Dormer Harris—helped by a contribution from the Common Council of the City,—and will be published by the Society as its contribution to our knowledge of the provincial city life of the 15th century. Future Texts will be Part III of Robert of Brunne's *Handlyng Synne*, edited by Dr. Furnivall, with a Glossary of Wm. of Wadington's French words in his *Manuel des Pechez*, and comments on them, by Prof. Dickson-Brown; Part II of the *Exeter Book*—Anglo-Saxon Poems from the unique MS. in Exeter Cathedral—re-edited by Israel Gollancz, M.A.; Part II of Prof. Dr. Holthausen's *Vices and Virtues*; Part II of *Jacob's Well*, edited by Dr. Brandeis; the Alliterative *Siege of Jerusalem*, edited by the late Prof. Dr. E. Kölbing and Prof. Dr. Kaluza; an Introduction and Glossary to the *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.* by H. Hartley, M.A.; Alain Chartier's *Quadrilogue*, edited from the unique MS. Univ. Coll. Oxford MS. No. 85, by Mr. J. W. H. Atkins of Owen's College; a Northern Verse *Chronicle of England to 1327 A.D.*, in 42,000 lines, about 1420 A.D., edited by M. L. Perrin, B.A.; Prof. Bruce's Introduction to *The English Conquest of Ireland*, Part II; and Dr. Furnivall's edition of the *Lichfield Gilds*, which is all printed, and waits only for the Introduction, that Prof. E. C. K. Gonner has kindly undertaken to write for the book. Canon Wordsworth of Marlborough has given the Society a copy of the Leofric Canonical Rule, Latin and Anglo-Saxon, Parker MS. 191, C. C. C. Cambridge, and Prof. Napier will edit it, with a fragment of the english *Capitula* of Bp. Theodulf: it is now at press.

The Extra-Series Texts for 1904 were 1. the *Macro Plays of Mankind, Wisdom, and the Castle of Perseverance*, edited from Mr. Gurney's MS. by Dr. Furnivall and A. W. Pollard, M.A.; 2. Lydgate's *DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, Part III, edited by Miss Katharine Loecek; and Dr. E. A. Kock's edition of Lovelich's *Merlin* from the unique MS. in Corpus Christi Coll., Cambridge, Part I. Those for 1906 and 1907 will be chosen from Lovelich's *History of the Holy Grail*, Part IV, edited by Dr. Furnivall, for which Miss Dorothy Kempe has written a capital summary of the rise and development of the Legend of the Graal; *Myre's Festival*, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. Erbe; *The Owl and Nightingale*, two parallel Texts, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes; Dr. M. Konrath's re-edition of *William of Shoreham's Poems*, Part II; Prof. Erdmann's re-edition of Lydgate's *Siege of Thebes* (issued also by the Chaucer Society); Miss Rickert's re-edition of the *Romance of Emare*; Prof. I. Gollancz's re-edition of two Alliterative Poems, *Winner and Waster*, &c., ab. 1360, lately issued for the Roxburghe Club; Dr. Norman Moore's re-edition of *The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London*, from the unique MS. ab. 1425, which gives an account of the Founder, Rahere, and the miraculous cures wrought at the Hospital; *The Craft of Nombryng*, with other of the earliest english Treatises on Arithmetic, edited by R. Steele, B.A.; and Miss Warren's two-text edition of *The Dance of Death* from the Ellesmere and other MSS.

Dr. Brie of Berlin has undertaken to edit the prose *Brut* or *Chronicle of Britain* attributed to Sir John Mandeville, and printed by Caxton. He has already examined more than 100 English MSS. and several French ones, to get the best text, and find out its source.

These Extra-Series Texts ought to be completed by their Editors: the Second Part of the prose Romance of *Melusine*—Introduction, with ten facsimiles of the best woodblocks of the old foreign black-letter editions, Glossary, &c., by A. K. Donald, B.A. (now in India); and a new edition of the famous Early-English Dictionary (English and Latin), *Promptorium Parvulorum*, from the Winchester MS., ab. 1440 A.D.: in this, the Editor, the Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A., will follow and print his MS. not only in its arrangement of nouns first, and verbs second, under every letter of the Alphabet, but also in its giving of the flexions of the words. The Society's edition will thus be the first modern one that really represents its original, a point on which Mr. Mayhew's insistence will meet with the sympathy of all our Members.

The Texts for the Extra Series in 1906 and 1907 will be chosen from *The Three Kings' Sons*, Part II, the Introduction &c. by Prof. Dr. Leon Kellner; Part II of *The Chester Plays*, re-edited from the MSS., with a full collation of the formerly missing Devonshire MS., by Mr. G. England and Dr. Matthews; the Parallel-Text of the only two MSS. of the *Owl and Nightingale*, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes (at press); Prof. Jespersen's editions of John Hart's *Orthographie* (MS. 1551 A.D.; blackletter 1569), and *Method to teach Reading*, 1570; Deguilleville's *Pilgrimage of the Soule*, in English prose, edited by Prof. Dr. L. Kellner. (For the three prose versions of *The Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*—two English, one French—an Editor is wanted.) Members are asked to realise the fact that the Society has now 50 years' work on its Lists,—at its present rate of production,—and that there is from 100 to 200 more years' work to come after that. The year 2000 will not see finish all the Texts that the Society ought to print. The need of more Members and money is pressing. Offers of help from willing Editors have continually to be declined because the Society has no funds to print their Texts.

An urgent appeal is hereby made to Members to increase the list of Subscribers to the E. E. Text Society. It is nothing less than a scandal that the Hellenic Society should have nearly 1000 members, while the Early English Text Society has not 300!

Before his death in 1895, Mr. G. N. Currie was preparing an edition of the 15th and 16th century Prose Versions of Guillaume de Deguilleville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, with the French prose version by Jean Gallopes, from Lord Aldenham's MS., he having generously promised to pay the extra cost of printing the French text, and engraving one or two of the illuminations in his MS. But Mr. Currie, when on his deathbed, charged a friend to burn all his MSS. which lay in a corner of his room, and unluckily all the E. E. T. S.'s copies of the Deguilleville prose versions were with them, and were burnt with them, so that the Society will be put to the cost of fresh copies, Mr. Currie having died in debt.

Guillaume de Deguilleville, monk of the Cistercian abbey of Chaalis, in the diocese of Senlis, wrote his first verse *Pèlerinage de l'Homme* in 1330-1 when he was 36.¹ Twenty-five (or six) years after, in 1355, he revised his poem, and issued a second version of it,² a revision of which was printed ab. 1500. Of the prose representative of the first version, 1330-1, a prose Englishing, about 1430 A.D., was edited by Mr. Aldis Wright for the Roxburghe Club in 1869, from MS. Ff. 5. 30 in the Cambridge University Library. Other copies of this prose English are in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, Q. 2. 25; Sion College, London; and the Laud Collection in the Bodleian, no. 740.³ A copy in the Northern dialect is MS. G. 21, in St. John's Coll., Cambridge, and this is the MS. which will be edited for the E. E. Text Society. The Laud MS. 740 was somewhat condensed and modernised, in the 17th century, into MS. Ff. 6. 30, in the Cambridge University Library:⁴ "The Pilgrime or the Pilgrimage of Man in this World," copied by Will. Baspoole, whose copy "was verbatim written by Walter Parker, 1645, and from thence transcribed by G. G. 1649; and from thence by W. A. 1655." This last copy may have been read by, or its story reported to, Bunyan, and may have been the groundwork of his *Pilgrim's Progress*. It will be edited for the E. E. T. Soc., its text running under the earlier English, as in Mr. Hertridge's edition of the *Gesta Romanorum* for the Society. In February 1464,⁵ Jean Gallopes—a clerk of Angers, afterwards chaplain to John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France—turned Deguilleville's first verse *Pèlerinage* into a prose *Pèlerinage de la vie humaine*.⁶ By the kindness of Lord Aldenham, as above mentioned, Gallopes's French text will be printed opposite the early prose northern Englishing in the Society's edition.

The Second Version of Deguilleville's *Pèlerinage de l'Homme*, A.D. 1355 or -6, was englished in verse by Lydgate in 1426. Of Lydgate's poem, the larger part is in the Cotton MS. Vitellius C. xiii (leaves 2-308). This MS. leaves out Chaucer's englishing of Deguilleville's

¹ He was born about 1295. See Abbé GOUJET's *Bibliothèque française*, Vol. IX, p. 73-4.—P. M. The Roxburghe Club printed the 1st version in 1893.

² The Roxburghe Club's copy of this 2nd version was lent to Mr. Currie, and unluckily burnt too with his other MSS.

³ These 3 MSS. have not yet been collated, but are believed to be all of the same version.

⁴ Another MS. is in the Pepys Library.

⁵ According to Lord Aldenham's MS.

⁶ These were printed in France, late in the 15th or early in the 16th century.

A B C or *Prayer to the Virgin*, of which the successive stanzas start with A, B, C, and run all thro' the alphabet; and it has 2 main gaps, besides many small ones from the tops of leaves being burnt in the Cotton fire. All these gaps (save the A B C) have been filled up from the Stowe MS. 952 (which old John Stowe completed) and from the end of the other imperfect MS. Cotton, Tiberius A vii. Thanks to the diligence of the old Elizabethan tailor and manuscript-lover, a complete text of Lydgate's poem has been given. The British Museum French MSS. (Harleian 4399¹, and Additional 22,937² and 25,594³) are all of the First Version. Besides his first *Pèlerinage de l'homme* in its two versions, Deguillville wrote a second, "de l'ame separee du corps," and a third, "de nostre seigneur Iesus." Of the second, a prose Englishing of 1413, *The Pilgrimage of the Soule* (with poems by Hoccleve, already printed for the Society with that author's *Regement of Princes*), exists in the Egerton MS. 615,⁴ at Hatfield, Cambridge (Univ. Kk. 1. 7, and Caius), Oxford (Univ. Coll. and Corpus), and in Caxton's edition of 1483. This version has 'somewhat of additions' as Caxton says, and some shortenings too, as the maker of both, the first translator, tells us in the MSS. Caxton leaves out the earlier englisger's interesting Epilog in the Egerton MS. This prose englishing of the *Soule* will be edited for the Society by Prof. Dr. Leon Kellner after that of the *Man* is finisht, and will have Gallopes's French opposite it, from Lord Aldenham's MS., as his gift to the Society. Of the Pilgrimage of Jesus, no englishing is known.

As to the MS. Anglo-Saxon Psalters, Dr. Hy. Sweet has edited the oldest MS., the Vespasian, in his *Oldest English Texts* for the Society, and Mr. Harsley has edited the latest, c. 1150, Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter. The other MSS., except the Paris one, being interlinear versions,—some of the Roman-Latin redaction, and some of the Gallican,—Prof. Logeman has prepared for press, a Parallel-Text edition of the first twelve Psalms, to start the complete work. He will do his best to get the Paris Psalter—tho' it is not an interlinear one—into this collective edition; but the additional matter, especially in the Verse-Psalms, is very difficult to manage. If the Paris text cannot be parallelised, it will form a separate volume. The Early English Psalters are all independent versions, and will follow separately in due course.

Through the good offices of the Examiners, some of the books for the Early-English Examinations of the University of London will be chosen from the Society's publications, the Committee having undertaken to supply such books to students at a large reduction in price. The net profits from these sales will be applied to the Society's Reprints.

Members are reminded that *fresh Subscribers are always wanted*, and that the Committee can at any time, on short notice, send to press an additional Thousand Pounds' worth of work.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints*, sooner or later. The Society cannot leave out any of them, even though some are dull. The Sinners would doubtless be much more interesting. But in many Saints' Lives will be found valuable incidental details of our forefathers' social state, and all are worthful for the history of our language. The Lives may be looked on as the religious romances or story-books of their period.

The Standard Collection of Saints' Lives in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS., the Harleian MS. 2277, &c. will repeat the Laud set, our No. 87, with additions, and in right order. (The foundation MS. (Laud 108) had to be printed first, to prevent quite unwieldy collations.) The Supplementary Lives from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes.

Besides the Saints' Lives, Trevisa's englishing of *Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the mediæval Cyclopædia of Science, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker will edit it. Prof. Napier of Oxford, wishing to have the whole of our MS. Anglo-Saxon in type, and accessible to students, will edit for the Society all the unprinted and other Anglo-Saxon Homilies which are not included in Thorpe's edition of Ælfrie's prose,⁵ Dr. Morris's of the Blickling Homilies, and Prof. Skeat's of Ælfrie's Metrical Homilies. The late Prof. Kölbing left complete his text, for the Society, of the *Anceren Rivle*, from the best MS., with collations of the other four, and this will be edited for the Society by Dr. Thümmler. Mr. Harvey means to prepare an edition of the three MSS. of the *Earliest English Metrical Psalter*, one of which was edited by the late Mr. Stevenson for the Surtees Society.

Members of the Society will learn with pleasure that its example has been followed, not only by the Old French Text Society which has done such admirable work under its founders Profs. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, but also by the Early Russian Text Society, which was set on foot in 1877, and has since issued many excellent editions of old MS. Chronicles, &c.

Members will also note with pleasure the annexation of large tracts of our Early English territory by the important German contingent, the late Professors Zupitza and Kölbing, the

¹ 15th cent., containing only the *Vie humaine*.

² 15th cent., containing all the 3 Pilgrimages, the 3rd being Jesus Christ's.

³ 14th cent., containing the *Vie humaine* and the 2nd Pilgrimage, *de l'Âme*: both incomplete.

⁴ Ab. 1430, 106 leaves (leaf 1 of text wanting), with illuminations of nice little devils—red, green, tawny, &c.—and damnd souls, fires, angels &c.

⁵ Of these, Mr. Harsley is preparing a new edition, with collations of all the MSS. Many copies of Thorpe's book, not issued by the Ælfrie Society, are still in stock.

Of the Vercelli Homilies, the Society has bought the copy made by Prof. G. Lattanzi.

living Hausknecht, Einkenkel, Haenisch, Kaluza, Hupe, Adam, Holthausen, Schick, Herzfeld, Brandeis, Sieper, Konrath, Wiülfing, &c. Scandinavia has also sent us Prof. Erdmann and Dr. E. A. Kock; Holland, Prof. H. Logeman, who is now working in Belgium; France, Prof. Paul Meyer—with Gaston Paris as adviser (alas, now dead);—Italy, Prof. Lattanzi; Austria, Dr. von Fleischhacker; while America is represented by the late Prof. Child, by Dr. Mary Noyes Colvin, Miss Rickert, Profs. Mead, McKnight, Triggs, Perrin, Craig, &c. The sympathy, the ready help, which the Society's work has cald forth from the Continent and the United States, have been among the pleasantest experiences of the Society's life, a real aid and cheer amid all troubles and discouragements. All our Members are grateful for it, and recognise that the bond their work has woven between them and the lovers of language and antiquity across the seas is one of the most welcome results of the Society's efforts.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

1. *Early English Alliterative Poems*, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 16s. 1864
2. *Arthur*, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 4s. "
3. *Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis*, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s. "
4. *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
5. *Hume's Orthographie and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue*, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s. 1865
6. *Lancelot of the Laik*, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 8s. "
7. *Genesis & Exodus*, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 8s. "
8. *Morte Arthure*, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock. 7s. "
9. *Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer*, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 10s. "
10. *Merlin*, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 2s. 6d. "
11. *Lyndesay's Monarche*, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3s. "
12. *Wright's Chaste Wife*, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1s. "
13. *Seinte Marherete*, 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne; re-edited by Dr. Otto Glauning. [Out of print. 1866
14. *Kyng Horn, Floris and Blancheflour*, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby, D.D., re-ed. Dr. G. H. McKnight. 5s. "
15. *Political, Religious, and Love Poems*, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. 6d. "
16. *The Book of Quinte Essence*, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s. "
17. *Parallel Extracts from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman*, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 1s. "
18. *Hali Meidenhad*, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne, re-edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. [At Press. "
19. *Lyndesay's Monarche*, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3s. 6d. "
20. *Hampole's English Prose Treatises*, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 1s. [Out of print. "
21. *Merlin*, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s. "
22. *Partenay or Lusignen*, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
23. *Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Inwyrt*, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. 6d. "
24. *Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils*, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s. 1867
25. *The Stacions of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage*, with *Clene Maydenhod*, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s. "
26. *Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse*, from R. Thornton's MS., ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 2s. [Out of print. "
27. *Levins's Manipulus Vocabulorum, a ryming Dictionary*, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 12s. "
28. *William's Vision of Piers the Plowman*, 1362 A.D.; Text A, Part I., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
29. *Old English Homilies* (ab. 1220-30 A.D.). Series I, Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 7s. "
30. *Pierce the Ploughmans Crede*, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 2s. "
31. *Myre's Duties of a Parish Priest*, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4s. 1868
32. *Early English Meals and Manners: the Boke of Nourture of John Russell, the Bokes of Keruyng, Curtasye, and Demeanor, the Babees Boke, Urbanitatis*, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall. 12s. "
33. *The Knight de la Tour Landry*, ab. 1440 A.D. A Book for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A. [Reprinting. "
34. *Old English Homilies* (before 1300 A.D.). Series I, Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. [Reprinting. "
35. *Lyndesay's Works*, Part III.: *The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum*, ed. F. Hall. 2s. "
36. *Merlin*, Part III. Ed. H. B. Wheatley. On *Arthurian Localities*, by J. S. Stuart Glennie. 12s. 1869
37. *Sir David Lyndesay's Works*, Part IV., *Ane Satyre of the Three Estais*. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s. "
38. *William's Vision of Piers the Plowman*, Part II. Text B. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. 6d. "
39. *Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy*. Ed. D. Donaldson & G. A. Panton. Pt. I. 10s. 6d. "
40. *English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs*, 1389 A.D. Edit. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by Dr. L. Brentano. 21s. 1870
41. *William Lauder's Minor Poems*. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s. "
42. *Bernardus De Cura Rei Famularis, Early Scottish Prophecies*, &c. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 2s. "
43. *Ratis Raving*, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 3s. "
44. *The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathe, or The Holy Grail*: from the Vernon MS.; with *W. de Worde's* and *Pynson's Lives of Joseph* : ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 5s. 1871
45. *King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care*, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, by Henry Sweet, Esq., B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. 10s. "
46. *Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems*, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
47. *Sir David Lyndesay's Works*, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 3s. "
48. *The Timos' Whistle*, and other Poems, by R. C., 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "
49. *An Old English Miscellany*, containing a *Bestiary*, *Kentish Sermons*, *Proverbs of Alfred*, and *Religious Poems of the 13th cent.*, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 10s. 1872
50. *King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care*, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. Part II. 10s. "

51. *The Life of St Juliana*, 2 versions, A.D. 1230, with translations; ed. T. O. Cockayne & E. Brock. 2s. 1872
52. *Palladius on Husbandrie*, englisht (ab. 1420 A.D.), ed. Rev. Barton Lodge, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
53. *Old-English Homilies*, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. 1873
54. *The Vision of Piers Plowman*, Text C: Richard the Redeles (by William, the author of the *Vision*) and *The Crowned King*; Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
55. *Generydes*, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D., ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I. 3s. "
56. *The Gest Hystoriale of the Destruction of Troy*, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10s. 6d. 1874
57. *The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"*; in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. Morris, M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d. "
58. *The Blickling Homilies*, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. Part I. 8s. "
59. *The "Cursor Mundi,"* in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 15s. 1875
60. *Meditacyuns on the Soper of our Lorde* (by Robert of Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper. 2s. 6d. "
61. *The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceldoune*, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 10s. 6d. "
62. *The "Cursor Mundi,"* in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 15s. 1876
63. *The Blickling Homilies*, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 7s. "
64. *Francie Thynne's Embleames and Epigrams*, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. "
65. *Be Domes Dæge* (Bede's *De Die Judicii*), &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, B.D. 2s. "
66. *The "Cursor Mundi,"* in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV., with 2 autotypes. 10s. 1877
67. *Notes on Piers Plowman*, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 21s. "
68. *The "Cursor Mundi,"* in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part V. 25s. 1878
69. *Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II.*, &c., ed. F. Furnivall, M.A. 5s. "
70. *Generydes*, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4s. "
71. *The Lay Folks Mass-Book*, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmons. 25s. 1879
72. *Palladius on Husbandrie*, englisht (ab. 1420 A.D.). Part II. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. "
73. *The Blickling Homilies*, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 10s. 1880
74. *English Works of Wyclif*, hitherto unprinted, ed. F. D. Matthew, Esq. 20s. "
75. *Catholicon Anglicum*, an early English Dictionary, from Lord Monson's MS. A.D. 1483, ed., with Introduction & Notes, by S. J. Herrtage, B.A.; and with a Preface by H. B. Wheatley. 20s. 1881
76. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, in MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
77. *Beowulf*, the unique MS. autotyped and transliterated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. 25s. 1882
78. *The Fifty Earliest English Wills*, in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439, ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7s. "
79. *King Alfred's Orosius*, from Lord Tollemache's 9th century MS., Part I, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 13s. 1883
- 79b. *The Epinal Glossary*, 8th cent., ed. J. H. Hessler, M.A. 15s. [*Preparing*].
80. *The Early-English Life of St. Katherine and its Latin Original*, ed. Dr. Eickenel. 12s. 1884
81. *Piers Plowman*: Notes, Glossary, &c. Part IV, completing the work, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
82. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D. Part II. 12s. 1885
83. *The Oldest English Texts, Charters, &c.*, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 20s. "
84. *Additional Analogs to 'The Wright's Chaste Wife,'* No. 12, by W. A. Clouston. 1s. 1886
85. *The Three Kings of Cologne*. 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 17s. "
86. *Prose Lives of Women Saints*, ab. 1610 A.D., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 12s. "
87. *Early English Verse Lives of Saints* (earliest version), Laud MS. 108, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1887
88. *Hy. Bradshaw's Life of St. Werburgh* (Pynson, 1521), ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 10s. "
89. *VICES and Virtues*, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen. Part I. 8s. 1888
90. *Anglo-Saxon and Latin Rule of St. Benet*, interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Logeman. 12s. "
91. *Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books*, ab. 1430-1450, edited by Mr. T. Austin. 10s. "
92. *Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter*, from the Trin. Cambr. MS., ab. 1150 A.D., ed. F. Harsley, B.A. Pt. I. 12s. 1889
93. *Defensor's Liber Scintillarum*, edited from the MSS. by Ernest Rhodes, B.A. 12s. "
94. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7. Part III., ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 12s. 1890
95. *The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Part I, § 1. 18s. "
96. *The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Pt. I, § 2. 15s. 1891
97. *The Earliest English Prose Psalter*, edited from its 2 MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part I. 15s. "
98. *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.*, Part I., ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1892
99. *Cursor Mundi*. Part VI. Preface, Notes, and Glossary, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
100. *Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine*, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20s. 1893
101. *Cursor Mundi*. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe. 10s. "
102. *Lanfranc's Chirurgie*, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker. Part I. 20s. 1894
103. *The Legend of the Cross*, from a 12th century MS., &c., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. 7s. 6d. "
104. *The Exeter Book* (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS. by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part I. 20s. 1895
105. *The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book*, Camb. Univ. MS., ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part I. 10s. "
106. *R. Misyn's Fire of Love and Mending of Life* (Hampole), 1434, 1435, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A. 15s. 1896
107. *The English Conquest of Ireland*, A.D. 1166-1185, 2 Texts, 1425, 1440, Pt. I., ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s. "
108. *Child-Marriages and -Divorces, Trothplights, &c.* Chester Depositions, 1561-6, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s. 1897
109. *The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book*, ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part II. 10s. "
110. *The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II, § 1. 15s. 1898
111. *The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II, § 2. 15s. "
112. *Merlin*, Part IV: Outlines of the Legend of Merlin, by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D. 15s. 1899
113. *Queen Elizabeth's Englishings of Boethius, Plutarch &c.*, ed. Miss C. Penberton. 15s. "
114. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, Part IV and last, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 10s. 1900

115. Jacob's Well, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandeis. Part I.	10s.	1900
116. An Old-English Martyrology, re-edited by Dr. G. Herzfeld.	10s.	"
117. Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part II.	15s.	1901
118. The Lay Folks' Catechism, ed. by Canon Simmons and Rev. H. E. Nolloth, M.A.	5s.	"
119. Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Pt. I.	10s.	"
120. The Rule of St. Benet, in Northern Prose and Verse, & Caxton's Summary, ed. Dr. E. A. Koek.	15s.	1902
121. The Laud MS. Troy-Book, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing. Part I.	15s.	"
122. The Laud MS. Troy-Book, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing. Part II.	20s.	1903
123. Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Pt. II.	10s.	"
124. Twenty-six Political and other Poems from Digby MS. 102 &c., ed. by Dr. J. Kail. Part I.	10s.	1904
125. Medieval Records of a London City Church, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part I.	10s.	"
126. An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English from Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part I.	10s.	"
127. An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English from Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part II.	10s.	1905
128. Medieval Records of a London City Church, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part II.	10s.	"
129. The Godstow and Osney Registers, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Andrew Clark, LL.D. Pt. I.	10s.	"

EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1867-1901 (one guinea each year) are:—

I. William of Palerne; or, William and the Werwolf. Re-edited by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	13s.	1867
II. Early English Pronunciation with especial Reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I.	10s.	"
III. Caxton's Book of Curtesye, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall.	5s.	1868
IV. Havelok the Dane. Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	10s.	"
V. Chaucer's Boethius. Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	12s.	"
VI. Chevelere Assigne. Re-edited from the unique MS. by Lord Aldenham, M.A.	3s.	"
VII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II.	10s.	1869
VIII. Queene Elizabethes Achademy, &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald.	13s.	"
IX. Awdeley's Fraternity of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat, &c. Ed. E. Viles & F. J. Furnivall.	7s. 6d.	"
X. Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyetary of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the Berde, 1542-3. Ed. F. J. Furnivall.	18s.	1870
XI. Barbour's Bruce, Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	12s.	"
XII. England in Henry VIII.'s Time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole & Lupset, by Thom. Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II.	12s. (Part I. is No. XXXII, 1878, 8s.)	1871
XIII. A Supplicacyon of the Beggars, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with A Supplication to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde; A Supplication of the Poore Commons; and The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq.	6s.	"
XIV. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III.	10s.	"
XV. Robert Crowley's Thirty-One Epigrams, Voyce of the Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth, &c., A.D. 1550-1, edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq.	12s.	1872
XVI. Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	6s.	"
XVII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., with 4 Tracts (1542-48), ed. Dr. Murray. Part I.	10s.	"
XXIII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., ed. Dr. Murray. Part II.	8s.	1873
XIX. Oure Ladyes Myroure, A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A.	24s.	"
XX. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail (ab. 1450 A.D.), ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part I.	8s.	1874
XXI. Barbour's Bruce, Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	4s.	"
XXII. Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderyck Mors (ab. 1542): and The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Citie of London, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper.	9s.	"
XXIII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV.	10s.	"
XXIV. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part II.	10s.	1875
XXV. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I.	20s.	"
XXVI. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part II.	14s.	1876
XXVII. Bp. Fisher's English Works (died 1535), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. Part I, the Text.	16s.	"
XXVIII. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part III.	10s.	1877
XXIX. Barbour's Bruce. Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	21s.	"
XXX. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part IV.	15s.	1878
XXXI. The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.	6s.	"
XXXII. Starkey's "England in Henry VIII.'s time," Pt. I. Starkey's Life and Letters, ed. S. J. Hertridge. 8s.	"	"
XXXIII. Gesta Romanorum (englisht ab. 1440), ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A.	15s.	1879
XXXIV. The Charlemagne Romances:—1. Sir Ferumbras, from Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Hertridge.	15s.	"
XXXV. Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Sege of Melayne, Sir Otuell, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge.	12s.	1880
XXXVI. Charlemagne Romances:—3. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. I., ed. S. J. Hertridge.	16s.	"
XXXVII. Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. II., ed. S. J. Hertridge.	15s.	1881
XXXVIII. Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowdone of Babylone, ed. Dr. Hansknecht.	15s.	"
XXXIX. Charlemagne Romances:—6. Rauf Colyere, Roland, Otuel, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A.	15s.	1882
XL. Charlemagne Romances:—7. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part I.	15s.	"
XLI. Charlemagne Romances:—8. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part II.	15s.	1883
XLII. Guy of Warwick: 2 texts (Auehinleck MS. and Caius MS.), ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I.	15s.	"
XLIII. Charlemagne Romances:—9. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part III.	15s.	1884

X LIV. Charlemagne Romances :—10. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss Octavia Richardson. Pt. I. 15s. 1884	
X LV. Charlemagne Romances :—11. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss O. Richardson. Pt. II. 20s. 1885	
X LVI. Sir Bevis of Hamton, from the Auchinleck and other MSS., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part I. 10s. "	
X LVII. The Wars of Alexander, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 20s. 1886	
X LVIII. Sir Bevis of Hamton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part II. 10s. "	
X LIX. Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Pt. II., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s. 1887	
L. Charlemagne Romances :—12. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part IV. 5s. "	
L I. Torrent of Portyngale, from the unique MS. in the Chetham Library, ed. E. Adam, Ph.D. 10s. "	
L II. Bullain's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1578 (ed. 1, 1564). Ed. M. & A. H. Bullen. 10s. 1888	
L III. Vicary's Anatomie of the Body of Man, 1548, ed. 1577, ed. F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part I. 15s. "	
L IV. Caxton's Englishing of Alain Chartier's Carial, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall & Prof. P. Meyer. 5s. "	
L V. Barbour's Bruce, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. Part IV. 5s. 1889	
L VI. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Pt. V., the present English Dialects. 25s. "	
L VII. Caxton's Eneydos, A.D. 1490, coll. with its French, ed. M. T. Culley, M.A. & Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 13s. 1890	
L VIII. Caxton's Blanchardyn & Eglantine, c. 1480, extracts from ed. 1595, & French, ed. Dr. L. Kellner. 17s. "	
L IX. Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Part III., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s. 1891	
L X. Lydgate's Temple of Glass, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schick. 15s. "	
L XI. Hoccleve's Minor Poems, I., from the Philipps and Durham MSS., ed. F. J. Furnivall, Ph.D. 15s. 1892	
L XII. The Chester Plays, re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deimling. Part I. 15s. "	
L XIII. Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi, english ab. 1440, & 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram. 15s. 1893	
L XIV. Caxton's Godfrey of Bolyone, or Last Siege of Jerusalem, 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15s. "	
L XV. Sir Bevis of Hamton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part III. 15s. 1894	
L XVI. Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philisoffres, ab. 1445—50, ed. R. Steele, B.A. 15s. "	
L XVII. The Three Kings' Sons, a Romance, ab. 1500, Part I., the Text, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 10s. 1895	
L XVIII. Melusine, the prose Romance, ab. 1500, Part I, the Text, ed. A. K. Donald. 20s. "	
L XIX. Lydgate's Assembly of the Gods, ed. Prof. Oscar L. Triggs, M.A., Ph.D. 15s. 1896	
L XX. The Digby Plays, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s. "	
L XXI. The Towneley Plays, ed. Geo. England and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 15s. 1897	
L XXII. Hoccleve's Regiment of Princes, 1411-12, and 14 Poems, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s. "	
L XXIII. Hoccleve's Minor Poems, II., from the Ashburnham MS., ed. I. Gollancz, M.A. [At Press. "	
L XXIV. Secreta Secretorum, 3 prose Englishings, by Jas. Yonge, 1428, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part I. 20s. 1898	
L XXV. Speculum Guidonis de Warwyk, edited by Miss G. L. Morrill, M.A., Ph.D. 10s. "	
L XXVI. George Ashby's Poems, &c., ed. Miss Mary Bateson. 15s. 1899	
L XXVII. Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part I. 10s. "	
L XXVIII. The Life and Death of Mary Magdalene, by T. Robinson, c. 1620, ed. Dr. H. O. Sommer. 5s. "	
L XXIX. Caxton's Dialogues, English and French, c. 1483, ed. Henry Bradley, M.A. 10s. 1900	
L XXX. Lydgate's Two Nightingale Poems, ed. Dr. Otto Glanning. 5s. "	
L XXXI. Gower's Confessio Amantis, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. Vol. I. 15s. "	
L XXXII. Gower's Confessio Amantis, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. Vol. II. 15s. 1901	
L XXXIII. Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Pt. II. 10s. "	
L XXXIV. Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part I. 5s. "	
L XXXV. Alexander Scott's Poems, 1568, from the unique Edinburgh MS., ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. 10s. 1902	
L XXXVI. William of Shoreham's Poems, re-ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. M. Konrath. Part I. 10s. "	
L XXXVII. Two Coventry Corpus-Christi Plays, re-edited by Hardin Craig, M.A. 10s. "	
L XXXVIII. Le Morte Arthur, re-edited from the Harleian MS. 2252 by Prof. Bruce, Ph.D. 15s. 1903	
L XXXIX. Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part II. 15s. "	
X C. English Fragments from Latin Medieval Service-Books, ed. by Hy. Littlehales. 5s. "	
X CI. The Macro Plays, from Mr. Gurney's unique MS., ed. Dr. Furnivall and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 10s. 1904	
X CII. Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, Part III., ed. Miss Locock. 10s. "	
X CIII. Lovelich's Romance of Merlin, from the unique MS., ed. Dr. E. A. Kock. Part I. 10s. "	
X CIV. Lovelich's Romance of Merlin, from the unique MS., ed. Dr. E. A. Kock. Part II. 1905	
X CV. William of Shoreham's Poems, re-ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. M. Konrath. Part II. [At Press. "	

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY TEXTS PREPARING.

Besides the Texts named as at press on p. 12 of the Cover of the Early English Text Society's last Books, the following Texts are also slowly preparing for the Society:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

The Earliest English Prose Psalter, ed. Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part II.
 The Earliest English Verse Psalter, 3 texts, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A.
 Anglo-Saxon Poems, from the Vercelli MS., re-edited by Prof. I. Gollancz, M.A.
 Anglo-Saxon Glosses to Latin Prayers and Hymns, edited by Dr. F. Holthausen.
 All the Anglo-Saxon Homilies and Lives of Saints not accessible in English editions, including those of the Vercelli MS. &c., edited by Prof. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.
 The Anglo-Saxon Psalms; all the MSS. in Parallel Texts, ed. Dr. H. Logeman and F. Harsley, B.A.
 Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., edited by a Pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 Byrhtferth's Handboec, ed. by Prof. G. Hempf. Early English Confessionals, ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.

The Seven Sages, in the Northern Dialect, from a Cotton MS., edited by Dr. Squires.
 The Master of the Game, a Book of Huntynge for Hen. V. when Prince of Wales. (*Editor wanted.*)
 Aired's Rule of Nuna, &c., edited from the Vernon MS., by the Rev. Canon H. R. Bramley, M.A.
 Early English Verse Lives of Saints, Standard Collection, from the Harl. MS. (*Editor wanted.*)
 A Lapidary, from Lord Tollemache's MS., &c., edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morsbach.
 Gilbert Banastre's Poems, and other Boccaccio englishings, ed. by Prof. Dr. Max Förster.
 Lanfranc's Chirurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part II.
 William of Nassington's Mirror of Life, from Jn. of Waldby, edited by J. A. Herbert, M.A.
 More Early English Wills from the Probate Registry at Somerset House. (*Editor wanted.*)
 Early Lincoln Wills and Documents from the Bishops' Registers, &c., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.
 Early Canterbury Wills, edited by William Cowper, B.A., and J. Meadows Cowper.
 Early Norwich Wills, edited by Walter Rye and F. J. Furnivall.
 The Cartularies of Osney Abbey and Godstow Nunnery, english ab. 1450, ed. Rev. A. Clark, M.A.
 Early Lyrical Poems from the Harl. MS. 2253, re-edited by Prof. Hall Griffin, M.A.
 Alliterative Prophecies, edited from the MSS. by Prof. Brandl, Ph. D.
 Miscellaneous Alliterative Poems, edited from the MSS. by Dr. L. Morsbach.
 Bird and Beast Poems, a collection from MSS., edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Seire Mori, &c., from the Lichfield MS. 16, ed. Mrs. L. Grindon, LL.A., and Miss Florence Gilbert.
 Nicholas Trivet's French Chronicle, from Sir A. Acland-Hood's unique MS., ed. by Miss Mary Bateson.
 Early English Homilies in Harl. 2276 &c., c. 1400, ed. J. Friedländer.
 Extracts from the Registers of Boughton, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
 The Diary of Prior Moore of Worcester, A.D. 1518-35, from the unique MS., ed. Henry Littlehales, Esq.
 The Pore Caitif, edited from its MSS., by Mr. Peake.
 Thomas Berkley's english Vegetius on the Art of War, MS. 30 Magd. Coll. Oxf., ed. L. C. Wharton, M.A.
 Poems attributed to Richard Maydenstone, from MS. Rawl. A 389, edited by Dr. W. Heuser.
 Early Middle-English Charters, edited by Dr. W. Heuser.

EXTRA SERIES.

Bp. Fisher's English Works, Pt. II., with his Life and Letters, ed. Rev. Ronald Bayne, B.A. [*At Press.*]
 Sir Tristrem, from the unique Auchinleck MS., edited by George F. Black.
 John of Arderne's Surgery, c. 1425, ed. J. F. Payne, M.D.
 De Guilleville's Pilgrimage of the Sowle, edited by Prof. Dr. Leon Kellner.
 Vicary's Anatomie, 1548, from the unique MS. copy by George Jeans, edited by F. J. & Percy Furnivall.
 Vicary's Anatomie, 1548, ed. 1577, edited by F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part II. [*At Press.*]
 A Compilacion of Surgerye, from H. de Mandeville and Lanfrank, A.D. 1392, ed. Dr. J. F. Payne.
 William Staunton's St. Patrick's Purgatory, &c., ed. Mr. G. P. Krapp, U.S.A.
 Trevisa's Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum, re-edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1564, 1573, 1578. Ed. A. II. and M. Bullen. Part II.
 The Romance of Boetius and Sidrac, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 The Romance of Clariodus, and Sir Amadas, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Sir Degrevant, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. Luick.
 Robert of Brunne's Chronicle of England, from the Inner Temple MS., ed. by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.
 Maundeville's Voiage and Travaile, re-edited from the Cotton MS. Titus C. 16, &c., by Miss M. Bateson.
 Avowynge of Arthur, re-edited from the unique Ireland MS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Guy of Warwick, Copland's version, edited by a pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 Awdelay's Poems, re-edited from the unique MS. Douce 302, by Prof. Dr. E. Wülfing.
 The Wyse Chylde and other early Treatises on Education, Northwich School, Harl. 2099 &c., ed. G. Collar, B.A.
 Caxton's Dictes and Sayengis of Philosophers, 1477, with Lord Tollemache's MS. version, ed. S. I. Butler, Esq.
 Caxton's Book of the Ordre of Chyualry, collated with Loutfut's Scotch copy. (*Editor wanted.*)
 Lydgate's Court of Sapience, ed. by Dr. Borsdorf. Lydgate's Dance of Death, ed. Miss Florence Warren.
 Lydgate's Lyfe of oure Lady, ed. by Prof. Georg Fiedler, Ph.D.
 Lydgate's Life of St. Edmund, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Axel Erdmann.
 Lydgate's Triumph Poems, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Lydgate's Minor Poems, edited by Dr. Otto Glauning.
 Richard Coeur de Lion, re-edited from Harl. MS. 4690, by Prof. Hausknecht, Ph.D.
 The Romance of Athelstan, re-edited by a pupil of the late Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 The Romance of Sir Degare, re-edited by Dr. Breul. The Gospel of Nichodemus, edited by Ernest Riedel.
 Mulcaster's Positona 1581, and Elementarie 1582, ed. Dr. Th. Kläehr, Dresden.
 Walton's verse Boethius de Consolatione, edited by Mark H. Liddell, U.S.A.
 Sir Landeval and Sir Launfal, edited by Dr. Zimmermann.
 Rolland's Seven Sages, the Scottish version of 1500, edited by George F. Black.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year for the ORIGINAL SERIES, and £1 1s. for the EXTRA SERIES, due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order, cross 'Union Bank of London,' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts posted to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1s. for the Original Series, and 1s. for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.

1067

Merlin.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, No. xciii, 112

1904.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

Merlin,

A MIDDLE-ENGLISH METRICAL VERSION

OF A FRENCH ROMANCE,

BY

HERRY LOVELICH,

SKINNER AND CITIZEN OF LONDON (AB. 1450 A.D.),

EDITED

FROM THE UNIQUE MS. 80 IN CORPUS CHRISTI COLLEGE,
CAMBRIDGE,

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARIES,

BY

DR. ERNST A. KOCK.

PART I. —

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

By KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LIMITED,

DRYDEN HOUSE, 43, GERRARD STREET, SOHO, W.

1904.

13305-9
11/6/14

PR

1119

E5

no. 53, 112

Extra Series, XCIII.

RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON AND BUNGAY.

Merlin,

BY LOUELICH THE SKINNER.

(MS. 80 in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.)

Now gyneth the devel to wraththen him sore
 (as aftir scholen 3e herkene & here wel more),
 whanne that oure lord to helle wente,
 and took owt Adam with good entente,
 and also Eve, and ek othere mo,
 þat *wit* him he likede forto han tho.
 and whanne þe develis behelden this,
 moche drede and merveile they hadden, j-wis.
 So, as Aftyrward longe be-Felle,
 to-gederis they conseilled, the develis, ful snelle,
 and token hem to-gederis Jn parlement,
 the maister-develis, be on assent,
 and seiden : “ what mester man Js he, this,
 that doth vs here al this distres ?
 we mown not azens him maken defens,
 whanne he is owht Jn owre presens,
 and bynemeth vs that we scholde haue,
 and for hym non thing mowen we kepen save.
 For we supposede, ful verrayly,
 that non man scholde be born of wommans body,
 that alle owre they weren be Ryht,
 but he hem benemeth vs be his nyht.
 Sey, how was this 3oman bore,
 be whom owre Ryht js thus forlore ? ”

thanne answerede anothir devel,
 and, as him thowhte, he answerede wel :
 “ we hauen herd sein be prophecy
 that god jn erthe here Scholde dye
 Forto saven the Synneris here,
 that of Adam and Eve come jn fere.

[leaf 88 c]

Chap. I.

The devils,
 angry on
 account of
 Christ rescu-
 ing Adam
 and his race
 from Hell

4

8

[leaf 88 d]

hold a
 council.

12

They wonder
 who he is,

16

that thus
 deprives
 them of their
 supposed
 right.

20

24

One of the
 devils says
 that the same
 is the Son
 of God,
 who died to
 save sinners,

28

30. and Eve added above the line.

and whanne that he j-boren was, we hym assaieden jn every plas, as moche as was jn owre powere, and neuere gilty ne fownden we hym jn non manere, jn hym of oure werkes neuere Ryht nowht, For al that evere we to hym wrowht, But that he wolde deyen to saven man, For jn him hadde we non powere than. Ful mochel cherte hadde he to man, that so mochel peyne suffrede for him than, and hym forto wynnen ageyn, and from vs hem be-reven, jn certeyn. Ful mochel sorwe to vs he wrowhte thorwgh mankynde, that he bowhte.”	
thanne anon Spoken they Jn fere of Swiche things as greved hem there, of hem that proclaimed the tydyng Ferst jn the erthe of his comeng :	
“and whanne we ony tormentes scholde hem do, anon he delyverede hem vs Fro. Therfore wolden we weten ful fayn The beste to done, Jn certayn, how that jn the erthe a child to have that the peple wolde aftyr crave. For he scholde hauen alle connenge of thyng <i>þat</i> js past and that is comenge, and encense the peple to oure lore, as he dyde that was <i>þere</i> be-fore, To tellen hem of thinges <i>þat</i> hadde be and befaller scholden, ful Sikerle. So scholde he <i>þe</i> peple to vs drawe, For of hym they wolden ben Ryht fawe.” thanne seiden they aminges hem Everichon that swich a child, and they hadden on, wel mochel he scholde hem profyte and torne the peple to here delyte, For fulwel beleved scholde he be For his prophecyes, ful Sikerle.	<p>68 and tempted by the devils, He remained without sin, 72 and died for the love of man. [leaf 89 a] 76 80 The devils further speak of the pro- phets, who were likewise sustained by Christ. 84 88 Now the devils would like to have, on earth, a child with the same mental powers, 92 96 to draw the people to them.</p>
	100
	104

One devil
declares he
can make
women
conceive,

thanne stirte there forth a schrewe anon,
and seide amonges hem Everichon :

“J haue power Seed forto Sowe

jn the erthe on wommen bothe hye & lowe,

108

and j haue on redy at myn assent,

that wil Fulfillen myn talent.”

and they
form a plan
accordingly,

So concentyd they that this ilke schrewe

jnto erthe scholde gon anon that threwe

112

Forto Fulfillen that jlke dede,

of wheche alle the schrewes token here rede.

in foolish
ignorance of
God's wise
intentions.

Now, grete Foles weren they Everychon,

that amonges hem cowde not knowen on

116

how that god knew wel alle thyng,

bothe gynneng, midwardis, and endyng !

thus departyd they from here conseylle

this werk to be-gynne, with-owten faille.

120

The devil
repairs

thanne he that seide that he hadde powere

on women jn erthe to Engendren there,

he taryed there non lengere thanne,

to a woman,

but cam jnto erthe to this wommanne

124

whiche womman that dyde hym Servise.

with hire he anon mette jn prevy Gyse,

and anon he tempted hire so,

who promises
to help him.

that anon sche concentyd hym to,

128

and graunted hym, al that sche cowde oper myhte,

To don him Servyse bothe day & Nyhte.

This woman
has a rich
husband;

and hire lord was a worthy man,

& moche more good hadde thanne J telle kan.

132

This Riche man hadde moche of worldly good,

more thanne ony man tho vndirstood,

of Bestes and of other Richesse,

of kamailles, of jewelis, & of oper worthynesse.

136

they have
three
[leaf 89 b]
daughters
and one
son.

This worthy man hadde dowhtren thre,

The Fa[y]rest Wommen that myhte be,

and a sone, that scholde ben his eyr,

bothe a gentilmanly child and a fayr ;

140

and alle he hadde be this womman,

that þe devel so mochel part hadde of than.

- thanne this devel forȝat non thing,
 that Rowhte not of mannes begyleng, 144
 and axede of this womman anon
 how that Best he myhte don
 hire lord to haue to his partye,
 hym forto tellen he preyde hire hye. 148
 sche answerede : “ *With* non thing so sone, j-wys,
 as only be wraththe, with-owten mys ;
 For ryht lyhtleche he wile wroth be,
 as j the telle now ful sikerle ; 152
 and *per*-fore wraththe thou myht him sone
with the leste thing that thou wilt done.”
 thanne wente forth this cursed schrewe anone,
 and slowgh his bestes alle thus sone, 156
 a gret partye of hem jn a nyht.
 and on the morwen, whanne it was lyht,
 the pastour aspide that moreygne,
 and to his lord he wente, ful pleyne, 160
 and told hym of that aventure,
 how his bestes deiden, J ȝow ensure.
 and whanne that the goode lord herde this,
 Ful wondirly wroth he was, j-wys, 164
 and axede of the pastour tho
 what Skile his bestes deyden so.
 the pastour answerede him ageyn :
 “ Sire, j ne can not weten, jn certein ! ” 168
 So belefte he stille alle that day.
 and whanne the devel this knew & say,
 that for so lytel he wolde wroth be,
 thanne was he joyful, wel Sekirle, 172
 and thowhte more harm hym to do,
 be wraththe þe sonnere to drawen hym to.
 So that he * the nexte Nyht
 jnto his stable, j Sey ȝow ryht, 176
 and there ten of his hors slowgh he,
 the beste that weren jn that contre.

The devil
asks her for
the best
means of
insnaring her
husband.

She answers :
“ Make him
angry ! ”

The devil
then kills
some of his
cattle ;

and when the
herd brings
the news in
the morning,

the man is
wonderfully
wroth.

Encouraged
by the
success,

the devil kills
ten of the
man's horses ;

147. *hir*, *r* through correction.

155. MS. *anoñe*.

157. MS. *agret*; similarly l. 212 (*aplawncher*), and frequently.

175. The verb (*wente*?) is missing; cf. ll. 155, 209, and footnote to l. 1719.

and the man
angrily
exclaims :

and whanne the goodman wiste of this,
that al his good wente so amys, 180

anon ryht angry ful sone he was
for tho tydynges jn that plas,
and a word of anger spak he thore,
wheche after repentyd him ful sore, 184

"May the
devil take
the lot!"

and be-took the devel al the remnaunt,
That him be-lefte, petyt & graunt.

And so the
devil gladly
does :

Whanne that the devel herde him so seyn,
thanne was he bothe joyful & fayn, 188
and thowhte to greven him moche more
thanne that he dyde ony tyme before.

For he made the goode man thanne so wroth,
that eche mannes compenye was hym loth. 192
thanne wiste anon the devel ful wel
that jn him hadde he part a gret del,
and that wel jnowgh he myhte go
jnto what partye him lykede tho. 196

the son and
heir

Thanne cam the devel to his sone & his Eyr,
That was bothe so gentyl & Fayr ;

[leaf 89 c]

is found
strangled in
his bed,

Vppon A nyht, As he in his bed lay,
the devel him strangelede, the sothe to say ; 200
and vppon the morwen hym fond ded
his owne fadir Jn that same sted.

thanne was he Ryht a sorweful man,
For that non Recowr ne knew he than, 204
Sethen that his faire sone he hadde lost so,
thanne jnto disperaunce fyl he tho.

and whanne the devel vndirstod al this,
thanne was he joyful, with-owten mis. 208

the wife takes
her own life
in the loft,

anon thanne wente he to his wyf,
that began al this wo and stryf ;
jnto an hygh soler he dyde hire go,
and abowtes a plawnecher a rope caste tho, 212

and Sette a thing thanne vndir hire feet,
& þe Rope abowtes hire nekke teyde askeet ;
thanne voided sche anon hire stondyng,
þat so thike cursed womman þere hyre-self heng. 216
whanne the husbonde beheld al this,

that his wyf thus ded was, j-wys,
 and also his sone Jn Swich manere,
 thanne was he of wondyr hevy chere, 220
 that there for sorwe he deyde anon,
 and thus alle thre, thanne weren they gon.
 Lo, thus the devel doth be hem alle
 that jn his Servise only thing don falle. 224
 thanne caste the cursede schrewe a wyle
 how þat he myhte his thre dowhtres begyle ;
 and wel he wyste, Jt myhte not be
 but thorwgh som man of his afynye. 228
 So was there a bacheler Jn the town,
 that folwed his werkis bothe vpe and down ;
 and hym to this place he dyde propyne
 these thre faire maidenis forto Engyne ; 232
 and so ofte thedyr he gan to gon,
 that thussone he hadde overcomen the ton.
 and whanne be hire he hadde don folye,
 the devel anon it schewede openlye, 236
 and disclawndred it al the contre,
 the more schame to hem þat it scholde be.
 and jn thyke tyme was tho the lawe,
 that ho so dyde avowtrye, scholde be slawe 240
 and with stones j-browht to the ded,
 For that was the lawe Jn that sted ;
 and thus with Stoneng scholden they ben schent,
 but 3if sche were comwne to alle mennes entent. 244

Thanne thus this womman was taken anon,
 and the man fledde and was agon ;
 and anon was browht to-form the justice
 there forto Resceyven hire jowyse. 248
 so that of hire they hadden pyte,
 Swich maner of jowyse be hire to se,
 For that hire fadyr was so worthy a man,
 and Jn so schort tyme was mischevyd than. 252
 but Natheles nedis ded moste sche be,
 and thanne thus acordid they, Sykerle,

and the
bereft man
himself dies
with grief.

Now the
three daugh-
ters remain.

One of them
is seduced by
a young man
from the
town,

her disgrace
is divulged,

and accordyng
to the law
she must die.

The judges,
out of pity,
decide to let
the execution
take place in
the night.

	So that for love of hire kynrede be Nyhtes tyme hire stone to dede.	256
A holy hermit, on hearing of all this, visits the grieving sisters,	thanne jn that contre was there a good man, that of alle these merveilles herde than, and to the tweyne sostren gan he gon hem forto counseillen with anon.	260
and inquires about their [leaf 89 d] disasters.	and there anon he spak hem tylle, and axede how this misaventure befile— “Of 3owre fadyr And modyr Jn Fere, of 3owre brothir and 3oure Soster dere?”	264
The girls say that God seems to hate them.	“We nete Neuere, Sire, Jn certeyn, but 3if that god vs hate, ful pleyn, and this torment Suffreth vs to haue; we knowen non othyr, so god vs saue!”	268
The hermit rebukes them,	thanne seide this goodman to hem tho : “Forsothe, 3e seyn mys bothe two, For god hatede nevere creature, but Js misplesid, J 3ow Enswre,	272
casts the blame on the devil,	whanne ouy Synnere doth him hate Owthir for ony thing with him debate. For weteth ful wel, as j 3ow telle, that is the werk of the devel of helle ;	276
	and that 3oure soster thus Js ded, Syker it is be the develys red.” “Sire, so god now be owre helpyng, we knewen neuere of this thyng.”	280
and exhorts them to a good life.	“thanne kepe 3e 3ow from jlle werkyng, and caste 3ow to plese now hevene kyng ; for jlle werk bryngeth a man to evele ende and jn-to synne & synneres schende ;	284
	and he that hym wol not kepen from jlle werkyng, to ille ende it bringeth hym at his deyeng.” thanne thus prechid hem this good man, how that they scholden bope plesen an serven god than.	
The elder sister likes his lore.	So that the eldest Soster of hem bothe his teching liked wel, forsothe, and seide that sche wolde potten al hire peyne hys doctryne to kepen, Jn certeyne.	289 292

thanne seide this goodman to hem tho :

“ 3if that 3e welen thus aftyr me do,
3e scholen ben bothe my loves dere
and my dowlhtren jn god, bothe jn fere.

296

and 3if 3e hauen xede of ony thyng
owþer of ony maner of cownseyllng,
Swich helpe and cownseil as j kan do,
J schal it for 3ow don evere mo.

300

and therfore abasche 3ow ryht nowht,
but stedfastly beleveth jn hym that 3ow bowht ;
and that 3e comen often-tymes to me,
for fer from 3ow j ne schal not be.”

304

thus hem cow[n]ceillede this holy man,
and forth his weye anon wente he than.

whanne that the devel wiste of this,
moche sorwe he made, *with-owten* mys,
and wiste wel þat Engyned myhten they not be
but be som womman, ful Sykerle.

308

So was there on, as j vndirstonde,
that jn his Servise hadde dwellid longe ;
and anon it putte jn hire herte,
that to thiike maidenis 3he scholde gon ful smerte.
and so sche dide anon, this wikked womman,

312

wente forto cownseillen *with* hem than,

316

and took the 3ongest Soster on Syde,
and anon *with* hire counseilled that tyde,

to make the
younger girl

hire axeng anon how 3he did fare,
and what maner thing hire soster dyde thare.

320

“ Loueth sche not 3ow wondirly wel ? ”

“ 3is, and ellis were it a3ens Resown & Skyl ;

but that sche is other while hevyr

For this mysaventure, trewely,

324

The wheche jn Schort tyme to vs is befallē
of oure fadyr & modir and Frendis alle,

So that *with* hire is non manere of chere,

Nethir to me ne to non oþer ellis where,

328

but doth al aftyr a goodmannes techyng,

The hermit
says he will
be a father
to them,

ever ready to
help and
advise.

The devil,
annoyed at
this,

sends a bad
woman

dissatisfied
with her
sister

305. MS. *cownceilled* ; cf. the footnote to l. 853.

314. *3he* corrected from *they*. 319. *3he, h* corrected from *e*.

320. *hir, r* through correction ; *softer* added above the line.

- That here faste be-sydes is his dwellyng,
 [leaf 90 a] So that nothyng sche Wyle do,
 but 3if he only consente to." 332
- "A," quod this olde Bawde tho,
 and with "thou knowest of mochel sorwe & wo,
 their present and neuere of joye schalt þou knowe, trewlye,
 mode of life. as longe as thou art jn hire compenye. 336
- A, my leve dowghter so dere,
 She extols 3if that thou knewe what mannes compenye were,
 the indulg- thou wost neuere resten ne dwelle,
 ence of lust, Tyl mannes Feleschepe 3e comen vntylle. 340
- For better at ese Seker ben we,
 more desir- Jn mannes compenye whanne that we be,
 able than althowgh we haue but on almesse of Bred,
 anything else, thanne 3e with al 3oure good jn 3oure sted. 344
- Fy of joye of ony womman,
 but 3if sche haue joye oper compenye of man!
 my Fayre dowhter, to 3ow this j seye,
 for that 3e knowen not mannes compenye. 348
- and points out the girl's disadvantageous position, as a younger sister, with regard to inheritance and matrimony. and wete 3e why J thus to 3ow Seye?
 3owre Soster is Eldere than 3e, trewlye,
 and taketh this here as hire owne good,
 and the lasse setteth be 3ow, be the rood, 352
- So that the joye of 3oure fayre Body
 Js ful clene j-lost, j sey 3ow trewelye."
 thanne seide this damysele to hire tho :
 "how scholde j this thing thus do 356
- that 3e to me speken offe pleylnly,
 whanne that my Soster was ded therby?"
 "jn the name of god," quod this Bawde thanne,
 "3owre Sostyr wrowhte as a folisch wommanne! 360
- but 3if 3e wile werken aftyr me
 and to my conseille trosten, sekerle,
 3e scholde neuere comen to-fore justice,
 and 3it haue 3oure delytes Jn alle wyse." 364
- "A," quod this damysele, "how scholde j do?
 that j ne myhte 3ow speken more vnto!
 For j ne dar not for my soster here

366. After *spoken* another *3ow* was added above the line, but erased again.

Nethir to 3ow Speke ne make non chere.

Goth 3e now hens, tyl that rftt sone
that we mown Speke to-gederys alone!"

whanne that the devel herde hire so seyn,
Thanne was the schrewe jn joye, ful pleyn,
and wiste wel be hire answeyng

that sche scholde hoppen vppon hys ryng.

whanne this womman from thens was past,
this damysele bethowghte hire atte last

often-tymes of hire wordis, pleyn,

that prevely betwenes hem gonne they seyn.

and whanne the devel vndirstod openly

that to-gyderis scholden they speken prevely,

thanne sette he this maydenis herte on fyre

after this womman more to desire;

that so ferforth, as j 3ow seye,

atte laste sche beheld hire fayre Bodye,

and to hire-Self thus gan sche talke,

alone as sche jn hire chambre gan walke :

"Ful trewly me this good womman tolde

that this Faire Body lost ben Scholde!"

368 bids the
woman to
leave for the
time.

372 The devil,
however, is
now sure of
success.

376 The girl
muses on the
woman's
words,

380

384 and finishes
by thinking
that she is
right.

388

Thanne after hire sche sente vppon a day,
and thus to hire anon gan sche say :

"Certes, ful trowe now j it fynde,

that my soster to me Js vnkynde."

"that knew j, damysele, tho ful wel,

lyk as j 3ow tolde Everydel,

and lasse be 3ow wile sche sette,

For sche fareth Every Day bette and bette.

for sche lyveth as sche liketh Best,

whiche is to 3ow nethir Ese ne Rest,

and 3e ben ordeygned for mannes kende,

and therto ben 3e bothe good and hende."

thanne seide this damysele anon agayn :

"that joye wolde j hauen fulfayn ;

3if that j wiste not To ben ded,

J scholde concenten to 3oure red."

She then
sends for the
woman,

392 who renews
her provok-
ing

396 [leaf 90 b]

and tempting
speeches.

400

The girl asks
again

404

- " J sey 3ow, damysele, *with-owten* dwere,
 and 3e don as dyde 3oure soster dere,
 ded moste 3e thanne Nedlynges be,
 but and 3e welen werken aftyr me." 408
- for that
 means of safe
 indulgence
 of lust.
 "leve dame, thanne how Scholde J do
 my lust to haue, and they not me Slo?"
 thanne this Bawde answerid hire agayn :
- At length she
 is told :
 " J schal 3ow tellen, Jn certayn : 412
 3e scholen 3ow maken as 3e weren wroth,
 and that 3owre sostres compenye is 3ow loth,
 "Be a
 prostitute!"
 and perfore graunteth to alle men buxom to be
 and to leden 3oure lyf jn lechere ; 416
 thanne hath there powere non justyse
 3ow forto putten to non jewyse,
 and thus al 3oure lust scholen 3e haue
 and from alle peryles to ben Save. 420
 3it thanne myhte there comen som good man,
 that for 3oure erytage wolde wedden [3ow] than."
- She follows
 the advice,
 stealing
 away from
 home.
 Thanne thus behylte 3e hire forto don,
 and from hire Soster sche stal anon, 424
 and bond hire a comown womman to be,
 be counseil of that womman, Sikerle.
- Ful mochel joye made the devel thanne,
 whanne he hadde thus geten this wommanne. 428
 and whanne the eldest Sostyr knew of this,
 that thus hire Soster hadde don amys,
 anon wente sche to this good man tho,
 that tofore tymes here creaunce tawhte hem so, 432
 with sory herte and weping chere.
 Anon this goodman axede what hire were,
 and of hire hadde ful gret pyte,
 & to hire thanne anon Seyde he : 436
 "blesse the jn the Name of the Trenite,
 and telle me now what eylleth the."
 "ha, Sire," sche Seide, " J am ful wo !
 my soster from me js now a-go, 440
- and tells of
 her fresh
 misery.

422. MS. *weddē than*; cf. l. 522.436. *Thanne*, *r* through correction.

and is becomen a comown womman.

ful wo for hire am j now than !”

whanne that this goodman herde of this,

Ful sory he was and wroth, j-wys,

and seide : “The devel nyl not belynnē,

tyl that he haue 3ow alle jn his gynne,

but 3if that god now be thy wardeyn,

J seye 3ow, damysele, jn certeyn.”

“Now, leve Sire, how scholde j do

That Fals thef to kepen me fro ?”

thanne seide to hire this good man anon :

“J schal 3ow telle how 3e schole don.

3if that thou wylt don aftyr me,

he ne schal neuere deceyven the.”

“Now certes,” quod this damysele a-geyn,

“aftyr 3ow wyl j don, Jn certeyn,

what so evere 3e bydde me do,

whethir it torne me to wele o^{per} wo.”

“belevest þou not on fadyr & sone & holigost,

thre persones and on god of myhtes most,

and that crist amonges vs cam here

For mannes sowle, that he bowhte so dere,

and alle synneris to saven also

That his comawndement Wolden do,

and beleven as holy chirche,

and as good cristen folk to wirche ?”

thanne answerid this damysele ageyn :

“J wil beleven as 3e wyle seyn ;

and as wisly as on god j be-leve,

so from alle tormentis he mot me meve !”

“thanne more over J charge the

that jn non wyse wroth that thou be ;

For that is on of the moste thing

wherthorwgh the devel doth his werkyng.

and loke thow love god over alle thyng

and thy Neyghbour *with*-owten grochheng.

& so be that governaunce

þou myht the kepe from alle mischawnse.

444 The hermit,
grieved and
indignant,

448

452

gives her
advice how
now to
protect
herself, at
least, from
the devil :

456

460

she must
have the
right faith,

464

[leaf 90 c]

468

and act as
a good
Christian ;

472

she must
beware of
anger,

476

and, in true
love of God
and neigh-
bours,

451. Erasures after *hire* and *good* ; the *M* came out of the muddle apparently with four downstrokes.

keep herself free from all guilt;	and loke that cowpable nevere thou be azens thy god Jn non manere degre, but that thou plese hym vtterly and alle the seintes of hevene generally, That loven god and his Servise ; loke thow hem love jn alle wyse.	480 484
she must bless herself in rising and before going to bed,	and loke, Eche tyme that thou dost Ryse, that thou þe blesse be ony wyse, and also that thow blesse the Every nyht, Er that thou jn thy Bed lye down ryht, jn the name of the Fadyr and sone and þe holygost, which that is on god and of myhtes most.	488
making the sign of the cross,	and with that loke thou make a cros on the, Jn memorye that he deyde vppon the tre vs for to beyen from the peynes of helle. loke thou do thus as j the telle ! and of that enemy haue thow neuere non drede, where euere thow be Jn ony stede ;	492 496
and have a light burning in the night.	and where so Ewere thow lye on nyht, Loke be ony weyes that thou have lyht, For there as lyht is, he ne wyl not be, For lyht hateth he most, ful Sekerle !”	500

Thus this holy man tawhte this mayde,
that gret drede hadde, as j have 3ow sayde,
lest that the devel hire Scholde be-gyle.

The girl goes home, and follows the hermit's in- structions.	thus wente sche hom with-jinne a whille Jn ful beleve ful stedfastly and to hire neyghbours ful mek and lowly ; also Ewere hire god hadde sche jn mynde, that so to god and to þe peple was sche good & kende.	504
She is re- minded, by her neigh- bours, of her family troubles,	the goode men and the goode Wyves of that contre often to that mayden comen, ful Sekerle, and thus to hire thanne gonnen they saye : “ Jt Nis non wondyr thowgh 3e han Fraye of the torment that is 3ow befallē of 3oure Fadyr & modyr and frendis alle, whiche that 3owre brothir and Sostren were.	509 512

486. þe squeezed in afterwards.

488. *E* through correction.495. *of* added above the line.505. MS. *fulbeleve*.

- here misaventure, it is to 3ow gret dere, 516 and of her
 but that 3e take now som good counsaile ; own position
 For ful riche 3e ben and of ful gret availle,
 and worthy 3e ben of erytage,
 that Som man that is of hygh parage, 520
 that fulfayn he wolde be
 3ow wedden to wyve, ful Sykerle.”
 thanne seide this maiden to hem anon ryht :
 “Me governe and kepe god, þat is most of myht, 524 In prayers
 and jn his Servise me governe & kepe to God,
 at alle tymes, whethir j wake oþer slepe !”
 and thus tweyne 3er lyvede sche fully,
 That of hire power neuere hadde the fals enemy, 528 she keeps off
 Ne he myhte nevere Jn non Degre the devil for
 hire Fynden Jn non adversite. [leaf 90 d]
- And whanne he Sawhe that he ne myhte
 that mayden engynen be day ne nyhte, 532 But then the
 Nether maken hire to forȝeten jn non degre devil, thus
 that the goodman tawht hire, ful Sykerle balked,
 (For wroth wolde sche ben jn non manere
 Ne lyhtles, where so that evere sche were), 536
 thanne to hire Soster he wente anon,
 and to this goode mayden dyde hire to gon
 vppon a satirday, whanne it was eve
 (tyl sche was forthe, he Nolde not leve), 540 contrives to
 hire Soster Jn anger Forto brynge, send her
 þat he on hire myhte werken his engynenge. fallen sister
 So that hire Soster thider went to her, of a
 & with hire many knaves, verament. 544 Saturday
 thanne seide this maiden jn this manere : night,
 “A, leeve Soster, what do 3e here, .
 3e forto comen jn Swich degre,
 and with 3ow to bryngen swich compeyne ? 548
 Jt schal me maken blame to have,
 and þat Nedeth me not, so god me saue !”

517. *counsaile*, a corrected from *e* ; cf. the footnotes to ll. 2051, 3531, 5707, 5855, etc.

522-524. *wedden*, *seide*, *govern* partly blotted.

528. *neuere* added above the line.

530. *adversite*, *d* corrected from *v*. 547. *3e* on erasure.

548. *3ow* added above the line.

She is ac-
cused, by
her, of for-
bidden inter-
course with
the hermit,

flies into a
rage,
has a tussle
with the
disturbers,

rushes into
her chamber,
locks her
door,

flings herself
on the bed,

and forgets,
in her emo-
tion and
grief,

all about
blessing and
light.

thane spak this cursed damysele ageyn :
 “ thow lyvest moche wers than j, jn certeyn ! ” 552
 and bar hire good soster on hande vppon
 that jn folye sche lovede that holy man.
 “ and 3if that the peple it wiste, Sekerlye,
 anon wolden they the distroye ! ” 556
 and whanne this maide herde hire so seyn,
 be bothe scholdres sche took hire, ful pleyn,
 and wolde han put hire owt at the 3ate,
 but that hire knaues wolde hire not late, 560
 but setten hand on this good maiden anon,
 and hire to-beten bothe bak an bon,
 Tyl atte laste sche brak hem fro,
 & jnto hire chambre sche gan to go, 564
 and schitte the dore faste hire vppon,
 and so there-jinne dwelde al alon.
 & non more peple with hire gan dwelle
 but a man and a maide, as j 3ow telle, 568
 and for hem nolden they not Spare,
 but diden this goode womman moche care.
 this maiden alone jn hire chambre was,
 and ful mochel mone made jn that plas, 572
 and wept and sorwede mochel of the nyht,
 so that jn hire clothes sche leide hire down Ryht.
 Anon as this enemy this gan aspye,
 that sche was so angry vtterlye, 576
 thanne made he bothe joye and game,
 whiche torned this maiden to mochel blame.
 Thanne of gret deol this maide hire thowhte,
 So that of hire-self but litel sche rowhte. 580
 sche hire remembrid of Fadyr and modyr bothe,
 and of hire brother and Sostren, forsothe,
 and of that grete aventure,
 So was sche Sorweful, J 3ow ensure. 584
 and thus jn morneng and wrathe sche fyl jn slepe,
 and al the goodmannes lore sche for3ete :
 bothe of hire blessing and Ek of lyht
 sche clene for3at that jlke nyht. 588

564. MS. *his* for *hir*' ; cf. the footnotes to ll. 147, 320, 948, 4648.
 582, 586. *of, lore* added above the line.

thanne was the delvel ful of joye,		The devil,
and thowhte fulsone hire to anoye.		
"now," <i>quod</i> the delvel, "tyme it is,		seizing the opportunity,
For sche hath forȝeten hire lore, j-wys,	592	
Bothe mynde of god and of Hire maister Also,		[leaf 91 a]
therefore it is hygh tyme that j now go.		
Now myhten we wel don owre dever,		
Owre man to putten <i>with-junen</i> hire her."	596	
Anon this delvel that hadde Swich myht		
<i>with womme</i> [n] To compenyen bothe day & Nyht,		
To this goode maiden wente he anon,		defiles her in her sleep.
and redy hym made that dede to don,	600	
and on hire he engendred, as j ȝow telle,		
a merveillous child ful schortly and snelle.		
Anon as that maiden conceyved was,		
the delvel hym wente owt of that plas ;	604	
and that mayden tho awook anon,		On awaken-
whanne that the delvel hadde thus j-don.		ing, immedi-
and evene Jn hire awakyng		ately after,
this goodman hadde sche Jn remembryng,	608	
and took vp hire hond and gan hire to blesse,		
& seide : "o seinte marye, what is thisse ?		she discovers
and what maner of thing Js me betyd,		her disgrace,
Sethen that j leide me vppon my bed ?	612	
me thenkyth, apeyred welsore am J,		
Sethen j me here leyde, ful trewly.		
wherfore, blessid lady, j preye to the,		prays to the
So that to thy sone thow preye for me,	616	Virgin,
that on me he wolde haven pyte		
and from the fals enemy defenden me."		
thanne, whanne sche hadde don this dede,		
vpe sche ros owt of that stede,	620	and gets up
and wende han fownden that Jche wyht		to look for
that hire so hadde deceyved thike nyht.		the perpe-
So that to hire chamberdore sche wente anon,		trator.
and it fond fast schet & not vndon,	624	Finding the
lyk as sche hadde schet yt to-fore,		door still
and non wyht ne fond sche thore.		locked,

598. MS. *wōmc.*

and the room empty,	thanne further to serche cam jn hire thowht, but al that avayllede thanne hire ryht nowht.	628
she under- stands that it must have been the dêvil.	thanne cam jt jn hire mynde anon that the enemy hire hadde ouergon. thanne ful mochel sorwe gan sche make, whanne that verraylly sche gan wake. sche besowhte god with humble chere that jn this world neuere schamed sche were.	632
At daybreak, when the in- truders have left,	and whanne it was the lyht of day, the devel hire Soster thanne ladde away, For sche hadde wel j-sped hire arende, wherfore thedyr he gan hire sende. and whanne that hire Soſtir thens was gon,	636
she unlocks her door, sends for two women,	owt of hire chambre sche cam anon, and cleped hire Servaunt ful hastelye, and bad hym faste to hire hye. thanne thus to hym tho gan sche telle :	640
	" Go jnto towne, and not ne dwelle, and bidde swiche two wommen to me hye, & that they to me comen hastelye ! "	644
	Anon as they comen bothe jn fere, thanne hem cowde sche maken non chere, but Evene with hem took the ryhte weye To hire confessour, alle thre, jn feye.	648
and goes with them to the hermit,	and whanne hire confessour hire gan beholde, Jn his herte he merveilled many folde, and to that womman thanne gan he to say :	652
who is sur- prised at the sight of her.	" hyderward the aryveth som gret affray." thanne seide this womman to hym aȝe :	656
	" Sire, j trowe that it may ful wel be, For me Js be-falle A destyne That neuere fyl to womman but to me, and am J here comen to ȝow Som good cownseille to taken of ȝow.	660
After re- minding him of his pro- mises of forgiveness	For toforn tymes han ȝe me told, thowgh a body Jn synne were neuer so bold, and he be schreven, and repente also,	

643. *tho* over struck-out *thanne*.650. *thre*, *r* corrected from *e*.

and don the penaunce that longeth *perto*,
 his Synnes for³oven to hym scholen be ;
 Thus tolde *3e* me, Sire, ful Sykerle.
 Sire, J haue Synned and that ryht sore,
 as j haue told *3ow* ferst before,
 For the Enemy hath deceyved me,
 as J schal *3ow* tellen, ful seker[*l*]e.
 Jt happed, my Soster cam me vnto,
 and me wrowhte bothe care & wo,
 and how that sche wraththed me ful jlle,
 tyl that to my chambre j wente vntylle
 al ful wroth and of hevy chere,
 and faste my dore J schette there.
 and for the grete wraththe that j am jnne,
 me forto blessen J gan to blynne,
 and for³at what J scholde do,
 which aftyr torned me to mochel wo.
 and whanne that J of my Sleepe awook,
 and remembraunce to me took,
 thanne fond J that defowlyd J was,
 and my maydenhot aweye Jn that plas.
 thanne serched j my chambre al abowte,
 and non wyht ne fond, with-owten dowte,
 ne wiste ho it hadde me do,
 From that owr *3it* hider-to.
 And, Sire, al thus engnyed am J,
 wherfore to God and *3ow* J crye *mercy*,
 that thowgh my body J-tormentyd be,
3it that my sowle be not lost Jn non *degre*.”
 thanne herkened this good man everydel
 al that to hym sche seyde, ful wel,
 but he beleved it non thyng,
 For, Sekyr, he held it for a lesing,
 For he ne herde nevere to-fore
 of swich a thing speken, sethen he was bore.
 thanne answerid hire this good man agayn :
 “ Ful of the devel thou art, ful pleyn,
 and the devel js fer with-Jnne the.

664 for those who
repent and
do penance,

668 she acknow-
ledges that
she has
sinned

672
by being
angry

676

and forget-
ful,

680 which has led
to her being
disgraced

684

688 by an un-
known
creature.

692

The hermit,
incredulous,

696

700 rebukes her,

- and says that confession and penance are not for liars.
- how scholdest thou thanne confessed be
 other ony penaunce of me take,
 whanne swiche lesinges þou dost me make? 704
 owther how scholde j ȝeven the ony penaunce,
 whanne j knowe wel thou makest variawnce?
 For jn that degre was neuere womman jnto this day
 From hire hire maydenhot taken away, 708
 but ȝif sche knew, Felte, other Sye,
 ho that it hadde don, Sekerlye.
 and thou makest me to beleve
 Swich a thing as thou myht not preve." 712
- But the girl protests she has told the truth.
- Thanne answerid this womman ageyn
 and seide: "So god haue part on me, pleyn,
 and also kepe my body from torment,
 as trowthe j haue Seid ȝow, verament." 716
- The hermit then
- thanne answerid this good man to hire tho:
 "And it be lyk as thou seyst me vnto,
 thou schalt wel knowen, and j Jn fere,
 Er that come fulliche the ende of þe ȝere. 720
- lets her atone for her disobedience
- But thou hast broken thin obedyence,
 and aȝens me don ful gret defense,
 And broken my comaundement
 that J comanded the, verament; 724
 Wherfore penaunce thou schalt haue
 Jn amendement thy Sowle to Save:
 Every fryday thou most Faste
 and to the taken but on repaste. 728
- by fasting,
- & Jn manere that thou luxvre hast do,
 which that myn herte Nyl not concenten therto,
 how scholde [j] þanne ony penaunce leyn on the,
 but that j knew the certeynte? 732
- for her incredible commerce
- For it were to lytel, al dayes of thy lyve
 ȝif that algates J scholde the Schryve."
 thanne seide this woman to hym ageyn:
 "what evere ȝe me chargen, Jn certeyn, 736
 J schal it don with ful good wylle,
 what so Evere to me ȝe putten vntylle."
 thanne seide this goodman to hire ageyn:
- (fully resigned as she is)

“To goddis mercy thou takest the, pleyn, 740 by perfect
 and axest cownseyl of holy chirche, devotion to
 only goddis comaundement forto wirche, God and His
 and hym to worschepen with al thy myht Holy Church.
 that azens the devel for the gan fyht, 744
 and bowht the with his precious blood,
 and for the deyde vppon the rood.
 thow seist that thou art ful of repentaunce
 and forsakest alle Lecherie, with-owten variaunce, 748 He questions
 and that thou neuere dedist amys, her once
 but as jn thy sleepe behapped the this more,
 wherfrom non wyht may hem defende,
 but that 3if god the bettere grace hem sende ? ” 752
 and vppon this, chast sche gan hire swere,
 and to him seide, 3if it so were,
 To-Forn god hire borwgh to be,
 that sche be not dampned jn non degre— 756
 “For this Synne that j haue do,
 owt of this world whanne j go fro.”

Thus hire penaunce Resceyved sche thanne,
 that vppon hire leyde this good manne, 760
 and resceyved it ful humbly,
 as sche that for hire Synnes was sorry.
 tho this goodman hire blessed anon,
 and forward with hire he gan to gon. 764 The hermit
 “and algates in the love of jesu crist then blesses
 loke thou evere more that thou tryst ! ” her,
 So that he ladde hire forth be the hond
 To the haly water stope, J vndirstond, 768 takes her to
 and dide hire drynken per-offen, þat he myhte se, the Holy
 a gret drawht jn the name of the trenite, Water,
 and holy water caste vppon hire there,
 and bad hire not forȝeten jn non manere— 772 repeats his
 “al that j have now comanded the, command-
 loke thou it do, where so thou be. ments,
 and whanne thou hast ony nede of me,
 here schalt thou me fynden, ful Sykerle ! ” 776

744. MS. *forthe* ; thus often.746. *deyde*, the first *e* through correction.

	and ȝit he Enjoyned hire more over tho alle þe good dedis that sche scholde do, and thus he be-tawht hire to god almyht, and hom aȝen sche wente anon ryht.	780
and sends her home.	thanne, whanne the devel aspide al this, and that his pray he scholde thus mis, thanne was the cursede schrewe wondir wroth, that he to hire was thanne so loth.	784
The devil rages.	So dwelled sche there two monthes oþer thre, and ful holy lif ladde, ful Sekerle, Tyl that sche gan to barnysche ryht faste, And Was Aspided Atte laste,	788
After two months,	where-offen hire Frendes angred ful sore, and so dyde sche ȝit wel more, & seyde : "so god haue mercy on me, J ne kan not weten how it scholde be."	792
her condition is noticed. [leaf 91 d]	thanne seiden hire Frendis to hire tho : "why, han there so many men knowen ȝow so, that ȝe ne weten hos Jt is? now mafey, thanne this goth amys!"	796
Before friends and relations,	"thazne preye j god that j neuere deliuered be, ȝif j knew Ewere of manes compeyne, othyr Ewere wyste of this aventure, how to me jt is comen, j ȝow Ensure."	800
she protests her inno- cence	thanne hire Frendis blessid hem Echon, and to hire they seyden anon : "this thyng ne mylhte neuere be be ȝow ne be non womman, Sikirle. but on him, j trowe, ȝe troste, that he ȝow Excusen moste ; But, Jn Sekyr, Jt wele not be, werfore vs sore Repentyth, Sekyrle ;	804
time after time,	For also sone as the jvge it wot, anon, with-owten Faille, deyen ȝe mot."	808
but they dis- believe her,		
and point out her sure fate.		

Thanne, whanne this woman herde this,
Ful sore dismayed Jt was, J-wys,
and seyde : "So god of my Sowle haue mercy,

812

- J neuere ne knew ne sawh that mannes body
 that me hath don this jlke dede,
 as jn alle my werkis so god me spede!" 816
 thanne wenten hire frendis from hire anon,
 and for a fool these wommen helden hire Echon.
 "Now certes, fowle loste is 3oure bewte,
 that thus han jt lost jn Swiche degre!" 820
 whanne that sche herde these wommen thus speke,
 anon to hire confessour gan sche to reke,
 and tolde hym of this wommans answee,
 as that to hire sche hadde Seyde Ere. 824
 anon as this good man Sawh that sche
 Qwyk with childe was, certeinle,
 and mochel he merveilled of this chaunce,
 & anon axede hire of that penaunce— 828
 "that to-forn tyme the joyned j for this,
 hast thou it don?" "3e, leve Sire, j-wis,
 that haue j don, Syre, with-owten faille!"
 "but cam he evere sethen, the owht to asaille;" 832
 owthir trespacedest þou euere ony more,
 but only that thou hast told me be-fore,
 Ne neuere but onys jt cam to the?"
 "No, so me good helpe, Sire, Sikerle!" 836

- Whanne that the goodman herde hire thus telle
 Of this aventure, how it befelle,
 anon a book he took to hym tho,
 and þis mater jn Scripture he let thrynne do. 840
 "Now be 3e Sewr what j schal say :
 anon as this child is born, jn fay,
 of on thing j schal knowe, certeyn :
 3if þat ony tale 3e han tolde me jn veyn. 844
 and 3if to me 3e han mad a lesyng,
 Ful Siker 3e ben of 3oure hyndryng ;
 and 3if to me the sothe han 3e told,
 Jt schal 3ow helpen many fold, 848
 For thanne ful Syker mown 3e ben
 that 3e scholen nethir deth felen ne sen.
 but 3it gret drede 3e mown hanen a throwe,
 For anon as the justice doth it knowe, 852

When she
perseveres,

they consider
her a fool,

The afflicted
woman re-
pairs to the
hermit,

who asks
about her
penance,

and whether
the devil has
annoyed her
again.

The hermit
takes a book,
and writes
down all
these things.

The truth, he
says, shall be
known at the
birth of the
child,

and accord-
ingly she
shall perish

or be saved.

[leaf 92 a] For the im- pending trial	<p>Anon they Welen to-gederys conseylle, and 3ow for-juggen for here avaylle, and seyn that ded scholen 3e be, For that 3e han trespaced Jn avowtre. 856</p>
he promises her his help,	<p>but that anon as they han 3ow take, doth me to wetene for 3owre owne sake, and j schal comen to 3ow jn Socowrenge, and god schal ben thanne 3oure helpinge ; 860</p> <p>For, Seker, 3e mown ben þerto bold, and it be as 3e han me told."</p>
and sends her home again.	<p>thanne seyde this good man to hire tho : "A3en to 3oure hows hom that 3e go, 864 and loke, good lif that 3e lede, For to a good ende jt wyle 3ow spede."</p>
When the judges are informed,	<p>and thus wente sche hom ageyn, as j 3ow sey nowe, Jn certeyn, 868 and ful benyngnely lyvede there, Tyl that it cam the justice to the ere. thanne comen [they] jnto the Same town onliche for this Wommannes Enchesown, 872 and þere sche was taken and to-forn hem browht, to weten 3if sche cowde excusen hire owht.</p>
and imprison her,	<p>Whanne sche was taken and jn þreson don, sche sent aftyr this good man anon, 876 and he thedyr cam jn ful gret hye, as faste as [he] myht gon, Sekerlye ; and thider cam he Neuere so sone, that to-foren the justice sche was browht anone. 880</p>
the hermit speaks with them,	<p>The justices clepeden this good man, and tolden hym how that sche seide than, For sche hem tolde, ful certeynly, that sche knew nevere of mannes compeny. 884 "Trowe 3e," quod the justice thanne, "that this myhte ben with-owten feleschepe of manne ?" thanne seide to hem this goodman ageyn : "j sey not that j thenke now, jn certeyn, 888</p>

853. The last word was miswritten, blotted out, and written once more. 866. MS. *fforto*.

871. *thāne* corrected from *and* ; the pronoun omitted.

878. MS. *as myht*.

- but and 3e welen don aftyr me,
 at this tyme juged schal sche not be,
 Neþer not as longe as gret sche Js,
 3if that 3e wele don be myn avys. 892
 For it were Neyther Skele ne Resown
 To putten that child to ony distrocciown,
 that neuere jn non wyse deservyd the ded,
 3if owghtes that 3e welen don be my Red." 896
 "Syre, we scholen don as we 3ow say :
 aftyr 3ow we scholen werken this day."
 "3if that 3e welen werken aftyr me,"
 quod this goodman thanne, "Sykirle, 900
 jnto a strong warde scholen 3e hire putte,
 and strong lokes vppon hire Schette,
 and putte hire jnto a strong towr,
 and *with* hire tweyne wommen for hire honour, 904
 hire forto helpen at hire deliuerance
 and hire to socowren jn that chawnce ;
 and that owt from hire mown they not gon,
 No more thanne sche may from hem don ; 908
 and that they there to-gederis be,
 tyl that child be born ful vtterle,
 and tyl that it may it somewhat Susteyne ;
 this js my reed, j sey 3ow certaygne. 912
 thanne scholen 3e knowen and sen more thing
 thanne 3e owht knowen at this begynneng,
 and forjuggen mown 3e thanne this wommanne
 as lyk that 3e fynden resown thanne. 916
 This js my conseilte, and 3e welen it do,
 And 3if not 3e Wylen, J parte 3ow fro."
 thus wrowhten they thanne al jn fere
 aftyr that goodmannes counseyl there, 920
 and putten hire jn-to [a] strong towr,
 & *with* hire tweyne wommen for hire honour,
 Swich as to mester scholde be
 That longeth to wommans parturite, 924
 and a Fenestre open be enchosown
 here vyaundes to taken bothe vpe & down,

and advises
 them to put
 off her trial,

for the inno-
 cent child's
 sake,

letting her
 stay in a
 strong tower,

with two
 women to
 attend her,

till the child
 shall be born
 and be strong
 enough.

[leaf 92 b]

The judges
 follow his
 advice.

	and what Necessaryes hem belonged also, vpe at that wyndowe to hem taken tho.	928
	and whanne that thus be this goodmannes conseil jn the towr they weren browlit, Sawns faille, thanne spak this good man to hem jn hy, and to this damysele he seide, trewly :	932
The hermit recommends immediate baptism,	“Loke that anon as thou delyveryd be, that faste jt be crystened & smartle ; and to-fore the justice whanne þou schalt go, Loke anon that thou sende me vnto.”	936
and a mes- sage to be sent to him before the trial.	and thus jn the towr abod sche there, tyl sche was deliuered jn hard manere, and was deliuered of a knave child, that was bothen vnlovely & vn-myld.	940
A male child is born,	and whanne this child was j-bore, they merveiliden gretly that weren thore, For it hadde bothe wyt and knowenge aftyr the schrewed fadris engendrynge.	944
ugly and rough,	but, for the devel wrowhte so falsly, God to his Eys hath taken jt, trewly, thorwgh the modris verray repentaunce, and for fulfylleng of hire penance,	948
with its father's wits,	and for hire good beleve jn holy chirche, and for the goode dedis that sche dyde wirche, for that cawse nolde god jn non degre that the devel with hym meddelid, Sikirle.	952
but destined to be a sery- ant of God on account of its mother's repentance,	and ȝit the devel mad his engendryng, For that of al thinges he scholde haue knowyng, bothe þat js to comen and that js gon, For many merveilles he thoughte be hym to don.	956
good deeds,	but oure lord knew the repentance Of his modyr, with-owten variaunce, and wiste ful wel that aȝens hire wille that this aventure cam hire vntylle.	960
and inno- cence of the whole thing.	For the goode lord knew ful wel that be hire wil sche synnede neuere a del, and hym graunted bothe wit and knowenge Of many thinges that weren comenge ;	964

931. MS. *an hy*. 948. *hir'* corrected from *his*.955. *ād* corrected afterwards from *an*.

thus wolde god that he scholde knowe
of manye thinges vppon a rowe.

For ȝif goddis wille it hadde j-be,
the devel schold han had his partye
and to god ȝelden that was his ryht,
but that it likede to this lord of myht
hym to taken jnto his power
and holych owt of the develis daunger.

968 Otherwise the
devil would
have had his
share in the
child.

972

Thus was there thanne this child j-bore,
of wheche these wommen dreden sore,
For more Rowghere that child it was
thanne Ewere they Syen jn ony plas.
they schewed it thanne to þe modyr anon,
sche took vpe hire hond and blessed hire thusson,
and Seyde anon: "so Crist me Spede,
For this child haue J gret drede."

976 The women
in attendance
are fright-
ened at the
sight of the
infant.

980 So is the
mother.

[leaf 92 c]

Thanne seyden to Hyre these Wommen A-geyn:
"So for hym schalt thou suffren ful gret peyn."

thanne comanded the modir there
down it to leten Jn alle manere—
"and that j-cristened anon it be,
thus j ȝow preye for charyte."
thanne axeden these wommen of hire anon
what name they scholden leyn hym vppon.

984 She has him
christened
at once,

988

.
.

anon leten they down this child there,
and that anon j-cristened it were,
and that jt named scholde j-be
after his grauntfadyr, ful sekerle,
whiche goodman that hyghte merlyne,
that the devel gan so Engyne.
and thus this child j-cristened was,
and deliuered aȝen to þe modris plas.

992 and calls him
by her
father's
name, Merlin.

996

Thanne thus the modyr gan hym norree,
tyl ten mounthes old he was, Sekerle;
and with-jnne tho x mounthes he was so bold,

The child
grows very
fast.

968. *party*, *y* corrected from *e*.

999. *mounthes* afterwards crossed out and replaced by *dayes*.

	that thyke tyme he semede two ȝeres old.	1000
After 18 months the attendants want to go home,	and whanne xvij mounthes weren fullliche j-past, To the modyr seiden thes wommen jn hast :	
	“dame, fulfayn wolde we hennes ben and to owre owne place hom gon aȝen,	1004
	For certein thinges we han to do ; Sykerly, dame, we wylen the fro.”	
	thanne spak aȝen the modyr anon :	
but are persuaded to stay yet for a while.	“ȝif it so be, ȝe from me gon, anon be jugement j schal ben ded, For j ne knowe non other red.”	1008
	thanne wepte this modyr and made sory chere, and preyde hem <i>with</i> hire abyden ȝit there.	1012
	thanne ȝit styлле they gonne abyde, and to a prevy wyndowe wente þat tyde. and the modir this child gan beholde,	
The mother weepingly says to the child in her arms	& there jn hire armes sche gan it folde ; Anon ful tendirly wepte sche thanne, & thus sche seide to this ȝong manne :	1016
	“a, Faire sone,” quod sche thanne tho,	
that she must die for its sake,	“for the moste j suffre bothe deth & wo, and to me ben j-put ful mochel hard peyne, the wheche is wrong, god wot certeyne. For there nis non man, but god alone, that whot how this cause doth gone ;	1020
	but this non man wil beleven, certeinle, wherfore j moste nedis ded now be, and thus <i>with</i> gret wrong j schal suffre ded.”	1024
as nobody believes her.	Sore wepyng thus seide sche jn that sted.	1028
	And as the modyr this mone gan make, hire sone on hire lokede <i>with</i> Eyn so blake, and seide : “modir, dismaye the nowht, for fore me schalt þou neuere to deth be browht.”	1032
The child says she shall not.	whanne that the modyr herde hym so speke, For drede sche let it owt of hire armes reke, so that for drede the child fyl a-down, and gan to cryen with a gret Sown.	1036
In her fright, she drops it; the child cries, the women rush thither.	thanne comen anon these wommen, certayn,	

and wenden, the modyr the child wolde han slayn,
and they axeden hire, why the child ferde so.

“for, sekerly, j was neuere so wo,

1040 The mother
tells them of
all,

Nethere j ne hadde neuere so gret fere ;

That made hym fallen owt of myn armes here,

and that made hym so lowde to crye.

But of A merveyl J sey 3ow, sekerlye,

1044 [leaf 92 d]

that this child hath spoken to me ;

that the
child has
spoken,

3e wolde han wondred hit forto han se !”

“what, spak thanne he the vnto ?”

“3e, sekerly, now dyde he so.”

1048

“what seide he thanne ? telle vs now here.”

“that Schal j doon with ryht good chere ;

and what it
has said,

he seide j scholde neuere ded for hym be ;

thus he me Seyde, ful Sykerle.”

1052

“but Seyde he ony othir thing ?”

“Nay, forsothe, with-owten lesyng.”

thanne gonne they the child to kyssen and brase,

3if it to hem wolde speken jn that plase ;

1056 They then
try to make
it speak to
them also,
but in vain.

but non word of him ne cowde they gete,

though they him kyste neuere so swete.

but on a day 3e modir calde hem hire vnto,

and thus to hem sche seide tho :

1060 Later on, the
mother ad-
vises them
to speak, in
her son's
presence, of
her death
for his sake.

“manase 3e me for hym vppon a day,

and to hym make som gret afray,

and seith that for hym j schal be brent,

be stoned to dethe and al j-schent.”

1064

For the modyr desirede ful sore

That to-form hem wolde he speken thore.

So they do,

“a ful gret rowthe it is of the,”

Seiden these wommen, “ful sekerle,

1068

that so fair a body as thou art on,

of hyde, of hewe, of flesch & bon,

that thou schalt for this fowle thing

ben browht so sone to a fowl endyng.

1072

bettyr it hadde have neuere be bore

thanne thy faire body for hym scholde be lore.”

“Now certes,” quod this merlyne tho,

and Merlin
speaks
angrily.

1047. *he* added above the line. 1057. MS. *hem*.

1059. *modir* added above the line. 1061. MS. *hyn*.

- “ 3e lyen, false schrewes, bothe two,
 of that 3e han my modyr told,
 for þerto schal neuere man be so bold.”
 and whanne they syen hym so on take,
 For drede and sorwe they goune to qwake,
 and seiden : “ This ne may non child be :
 Jt is the deuel, ful Sykirle.
 that we han seid, doth it vs here telle ;
 we supposen, it be a deuel of helle.”
 thanne aposid they him of wordis mo,
 and thus to hem he Seide vnto :
 “ 3e han don wel moche more Synne
 thanne my modyr, that is here *with-june*.”
 Anon they mervyllled mochel more,
 that he cowde tellen thinges, weren don to-fore.
 “ we schole gon tellen to hem that be-xethe be,
 how this child doth Speken, Sekyrle.”
 thanne to this wyndowe comen they anone,
 and cleped the peple to hem fulsone,
 and tolden how þat the child spak there,
 & howgh that he seyde and ju what manere.
 thussonne so wyde this tydyng sprong,
 that to the juggle it cam er owht long,
 where-offen he mervellede wondir sore,
 that ju swich maner the child spak thore.
 thanne bespak the justice anon :
 “ Now were it tyme, juggement to don ! ”
 and sente anon to that Jayller
 That ju the towre hem kepte ther,
 that at the ende of xl dawes
 to bringen hire forth to han hire lawes.
 whanne the modyr of merlyn herde this,
 That set was the day of hire, j-wys,
 Fvl mochel Sorwe made sche thanne,
 and sente anon aftryr this good manne,
 That Hire Was Wout to confessen before ;
 aftryr hym sente sche to comen to hire thore.
 Thus dwelke sche algates stille

They are
frightened,
and say he
must be a
devil.

He replies by
telling them
about their
secret sins.

They run to
the window,
and inform
the people.

The judge
hears about
it,

and fixes the
day for her
trial.

She sends for
the hermit.
[leaf 93 a]

the dayes of juggement to fulfille.

and whanne they weren past Everichon

except viij dayes, that weren not gon,

thanne lyvede sche jn sorwe and care,

and wiste neuere thanne how sche schold fare,

but that sche scholde brend j-be ;

sche knew non othir, ful Sykerle.

and al this tyme wente hire sone, jn feye,

abowte jn the towr and him gan to pleye.

thanne seiden these wommen to him anon :

“ Ful litel thenkest þou what is to don,

and how this wyke, ful Sikerle,

thy modir for the moste nedis brend j-be.”

Thanne be-spak merlyn anon

to his modir there thussonne :

“ Now, faire modyr, j 3ow praye,

For me non thing that 3e dismaye,

for there js non man on lyve here

that 3ow schal demen jn non manere,

Neþer neuere 3ow juggen to þe ded,

whiles that j lyve, jn non sted,

ne neuere non deth to suffren, j-wys,

Sauf onlich be god, that almyhty js.”

whanne the modyr vndirstood this,

thanne was sche ful of joye & blis,

and seide : “ this child moste nedis wys be,

Swich thynges to tellen now, Sykerle.”

thus bod sche tyl the same day

that to juggement scholde sche gon, jn fay,

that owt of the towr was sche do,

and the tweyne wommen with hire also,

and hire sone in hyre arm sche bar,

tyl to-fore the jugges that sche cam thar.

thanne the justice at that tyde

thike two women token beside,

and of hem axeden, with-owten lak,

3if it were soth that the child spak.

thanne tolden hem tho wommen verrayly

1116

During her
grief and
anguish,

1120

her son is
unconcerned.

1124

The women
reprove him.

1128

He tells his
mother again
not to be
afraid,

1132

1136

for she shall
not die.

1140

On the ap-
pointed day,

1144

1148

she appears
before the
judges, who
ask the
women if
the child
had really
spoken,

- and remark
that much
wisdom is
required to
save its
mother.
- how that he to hem Spak apertly. 1152
- thanne seide the jugge to hem ageyn :
- “ful mochel moste he konnen & knowen, certayn,
3if he schole owht his modyr Save,
mochel more konneng moste he have.” 1156
- and be this jlke same tyme,
as that it happede the owr of pryme,
- The hermit,
who has
arrived in
the mean-
time,
- this goodman to hire was comen ful ryht,
that hire thanne scholde cownceillen aryht. 1160
- thanne seide on of the jugges hire vnto :
- “hast þou ony cownseil, what wylt thou do ?
for martirdom thou most Suffren here ;
good cownseil to the now profyt were.” 1164
- thanne answerid this womman agayn :
- “with this good man wolde j speken fulfayn.”
and they hire 3oven leve therto.
- has a private
consultation
with his
confessant,
- so jnto a chambre they gonne to go, 1168
- and hire sone beleft with-owte
amonges the peple, a ful gret rowte ;
and with speche they gommen hym asaylle,
but lytel owther nowht it dyde avaylle. 1172
- and al this while that jt was so,
his modir hire confessour spak vnto.
& whanne sche hadde told hym al hire wylle,
- [leaf 93 b]
- Thanne spak the confessour Hire vntylle, 1176
- and axede hire 3if it certeyn were
that hire sone spak so there.
- during which
he also is as-
sured that
the child
has spoken.
- “3e, sire,” sche seide, “certeynly,
to me hath he spoken, ful verrayly.” 1180
- “Jn goddis Name,” quod this good man tho,
“j hope, som merveilles it wele tornen vnto.”
- She reap-
pears in
court,
- thanne comen they owt bothe jn fere,
and comen jnto place as þe jugges were, 1184
- and took hire child jn hire armes two,
ryht so to-fore the jugge sche gan to go.
thus stood sche to-form hem, certaygne.
- anon the jugge gan hire nefreyne, 1188
- and axede hire ho þat the fadyr were
of that child that sche held there.
- is asked
about her
child's father,
- thanne answerid the modyr with gret pite :

- “j wot not othir but ded to be ;
 but so god on my Sowle haue *mercy*,
 medlid j neuere with mannes compenye,
 ne neuere j wiste ho þat the fadyr was,
 neþer neuere knew j man jn that cas,
 ne neuere obeyed to non man, Sykerle,
 that sweche thinges scholde don by me.”
 “3e, 3e,” quod this justices tho,
 “we konnen not beleven that it is so
 as thou dost vs to vndirstonde ;
 Jt was neuere provid jn non londe.”
 thanne taken the jugges these wommen on side,
 and axeden 3if swich a thing myhte be-tyde,
 that a woman a child scholde bere
 whiche neuere jn mannes compeny ne were.
 thanne seiden they : “nay, ful sikyrle,
 with-owten mannes compenye it myhte not be.”
 Thanne seiden these jugges to hyre ageyn
 that—“ded nedys most 3e ben, certayn,
 for thus wommen seyn, trewely,
 that with-owten mannes compeny
 a child neuere scholdest thou have ;
 thus they me seyn, so god me save !”
 thanne owt of his modris armes stirt merlyne anon,
 and angerlich seide toforn hem echon :
 “that schalt þou Nevere, justice, bringen abowte,
 my modyr to brennen, with-owten dowte,
 For sche ne hath not deservid therto.
 and 3it more J schal sein the also,
 that 3if trewe jostice thou schost be
 To alle that han don avowtre
 with opere thanne with here lordis, certeyn,
 of mo thanne of two partes that is here pleyne,
 thow schost hem brennen al jn fere,
 more than twey partes of wommen that ben here.
 and my modyr was neuere 3it gylty
 with non man jn Swich maner of foly ;
 but swich a body as hire was take,

1192 and declares
that she
knows not.

1196

1200 The judges
say they
cannot
believe her,

1204 ask also the
two women
on the point,

1208 and declare
she must die.

1212

1216 Then Merlin
suddenly
intervenes.

1220 His mother
is guiltless,
he says,

1224 but more
than two-
thirds of the
women pres-
ent are
guilty.

1228

	sche hath forth browht with gret wrake. and, Sire justice, but thou leve me, axe this good man here openle."	1232
The hermit is asked, and testifies her inno- cence,	the justices axeden this goodman tho 3if it be—"as he seith vs vnto." "3e," quod this good man, "ful Sekerly, sche hath me told ful feithfully, ful often & with ful weping chere, that jn mannes compenye neuere sche were, but that welfowle encombred sche was with the fals enemy jn hire owne plas, hire thus encombrede jn slepyng ; And vppon my Sowle to taaken this thing. but jn alle my lyf here before herde j nevere of swich thing spoken ore." thanne spak merlyne azen ryht tho, and this goodman spak vnto : "3e han it don j-wreten Jn a book, my concepsiown, and 3e wyle lok, and þerby mown 3e ful wel knowe the lyveng of my modir al this throwe." "thou seist soth," quod this good man, "lytel wot thy modyr whens þat thou cam." thanne cleped they forth these two wommen, and axeden hem wheþer it were so then, & also enqwerede aftyr thengendrure and aftyr his birthe, j 3ow ensure. 3if that the goode holy mannes book and they acorden, they wylen look. So that these wommen and the book acordid wel, of the goodmannes wrytyng, Everydel. 3it thanne seide the justices tho, For this scholde sche be qwyte neuere the mo.	1236 1240 1244 1248 1252 1256 1260
the devil being the offender.		
[leaf 93 c]		
Merlin re- minds the hermit of the book.		
The women are ques- tioned,		
and their testimony agrees with the book.		
Yet the judges are not satisfied.		
Merlin, growing angry,	Thanne merlyn gan to wraththen hym Sore, and ful angerly to the justice spak thore : "J knowe moche Bettere my fadyr, Jn fay, thanne thou dost thyn, J dar wel Say,	1264

1239. *welfowle*, *w* through correction.1249. *3e* added above the line.

- and thy modyr knoweth bettere, certainly,
 ho that the be-gat, j telle þe feythfully,
 1268 Bettere thanne my modyr, j sey 3ow pleyn,
 For sche knew neuere my Fadyr, jn certeyn.
 and therfore, Sire Justice, J telle to the
 that thy modyr more worthy Js, brent to be,
 1272 For sche is fals to hire lord so dere,
 and so was neuere my modyr jn non manere."
 thanne was this justice wondyr angry tho,
 and thus to that child he Spak vnto :
 1276 "3if of my modir Swich thing thou konne seye,
 J schal the holden for trewe, jn feye."
 thanne seide merlyn a3en to hym there :
 "Ful wel knowe j thy modrys manere,
 1280 that moche more sche hath decerved to be ded
 thanne evere dyde my modyr jn ony sted.
 and but 3if thou fynde that j trewe seye,
 hardylich let ellis my modyr deye."
 1284 thanne seide the justyse to hym ageyn :
 "3if thou konne proven that thou seist pleyn,
 Thy modyr from brenneng schalt thou save,
 and al thyn owne axeng thou schalt have . . .
 1288 but natheles, and it be as thou dost telle,
 thanne schal j don brenne bothe ful snelle,
 bothe myn owne modyr and ek thyn,
 and Bryngen hem bothe to a schort fyn."
 1292 "that schal neuere lyn Jn thy powere
 my modyr to deth to putten here,
 whiles that thou lyvest here, ony threwe,
 For 3if nede be, mo Skiles j schal the Schewe."
 1296
- Thanne anon respyt gonnen they take
 For the justices modris Sake,
 xv dayes thanne next Sewenge,
 hire forto bringen to Rekenenge,
 1300 and diden hire seke bothe fer & nygh,
 To hire answeere to comen apertly.

brings an
accusation
against the
chief judge's
mother.

The irate
judge tells
him to prove
it, and his
mother shall
be free.

Merlin says
he can.

The judge
first renews
his promise,

then threat-
ens to burn
both the
mothers.

Merlin defies
him.

A summons
is sent to the
judge's
mother.

1268. *that*, *at* blurred. 1274. *so* added above the line.

1284. *modyr*, *r* on erasure.

1295. *threwe*, the first *e* corrected from *o*.

In the meantime, Merlin remains silent.

and jn the mene while they enqwered there
of that child Jn diuers manere, 1304

but neuere to hem wolde he speken non word,

Tyl the day cam of here acord,

and whanne this womman comen was,

[leaf 93 a]

The Justices modyr, Jnto that plas. 1308

On her arrival, Merlin is confronted with her before the people.

thus cam the justices modyr thedyr jn hye ;

thanne merlyn was after sent, trewlye,

owt of preson Jn hasty manere

to-forne the peple to comen there. 1312

thanne seide the justice to merlyn tho :

"lo, here my modir, that thou spoke offen so !"

He suggests more private proceedings, indoors.

thanne seyde the child to hym ageyn :

"thou ne art ful wys, j telle the pleyn ! 1316

Tak thy modyr jnto a chambre anon

and of thy beste frendes, and þedir 3e gon,

and þere to-foren 3ow J schal come

Jn excuseng of my modyr al & Some, 1320

which that knoweth god almyhty

and also hire confessour, ful sothfastly."

Nobody objects.

thanne abasched weren they Sore,

that they ne cowde Speken wordis no more. 1324

When in the room, Merlin puts some preliminary questions to the judge,

thanne seide merlyne to hem echon :

"3if j delyvere my modir of this cryme anon,

schal sche thanne ony more jn warde be

for 3ow oper for ony of this meyne?" 1328

thanne answerid the justice to hym ageyn :

"sche schal ben ful qwyt thanne, jn certayn."

thanne seide the justyce to merlyn tho :

"now sey to my modyr that thou kanst do, 1332

be whiche thy modir qwit scholde be ;

haue j-do, and sey on here to-fore ME !"

and indicates the connection of the two cases.

"j schal non thing vppon thy modyr seye

but that schal my modyr aqwytten, jn good feye. 1336

and 3if sche have forfeited wylling,

j wile that thou to deth hire bryng.

hast not thou enswred me

and also my modyr, ful certeinle, 1340

1315. MS. *juft* crossed out after *the*.

1320. *al*, *l* corrected from *c*.

ȝif j may hire delyveren here,
qwit to gon jn alle manere?"

"that is ful trewe," quod the justice,
"and thou it conne don be ony wyse."

1344

"Now, justice," quod merlyne thanne anon,
"my modyr thou acusest to-forn vs Echon,
For that j am of hire j-bore,
and þat sche Not ho me engendrid thore.

1348

but j kan bettere my modir telle

hos sone that j was, ful snelle,

thanne thou kanst, j dar wel say,

ho was thy fadyr, be ony way.

1352

and also thy modyr the can tellen bettir, j-wis,

ho that the be-gat and thy fadyr Js,

thanne my modyr can tellen me,

oper evere cowde jn ony degre,

1356

hos Sone that j was,

sche cowde neuere tellen jn non plas."

Thanne spak þe justice to his modir dere :

"hos sone was j, that stond now here ?

1360

was j not ȝowre sone Jn trewe acord

be-twixen ȝow and ȝowre husbonde & lord ?"

"A ȝis, fayre Syre, ful Sykerle !

hos sone ellis scholde ȝe be,

1364

but his sone that now ded Is ?

j sey ȝow, dere sone, *with-owten* mys."

"dame," quod merlyne, "ȝow behoveth here

the Sothe to Seyen Jn alle manere.

1368

For but ȝif thy Sone qwyte now me

and also my modyr, that here ȝe se,

No more entermeten j ne schal,

and ȝit scholen we gon qwyte of al !"

1372

"ȝis," quod the justice anon tho,

"Sey on now more what þou canst do."

"Wel," quod merlyne, "thanne schal J say :

thy fadir is ȝit onlyve thys day

1376

be wytnesse of thin owne modyr here."

thanne beheld the justice his modir there.

Merlin then
rehearses the
accusation
brought
against his
own mother,

and his own
accusation
against the
judge's
mother.

The judge
asks his
mother, if he
is not the son
of her late
husband.

She declares
he is.

Merlin ex-
horts her to
tell the truth,

[leaf 94 a]

and says that
the judge's
father is still
alive.

1349. *telle* crossed out after *my*.

1370. *modyr*, *o* corrected from *y*.

- "jt be-houeth," quod merlyne, "that 3e here telle
 ho was 3oure sones fadyr, ful snelle, 1380
 For wel 3e weten, his Fadyr he nas
 Of hym that he supposith jn this plas."
 The lady is
 confused. thanne baschet the Lady wondir sore,
 & axede merlyne hos sone Ellis he wore. 1384
 "Ful wel knowest thou," quod merlyn tho,
 "that thou seist, it nis not So,
 but a prestis sone of 3owre he js ;
 Merlin states
 further that
 the judge's
 father is a
 priest, this woste thou wel, with-owten mys, 1388
 be this same tokene, j telle the,
 that thou to hym seidest in prevyte.
 Ne hadde 3e but Selde to-gederis leyn,
 reveals her
 intimate con-
 versation
 with her
 lover, that to hym thou seydest, ful pleyn, 1392
 that be hym with childe thou were ;
 and he seide : 'Nay, haue 3e non fere !'
 thanne seide he, that scholde neuere be,
 Be hym with childe gon, Sykerle. 1396
 and for this skele thus seide he, trewelye,
 For thou schost medlen *with* non mannes compenye.
 and 3it more dyde he therto :
 his noting
 down of
 each coition, as often as he *with* 3ow medlyd so, 1400
 he put jt anon jn Scripture ;
 that j seye, is soth, j 3ow ensure.
 thanne was jt told to 3oure lord
 of 3oure manere, every word, 1404
 but with fals othes 3e to hym dyd swere
 and her false
 oaths to her
 husband. that it not so was Jn non manere.
 thanne vnnethis wolde 3e abyde,
 but to þe preest wente anon that tyde, 1408
 and seiden to hym with-owten wordis mo :
 'me js be-tyd ful mochel wo,
 that thus with childe be 3ow am j,
 J am ful wo-be-gon now, trewly !' 1412
 He then asks
 if it is not
 true. dame, js not this trowthe, that j now say ?
 And here to-fore me sey 3e other nay !

1383. *baschet*, *b* apparently through correction.1387. *of* (?) added above the line ; 3 through correction, blurred.1394. *he*, *h* corrected from *f*.1396. *childe*, *d* through correction, blurred.

- and ȝif thou wylt not the sothe beknowe,
 mochel wers schal j sein aforȝ al this rowe." 1416
- "modyr," quod the justice, "is this trewe?"
 She still denies it.
- "what, sone, levest thou this schrewed hewe?"
 "A," quod merlyne, "wylt thou thanne so,
 thanne schal j telle what thou dist mo. 1420
 Merlin goes on to state
- whanne that thou knew certeyn, þou were *with* childe,
 thou wentest to purchase, as a womman ful mylde,
 be the same preest, thi pes to have,
 of thin owne lord, he scholde þe save, 1424
 that she bought her husband's silence,
- and that his owne it was eche del,
 the wheche was fals, thou knew ful wel.
 and sethen that tyme, J sey ȝow here,
 haven ȝe bothe lyved that lyf jn fere, 1428
 continued her adulterous life with the priest,
- and ȝit ȝe lyven bothe jn-to this day ;
 Takith this for trowthe, as j ȝow say.
 and the Nyht to-fore that ȝe scholde gone,
 that preest, to ȝow he cam fulsone, 1432
 and spent with him the very last night before her departure.
- and browht ȝow a gret pece on the weye,
 and thus to ȝow tho gan he seye :
 'loke that jn alle thyng ȝe fulfille
 that my sone to ȝow schal sein vntylle.' " 1436
- Whanne the justices modyr herde hym so seyn,
 and that he seide, was trowthe, ful pleyn,
 Thanne gan sche Syghen & maken gret mone.
 Thanne thus sche throwhte be hire-selve Alone, 1440
 Then the judge's [leaf 94 b] mother breaks down,
- that Nedis the trowthe moste sche Seye
 oþer elles to ben confowndid vtterlye.
 thanne hire sone seide to hire ageyn :
 " hos sone j am, telleth me now pleyn. 1444
- For wel j wot, J am ȝoure child,
 & to ȝow j am bothe mek and myld.
 Telle me now trowthe, j ȝow preye,
 of that this child doth here Seye ! " 1448
- " Now, Swete sone, haue mercy on me !
 as he Seyth, it is, ful Sekyrle."
 " ha thanne," quod the justice tho,

1440. *throwhte*, *ht* through correction.1443. *seide* added above the line.

The judge understands that Merlin's mother is innocent,	"Now j se wel how it doth go ! this child knoweth bettere his fadyr, j-wis, thanne j do myn, with-owten mys. Now se j that it were non resown thy modir o ^{per} the to don distrocciown.	1452 1456
and implores him to name his father.	For for goddis love, telle þou me here what maner of wyht thy fadyr were."	
Merlin relates	thanne seide merlyne to hym ageyn : "that schal j gladliche, jn certeyn, more for thy love thanne for thy drede, j sey the certeyn, so god me spede ! Syre, j wele that thou knowe, trewely, that on my mody[r] me Engendred the Enemy.	1460 1464
that his father is an evil spirit of the order called "Equibedes,"	For Sweche Spirites as they be, ben j-cleped Equibedes, j telle the ; and from the Eyr jnto the Erthe they gon Swich maner of werkys here forto don.	1468
and that he has the mental capacities of those spirits to know things past, and to come,	And knowe thou wel, justice, certeinlye, that j haue bothe here wyt and memorye, and by hem knowe j ful wel thy modris werkynge Everydel.	1472
on God's behalf,	For thinges that ben past, j knowe, and thinges that ben comeng vppon a rowe. And also it is owre lordis wille that bothe wit & memorye j schal have þere-tylle	1476
for his pious mother's sake.	on his behalve, more thanne a naturel man jn this Erththe knoweth o ^{per} kan, for the love of my modir so dere, that hire penaunce fulfilde here, that the goodman 3af hire jn charge (sche it fulfylde bothe fully and large) ; that so be vertu of hire goodnesse God graunttyd me 3it more largesse :	1480 1484
To prove this,	to knowen thynges that weren comenge, J sey the, justice, with-owten lesynge. and this schalt þou proven ryht wel and the sothe to knowen Every del."	1488

1464. MS. *than on my mody* ; in *Engendred* the *e* of the second syllable is corrected from *r*.

1468. *werkys*, *r* corrected from *k*.

- Anon he took the justice on syde,
 & thus him told that jlke tyde : he predicts
 "Thy modyr wil discoueren me anone,
 come sche hom ones, neuere so sone, 1492
 and tellen to him that the be-gat,
 alle that j haue to the seid and what.
 and whanne that he wot al this,
 For drede of þe thanne wyle he fleeen, j-wys. 1496 the tragic
end of the
priest.
 thanne the devel, whos servaunt he hath be,
 to a water schal leden hym ful pryvyle,
 and þere he schal hym-self distroye,
 his owne Sowle to gret anoye. 1500
 and hereby myhtest þou haue knoweng
 that j can tellen of thinges comeng."
 "Now, and it be trewe as thou tellest me,
 Evere schal j the trosten ful feith-fulle, 1504 The judge
declares that
if that comes
true, he will
ever believe
him.
 and Neuere j schal the misbeleve
 For non man that owht can on þe preve."

- Thanne thus owt of cownseyl gonnen they go, [leaf 94 c]
 and to-fore the peple come they tho, 1508 They go out
again to the
people,
 and there schewed the justice anon, Sykerle,
 that ful wel aqwit his modyr hadde he,
 bothe be good resown and be ryht—
 "thus hath he his modyr from the deth now dyht." 1512 and Merlin's
mother is
released.
 thanne joyeden the peple Everychon,
 and thankede god he hadde so don. The people
rejoice.
 So thus delyverede merlyne tho
 his modyr from Brenneng, peyne, & wo. 1516
 and merlyne with the justice belefte Stylee,
 For he thowhte to werkyn after his wylle,
 and sente tweyne men with his modir anon,
 To weten how that cawse scholde goon, 1520 The judge
sends two
spies to
watch his
mother.
 also to knowen ȝif it trewe were
 that this chyld hath told hym there.
 Assone as his modyr hom comen was,
 sche tolde the preest al the cas 1524 Arrived
home, she
tells the
priest every-
thing.
 of the merveilles Everychon

1496. MS. *of þe*, added above the line.1515. *So*, *S* corrected from *a*. 1516. MS. *Brënnēg*.

	that toforn hire sone was seid & don. Anon as the preest herde of this, fulsore thanne was he astoned, j-wis,	1528
He is afraid of the judge,	and supposid the justice wold hym slo. thanne wyste he neuere what to do, but owt of the town he wente anon,	
and drowns himself,	Thanne to a ryvere he cam thus son, and pere he dyde hym-Self dystroye, For the justice hym schold not anoye. lo, thus the devel with hym wrowhte, tyl that he hadde browht hym to nowhte.	1532 1536
The spies report it to the judge.	and this openly Syen thiike twey men, that hom <i>with</i> that lady comen then ; and whanne to the juge they comen ageyn, of alle this aventure they tolden hym, certeyn.	1540
	& whanne the justice herde al this, anon he merveilled ful gretly, j-wis, and there to merlyn told it thus sone ; thanne began this merlyn to lawhen anone.	1544
On Merlin's request,	"Now j preye the, justice," quod Merlyn tho, "that to holy Blase thou wost tellen this vnto, wich that is my modris confessour, a ful holy man Jn Everych owr."	1548
the judge tells it to the hermit, the holy Blasy.	thanne tolde the justice to Blase, ful pleyn, how that this aventure befyl, certeyn. thanne wente merlyn and his modyr jn fere, the justice and Blase, alle to-gederis there, and wente whider hem likede best, Jnto what place as hem best lest.	1552
Blasy won- ders at the child's faculties,	This Blasye a worthy clerk he was, and mochel merveille hadde in þat plas that so zong a child as was he, Swich wit scholde haue jn ony degre, that but two 3er and an half he was old, and that he was so wis, so redy, and so bold ; he merveilled whens it scholde be,	1556 1560
and tests him in many ways.	& assaied merlyne jn ful many degre. thanne seide merlyne to hym ageyn :	

- “þe more that þou me asayeest, jn certeyn, 1564

 3if thou wilt me trosten and beleve,
 of the love of god j schal the preve,
 the whiche to endeles lyf it schal þe brynge,
 and thou wilt don aftyr my techinge.” 1568
 thanne answerede this Blasye ageyn :
 “what? toforn this tyme j haue herd seyn
 that only the develis sone thou were,
 How schost thou thanne swich thynges Don Here?” 1572 [leaf 94d]
 “lo,” quod merlyne, “a custowme it Js
 of alle schrewed hertis, J-wys,
 that [they] rathere the evel thanne good scholen speke,
 on here em-cristene to ben awreke. 1576
 thou seist, the develis sone that j am,
 as þou myhtest han seid, from god þat j cam,
 and that he graunted me bothe wit & memorye ;
 what schold it han greved the thus to seye? 1580
 For it is goddis wille that j knowe
 thinges to-comeng vppon a rowe,
 only for the same Enchesown
 that þe devel hath me forgon. 1584
 and 3it haue j not * Myn Engyneng,
 that of kynde j hadde atte begynneng,
 but of me scholen they neuere han power,
 for that han they lost Everywher, 1588
 For me to putten jn so worthy a vessel,
 of wheche hadde they part neuere a del,
 and jn Swich a maner conceyved they me,
 For they knew not of goddis prevyete. 1592
 and þerfore alle j-lost they bene ;
 of this be thou Seker and not jn wene.
 and loke thou beleve that j schal seyn,
 For of merveilles j schal tellen the, ful pleyn, 1596
 of whiche thou wylt haue gret merveylyng,

Merlin asks
Blasy to trust
him.

Blasy re-
minds him of
the fact that
he is the
devil's son.

Merlin re-
proves him,

and says he
has come
from God,

as God has
given him
divinatory
power,

and the
devils have
lost their
share in him.

He asks him
again to be-
lieve in his
predictions,

1564. *asayeest*, the first *a* squeezed in afterwards.

1567. *Endeles*, *E* partly obliterated. 1575. MS. *that Rathere*.

1585. A participle (*forgon*, *j-lost*, *lost*?) is missing.

1592. *they* added above the line.

- how sweche wyttes myhte jnto any man synk.
 and write them in a book. Blayse, anon that thou make a book,
 for here-aftyr many man schal *per-on* look." 1600
 thanne seide Blayse to merlyne anon :
 "A book may j do maken ful sone,
 but j coniwre *pe* be on god of myhtes most,
 which is fadir, sone, & holygost, 1604
 that thou nowht deceyve me,
 Nethir be thy werk engyned to be,
 Ne to werkyn non thing azens goddis wyll,
 Ne nothyng to don that scholde plesen hym ylle." 1608
 "ha, Sire Blayse," quod merlyne tho,
 "and j azens goddis wille only thing do,
 Loke that *pou* telle it me anon,
 and j wele beleven jt thusson. 1612
 but gete the bothe penne, jnke, and *parechemyn*,
 this book to be-gynnen and Bryngen to fyn,
 and j schal the tellen every del
 how that this book *pou* schalt wryten ful wel." 1616
- Thanne Blayse anon, so god me save,
 dide ordeynen alle thinges him Nedid to have ;
 and whanne that al thing redy was,
 and Merlin tells him thanne cam merlyn jnto that plas, 1620
 and anon be-gan him telle
 of cristes deth, how it befelle,
 also of Josepe of armathye,
 how of hym it happede, trewelye, 1624
 and of Aleyn, and of Perown also,
 & of his compenye, how they departid tho.
 and thus endyd he of josepe there
 & of al his Feleschepe also jn fere, 1628
 and gan to tellen hym further more
 of *pe* parlement of *pe* develis thore,
 and how thei conseyllled hem be-twen
 that a child jn the erthe j bore schold ben 1632
 that here wyt scholde haue & ek memorye,

1598. *man* corrected from *many*.1603. *pe* squeezed in afterwards.1631. *thei*, *i* squeezed in afterwards.

the peple to deceyven ful falslye.

“and be my modir thou hast herd telle
how hire deceyveden the fendis so felle,
but be here owne fals folye

They han me lost, As J the seye.”

The history
of Merlin's
mother did
Blasy know
already.

1636

[leaf 95 a]

al this werk thus Began merlyne,
and Blasye it Browhte to ful good fyne ;
and evere the lengere that Blasye gan wryte,
the bettere hym thowhte he cowde endyte ;
and euere the more this mater gan he drawe,
evere the bettere he lykede merlynes Sawe.

1640

The work at
the book goes
well.

thanne merlyn to Blayse cam anon,
& pere to hym he seide thus son :

“Blasye, thou shalt Suffren gret peyne
This storye to an ende to bringen, certeyne,
and ȝit schal j Suffren mochel more.”

1644

Merlin pre-
dicts diffi-
culties in its
continuation,

“how so, merlyn?” quod Blasye thore.

“j schal be sowht,” quod merlyne tho,

“Owt from the west, with messengeris mo ;

and they that scholen comen to seken me,

they han maad Sewrawnce, j telle the,

me forto slen for ony thing ;

this sewrawnce han they mad to here kyng.

but whanne they me sen & with me speke,

Non power they schole han on me to ben awreke ;

For with hem hens moste j gon,

and thou into othir partyes schalt welson,

To hem that han the holy vessel

which that js J-cleped the seynt Graal.

and wete thow wel and ek forsothe

that thow and ek this storye bothe,

ful wel beherd now schal it be

and also Beloved Jn many contre.”

1648

1652

seeing that
he himself
will have to
go to a
strange land,

1656

1660

and Blasy to
the regions
of the Holy
Gaal.

1664

1668

For the early
history of
Great Brit-
ain,

and hos that wil knowen jn certaygne
what kynges that weren jn grete Bretaygne,
Sethen that Cristendom thedyr was Browht,

1637. *be* added above the line.

1662. *J cleped*, *J* corrected from *c*.

the reader
is referred
to Martin de
Beure's
"History of
Brute."

They scholen hem fynde, hos so that it sowht,
jn the Story of Brwttes book ;
there scholen 3e it fynde, and 3e welen look ; 1672
which that Martyn de Bewre traunslated here
From latyn jnto romaunce jn his manere.
but leve we now of Brwttes book,
and aftyr this storye now lete vs look. 1676

Chap. II.
King Costan-
tin of Britain
[leaf 95 b]

has three
sons :

Costantin,

Pendragon,
and Uter.

His greatest
vassal is
Fortager.

When the
king dies,

his eldest
son, Costan-
tin, becomes
king,

with the good
will of For-
tager,

Jn Bretaygne somtyme a kyng there was
That costantyn was clepid jn that plas,
Wheche that A gret Whyle Regnede there,
and was a man of ful gret powere. 1680
and thre sones hadde that same kyng,
whiche that weren but Bachelerys 3yng.
the eldest Sone costantyn hyghte ;
the secund Awrely Ambros was clepyd ryhte, 1684
Owther Pendragon, whethyr 3e wylen haue ;
the thrydde hyhte vter, so god me Save !
this costantyn hadde a man jn his lond
That hyghte Fortager, as j vndirstond ; 1688
This Fortager was holden a ful wis man.
and happede costantyn an old man was than,
So that be Nature of kynde he deyde.
thanne the cownseyl amonges hem Seyde, 1692
and axeden ho scholde ben here kyng.
Anon thus becomen they jn emparlyng.
thussone thanne acordid they everychon
the eldest Sone to maken kyng anon, 1696
whiche that hyghte costantyn
(Fulsone of his regne made he his fyn) ;
for azens resown hadde it be
ony oper kyng to han mad, sekerle. 1700
To this emparlyng acordyd fortager
and also alle the Barowns that weren ther.
so that alle the cownseylle assented, Sykerle,
That this Fortager Styward schold be, 1704

1670. *it* added above the line.

1681. *hadde* added above the line.

1686. *The* corrected from *Te*. 1690. *an*, a corrected from *o*.

- bothe the kyng and the rewm to governen alle,
 what maner of adventures so myhte befallē.
 And thus this Fortager, jn certeyn,
 of al that rem his wil he hadde, ful pleyn, 1708
 Sawf only Constans ocupied the crowne,
 but more governaunce ne hadde he, nethir vpe ne downe.
 So that this Fortager, beloved & dred he was
 Ouer al the Rewm, jn every plas ; 1712
 For bothen wys and witty he was holde,
 but ouerprowd wax he mani folde.
 For jn that Rewm, jn non degre
 myhte non man so moche don as dyde he. 1716
 So that hit happede vppon a day
 that there aryvede a Navey with gret aray.
 Thanne the kyng wente anon to Fortager,
 and anon fulfaire hym preyde ther 1720
 his Lond to helpen forto defende
 with oper helpe he wolde after sende.
 "For we ben alle at 3owre comandement,
 bothen j & al this rewm, verament." 1724
 "Syre," quod Fortager to the kyng,
 "the peple of 3oure hauen me jn hatyng ;
 therefore let hem helpen now 3ow here,
 For j ne schal entermeten jn non manere, 1728
 Nethyr for non man that doth me praye,
 Ne for non thing that ony man kan saye."

and under his
 protection.

Fortager is
 both loved
 and dreaded.

One day, a
 hostile fleet
 lands.

King Costan-
 tin goes to
 Fortager for
 help,

but is re-
 fused.

The king re-
 turns home,

and is de-
 feated by his
 enemies.

- Whaune that kyng costantyn herde this,
 and ek þe peple þat with him þere was, j-wis, 1732
 That of hym Socour scholde they han non,
 homwardis a3en they gonne to gon,
 and ordeyned hem jn eche degre
 with here enemyes to fyhten, ful sekyrle.
 but of here enemyes scomfyted they were,
 and anon to the flyht they weren put there,
 and losten manye of here meyne,
 Of wheche dethes was gret pyte, 1740

1719. *wente*, added above the line.

1737. *Scomfyted they*, *d t* damaged (hole in the paper).

- [leaf 95 c] And seyden that thyke los Hem not scholde Han falle,
and Fortager hadde ben amongis hem alle.
- The people
grow dis-
satisfied with
the king,
that so towardis the kyng they fillen jn hate,
and from hym wídrawen bothe erly and late, 1744
So that of Evel herte they seiden hem be-twene
that he non lengere here kyng Schold beene.
Thanne to this Fortager comen they anon,
and pere to him they seiden thus son : 1748
“Sire, with-owten kyng we be,
and that is nowht worth, Sire, parde ;
So that for goddis love be thou kyng
azens owre enemyes jn defendyng. 1752
For we knowen non man jn al this lond
That so wel vs scholde governe, as j vndirstond.”
thanne quod Fortager to hem ageyn :
“As longe as the kyng lyveth, jn certeyn, 1756
Neuere non kyng ne schal j be,
nethyr of non thyng to entermeten me.”
thanne seiden they to him jn fere :
“jt is vs levere, the kyng ded were.” 1760
“3if he were ded,” thanne quod he,
“and 3e liked thanne kyng to maken me,
thanne wolde j don my powere
3ow to defende bothe fer & nere.” 1764
whanne they vndirstodyn his meneng,
anon from hym they maden departyng,
and tolden here frendis of his answe-re,
how that Fortager to hem seide there. 1768
- and decide to
murder the
king.
“thanne is it bettere that we þe kyng sle,
and thanne may fortager oure kyng be,
and that be vs kyng he is mad,”
thus ech of hem to othir seid. 1772
and so wile he thanne fulfillen hire wille—
“and to owre cownseyl consentyn vntylle.”
- Twelve men
are chosen
for the pur-
pose.
thanne chosen they anon amonges hem alle 1776
be whom this aventure myhte befaller,
So that amonges hem weren there twelfe
that this aventure token on hem-selve.

1741. *not* added above the line.1759. MS. *hem*.1760. *vs*, *v* corrected from *l*.

- So forth this xij wenten anon,
 and jnto þe kynges halle comen thus son,
 and so there with here swerdis so kene
 at his mete here kyng dyden they slene
 (and 3it was there non man jn the halle tho
 That ony word hem dorst speken vnto),
 and wenten anon to Fortager,
 & tolden hym how they hadden don ther.
 thanne Semblawnt of wraththe Fortager gan make
 (but oþerwyse jn his herte he gan it Take),
 and thus to hem he seyde tho :
- “Evel han 3e don 3oure kyng to Slo !
 and the Beste men j wende 3e hadde been
 that jn al this rew m a man Scholde seen ;
 & þerfore riht sore it forthinketh me
 that ony swich thing be 3ow scholde be.”
 but algates thus was the kyng ded
 be thiike xij false mennes reed.
 thanne gonnen they to spekyn hem be-twene
 how that Fortager here kyng scholde bene.
 At wheche cownceyl weren two goode men,
 that þe tothere tweyne bretheren kepten than,
 bothen Awriele and Ek vter,
 the kynges bretheren that last was ther.
- Whanne these tweyne goode men vndirstood this,
 that Fortager scholde ben kyng, j-wys,
 Thanne knewen they that mater ful Wel,
 that be hym this thyng was don echedel.
 Anon token they cownceyl betwixen hem two
 what with theke chyl dren myhten they do.
 “Sethen that Fortager oure lord hath do slayn,
 So wele he these two children, jn certayn.
 For anon as that he kyng Js,
 Ful mochel sorwen he wyle werkyn, j-wis.
 and we loveden here Fadyr ful wel,
 For be hym oure goodes we hadden moche del ;
- 1780 The con-
spirers slay
the king in
his hall.
- 1784
- 1788 When they
tell Fortager
of their deed,
he pretends to
be angry,
- and rebukes
them.
- 1792
- 1796 However, the
people speak
of Fortager as
the successor
to the throne.
- 1800 At the meet-
ing there are
two men
present who
have the care
of Pendragon
and Uter.
- 1804 They under-
stand Forta-
ger's under-
land
[leaf 95 d]
dealings,
- 1808 and the
danger which
threatens
their wards.
- 1812 Out of grati-
tude to the
father,

1784. *hem*, *e* through correction.1800. *tweyne*, *we* damaged (cf. footnote to l. 1737).1810. *he* added above the line.

	and therefore worthy j-blamed weren we deseysse to sen be hem Jn ony degre."	1816
they resolve to flee with the children	thanne thus token they here cownseyl, that they thennes wolde fien sau ^u 3 fayl, and that the children scholde with hem go, lest that Fortager hem wolde don slo.	1820
	"So þat therfore, Siker, avised we be Forto Fleen jnto a straunge contre,	
to Wales.	and towards wales welen we go, and ek the children with vs bothe two."	1824
	So that they wenten forth here weye, thike worthy goode men bothe tweye ;	
The princes grow up in Bourges.	So that jn a cyte dweldyn they thanne that Boorges was clepid of many a manne ; and there longe j-norsched weren they bothe, with these goode men, j sey 3ow forsothe.	1828
	Now thanne scheweth this Storyc how that Fortager kyng was, Sekerlye.	1832
	and whanne that Sacrid he was kyng, thanne to hym these Barowns weren comeng, the same that Slowen kyng costantyn (therfore hadden they ful evele fyn),	1836
	and stoden tofor Fortager vppon a rowe, & countenaunce he made as he cowde not hem knowe, & lyk as to-Fore he ne hadde neuere hem seyn ; this cowntenaunce made Fortager, jn certeyn.	1840
He at first pretends not to know them,	thanne they to hym aproched Neer, and thus they seide to kyng fortager :	
	"by vs a kyng J-mad thow were, & kyng costance we slowen for the here."	1844
	and whanne kyng Fortager herde this, Anon he leet hem to be taken, j-wis.	
has them arrested, [leaf 96 a]	"For ded moste 3e Nedys been, For 3owre owne juggement hauen 3e 3oven clen, That seyn 3e slowen 3owre owne lord, 3e mosten be ded be 3owre owne word. j se wel, the same wele 3e don be me, but j schal 3ow bettere don kepen, Sykerle."	1848
sentences them to death,		1852
	1850. 3e, MS. 3o.	

and whanne the xij Barowns herde this, Ful sore they weren abasched, j-wys. So that thanne Fortager ryht anon let hem don drawen everichon, and to hors hem bond, & so to-drowe, and thus these xij knyhtes he slowe ; For of hem non pece with othyr lefte, So that from the Bodyes Jt was reffe.		
thanne these men that distroyed were, moche worthy kynrede hadden they there. and to Fortager comen they anon, and seiden : " mochel schame hast þou vs don, that thou oure kynrede hast thus slayn and so veleynowsly to deth hem put, certayn. For neuere Servise we scholen the do, for þou oure kynrede thus dydest Slo."	1856	and causes them to be drawn asunder by horses.
whanne Fortager herde they gonnen hym manace, anon angry was he jn that place, and seide, 3if they Spoken any more, the same jewys scholden they han thore. of wheche wordis they hadden gret dyspyt, as who that ful lytel doweden jt, and seiden to Fortager there anon : "thow dost vs manacen everichon, but we don the to vndirstonde :	1860	Their relatives expostulate,
As longe as we han Frendis oper Londe, Gold other Sylver, owther oper entaylle, the schal nethyr failen werre ne bataylle. and we defyen the what thou kanst do, For falsly the kyngdom occupiest thou so, and Falsly & vntrewely occupyest the crowne, with-owten ryht Skele owther resowne. for wete thow wel, Ryht jn good feye, as Evel deth 3it schalt thou deye."	1864	
So that thus, jn this manere degre, betwixen the kyng & þe barowns began þe melle ; and gret peple assembled vppon a day, and on Fortager they comen, the sothe to say,	1868	and menace the king.
	1872	He angrily threatens them with the same fate.
	1876	They defy him,
	1880	vow venge- ance,
	1884	rail at his treachery,
	1888	and predict for him an evil end. Thus a feud arises ;

1871. MS. *seiden*.1876. *manacen*, na on erasure, the *a* corrected from *e*.

the king sustains heavy losses,

& gret distrocciown diden him there,
and of his token they many presonere.

1892

So that jn this wyse kyng Fortagere
that Lond governede longe there,

but gets the upper hand.

and hem drof owt of the lond
as For a whyle, as j vndirstond.

1896

On account of his cruelty, also his own people rise against him.

Whanne owt of þe lond they were drevyn echon,
Ful spetous to his peple he be-cam anon,
that amonges hem Suffren it myht they not longe,
but aȝens hym to rysen gonnen they fonge,

1900

and benomen hym gret partye of his lond,
and *with* strenkthes on hym comen, j vndirstond.
whanne that Fortager vndirstood this,
Ful sorweful was he thanne j-wys,
and wende his Lond to hauen forgon.

1904

He then offers reconciliation,

thanne abowten messengeris sente he ful son
to alle his Frendis Jn eche contre,
that al abowtes jn his rewm pes forto be.

1908

which is gladly accepted.

and whanne they vndirstooden that pes wolde he,
Ful glad weren they alle, ful sekerle.

[leaf 96 b]

During these struggles, he has had the help of a heathen man, Augwis, who now gives him his daughter in marriage. The people strongly object to this.

Thanne cam Augwys to Fortager,
and hym Servede ful longe ther,
tyl that al his stryf were j-don.
thanne Augwis and Fortager to-gederis spoken son,
and his owne dowhter he ȝaf hym to wyve,
wherfore his peple wrathted as blyve,
for þat he lefte a part of his creaunce,
benchesown of his wyf, *with*-owte variaunce,
and for that cristened not sche was,
his meynes love lost he jn that plas;
and that wyste wel kyng Fortager.

1912

1916

1920

As danger threatens also from the two exiled princes,

and also of costantynes sones he dredde ther,
whiche that weren jn strawnge contre,
hym wolde owt-seken, ful Sykyrle,
Ful wel he wyste, not for his prow,
as Sykerly as that j telle it ȝow.
thanne thowhte he forto do maken anon

1924

- a ful strong towr of lym and ston ;
 that forto maken, he dyde it spede,
 that he of non men scholde haue non drede.
 thanne sente he abowtes jnto Eche contre
 For masowns and carponteris, ful sekerle,
 and hem comanded jn alle manere
 a passyng strong towr to maken there,
 also strong as they cowden ony devyse,
 that it were mad after here gyse,
 and anon let ordeynen ston & morder
 this forsaid towr to be-gynnen ther.
 and whanne this werk was thus begonne,
 & the heythe of fowre roddis vpe was j-ronne
 aboven the erthe be here werkyng,
 but aftyrwardis fil there a wondyr thing:
 al that they wrowhten be the day,
 be Nyht it was ouerthrowen, jn fay,
 and be qwakyng of theke mowntayn,
 there as they wrowhten, jn oertayn.
- whanne that Fortager beheld al this,
 that his werk ne wolde not lasten, j-wis,
 thanne was he bothe jn sorwe and care,
 til þat he knew why it so gan fare.
 thanne sent he abowtes jn al the lond
 aftyr alle the wysest, as j vndirstond.
 and whanne they weren asemblyd Everychon,
 To hem he Schewede this merueille anon.
 and thanne answerid they anon :
- "Sykerly, Syre, this connen we not don !
 Ful worthi clerkis they mosten be,
 for here-vppon they connen bet than we."
 thanne seide Fortager to hem ful snelle :
- "j trowe the sothe that ȝe me telle."
- Anon messengeris gonnen gon welfaste
 aftyr þe wisest clerkis anon jn haste
 that myhte ben fownde jn al his lond,
 as j do ȝow to vndirstond,
 and tolde hem of that wondyr thing,
- 1928 Fortager
resolves to
build a strong
tower, where
he can be
safe.
Workmen
are sent for,
- 1932
- 1936 building
materials are
brought,

and the work
is begun.
- 1940
- 1944 But what is
built in the
day, topples
down in the
night.
- 1948 Fortager,
greatly
troubled,
- 1952 sends for the
wisest men in
the country.
- 1956 These advise
him to call in
the aid of men
of learning.
- 1960 So he does,
- 1964 states the
case before
them,

	of his towr and of the Fallyng. thanne of the wisest clerkes took he anon, and into counseyl gonne they gon,	1968
and asks their opinion.	& axede hem, 3if they knewen ony resown, why that his werk fyl so a-down. “For, sekerly, it is j-told to me that but be 3ow wyst it may not be.”	1972
They reply that only [leaf 96 c] astrologers can clear up the matter.	thanne answerid they hym jn here manere That of sweche Craft knew they not there. “but Somme clerkys here amongis vs ben that of Astronomye konnen, as j wen.”	1976
It is at first found out that there are two astrolo- gers amongst them,	thanne quod fortager: “Enqweryth 3e whiche of 3oure felesche[pe] that jt be.” thanne ech of hem axeden oper there whiche of that craft konneng were.	1980
	thanne of that compenye weren there tweyne that of that craft cowden, certeyne, as Mochel as ony men lyveng; thus was jt reported to the kyng.	1984
eventually seven come forward.	that so the clerkes Emparled Jn fere, that atte laste of hem sevene there were, and they weren lad anon to-fore the kyng Forto tellen hym the aventure of this thing.	1988
These, when brought before the king,	thanne axede hem the kyng anon 3if owht of that craft cowde they don, and why that his Towr ne myhte not stonde, hym forto telle that, myhten [they] fonde.	1992
boldly under- take to settle the question,	and they seiden that they cowden wel of that cas tellen hym Every del.	
and are promised great rewards.	thanne swoor the kyng, so god hym save, they scholde han what good that they wolde have. thanne departyd this counseille anon of these clerkis there everychon.	1996
They remain,	and theke same sevene beleften there styлле The kynges Talent there to fulfille, Forto schewen there here konneng, alle the cause of the Towris fallyng.	2000

1969. MS. *axedē*. 1978. MS. *felesche*; cf. ll. 1628, 2440.1992. MS. *hym forto that myhtē fonde* with *telle* added above the line.1994. MS. *hem*.

- These clerkis gonnen to stodyen welsore,
and ech of hem there provede his lore ; 2004 set to work,
So that the more they stodyed, þe forthere they were. and get on
thanne cam the kyng and axede hem there, fairly,
how that j-scholde stondyn of his thyng. 2007
And as 3it thanne cowden they tellen him non tydyng, but do not
but axeden hym viij dayes of respyt. arrive at a
thanne quod the kyng : " wel me lykyth Jt, definite
but loke that 3e otterly be that day conclusion.
of my towr the sothe that 3e me say." They then
2012 obtain a re-
Thanne wenten they to here counseil ageyn, spite of eight
and eche of hem gan to oþer seyn : days.
" what scholen wee werkyn jn this thing After fresh
hit Forto Bryngen to a good endyng?" endeavours,
2016
thanne bespak on of the Sevene there :
" let eche be hym-Selve his wyt schewen here, each working
how that jt Semeth hym of this cas, by himself,
let hym here Schewen jt jn this plas." 2020
and eche there schewede his verdict sone,
So that alle they acordid jnto one,
Sawf that of the towr knew they non thyng
what was the cause of the Fallyng. 2024 they all agree
But on gret merveille there they sye, that they
where-offen alle, ful trewele, have not
Ful sore abasched alle they were, found out the
For that merveille that they syen there, 2028 cause of the
that a child jn this Erthe j-boren was falling of the
whiche erthly Fadir hadde neuere jn non plas. tower, but
thanne eche of hem to othir gan say : that they,
" Let vs ben avised be the morwe of þe day." 2032 instead, have
seen in the
stars another
wonder :
- 2036 a fatherless
child has been
born ouer earth.

Thanne vppon the morwe they sembled Eft sone,
and jnto on thing they acordid Echone :
So that of this child that there was bore,
how that his lyf Scholde be forlore,
And his blood j-leyd jn the fundement
Of that jlke towr, verament,
3if that towr scholde Evere abyde.

2036 To have this
child killed,
and its blood
put into the
foundation of
the tower—
[leaf 96 d]

2014. *gan*, *a* through correction. 2025. *syce*, *y* corrected from *e*.
2030. *whiche*, *e* stuck on to the preceding *h*.

	thus they seyden that ilke tyde,	2040
	Everich a mayster be hym-self alone,	
that is what they resolve to advise the king, in order to hide their ignorance and save their own lives.	and thus alle acordid they jn-to one.	
	“and lete vs maken the kyng thus beleve,	
	oper ellis of oure lyves he wyle vs deprève ;	2044
	and that theke child he do seken anon,	
	also faste as messengeris mown gon.”	
	thanne thus endid they here counseil there,	
	that anon so to-forn þe kyng j-browht they were,	2048
	and eche be hym-self tolde his avis	
	afor the kyng there and alle his.	
The king and his council deem the remedy acceptable.	thanne, whanne the kyng and alle his cownsaylle	
	herden hem thus tellen, with-owten faylle,	2052
	and seiden alle : “it myhte wel be,	
	Swich a thing, Jn alle degre,	
	þif so it be that a man be bore	
	with-owten erthly fadyr, as 3e seiden before ;	2056
	and thus han 3e me told Everyechone,	
	Ech of 3ow maistres be 3owre one.”	
After the astrologers have repeated their assertion,	“and but 3e it Fynde as we 3ow say,	
	Ellis doth be vs what 3ow lyst, jnfay !”	2060
	thanne seyde the kyng to hem ageyn,	
	he wolde hem jn warde putten, certeyn,	
	Tyl that the sothe he myhte knowe.	
	thanne seiden they to hym vppon a rowe :	2064
and given instructions as to the bringing of the child's blood,	“ Anon as that he Fownden Js, þat child so 3yng,	
	Loketh that 3e don hym Slen for ony thyng,	
	and that the blood be to 3ow browht,	
	and for non thyng they leven jt nowht.”	2068
they are locked up in a tower, pending the issue.	the kyng hem putte alle sevene anon	
	Jn a ful strong hows of lym and ston,	
	and deliuered hem jn what hem nede was,	
	therby to ben Sosteyned jn that plas.	2072
Twelve messengers are sent out in search of Merlin ;	Thanne ordeyned the kyng messengeris ful snelle,	
	xij worthy gentyles, as j 3ow telle,	
	that they scholden alle anon forth gon	
	this Fadirles child to seken welson.	2076
they must swear	and these xij men the kyng made swere,	

- that where so Evere j-fownden he were,
 that they scholden hym Slen anon—
 “and that his Blood jn a sawf place 3e don, 2080
 and that it Sawfly be browht to me,
 though two 3er owte that 3e be.
 and loke that 3e fynden hym for ony thing,
 though that 3e maken the lengere taryeng.” 2084
 and thus the messengeris, forth they gon,
 be tweyne & tweyne here weye token they son,
 and sowhten jn manye dyvers contre
 that child to fynde, 3if hit myhte be. 2088
 So that atte laste fowre metten jn fere,
 as that here aventure behappede there.
- Thus ryden these fowre Jn compenye,
 tyl vppon a day jt happede, ful trewelye,
 Thorwh a fayr medewe as they gonne ryde,
 weren many children pleyeng jn that tyde.
 and merlyne, that knew alle thencheson
 of tho messengeris comeng so son, 2096
 and wiste ful wel that they him sowghte,
 anon to a riche mannes sone he rawhte.
 For he wiste ful wel that he wolde wroth be,
 3if that he hym smete, fulle Sykerle ; 2100
 Thanne lefte He vpe His staf Anon
 and overthwert the Schenys smot him thus son.
 Anon this child be-gan to crye
 with a lowd voys ful angerlye, 2104
 and there Reprovyd this merlyne,
 and clepid him “fowle false fowndelyne,
 that Nevere Fadyr haddest thow here,
 thou fowle fowndelyng, thou fals bismere.” 2108
 and whanne þe messengeris herden of this,
 Towardis that child they drowen, j-wys,
 and hym axede jn here manere
 what he was that hym so smot þere. 2112
 thanne answerid the child anon ageyn :
 “Jt is a wommans sone here, jn certeyn,
 that wot neuere ho that the Fadyr was,
 Nethir ho that him begat, jn non plas.” 2116

to kill him
 wherever
 they find him.

They search,
 two and two
 together, in
 divers
 countries.

Two of these
 pairs acci-
 dentally fall
 in with each
 other,

and one day
 ride together
 through a
 meadow,

where some
 children are
 at play.
 Merlin is one
 of them.
 Knowing the
 errand of the
 messengers,
 he on purpose
 strikes a
 playfellow :

[leaf 97 a]

the latter
 begins to cry,

and calls him
 a nasty
 founding.

The
 messengers'
 attention is
 roused,
 they question
 the struck
 child,

and Merlin
himself steps
forward and
tells them
that he is the
one they seek.

whanne merlyne herde that he seide so,

Towardis hem faste he gan to go,

and spak to hem with a lawheng chere :

“j am he whom that 3e seken here,

2120

And also hos deth that 3e han swore ;

lo, here j stonde now 3ow before !

For that my blood with 3ow scholde 3e bere

To kyng Fortager jn alle manere.”

2124

The mes-
sengers are
surprised,

and whanne that the messengeris herden hym seyn so,

anon thanne alle abasched weren they tho,

and so tolden hym it was, ful certeynle.

“3e, that wiste j ful wel longe er 3e.”

2128

and say he
must go with
them.

thanne seide the messengeris to hym ageyn :

“with vs mostest thou gon, Jn certeyn.”

He replies
that he will
gladly do so,
if they
promise not
to kill him.

“that ful gladliche wyl j now do,

3if it so be that 3e not me Slo.”

2132

but 3it merlyn wiste Ful wel

pat perto talent hadden they neuere a del.

but merlyne Seyde this be Enchesown

To wyten what they wolden seyn anon,

2136

and seide to hem : “3if that 3e wilen grawnten me

that 3e welen neither me distroyen ne sle,

with 3ow wile j gon forto Fonde

and telle why that þe towr ne may not stonde.”

2140

He will also
tell why the
tower cannot
stand.

& whanne they herden the child tho speken this,

thanne mochel more abasched weren they, j-wys,

and seiden that—“this child wondris doth speke ;

Jt were pyte on hym to ben awreke.”

2144

Still more
surprised,
they agree
rather to be
forsworn
than slay
such a child.

So that eche to othyr gan forto seyn :

“Rathere forsworn scholen we ben, jn certeyn,

thanne jn ony wyse hym Scholde we Sle,

Sekyrly, for vs Jt Schal not now be.”

2148

Merlin invites
them to stay
at his
mother's and
Holy Blasy's
place.

“Sires,” quod merlyne, “with me scholen 3e go,

and 3owre herberwe j schal bryngen 3ow vnto,

and loggen jn place there as my modyr js,

& also anothir good man, with-owten mys ;

2152

For with-owten here leve j ne may not go,

Certain, Sires, J sey 3ow vnto.”

- Thanne answeyrd these messengeris ageyn :
 "With the to gon we ben ful fayn 2156 They accept
the invita-
tion,
 into what place thow wylt vs lede ;
 with the scholen we go *with-owten* drede."
 So wenten they with *merlyn* into that plas,
 into a nonnerye, there his modyr was, 2160
 and *merlyne* chargede that meyne Echon and Merlin
provides
good cheer.
 Ful good chere the messengeris to don.
- Anon as that of here hors they weren lyht adown,
 To-forñ Blasye he dyde hem comen anon. 2164 In front of
Blasy, he
gives a full
account
 "Lo, Sire," quod *merlyne* to Blasye tho,
 "behold here tho men that me seken to slo.
 And j 3ow preye, sires, now alle jn fere
 That trewe Witenesse 3e Welen beren me Here 2168 [leaf 97 b]
 To-forñ this goodman that here Js,
 3if that j lye owther sey owht amys.
 haue j not Told 3ow the cause why of the facts :
 that 3e me comen to seken, verrayly?" 2172
 and they seiden : "3is, ful Sykerle!"
 of wheche they wondrid how it myhte be.
 thanne seide *merlyn* to Blayse there :
 "now vndirstondith what j schal sein here." 2176
 To the messengeris thanne seide he tho :
 "Kyng Fortager now comen 3e fro, king Forta-
ger's tower,
 whiche kyng, a gret towr doth he make
 onliche for strengthe for his owne sake, 2180
 the wheche towr ne may not stonde
 For non werkyng of mannes honde,
 but that jn an owr down doth it go,
 as mochel as they maken jn a mounthe oper two. 2184
 wherfore that the kyng, ful wroth he js,
 and aftyr his clergyse hath sent, J-wys,
 but of this non Resown conne they telle,
 of that towr, why that it Felle ; 2188
 Ne non othir thyng ne cowden they se,
 but that a child born scholde there be
 that hadde non Erthly fadyr here.
 and vppon this they acordid jn fere, 2192 their advice,
 that swich a child they scholden sle,
 and the blood to-forñ hym j-browht to be,

	to leyn that blood jn the fundement, thanne scholde the towr stondyn, verament.	2196
the king's surprise,	and whanne that þe kyng herde of this, thanne merveilled he mochel here-offen, j-wys. and so the clerkis comanded him anon that nedis this thing scholde be don.	2200
	and anon as they me Fownde, they scholden slen me that jlke stownde, and my blood forth with hem bere to kyng Fortager, tyl they comen there,	2204
	and don tempre my blood <i>wit</i> that mortere ; thanne seiden [they] the towr scholde stondyn there.	
the sending of the twelve sworn mes- sengers,	Anon kyng fortager thorwh here Red Sente xij messengeris jn-to every sted, of wheche xij these fowre now be that hider ben comen forto seken me. but ferst alle xij he mad hem to swere, vppon here Sewraunce, to-forn him there,	2208 2212
the meeting in the meadow,	that be ony weye they scholden me sle the ferste tyme they myhten me Se. and as thorwgh the medewe they gonne Ryde where as manye children pleyden that tyde,	2216
and the in- cident with the playmate.	j knew ful wel here cause anon, and to þe beste of hem alle j gan to to gon, and him there smot j wondyr sore, For that j wyste ful wel before that the werste he wolde sein be me that he cowde onne thinken jn ony degre. and that dede j for non othyr thing, but for these men of me scholden hauen knoweng.	2220 2224
	Now, maister Blayse," quod merlyne, "j preye the, So axe now of hem zif this trewe be."	
The messen- gers confirm his words,	" Now certes, maister," quod the messengeris, "j-wis, Ryht as he seith, forsothe now it Js. as god vs brynge jnto owre contre, Jt is ful trewe that he telleth the."	2228
Blasy praises his wisdom,	" Now certes," quod this maister thanne, "& he mot lyve, he wil ben a wys manne,	2232

and therefore pite it were hym to qwelle
 Forsothe, Lordynges, as J 3ow telle."
 thanne quod these messengeris : " certeinle,
 For vs, be owre Sewraunce, schal he nevere ded be, 2236
 For we hadden moche more levere that owre kyng
 dysherite vs of al owre worldly thyng.
 For ful wel knoweth he that wot al this,
 that talent therto haven we non, j-wis." 2240

and the
 messengers
 [leaf 97 c]
 renew their
 promise not
 to kill him.

Thanne this Blayse clepid *merlyne* anon
 hym for to axen of a prevy qwestion,
 and axede of *merlyne* ful prevyle
 3if they hadden ony wyl hym for to sle. 2244
 and *merlyn* gan to Lawhen & seide : " Nay,
 Ful wel here wylle j knowe, jn fay,
 for 3e scholen comen and 3oure-self here
 of here Sewraunce Jn alle manere." 2248

Blasy, still
 uneasy on
 this point,

Now quod *merlyne* : " J schal with 3ow go,
 3if that 3e welen ENSWREN me vnto
 that 3e scholen me bryngen to-fore þe kyng
 with-owten ony harm oþer bodyly hyndryng, 2252
 and that non harm be don to me,
 tyl that j haue hym bothe spoken & se."

who lets him
 hear, once
 more, the
 asseveration
 of the mes-
 sengers.

So that to hym maden they here Surawnce
 him there to bryngen with-owten Nosawnce. 2256

" Now Se j," quod Blayse to hym anone,
 " That thou wilt me beleven here alone.
 Now telle thou me thanne what j schal do
 of this Book that j have be-gonnen so." 2260

Blasy, seeing
 that Merlin is
 to leave him,
 asks what to
 do with the
 book begun.

" that schal j the telle," quod *merlyne* anon,
 " Er that j from the owt this place wil gon.
 vndirstondist thou not wel this,
 that god to me hath sent, j-wys, 2264
 bothe wyt, mynde, and memorye
 alle manere of thinges to discrye,
 more thanne to ony erthliche man ?
 this thow supposyst that J kan. 2268
 So that they that me supposid to have,

Merlin re-
 plies :

" God has
 endowed me
 with special
 powers,

2238. *dyfherite*, *f* inserted afterwards.

2266. The line was omitted and then written up the margin.

and chosen me for His service.	han me forlost, and god wyl me save, and me hath chosen to his Seruise, Swich forto don as j kan devyse, that non man neþer kan don but J, J seye 3ow, maister, ful trewely.	2272
Therefore I must go with these men to their country and disclose great things.	and therefore me behoueth to go thedyr as these men comen fro jnto this contre to seken me here ; with hem wyle j forth gon jn fere. and there schal J so moche thing seyn, that þe peple jn me schal beleven, pleyne, and holden me for the wisest man one that on Erthe Js except god alone.	2276
Thou shalt come thither later on ;	and thider schalt þou come and þere fulfyllen The werk that j to þe spak of vntylle. but with me thedyr schalt thou not gone, but aftyr thedir schal thou comen alone,	2284
but now thou shalt go to Northumber- land.	and axen jnto Northumberland, þe whiche is a wilde contre, þou vnderstand. and þere schalt þow knowelichyng haue þere forto dwellen and þere to be save.	2288
There I will visit thee and help thee on with thy work.	and thider schal j comen to the and the Schewen many diuers secrete, & also bryngen to the alle maner of thyng That behoueth to thy werkyng.	2292
Thy reward shall be great,	and ful wel alowed schalt thou be For thy Travaille, ful Sykerle : jn this world, joye to thy lyf, and aftir, endles blisse with-owten stryf.	2296
and thy book shall be ever loved.	and as longe as jn this world here that ony man lyveth jn goddis manere, that werk evere beloved schal be and be herd of the peple ful hertyle.	2300
As for my own great labour, it will begin only in the time of the fourth [leaf 97 d] king,	and weteth wel that my gret travaylle begynneth not 3it, with-owten Faylle, Ne not ne schal jn non wyse, Tyl that come the fowrthe kyng, a man of pryse. and jn his tyme myn travaylle Schal be,	2304

- also the adventures of gret Breteygne, sykirle ; 2308
 hos Name schal ben kyng Arthowr,
 a ful worthy kyng and of gret honour.
 thanne schalt thou comen jnto that contre
 of whiche that first [j] told of the. 2312
 and thedyr to the schal J fonge
 Ful often-tymes, evere amonge,
 the forto maken to vndyrstonde
 alle thynges that ben don jn breteygne londe,
 and ek that after scholen befallē,
 Jn thy book to putten hem alle.
 For wete thou wel, Jn certeyn,
 mochel more schal it be herd, & more pleyn. 2320
 For there ne schal nothing jn this lond be,
 Nethir litel ne mochel, jn non degre,
 Nethir don ne wrowht jn non manere,
 That to thy book profitable were, 2324
 anon jn thy Book it schal be do,
 For knowen schal it be for evere mo.
 and the Name of thy Bok schal be
 J-clepyd seint Graal, ful Sykirle." 2328
 and thus merlyne to his maister spak there,
 and hym thus tolde jn dyvers manere
 what maner of thing that he scholde do,
 Ere that he departed his maister fro. 2332
 and "maister" he clepid him for this manere,
 For maister to his modir he was everywhere.
 whanne Blayse with merlyn thus hadde j-spoken,
 Thanne was his herte jn joye be-loken,
 and to merlyne he seide anon tho : 2336
 " what so thou comandest me to do,
 and j mowe it don jn ony degre,
 J schal it don, ful sekerle." 2340
- Thanne anon merlyne tornede ageyn
 To the messengeres his weye, ful pleyn,
 and seide that he wolde nedes go
 his leve of his modir to taken tho. 2344

whose name
shall be
Arthur.

Then thou
shalt come
into the same
country,

and I will
tell all things
about Britain,

both small
and great,

for thee to
put into thy
book,

which shall
be called St.
Gaal."

Thus Merlin
takes leave of
his master—

so he calls
him for his
mother's
sake—

and Blasy is
happy

and resigned.

After this,
Merlin with
the messen-
gers

goes to take
leave of his
mother.

He says that
he himself
must depart,

in fulfilment
of God's will,

and that
Blasy must
go also.

The mother
commends
him to God,

and only
wishes Blasy
could stay.

[leaf 98 a]

Merlin and
Blasy depart
in different
directions.

Merlin and
the four mes-
sengers, on
their road,
overtake a
churl who
has bought a
pair of strong
shoes

Thanne ledde he these messengeris forth anon,
and to his modir gonne they gon.

"Swete modyr, j telle now the,
here ben comen men from fer contre 2348

and of strange place to seken me here,
wherfore *with* hem moste j go jn alle manere.
therfore j come my leve to take,
that non morneng for me 3e make ; 2352

and forto fulfille goddis Servyse
Thider most j gon jn alle wyse.
For j ne may not his wyl fulfyllen,
Tyl jnto that Lond j come vntylle, 2356
whedir so Ewere he wil me lede
there his wille forto spede.

and Blaise, that is 3oure maister dere,
thedyr schal comen also jn fere ; 2360

So that bothen vs tweyne moste 3e forgon,
and for vs here behoveth 3ow to dwellen alon."
thanne seide to hym his modir agein :
"sethen it may non oþer ben, jn certeyn, 2364

j comande 3ow to god al-myht,
For it is Nethyr jn my power ne myht
3ow with-holden agens 3oure wille,
what that Ewere j seye 3ow vntylle. 2368

But siker, sone, and 3oure willes be,
j wolde that Blayse schold leven *with* me."

"Forsothe, modir, he ne may not So,
For Nedylynges thedyr moste He go." 2372

And thus merlyne of his modir took cownge,
and forth with the messengeris wente, ful sikerle.
& Blayse wente forthe jnto Northhumberlond,
lyk as merlyn dyde hym to vndirstond. 2376

merlyne and these messengeris Jn fere,
alle forth to-gederis Riden they there.
So that thorwgh a town gonnen they Ryde,
where as Market was the same tyde. 2380

& whanne the town they were past Everychon,
a cherl to-For hem Syen they gon,
that him hadde j-bowht a peire stronge schon,

- and ek strong clowt lethir to sette *pere-on*.
 and whanne that *merlyne* this cherl gan se,
 he gan anon to lawghen ful prevyle.
 thanne axeden hym the messengeris there
 why he lawghed, & wherfore it were.
 “Sires, j lawghe,” quod *merlyne* thanne,
 “at hym that *zondir* goth, *zone* cherlisch manne,
 that hym bowht ful stronge schon
 and ek stronge clowtes to setten *per-on*.
 And j *zow* seye, ful certeynly,
 that he schal dyen ful sodeynly,
 Er that he come to his owne place ;
 Swich schal ben both his hape & his *grace*.”
 and whanne they herden hym, that he seide so,
 Ful mochel *merveyl* hadden they tho.
 thanne seiden they that fayn they wolde knowe
zif it scholde happen with-junne a throwe.
 and so that tweyne folweden that *jlke* veleyne,
 and tweyne with *merlyne* Ryden, certeyn.
 they folwed not this cherl passyng a myle,
 that he ne was ded with-junne a whyle,
 and *evene* a-myddes the hye weye,
 there gan this veleyne forto deye.
 and his schon vndir his arm were,
 and ek his clowt lethir also there.
 Anon as they hadden seyn this syht,
 To here felawes they wenten with al here myht,
 and tolden hem of that they hadden seyn,
 and howh that *pe* veleyne to-forn hem gan deyen.
 “Now certes,” quod these messengeris *azen*,
 “alle theke clerkis, but *Folys* they been,
 that wolde don vs this wyse man to sle,
 but for non thing *jt* ne schal not be.
 For on myn owne Body levere hadde j here
 To suffren gret peynes *jn* dyvers manere,
 thanne his body only harm scholde hane,
 also god me wysse other *Save* !”
 and so they seiden Everychon,
 alle that with hym *gonne* forto gon.
 thanne thankid they hym al *jnfere*,

MERLIN.

2384 and leather to
mend them
with.Merlin laughs
quietly.2388 When asked
for the
reason,

2392

he says the
man will die
before reach-
ing his home.

2396

2400

Two of the
men ride after
the rustic,

2404

and see him
expire on
the road.

2408

2412

They return
to their
comrades,
and tell what
they have
seen.

2416

These blame
the astrolo-
gers,
who have
desired such a
wise person's
death;

2420

they thank
Merlin.

- of that merveille he told hem there. 2424
- The messen-
gers are
amazed at
Merlin know-
ing whatever
they speak
or do.
and sore a-basched weren they echon,
For they cowden non thing nethir speken ne don,
but that he knew alle here entent ;
thus thanne seiden they, verament. 2428
- Proceeling
on their
journey,
Forth thanne Riden they in here jorne,
Tyl that jn Fortageris lond they be,
and with-jnnen his strengthe and his powere,
alle the iij messengeris and merlyne jn fere. 2432
- [leaf 98 b]
they see a
child being
carried to
the grave.
So that Jt happede vppon a day,
As thorwgh A town thanne lay here Way,
A chyld to-ward Beryeng was there j-bore,
and moche ful sore wepyng was there-fore. 2436
- Merlin
laughs.
the prestes and clerkis, ful faste they songe,
as lowde as they myhten with here tonge.
thanne gan this merlyn to lawghen anon,
as he with his Feleschepe gan forth to gon, 2440
and seide to his felawes : "merveilles J se."
"Now, goode child," quod they, "what mown tho be?"
- He points to
the man
weeping be-
hind the bier,
"Se 3e not," quod merlyn, "now here
this goode man that Folweth the bere, 2444
that so sore wepeth and maketh swich doel?"
"3is, sekyr," quod they, "we sen hym wel."
- and to the
priest singing
in front.
"and se 3e not the preest that goth to-fore,
That so meryly now syngeth thore?" 2448
"3is, child, that don we, ful Sykirly."
- The priest
ought to
weep, says
Merlin, for
the child is
the priest's.
"3e, the Sorwe scholde he maken, trewly,
For, be myn hevyd, the child is his,
and non thyng his that folweth, j-wys ; 2452
& therfore the Sorwe the preest scholde make
that the goodman doth For the childis sake."
"what, trowen 3e [not] that the child his be?"
"Nay, Sires," quod merlyne, "ful Sykirle." 2456
"Leve child, how mowen we the sothe knowe?"
- He tells his
companions
how to ascer-
tain the truth.
"Goth forth," quod merlyne, "on a rowe,
and axeth the modyr the cause why
why that hire husbond wepeth so soryly. 2460
Anon wele sche sein it is for his chyld,
that to hym was bothe mek and myld.

and loke that ȝe answeren hire ageyn
 that it was neuere his, Jn certeyn, 2464
 but that the prestes child it Js
 That to-forn goth and syngeth, J-wys."

Forth thanne wente the messengeris anon,
 and to this womman there gonnen they gon, 2468
 & token hire on syde evene ryht there,
 aposynge hire thus jn this manere ;
 Every word, ryht as merlyne bad,
 anon to this womman there they sayd. 2472
 and whanne this womman herde this,
 Ful sore abasched sche was, j-wys,
 and to hem seide Jn this manere :
 "Me thynketh, to ȝow may j not lyen here, 2476
 For trewly, as ȝe seyn now, it Js,
 j may not the contrarye seyn, j-wys.
 but lordynges, j preye ȝow for charite
 that to my lord ne discureth not me, 2480
 For owther he wolde me slen anon,
 owther owt of his compenye j scholde be don."
 and whanne they knewen that it was so,
 aȝen to merlyne gonnen they to go,
 and thankyde hym of his Talkyng,
 of whiche they hadden gret merveylling.
 and so jn here jorne gonnen they ryde,
 Towardis kyng Fortager þat same tyde. 2488
 and whanne they comen there the kyng was,
 thanne seiden tweyne of hem jn that plas,
 and spoken to merlyne j[n] the plyht,
 that to the kyng wolden they gon ful ryht, 2492
 and tellen hym what they han fownde.
 thanne preyden they merlyne that jlke stownde
 hem forto counseillen, what they scholde say,
 lest they weren blamed Jn ony way, 2496
 For be-cawse they hadden hym not slayn,
 as they weren comawnded, jn certayn.
 "For, be aventure, we scholen ben schent,
 that we ne hadden þe slayn, verament." 2500

The messen-
 gers go to
 the woman,

and say to
 her the same
 as Merlin has
 told them.

The woman
 confesses her
 guilt,

and implores
 their dis-
 cretion.

The messen-
 gers thank
 Merlin.

On arriving
 home, two
 of the mes-
 sengers are
 to give
 report to
 the king.

They ask
 Merlin's
 advice.

[leaf 98 c]
Merlin in-
structs the
messengers

"Now, leve Sires," quod merlyne thanne,

"and 3e wil don as J schal 3ow kenne,

J-blamed scholen 3e neuere be

Jn non manere wise, Sires, for me.

2504

what to
relate to King
Fortager,

Anon to kyng Fortager faste scholen 3e go,

and jn this wyse that 3e seyne hym vnto :

lik as that 3e haven me j-fownde,

and that j kan hym tellen *with-june* a stownde

2508

why that his towre ne may not stonde ;

and that wile j ful sone taken on honde,

and what to
demand of
him.

on covenaut the clerkis he wil Slen,

lik as they desireden J scholde haue ben.

2512

For telleth hym that j knowe the cause why

wherfore they wolden me don slen, trewly.

and whanne 3e haven told hym al this,

lokethe his byddying 3e don *with-owten* mys."

2516

The messen-
gers repair to
the king,

thus departyd the messengeris from hym, trewelye,

and to kyng Fortager anon comen they jn hye.

whanne that kyng Fortager gan hem beholde,

Ful joyeful he was Jn many Folde,

2520

and axede of hem how they hadden sped

of thiike arende that he on hem leyd.

and describe
how they
have found
Merlin.

"Sire," quod these messengeris, "so as we myhte,

we scholen 3ow it tellen anon Ryhte."

2524

thanne took hem the kyng Jn cownseyl anon,

and they hym tolde there Ryht son

how that they hadden merlyne j-fownde,

jn what manere, and *with-june* what stownde.

2528

"and but 3if it hadde ben his owne wille,

we cowde neuere hauen comen hym vntylle."

The king
asks who this
Merlin is.

thanne seide the kyng to hem Ryht tho :

"what is thiike merlyne þat 3e spoken of so ?

2532

j bad 3ow seken, ful plenerlye,

a Fadirles child, ful vterlye,

that was neuere begeten of erthly man ;

of this mater telleth me, as 3e kan !

2536

and þerto the blood of hym me brynge,

this was 3oure charge, *with-owten* lesynge."

They say,
he is that
fatherless
child,

"Sire, this same merlyne Js he

of whom that 3e spoken, ful sykirle.

2540

- and therto the wisest man he is one
 þat evere was born, Except God alone.
 and that oth that 3e maden vs swere,
 we han it fulfylde, as 3e now here." 2544
- and 3it the messengeris tolden him more,
 that his clerkis cōwden non skele thore
 him forto tellen the cawse why
 that his towr myhte not stonden, trewely. 2548
- "but anon apertly he wil 3ow telle
 why the cause 3oure towr doth falle.
 and þerfore he vs hyder to the sente
 Forto knowen of 3oure entente. 2552
- 3if that 3e wolden owht with hym speke,
 thanne wolde he to 3ow his herte Breke;
 and of othir merveilles he wyl 3ow say,
 what aftyr schal be-fallen many a day. 2556
- and 3if 3e welen, we scholen hym Sle,
 For tweyne felawes of owre with him be."
 "Nay," quod the kyng, "and it be so,
 that he cowde syker tellen me vnto 2560
- the cause of my towris Fallyng,
 thanne wolde j that 3e hym slowen for non thing.
 and 3if he conne me tellen, certeynle,
 and that 3e bryngen hym to me." 2564
- Thussone these messengeris gonne to gon,
 and the kyng aftyr hem prekede anon.
 Anon Whanne merlyne Sawgh that messenger,
 to hem Spak he anon Ryht ther: 2568
- "3owre trowthe to me haven 3e now plyht
 me not to deren be day ne be nyht."
 "thou seist ful trewe," quothen they anon,
 "For vs, certein, harm getyst thou non, 2572
- For we hadden levere be aventure to deye
 thanne the forto slen, certeinlye."
 "J schal 3ow tellen," quod merlyne, "Everydel,

and the
 wisest of
 mortals,

able to tell
 why the
 tower falls,

and other
 marvels
 besides.

The king is
 highly
 satisfied.

The messen-
 gers return
 to Merlin,

[leaf 98 a]

and tell him
 that he is
 safe.

2541. MS. *therto of the wifest Man*, the preposition being added above the line. Cf. Notes.

2544. *we han* corrected from *whan*, the *e* being added above the line.

	how that ȝoure trowthe ȝe scholen saveȝ ryht wel." 2576	
Merlin rides to meet the king,	Thus <i>with merlyne</i> ryden they forth Jn fere, Tyl that with kyng Fortager metten they there. and anon as evere merlyne hym Say, streȝth to the kyng he took his way, 2580 and seide : "sire kyng, ful wel thou be ! A word jn counseil wolde j speken <i>with the</i> ." Anon took he there the kyng on syde, and ek clepede the messengers at þat tyde 2584 That hym forto seken j-charged were the sothe of hym forto enqwere. " why that the Towr stonden ne myhte, j schal the tellen, Syre, anon Ryhte, 2588 and how þat thow comandedest me to sle Be the counseil of clerkys that false be, and my blood al forto take and þer-with thy morteer for to make. 2592 but ȝit they Fayllen of here art, for of that konnenge hauen they non part. but sire kyng, and þou wilt Enswren me here the same Jewyse to don jn alle manere 2596 vppon hem as thou wost hauen don be me, J schal the tellen, ful sykerle, the cause why þat thy towr doth falle, so openly, that ȝe scholen knowen it alle, 2600 and declaren openly alle ȝow be-Fore how þat it schal lasten for euere more. ȝif thou wylt don as j the say, telle me now, sire kyng, owther ȝe oþer nay." 2604 thanne answered the kyng ageyn : "ȝif þou do as that þou seist, jn certeyn, the same jewise scholen they have as þou scholdest han had, so god me save." 2608 "go we, sire, thanne," quod merlyne tho, "thedir that thy towr þou begynnest so, and thiike same clerkis brynge <i>with the</i> , thanne there the sothe mihtest þou se, 2612 ȝif they connen owht seyn, amorges hem alle,	
takes him and the messen- gers aside,		
tells up the astrologers' malign advice,		
demandes that the astrolo- gers shall be punished,		
and under- takes, on that condition, to make the tower stand.		
The king complies.		

whi that thy towr doth so down falle."
 so wenten they forth alle jn fere,
 and the clerkis sent aftyr were
 to thihe there as the towr was dyht;
 thedyr comen they alle anon ryht.

They all go
 to the tower.

2616

And whanne they weren assembled everichon,
 merlyne hem thanne aposede anon,
 and axede on of the wysest clerkis
 why that so fyl adown the kynges werkes.
 thanne answerede this clerk him ageyn :
 "we ne connen not it tellen, jn certeyn,
 but the kyng we tolden jn what degre
 wherby his werk Sosteyned scholde be."
 "3e," quod the kyng to the clerkis thanne,
 "3e boden me don seken aftyr swich a manne
 that Neuere erthly Fadyr hadde,
 and hym don Slen, thus 3e me badde.
 and Swich a man j Not where to fynde,

2620

There Merlin
 asks the as-
 trologers if
 they can ex-
 plain its
 falling.

They say :
 "No,

2624

but we have
 told the king
 a remedy."

For me Wolde thenken Jt Were Al azens kynde."
 and thanne bespak there merlyne anon,
 and seide to tho clerkis Everychon :

2632

[leaf 99 a]

Merlin re-
 plies :

"Lordynges, a fool that 3e wolden maken the kyng,
 To don hym to seken so wondirful a thyng :

2636

"You deluded
 the king,

a man that Neuere erthly Fadyr hadde,
 jnto this world be born and forth bradde.
 but 3e non thyng ne dyden Jt for his prow,
 but what the cause was, j schal tellen yt 3ow :

2640

for you feared
 his anger
 at your
 ignorance."

For wel 3e wysten that 3e scholden deye,
 but 3if that the trowthe 3e tolden, jn feye.
 and for that 3e cowden non othirwyse do,
 therefore 3e boden hym Swich a man to slo,
 and the Blood of hym al forto take,
 the wheche his Towr stonden Scholde make.
 and thus thowghten 3e that man to don sle,
 3oure-self to askapen, 3if it myhte be."

2648

The astrolo-
 gers are con-
 founded.

and whanne they herden the chyld thus seyn,
 Ful sore abasched weren they, certeyn,

	and wisten wel thanne forsothe anon that deyen scholden they everychon.	2652
Merlin continues:	" behold, Sire kyng," quod merlyne tho, " Now sen here 3e how this doth go, that these clerkys ne wilen not me don sle, with my blood 3owre towr j-mad to be, but that amonges hem loot is pere cast that for me they mosten deyen Jn hast. and now axeth hem 3if it be not so, for sekyr, how so the game now go, Non of hem js here so hardye jn my precense to maken ony lye. " Seyth he soth?" quod the kyng anon.	2656
the astrologers' object was not to make the tower stand, but to rid themselves of him.		
The astrologers confess,	" 3e, Sykerly," quod the clerkys everychon, " But we comen not weten, jn non degre, how that al this thyng knowen scholde he. Sire, we 3ow preyen as oure Soverein lord, alle we 3oure clerkes, be on acord, that owre lyves 3e wolden graunten vs here, tyl that the Sothe we myhten sen jn Fere, how that he Scholde this towr don stonde be ony werk of mannes honde."	2660 2664
and ask to be spared long enough to see the tower made to stand.		2668
Their request is granted.	" Now certes, lordynges," quod merlyne anon, " and tyl that 3e sen the same thyng don, and why that the towr doth so falle, Erst Schal there non deyen of 3ow alle." thanne thankede they merlyne everychon, alle these clerkis be on and be on.	2672
Merlin explains all about the tower:	thanne quod merlyne to kyng Fortager : " wylt thou now knowen the sothe her why that thy werk doth so down Falle, j schal openly it tellen amonges 3ow alle. Now herkene, Sire kyng, what j schal say : here vndir this crownd, j dar wel lay, There goth a water bothe sterne & gret, vndyr wheche water ben there 3et Tweyne wondirful Stowte dragowns, pe moste oryble that ben Jn ony Regiowns, of wheche on Js al whit, anothir is Red, of the dragowns that ben Jn that sted.	2676 2680
under the ground is a great water, and under the water two dragons,		2684
one white, the other red,		2688

- Aboven wheche dragowns there ben, certeyn,
 tweyne grete stones, that ben ful pleyn, 2692 with two
 that over-whelmen bothe dragowns, large flat
 whiche that ben so wondirful of faciouns. stones over
 and whanne thei Felen the water Sore peyse them;
 vppon hem bothe, & doth hem deseise, 2696 the dragons,
 thanne tornen they hem bothe with gret myht, annoyed by
 and meveth al the erthe evene vpryht, the pressure,
 whiche meveng that maketh thy werk to falle; turn, and
 this Scholen 3e knowen bothe gret and smalle. 2700 make the
 So that my borwes, aqwyt scholen they be, earth quake.
 And thy clerkis beheveded, ful trewe. [leaf 99 b]
 and therefore asaye 3if that J soth seye, Merlin ex-
 owther be ony weys that J do lye. 2704 horts the
 For of this mater thy clerkis knowen non thyng, king to test
 Ful Siker thou be, For alle here werkyng. the truth of
 "Now certes," quod Fortager to merlyne thanne, his words.
 "and this be soth, thou art a trewe manne, 2708
 and therto the wysest that Evere was bore
 of erthlych men that konnen of lore."
 "Now, merlyne," quod kyng Fortagere,
 "of on thing that thow wost tellen me here : 2712
 how that this erthe myhte be don away ;
 J preye the, merlyne, the Sothe me Say."
 "with cartes sone may jt be led henne,
 & vppon the Bakkes of many menne." 2716
 thanne kyng Fortager let ordeynen anon
 bothe cartes and werkmen many on.
 and merlyne comaunded there jn haste
 that the clerkys Scholden they kepen wel faste. 2720
 thus werkmen wrowhten bothe day & nyht,
 tyl that to this water they comen ful ryht.
 and whanne they hadden this water j-fownde,
 anon they tolden it the kyng that stownde. 2724
 thanne gan the kyng thedyr to gon
 with ful gret joye ryht anon.
 and merlyne with hym thedyr he ladde,
 For he wrowghte alle thyng as he hym badde. 2728

On the king's
question con-
cerning the
means of re-
moving the
earth,

Merlin re-
commends
carts and
carriers.

Labourers
work day
and night,
till they find
the water.

Then the
king goes
thither
with Merlin.

The king speaks admiringly of Merlin to his council.	and whanne thider j-come they weren echon, this merveillous water they behelden thusson. thanne to hym clepyd he his cownsaylle, and seide : “lordinges, with-owten Faylle, this child is wondir wis with-alle, that can thus tellen how it schal falle, and of this water that here now Js ; jt merveylleth me ful mochel, j-wys. and seith he that vndir this water so clere ben tweyne dragowns dwellyng jn fere. and 3it wot j Neuere what j schal do, tyl he som cownseyl 3eve me therto.”	2732
He then asks him about the removal of the water.	jt merveylleth me ful mochel, j-wys. and seith he that vndir this water so clere ben tweyne dragowns dwellyng jn fere. and 3it wot j Neuere what j schal do, tyl he som cownseyl 3eve me therto.” thanne cleped he merlyne to hym anon, of 3at water to weten what scholde be don. quod merlyne : “grete diches we scholen here make, wherthorwgh this water schal forth Schake, thorwh this medewe here anon, and thus this water schal forth gon.”	2736
Ditches are dug.	Thus weren these diches sone there mad, as merlyne it ordeynede, comaunded, and bad. and this water his cownseyl hadde, and be this craft juto othire contres ladde. thanne cam merlyne to kyng fortagere, and thus anon tolde hym there that—“also sone as the dragouns to-gyderes fele, be-twixen hem schal be-gynnen a sory mele, For they to-gederis ful sore scholen fylte, and the ton the tothyr Schal slen owt ryhte. and therfore Sende thou thy messengeris anon To alle thy Barowns now everychon, to sen this bataylle that schal ben here of these dragowns that scholen fyhten jn fere ; For the bataylle of hem and that chawnse Nis not with-owten gret Signifyawnse.”	2744
Merlin predicts that the dragons will fight, and that one will be killed.	thanne cam merlyne to kyng fortagere, and thus anon tolde hym there that—“also sone as the dragouns to-gyderes fele, be-twixen hem schal be-gynnen a sory mele, For they to-gederis ful sore scholen fylte, and the ton the tothyr Schal slen owt ryhte. and therfore Sende thou thy messengeris anon To alle thy Barowns now everychon, to sen this bataylle that schal ben here of these dragowns that scholen fyhten jn fere ; For the bataylle of hem and that chawnse Nis not with-owten gret Signifyawnse.”	2748
He wants all the barons to see the fight.	thanne cam merlyne to kyng fortagere, and thus anon tolde hym there that—“also sone as the dragouns to-gyderes fele, be-twixen hem schal be-gynnen a sory mele, For they to-gederis ful sore scholen fylte, and the ton the tothyr Schal slen owt ryhte. and therfore Sende thou thy messengeris anon To alle thy Barowns now everychon, to sen this bataylle that schal ben here of these dragowns that scholen fyhten jn fere ; For the bataylle of hem and that chawnse Nis not with-owten gret Signifyawnse.”	2752
Messengers are sent out.	thanne sente kyng Fortager forth anon his messengerys, as faste as they myliten gon, to warnen bothe Barown, bachelor, & knyht,	2756
		2760
		2764

- and alle othere that gon owther ryden myht.
 and whanne they weren assembled echon,
 thanne seide kyng Fortager to hem anon, 2768 The assembled people
are informed
of Merlin's
predictions,
 and tolde hem of manye a wondyr thyng
 That scholde be-falle be merlynes talkyng,
 And How the two dragowns to-gederes scholen fyhte, [leaf 99 c]
 and the ton the tothyr to slen anon Ryhte. 2772
 thanne ech to other seide, certeynle,
 that this bataylle were ful good to se.
 thanne axeden they of the kyng ful sone
 which of þe dragowns scholde on lyve gone. 2776 and wonder
which of the
dragons is to
survive.
 than answered hem the kyng ageyn :
 "that tolde he not me ȝit, jn certeyn."
 and whanne that this water owt was past,
 thanne bothe tho stones Syen they jn hast, 2780 The water be-
ing drained,
two stones
appear to
view.
 whiche vppon the dragowns weren there
 as that they lyen bothe Jn fere.
 thanne axede Fortager of merlyne anon
 how thyke stones a-wey myhte ben don. 2784 The king
asks how
these stones
can be re-
moved,
 "ȝis, ȝis," quod merlyne, "that Schal be do,
 and non man to harmen the worth of a slo.
 For they scholen meven nevere a del,
 Tyl that ech other may Felen Ryht wel ; 2788
 and thanne to-gederis Scholen they fyhte,
 Til the ton moste deyen be Ryhte."
 thanne axede the kyng which of hem tweyne
 whiche ded that scholde ben, certeyne. 2792 and which of
the dragons
is to die.
 "Jn here Bataylle there schal be
 Ful gret Signyfiance, J telle the,
 and that ful gladly j wyle the Schewe
 afrom thre of thy Barowns on a rowe." 2796
 thanne clepede Fortager to hym anon
 thre Barowns that he trostyd most vppon.
 Anon seide merlyne to hym thanne :
 "Trostist thou wel on these thre menne, 2800
 and ben they trewe of thy cownsaille,
 what so evere it may avaylle?"
 "ȝe, Sekerly, merlyne," quod Fortager,
 "non trewere knowe j neþer fer ne neer." 2804
 "thanne may J," quod merlyne, "tellen the

- of swich thyng as thow tellest me.
 J wele that thow knowe here, jn certayn,
 that the rede be the white schal ben slayn. 2808
 but fyrst gret peyne Schal he have,
 er from the rede he may gon save.
 and the deth of the rede dragoun
 Schal notyse ful gret Significacioun, 2812
 and the victorie of the dragoun so whyt.
 For the it is ful hard to knowen Jt,
 but tyl that the Bataylle be alle j-do,
 of this thing schalt thou knowen no mo." 2816
 whanne this peple thidir comen echon,
 Ful hastely hadden they vpe the ston.
 thanne Syen they this whyte dragoun,
 that was wondyr oryble of Faeyoun. 2820
 and whanne this peple this dragoun there say,
 they weren sore abaschet, alle with-owten nay.
 and whanne that thus they hadden J-do,
 To the tothyr ston wente they tho. 2824
 thanne the rede dragoun syen they there,
 that more oryble was thanne the toper were.
 thanne was the peple abasched wel more
 an hundred Fold thanne they weren to-fore; 2828
 For more Feers he was & more hydows,
 also more Egre, & mochel more Spytows,
 thanne the whyte was Jn ony degre,
 thus thowghte the peple, ful certeynle. 2832
 So that thowghte kyng Fortager
 that the rede the white scholde scomfyten ther.
 thanne seide merlyne to the kyng :
 "Now haue my borwes excused for alle thyng!" 2836
 "merlyne," quod Fortager, "so they be,
 Of alle thinges qwyt, ful Sekerle."
 Thanne to-gederis Rommen these dragouns tweyne
 Ful vigerously there, Jn certeyne, 2840
 with here teeth and here pawes so scharpe,
 that wondyr Jt is of here Fyhtyng to carpe.
 Fo[r] Neuere herden 3e telle jnto this day

Merlin tells
that the red
dragon shall
be slain,

and that his
death is of
great signifi-
cance.

One of the
stones is
removed,
and the white
dragon
appears.

Then they go
to the other
stone,
and find the
red dragon,
more horrible
than the
white,

and more
likely to win
the battle.

[leaf 99 d]
A terrible
struggle
begins;

- Of tweyne bestes swich anothir afray. 2844
 and thus veleynesly gonnen they fyhte
 al that day, tyl jt was Nyhte,
 and vpon the morwen, tyl it was day,
 So that al the peple that the bataylle say, 2848
 wenden þat the rede þe whyte scholde han slayn,
 so spetows was þe bataylle betwixen hem tweyn ;
 Tyl atte laste the white dragown
 caste fyr on þe rede abowtes jn vyrown, 2852
 and hym there brende to the ded ;
 So hadde the white victorie in that sted.
 and the thrydde day after next sewenge
 Deyde the white dragown, with-owten lesenge. 2856
 So that they seyden thanne everychon
 that so gret a merveille seyn they Neuere non.
 thanne quod merlyne to kyng Fortagere :
 “ Now begynne thy towr, and maket here 2860
 as gret as þou wylt, and also hy,
 For it schal neuere fallen, trewly.”
 Thanne comanded Fortager anon
 that jn haste this werk scholde be don. 2864
 So that this towr they maden ful hy,
 Ful large, and Ryht strong, sekerly.
 thanne of merlyne often axede þe kyng
 what of the dragouns was þe signefyeng. 2868
 “ Sire kyng, it is forto Signefye
 thynges þat han ben & scholen ben, trewelye ;
 and ȝif that thou wylt enswren me here
 me not to deseisen Jn non manere, 2872
 ne non man with-jinne thy kyngdom
 To don me non maner of distroccion,
 J schal the tellen the Signefyaunce
 a-for thy cownseyl, with-owten dowaunce.” 2876
 thanne kyng Fortager ensured hym anon,
 that Neuere harm to hym scholde be don.
 “ go thanne faste,” quod merlyne anon,
 “ and sende after thy cownseyl everychon, 2880
 and also after thy clerkis jn fere,

it lasts a day
and a night.

At length the
white dragon
burns up the
red ;

he expires,
himself, on
the third day.

The building
of the tower
can now be
continued.

Merlin is
asked about
the significa-
tion of the
dragons.

On condition
of personal
safety,

he promises
to explain
it all.

Councillors
and astrolo-
gers are
sent for.

To heren what that j schal seyen here."

thanne dede fortager his comaundement ;
and whanne they weren comen alle present, 2884

Merlin first
reproves the
astrologers
for under-
taking what
they cannot
accomplish.

thanne seide merlyne amanges hem alle :
" 3e clerkis ben folys, what so befallē,
to Entermeten 3ow of ony thyng,
but 3if 3e cowden bryngen it to endyng. 2888

and in as moche as folys that 3e be,
and fowle han faylled, ful certeinle,
3e ben worthy to haven 3owre gwerdon,
that 3e han deservyd be Ryht Reson. 2892

He tells of
their dark
studies,
and how the
devil has
shown them
that they
must die for
Merlin's
sake.

wel wot j 3e syen that j was bore,
but he that schewede it to 3ow thore,
schewed 3ow there ful openlye
that For me scholden 3e Nedys deye ; 2896

and also gret doel he schewed 3ow there,
For he hadde me lost jn swich manere ;
whiche was 3oure cause, ful certeynle,
to comaunden kyng Fortager me forto sle. 2900

He declares
he will make
the devil a
liar, if they
promise to
follow Mer-
lin's injunc-
tions.

[leaf 100 a]

but swych a lord j hope that j have,
thorwgh goddis helpe, me forto save ;
and the devel a lyere schal j make,
3e scholen neuere deyen for my sake, 2904
3if that Sewrawnce 3e wylen me do
of thyng that j schal speken 3ow vnto."

The astrolo-
gers are
delighte d.

Whanne that they Herdyn merlyne so seyn,
thanne ful of Joye weren they, ful pleyn, 2908
So of here deth excused to be,

and seiden to merlyne ful benygnele :
" what Ewere thou biddist vs to don,
we scholen it Fulfillen Ryht anon. 2912

For we knowen wel, with-owten lesynge,
that þou art the wysest man levenge."

Merlin com-
mands them
to give up
their prac-
tices,

" 3e scholen me ENSuren, Er that 3e gon,
of this craft neuere to Entermeten non. 2916

to confess,

and to do
penance.

and j comande 3ow alle jn fere
To ben confessid with herte clere,
and 3oure flesch to putten jn discepylyne
to strong subiecciown & to gret pyne, 2920
that 3owre Sowles ne dampned be ;

doth as j counseille ȝow, certeinle!"

So that they thankyd hym Everychon,
and grauntyd his comaundement to don.

2924 The astrologers gratefully assent.

Thus merlyne deliuered the clerkys Echon,
that hym deden seken for this Encheson.
thanne to merlyne spak kyng Fortagere :
"thou behyhgtest forto tellen me here
the signefycaciown of the dragowns tweyne."

They are released.

"The white dragown, j telle the certeyne,
Signefyeth here the sone of costantyn,
That falsly was browht to evele fyn."

2928

and whanne Fortager herde this,
Ful sore he was aschamed, J-wys.

Then Merlin explains that the white dragon signifies Pen-dragon.
Fortager feels confused.

Thanne seide merlyne to Fortager aȝe :

"and thou wylt konnen me non mawgre,
j schal the tellen the syngnefyauunce
of alle thynges, with-owten dowtaunce."

Merlin adds,

"here Js non man," quod Fortager thanne,

"but of my counseyl Every manne ;

2936

where-fore, Sire merlyne, j preye the

the syngnefyauunce that þou wost tellen me."

"The rede dragown here doth syngnefy
thyn owne persone, ful trewely ;

2940 before the whole council,

and why, Sire, and jn what manere,

J schal tellen the anon Ryht here.

wel knowest thou, kyng Fortagere,

that kyng costantynes children al jn fere

dwelden here aftyr here Fadris ded,

that hadden Neyther counseyl ne red.

and ȝif þou haddest don thy dever, trewely,

thou scholdest hem han kept ful tendyrly,

and to have ȝoven hem ful trewe cownsaylle,

that myhte ony thyng to the rewme avaylle.

and wel knowest thou jn what manere

the hertes of the peple thou hast geten here.

and whanne thou knew alle here Entent,

and that they loveden the, verament,

2944 that the red dragon is the king himself.

2948 He reminds him of the three princes,

2952 whom he ought to have protected ;

2956 the way he stole the people's hearts ;

- his refusal to
help the
young king; thanne, whanne thou knew this, certeynle,
From alle maner of Nedis thou withdrowh the. 2960
and whanne that the peple Sowhte socowr
of the to haven For here grete langowr,
and the desireden kyng forto han ben,
thou hem answeredest as þou schalt sen : 2964
Ful smotheliche and jn this manere
To hem thou answeredest, al jn fere,
that thow woldest neuere here kyng be,
whyles that the kyng lyvede, ful sykerle. 2968
Thanne they that thou toldest to this tale,
Thowghten the kyng to werkyn Bale,
and knewen wel be thy maner of spekyng
that thou desiredest the kynges mordryng ; 2972
and so hym they slown ful falsly.
thanne fledden bothe his bretheren ful prevyly
For the drede that they hadde of the.
and thus art thow kyng ful false, 2976
And thus the Regne thou occupyest With Wrong,
and gret distrocciown dost evere among.
thanne, whanne they comen agen to the
be whiche the kyng ded was, Sykerle, 2980
thanne distroyedest þou hem Everychon,
so that on lyve ne lefte not on.”
thanne seide the counseil to Fortager there :
“Herkene what merlyne seith now here.” 2984
“3is, Forsothe,” quod kyng Fortager,
“He seyth ful soth that he seith her.
and j knowe ful wel that thou art
a passing wis man jn Every part. 2988
but of on thing, merlyne, j preye to the
the sothe that thow wost tellen to me :
on what deth that J schal deye.”
“that kan j wel,” quod merlyne, “trewelye. 2992
have j not told to the the signyfaunce
of bothe dragouns, with-owten varyaunce ?
3it j wele that thou knowe be me
that the rede dragoun, Sykerle, 2996

2980. *ded*, the last *d* through correction.

2994. *varyaunce*, *v* corrected from *f*.

Signefyeth thyn owne persone,
 that was so strong and myhty of bone ;
 and the whit dragown signefieth, certeinle,
 the tweyne bretheren that now fled j-be,
 For drede that thou wost han hem slayn ;
 this js the signyfyauunce, Jn certayn.
 and why so longe they fowhten so snelle,
 the signyfyauunce j schal the telle :
 jt signyfieth that thou hast so long j-holde
 wrongfully here erytage *with* werkis bolde.
 and *pat* the white dragown *pe* Rede brende so,
 the same the children scholen the do.
 and knowe thou wel now, jn certeyn,
 that thike tyme thy towr stont but jn weyn,
 and the ne schal waraunte nonthyng, jn feye ;
 and jn this maner, Fortager, schalt thou deye."
 thanne, whanne Fortager herde this,
 anon he axede of merlyne, J-wys,
 where that thyke tweyne children be.
 "jn the see," quod merlyne, "ful Sykerle,
 with ful gret strengthe and gret Navye,
 jnto this lond to a-ryven, ful Sekerlye,
 veniance of the to taken here,
 that slowh here brothir jn swich manere.
 and wete þou wel, *with-jinne* thre monthis day
 they scholen aryven, sire, jn good fay !"

and of the
 whitedragon,
 3000

their long
 fight,
 3004

and the burn-
 ing of the
 red one.
 3008

Fortager asks
 where the
 princes are.
 3012

Merlin
 answers :
 "On the sea,
 on their way
 here,
 3016

to take ven-
 geance !"
 3020

Ful sory was kyng Fortager tho,
 whanne he herde tellen it scholde be so,
 and axede of merlyne anon Ryht
 3if that ony othirwyse it myhte ben dyht.
 "Nay, syker, Fortager," quod merlyne tho,
 "Non othirwyse now ne may it go."
 and whanne that fortager wiste al this,
 that tho children scholde comen, j-wys,
 thanne warnede he his peple anon
 that to hym scholden they comen ful son,
 aȝens that jlke same day
 That merlyne hym of tolde, *with-owten* Nay.

Chap. III.
 3024 King Forta-
 ger, greatly
 troubled,

3028

calls in his
 forces.
 3032

Fortager goes to Win- chester.	So that to wynchestre he gan to go, and al his power with him tho. but the cawse wiste neuere a man, but they that of his cownseyl weren than.	3036
Merlin goes to Northum- berland,	and whanne merlyne hadde endyd this mater, thanne took he his leve of kyng Fortager, and thanne forth to blase he gan to gon, and told hym of these merveilles echon.	3040
[leaf 100 c]	So that Blayse gan hem to Wryte, and jnto his Book forto endyte.	3044
and stays with Blasy.	So that merlyne with Blayse dwellede there, tyl þe bretheren aftyr hym gonnen enqwere. and kyng Fortager at wynchestre abod, as he be merlyne ferst vndirstood.	3048
The people of Winchester see a large fleet ap- proaching.	And that same day, with-owten lesynge, the peple of Wynchestre syen comenge Fer jn the see a ful gret Navye, where-offen they merveilled, ful trewelye ; jn whiche vesselys weren, certeynle, both costantynes sones, as j telle the.	3052
Fortager orders his men to defend the harbour.	and whanne that Fortager herde of this, Ful sore he was abasched, j-wys, and comaunded his men to armes anon alle so faste as they myhten gon, and also his port forto defende, therto he bad hem forto atende.	3056 3060
They perceive the banners of their right- ful king.	& whanne at the port they weren echon, thanne behelden they jn-to the se anon, and Syen here ryhtful kynges banere Ful openly displayed ryht there, wheche weren the armes of costantyn ; they knewen the gonfanouns wele & fyn. thanne merveillede this peple everichon how that this thing thus myhte be don.	3064 3068
The fleet lands.	So that these vesselis aryvede to londe, as J do 3ow to vndirstonde. and whanne to londe a-ryved they were, thanne axede the peple of hem there	3072

what manere of peple was there *with-june*.
 thanne answerid they, & wolde not blyne :
 "They ben the vesselis of Pendragown,
 that to this Rewm hath good Resown ; . 3076
 and also vter, his brothir so dere,
 jnto his Rewm *with* him cometh here
 of Fortager Forto taken veniaunce,
 that hem hath don ful gret Noysaunce, 3080
 and as a fals man, J vndirstond,
 vntrewely & vniostly halt he here lond."
 and whanne that the peple vndirstod this,
 that it was here owne lord, J-wys, 3084
 That with hym browhte so gret meyne,
 thanne weren they abasched, ful Sykyrle,
 and nolden non thyng azens hem do,
 Lest aftr it myhte hem tornen to moche wo, 3088
 and comen and seiden to Fortager,
 that azens hem wolden they not fyhten ther.
 and whanne Fortager this vndirstood,
 thanne for wraththe he was nyhe wood. 3092
 thanne spak he to his owne Men,
 that hym wolde not Forsaken than,
 the castel wel to kepen ouer alle thyng.
 so seyden they wolden, with-owten fayllyng. 3096
 thanne a-ryvede these schepis there anon,
 and the peple of the cuntre thider faste gonne gon,
 and azens hym they wenten be on acord,
 & there hym resceyveden as here lord. 3100
 thanne kyng Fortager with his meyne,
 to his castel wenten they ful hastyle.
 and there bothe bretheren be on asent
 hym vigerously asayllede, verament. 3104
 So that Pandragoun Fyr dede jn caste
 jnto that castel, that brende ryht faste,
 where-june this Fortager Syker was brent,
 as this storrye scheweth, verament. 3108
 And thus tooken bothe bretheryn Jn Fere
 harde veniaunce on here enemyes there.

Being told
that Pen-
dragon and
Uter have
come to take
vengeance on
Fortager,

the
treacherous
usurper,

they refuse
to fight.

Fortager,
mad with
rage,

exhorts his
adherers.

The people
receive their
lawful prince.

Fortager flees
to a castle.

The princes
attack it,

and set fire
to it.

Fortager
perishes in
the flames.

[leaf 100 d]

Fortager's kinsmen (see p. 52) are driven into another castle.	thanne the kynnes-men of Fortager vppon the crystene werreden ther, and the tweyne bretheren gonnen hem asaylle, and jnto a castel hem droven, Sauns faylle.	3112
The princes confer how to conquer it.	thanne took pandragon cownseyl there, and vter his brothyr, alle Jn fere, how that thiike castel they myhten wyne and Ek the peple that was with-jinne.	3116
Five barons who were present at the dragons' fight,	at whiche cownseyl fyve barouns there were, that to-foru tyme the dragouns syen fyhten there, and herden al the significaciown.	3120
tell the princes about Merlin,	how that merlyne tolde al & Som of tho tweyne dragouns to Fortager, To Pandragown and to his brothir they tolden ther, and of the merveylls Everychon that merlyne hem tolde be on and be on. "and wete 3e wel, Syres, that he Js on the wysest man, except god alon."	3124 3128
but do not know where to find him.	thanne seide Pandragown to these Barowns : " where dwellith that man & in whiche Regyowns ?" " we weten neuere," quod they ageyn, " where hym to fynden, Jn certeyn, Neþer jn what contre hym to have, also god oure sowles moot save ! and 3if he be owht jn this partye, we scholen hym fynde, wel Sekerlye."	3132 3136
Messengers are sent in search of him.	thanne forth sente pandragown anon messengeris, as faste as they cowde gon, To serchen al the lond owt ryht, 3if that there cowde ony wyht hem tellen merlyne Forto Fynde, that holden was so gentyl & kynde.	3140
Merlin meets them in a town, where they are taking a meal.	And merlyne, that knew al this ful wel, Tolde it to Blayse thanne everydel, and from Blayse thanne wente anon, & Forth to a town he gan to gon, there as the messengeris at mete were. and jn this cyse to hem cam he there :	3144 3148

3113. MS. *him*. 3130. *in* added above the line.3141. *ffynde*, *n* corrected from *y*.

- lik as a schepperde he hadde j-be,
 with a staf on his nekke, ful sekerle,
 and ek a peyre of ful Boystous schoon,
 vppon his Feet thanne were they doon,
 and vppon hym a clowted cote,
 that heng adown abowten his throte,
 and therto he hadde a ful gret berd,
 þerwith to han mad many men aferd,
 So that he Semede jn alle degre
 a man of evel lykyng, ful sekylre.
 and thus to þe same place he cam anon
 þere as þe messengeres eten everichon,
 and seide to hem Jn this manere :
 "Ful evel don 3e 3oure dever here
 and 3oure lordis arende also,
 Forto Seken merlyne that 3e scholden go."
 and whanne they herde thus hym Seyn,
 "what jn þe devellis name, be-hold this veleyn !
 where-offen with sorwe smateryth he
 of ony thing that to vs longeth forto be?"
 "jn feith," quod Merlyne thanne ageyn,
 "and j hym scholde seken, jn certeyn,
 J scholde hym Fynde Sonnere thanne 3e,
 j telle 3ow, Sires, ful Sykerle."
 thanne resen these messengeris anon,
 and toward merlyne they gonne to gon,
 & him þere axede anon Ryht
 3if he him knew be day oper be Nyht.
 "3ys, Forsothe, J Knowe Hym Ryht Wel
 and al his abydyng every del.
 but that he tolde me, Jn certeyn,
 that 3owre travaylle was but jn veyn ;
 For thowgh 3e fownden him jn this contre,
 with 3ow wolde he not gon, Sykerle.
 but goth to 3owre lord now ageyn faste,
 and that the castel to taken he have non haste,
 tyl that Augwys be ded other slayn,
 of wheche castel he js lord, certayn.

He appears
in the shape
of a shepherd,

3152

3156

with a huge
forbidding
beard,

3160

and tells them
that they do
their duty
badly.

3164

They are
indignant.

3168

He adds that
he could find
Merlin
quicker than
they.

3172

They then
rise and ask
if he knews
him.

3176

[leaf 101 a]
"Yes," says
Merlin,

3180

3184

"but he
would not
go with you.
Tell your lord
to leave the
castel, till
Augwis is
dead,

3166. MS. *devellisname*.3176. *he* corrected from *they*.

—two of
those five
barons are
dead
already—

and wete 3e wel that of thyke barownes fyve
there ben but thre now left on lyve, 3188

that Ferst tolden the kyng of merlyne,
whiche that cowde so mochel of devyne.
and perfore to 3owre lord that 3e telle,
what maner aventure so hym befalle, 3192

and to come
here him-
self."

3if that merlyne he wyle with speke,
jnto this contre hym-Self meste reke,
and aftyr him Serchen jn market & town
abowtes al this contre Jn vyrown." 3196

The messen-
gers look at
each other
in surprise,
and Merlin
disappears.

The messengeris vndirstoden riht wel
what to hem that seide merlyne Everydel,
an ech of hem on other lokede welfaste ;
thussonne merlyne owt of here syhte was pastē. 3200
thanne spoken they to-gederes hem be-twene :
"with the devel haven we spoken, j wene.
what Scholen we don of this mateer
That he to vs spak of now heer?" 3204

They resolve
to return
home.

"Infeyth," quod on of that compenye,
"To owre lord welfaste we scholen vs hye,
and aforn hym to rehersen we scholen ben bolde
every word as this man hath vs tolde." 3208

Before the
king and his
retinue,

and forth they ryden Everychon,
Tyl jnto that ost they comen anon
There as the kyng was with his meyne ;
Streyht to hym comen they, ful Sykerle. 3212

they tell what
has happened.

whanne þat kyng Pandragoon gan be-holde,
For joye he be-gan his armes to Folde,
and hem axede anon there presente :
"han 3e owht Fownde for that 3e wente?" 3216

"The sothe to tellen we 3ow Enswre,
how it vs happede, and what aventure."
That tolden they the kyng, with-owten lak,
jn what maner this veleyn to hem Spak. 3220

Those ac-
quainted with
Merlin,
marvel at
the hideous
shape of the
soothsayer,

thanne they that herden hem speken jn this manere,
that to-forn tyme knewen merlyne there,
Merveyllede that ony so hydows a man
to hem swich materis Scholde meven than. 3224
For they wisten not, with-owten dowlance,

- that merlyne cowde taken ony *oper* semblaunce
 but onlyche his owne Jn properte ;
 Of this merveyleden they, ful certeynle. 3228
 but thanne wisten they there ageyn
 that no man ne cowde not, jn certeyn,
 tellen of tho wondris alle
 Sauſ on[l]y merlyne, how so befalle. 3232
 thanne axeden [they] þe messengeris jn hye
 jn what maner of contre that they hym sye.
 thanne answerede the messengeris ageyn :
 “ To oure Jn he cam, Jn certeyn, 3236
 there as we eten, 3e mown vndirstond,
 jn the contre of Northhumberlond.”
 thanne seiden they holiche, al that rowte,
 that jt was merlyne with-owten dowte, 3240
 & that he desirede aftyr here knoweng,
 onliche that there him scholde seken the kyng.
 and whanne they comen jnto Northhumberlond,
 as J do 3ow vtterly forto vndirstond, 3244
 Non tydynges ne cowden they heren ther
 of merlyne, the devyn, nethir Fer ne Ner.
 and as the kyng there gan forth to Ryde
 Jn his jornes be eche a syde, 3248
 and as thorwgh a pleyn he gan to gon
 and wíth him his meyne everichon,
 they syen a drove of bestes ful gret
 and therto an herdeman keping that hepe. 3252
 so that they axede hym anon
 whens he was, & whedir he wolde gon,
 “ Sires, j do 3ow to vndirstonde
 that j am of Northhumberlonde. 3256
 and Rihtnow a good man cam to me,
 and seide that kyng Pandragon sikerle
 jn this contre a man scholde Seke
 that is bothe wys, good, and meke.” 3260
 “ that is fulsoth,” quothen they thanne,
 “ kanst þou vs owht tellen of that manne ? ”

but under-
stand that
no one but
Merlin can
have told
such things.

Hearing that
the incident
took place in
Northumber-
land,

all feel con-
vinced.

The king
goes to
Northumber-
land in
[leaf 101 b]
search of
Merlin.

One day they
see a herd
with a drove
of cattle.

The herd
speaks to the
king's men
about Merlin.

3232. MS. *ony*. 3233. MS. *axeden þe*.

3237. *there*, the first *e* blurred.

3241. & added in the left margin. 3244. *vtterly*, *v* blurred.

	thanne answerid this vyleyn ageyn :	
The herd says he has some news to im- part to the king privately,	“ 3e, and J mylite sen the kyng, jn certeyn, j wolde hym tellen of swich tydyng of wheche to 3ow j ne wele Schewen non thing.”	3264
	“ thanne com <i>with</i> me,” quod this good man, “ and to the kyng j wele schewen the anon.”	3268
	thanne quod this vileyn to him ageyn :	
	“ my bestes scholde j Evele kepen, jn certein ; but 3if he wele comen hidir to me, J schal hym tellen, ful certeinle,	3272
but is not willing to leave his cattle.	Where he schal fynde that ilke persone For whom jnto this contre he is gone.” thanne departyd he from this vileyn anon,	
The king is informed,	and to the kyng streyht is he gon, and tolde the kyng jn Wordis fewe the Wordis of the vilein al on rewe.	3276
	“ Anon lede me thedyr,” quod the kyng, “ and lete vs make non lengere taryeng !”	3280
and comes quickly to the spot.	thus thanne ladde he forth þe kyng jn hye to that same herdeman, ful trewelye. thanne seide this goodman to that vyleyn :	
	“ lo, Felawe, here is the kyng, certeyn ; Now telle him here thy lykyng, For siker þou be, this is the kyng.”	3284
“ Thou seek- est Merlin,” says the herd.	“ Sire kyng, forsothe J telle now the that merlyne thou sekyst, ful sekyrle. but to fynden he is ful ylle, but 3if hym-self wile concente þertylle.	3288
“ Go into the nearest town, and he shall come to thee.”	And therefore jnto the nexte town thou go, and thussone he schal comen the to. with the [to spe]ken þere wil he ful ryht, J sey the tr[ewe]ly, ful gentyl knyht.”	3292
	“ how schal j hym knowen ?” quod the kyng, “ but 3if of hym J hadde som tokenyng ?”	3296
	“ Sire kyng, 3if that thou leve not me, Sey ellis of Fals cownseyl that j be !”	
The king believes him.	“ J Mistroste not,” quod the kyng tho, “ But that it is trewe thou seist me to.”	3300

3293-94. Hole burnt in the paper.

3300. *it*, corrected from *is*.

- so paste the kyng thanne forth anon
 owt of þat forest, to towne gan he gon.
 And thussone to hym cam there
 a semly man, arayed jn onest manere,
 and seide: "sire kyng, welfownde 3e be!
 Merlyne, the devyn, sente me to the,
 and sente the to seyne, ful sekerlye,
 that the same was merleyne, trewelye,
 whiche kepte the bestes Jn here pasture,
 And, sire, be this tokene, J 3ow ensure,
 that to towne scholde he comen to the,
 whanne þou of hym haddest nede, sikerle.
 But non gret mester 3it Hast thow,
 and of goode tydynges J schal tellen the now,
 that merlyne sente the to say
 by me, sire kyng, this same day.
 knowe thow wel, for certeynlye,
 that kyng haugwis is ded, trewelye,
 and þat thy brothir vter hath hym slayn,
 wite thou wel this, pandragon, jn certayn."
 and whanne the kyng herde this,
 Ful mochel thanne he merveilled, j-wys.
 "Js this trewe that thou tellest me?"
 "Sire, 3e, for he wyle not lyen, sykerle,
 and a fool thou art, but thou it leve,
 For here-offen the sothe wel schalt þou preve."
- 3304 In the town
there comes
a seemly
man,
- 3308 who tells that
the herd and
Merlin are
the same
person,
- 3312 that Merlin
will visit him
in time of
need,
[leaf 101 c]
- 3316
- 3320 and that
Augwis has
been slain.
- 3324 The king is
surprised.
- 3328 He sends
messengers
to ascertain
the truth.
- 3332 They meet
other
messengers,
who bring
the news
of Augwis'
death.
- 3336

3326. *preve* ; before is a crossed-out *b*.3336. MS. *tornede in*.

- jn what maner vter haugwys hadde. siayn.
 thanne charged the kyng hem ful hyghly
 that this thing, algates to kepen Jt prevy, 3340
 and merveillede gretliche ouer alle thyng
 how merlyne of this scholde haue knoweng,
 and Jn his herte merveilled ful gretle
 Jn what maner that haugwys ded scholde be, 3344
 and thowhte of merlyne more to enqwere,
 3if of that mater he cowde tellen hym there.
 so that al a day jn that town gan he abyde,
 and as from the mynstre he cam þat tyde, 3348
 with hym there mette a semly man,
 and to kyng Pandragon he seide than :
 "Sire kyng, al heyl and wel thou be!
 here jn this town what thyng seken 3e?" 3352
 "j abyde merlyne," quod the kyng,
 "with hym to haue som maner of spekyng."
 "Sire kyng," quod this good man thanne,
 "j ne hold 3ow not 3it so wys a manne 3356
 merlyne to knowen, thowgh 3e hym sye,
 J sey 3ow, sire kyng, ful sekylrlye.
 and þerfore clepeth hem that him han se,
 and axe of hem 3if that merlyne j be." 3360
 So that the kyng, for hem he sente anon,
 and toforn hym comen they Everychon.
 "Lordynges," quod the kyng to hem thanne,
 "here byden we merlyne, þat worthy manne. 3364
 Js þere ony of 3ow that hym kan knowe,
 and he here stood jn this Rowe?"
 "Forsothe, sire kyng, that may not be
 but 3if we hym Syen, ful sikerle." 3368
 thanne seide this goodman to the kyng :
 "this were now a wondirful thing,
 how that anothir man they scholde knowe,
 whanne þat hem-self they konnen neþer hy ne lowe." 3372
 thanne answered these lordis ageyn :
 "his werkis we knowen not, jn certeyn,
 but his Semblaunce we knowen ful wel,

- and we hym syen everydel." 3376
- thanne seide this goodman to hem ageyn :
- "how scholde ȝe ony man knowen, jn certeyn,
but ȝif ȝe knowen his Semblaunce ?
- This Were to me a Wondyrful chawnce." 3380 [leaf 101 a]
- thanne clepede merlyne the kyng anon,
and jnto a prevy chambre they gonne to gon,
and seide : "sire kyng, J am joyful of the
and of ȝoure brothyr, sire, ful certeinle. 3384
- For J am the same persone, with-owten dwere,
that ȝe comen forto Seken here.
- Now goth owt of this chambre anon,
and ledeth me toforn hem Echon 3388
- that tolden to ȝow they cowde knowen me,
and they alle wylen seyn, ful sykerle,
that ȝe haven fownden the same merlyne
whiche that they clepen the goode devyne." 3392
- thanne wente Pandragown forth anon,
and clepid his meyne everychon.
- thanne took merlyne his owne Semblaunce,
that he to-forn hadde, with-owten variaunce. 3396
- and thanne, anon as they hym Sye,
they seiden it was merlyne, trewlye.
- "thanne avyse ȝow wel," quod the kyng,
"that it be merlyne with-owten lesyng." 3400
- and they seiden : "wel we hym knowe
among alle this peple jn this rowe."
- "j wolde fayn weten," quod the kyng,
"ȝif j evere to ȝow spak ony thyng,
er that j cam jnto this town ;
of this wolde j fayn knowen ȝe Resown."
- "Sire," quod merlyne to the kyng thanne,
"For certeyn, J am the same manne 3408
- that walkede ȝondir jn ȝone forestes,
kepyng alle tho forseid bestes.
- also the same man am J
that told ȝow of haugwys, trewely." 3412
- thanne seide the kyng to hem ageyn :
- "Evele knowen ȝe merlyne, jn certeyn !"
- thanne axede the kyng of merlyne there

Merlin takes
the king into
a private
room,

repeats who
he is,

and asks to
be brought
before the
retinue
again.

Merlin
assumes his
natural
shape,

and is recog-
nized by all.

In answer to
the king's
question,

he says he is
the same as
the cowherd,

and the same
who told him
of Angwis'
death.

- how of augwis he knew and jn what manere. 3416
- Merlin further tells how he warned Uter against Augwis,
 "Sire," quod merlyne, "as it not ben scholde,
 Augwys vter mordred han wolde.
 Anon to thy brothyr j wente jn hye,
 and told hym al his purpos vtterlye, 3420
 and how that augwys hym ordeynede to sle;
 al this j told hym, ful Sykerle.
 and 3it he ne wolde not me beleve,
 tyl that the sothe him-self dede preve. 3424
 so that 3owre brothir wook alone al nyht,
 tyl that the sothe he preven myht,
 and evere awayted the comenge
 of Augwis, þat was so crewel a kynge. 3428
- how Uter kept awake all night,
 thanne atte laste cam this haugwis
 jnto vteris pavyloun, þat was of prys.
 and 3oure brothir let hym entren anon,
 with a scharpe knyf drawen, jnto his won, 3432
 hym forto hauen slayn, verayment.
 so þat vter he sowhte al abowtes þe tent,
 but he ne cowde hym not Fynde,
 wherfore he mornede jn his mynde. 3436
 and owt a3en he wolde han gon,
 but 3oure brothir mette with hym anon.
 So there fowhten they to-gederis, jn certayn,
 and how Augwis was killed.
 that vter, 3oure brothyr, hath hym slayn." 3440
- Whanne that the kyng herde al this,
 anon he axede of hym, j-wis,
 jn what Semblance he myhte be,
 whanne that with his brothir spak he. 3444
- Merlin was on that occasion in an old man's shape.
 [leaf 102 a]
 "Sire," quod Merlyne thanne a-geyn,
 "Jn lykenesse of an old man, certeyn."
 "Tolde 3e Owht hym What man 3e Were?"
 "Nay, sire," quod merlyne, "jn non manere;
 Nethyr he ne schal not it knowen for me,
 tyl 3owre-Self it hym telle, ful Sikerle." 3448
- The king asks Merlin to go with him.
 Thanne seide to hym Pandragown, the kyng:
 "Now, dere Frend, j preye 3ow ouer alle thyng
 that 3e wyleu now gon with me,
 For of 3oure cownseyl have j nede, parde." 3452

- "Sire, thanne sone wyle 3oure meyne wroth be,
 3if that 3e Welen owht leven on me." 3456 Merlin re-
plies that the
courtiers
would object,
- "merlyne, 3e han so mochel to me told
 of vter, my brothir, many fold,
 that 3if it now soth be,
 For evere schal j now leven on the." 3460
- "thanne vndirstonde 3e, *with-owten* varyaunce,
 pat J to 3owre [brothir] schal speken jn the same semblaunce
 that J was, whanne j hym tolde, certeyn,
 how that haugwys hym wolde han slayn, 3464 but promises
to speak
again with
Uter in that
same shape
of an old
man,
- and that *with-june* this viij dayes it schal be."
 "thanne preye j 3ow, merlyne, for charite,
 that j moot knowen the same Face,
 whanne 3e with hym speken jn ony place." 3468
- "that scholen 3e, Sire, with good wille.
 but of on thyng J Sey 3ow vntille :
 that 3if Evere ony love 3e wyle haven of me,
 So that 3e kepen Jt Jn prevyte." 3472 and to let the
king know.

- Thus aqweyntyd merlyne with Pendragown,
 and of hym took leve Jn that town.
 So Forth to Blasye he gan to gon,
 and dide hym it putten jn scripture anon, 3476 Merlin and
Pendragon
part.

The former
goes to Blasy,
- that so be hym knowen we this storye,
 wheche to vs is put Jn memorye.
 And Pandragown held forth his weye,
 tyl that to his brothyr he cam, jn feye. 3480 the latter
returns home.
- & whanne that vter his brothyr Say,
 Ful mochel Joye he made that day,
 and took the kyng anon on side,
 and pere hym tolde that ilke tyde 3484 Uter relates
of Angwis'
death.
- how that haugwis he had slayn,
 lik as merlyne him ferst hadde told, certeyn.
 "Now, goode brother, what myht he be,
 That ferst discured to 3ow þis destyne?" 3488 The king
inquires
about the
man who
gave the
warning.
- "Now, so me god helpe," quod vter thanne,
 "j merveillede neuere so mochel of manne.

3462. MS. *3owr' schal.*

3487-88. These two lines were omitted and then written up the margin.

Uter is surprised that the king should know anything about this,

Of that 3e me Seyn jn this throwe 3491
whiche j wende neuere but that god and j hadde knowe.

and therfore I preye 3ow, for charyte,
how that 3e jt wiste, now telleth me."

"J seye 3ow sekerly," quod Pandragown,

"j Jt now knowe be good Resown. 3496

but, brothir vter, what good man was he
that from the deth warawnted the?"

"be the oth þat j owe to 3ow, my kyng,
j schal 3ow trewly seyn, to my knoweng. 3500

j not what maner of man jt was,

but says that the warner seemed to be a good man.

but a good man he semede jn Every plas,
and therefore the bettere j gan hym leve,
For aftyr, the sothe he dede me preve." 3504

"Cowde 3e hym knowen," quod Pandragown tho,
"jn ony place and he to-fore 3ow go?"

"3e, sire, forsothe," quod vter thanne,
"J schal hym knowen to-forn anothir manne." 3508

The king tells that on a certain day the same man will call again.

"wel, Sire vter, thanne warne j the
that with-jnne xij dayes he wyle here be,
and only with 3ow wil he speke,
and to 3ow his herte wyle he breke. 3512

but of on thing j preye 3ow, certeinle :

Uter promises to remain in the king's presence the whole of that day.
[leaf 102 b]

that al that day 3e ben to-forn me,
that j myhte knowen, as wel as 3e,
what maner of man þat so he be." 3516

And vter be-hyghte that so he Wolde,
and not to letten for 3ong neþer olde.
and thus bothe the bretheren Jn fere
of diuers materis spoken there. 3520

and merlyne forth to Blasye wente,

Merlin informs Blasye of the last events,

and tolde hym alle these poyntes, veramente,
how the tweyne bretheryn of hym goune speke,
& how þat vter of his fo gan hym wreke, 3524

and how that Pandragown wolde hym asaye
be many poyntes and many a waye.
thanne axede blasie of merlyne there
how they lyveden and jn what manere. 3528

3492. The first *j* added above the line.

3527. *blasie* added above the line.

- thane seide merlyne to blasie ageyn
 that—"bothe ben they 3onge men, jn certeyn,
 and gret nede they haven of good cownsaylle
 of swich a man that myhte hem awaylle. 3532
 but fyrst jnto mirthe j wolde hem drawe
 with lawghenges & boordes to maken hem fawe.
 For j wot wel where woneth a fayr lady
 that vter Loveth, *paramours*, trewely, 3536
 and so streyht to hym wyl j gon
 with a lettre from his love anon.
 For j knowe alle the wordis preve
 that betwixen hem to-fore tyme hath be." 3540
 And þe xj day thanne next Sewenge,
 To cowrt cam merlyne faste rennenge
 jn liknesse of a groom messenger
 that from his Love to hym cam ther, 3544
 and seide: "my lady greteth 3ow wel
 with herte and Body everydel,
 and sente 3ow here a lettre to nede
 alone be 3oure-self jn prevy stede." 3548
 thanne took vter this lettre, verament,
 and wende his love hadde it hym sent,
 and ryht gret Joye he gan to make
 of þe lettre for his loves sake. 3552
 thanne spak the lettre jn this manere,
 þat the messenger he scholde lestene & here
 and trowen that he to hym seide,
 For so on hym hire arende sche leyde. 3556
 and this messenger tolde many prevy thyng
 that vter had offen ryht good knoweng,
 so that þe bettyr wil hadde he to dwelle
 For thinges þe messenger gan hym telle. 3560
 thus alday taryede kyng Pandragown,
 Tyl the lyht of day was ny agon,
 and merveilled of merlynes taryenge,
 and why that so Longe was his dwellenge. 3564
 thus sone merlyne drowh hym on syde,
 and þere took anothir lyknesse that tyde,

of life and
 character of
 the princes,

and of his
 own plans for
 the nearest
 future.

On the fixed
 day,
 Merlin comes
 running to
 court as a
 messenger
 from Uter's
 lady-love.

The delighted
 prince takes
 the letter
 supposed to
 be sent by
 her,

and listens
 privately to
 the bearer.

Pendragon
 wonders at
 Merlin's
 delay.

Merlin calls
 Uter's
 attention:

3531. *cownsaytt*, *a* corrected from *e*.

3539. *preve*, the first *e* corrected from *y*.

he stands there now in the warner's shape (cf. l. 3446).	Evene the same fygure and semblaunce as whanne he warned vter of his chaunce.	3568
Uter em- braces him,	Anon as vter him gan be-holde, he hym knew and jn armes gan folde, and preyede hym for alle cowrtesye with hym to abyden stedfastlye, and that he wolde speken <i>with</i> the kyng with-owten ony more taryeng.	3572
and fetches Pendragon.	thanne tolde vter to Pandragown that this good man was comen to town. thanne axede the kyng of vter there 3if it were the same jn alle manere. "3e, sire," quod vter, "with-owten dowte." so forth wenten they bothe jn þat rowte,	3576 3580
Both princes are full of joy.	and comen bothe to this good man, and þer of hym gret joye made than. "wile 3e þat j to my brothir vter proclame what man 3e ben and what is 3oure name?"	3584
[leaf 102 c]	"3e, sire, J Wyle Wyth Ryht good Wylle that to 3oure brothyr 3e seyn it vntylle." thanne seide Pandragown to his brothyr dere :	
Pendragon informs his brother that their visitor is the wisest of men,	"known 3e owht this man that is here? J telle 3ow, brothir, ful certainlye, that this is the wisest man, trewlye, that here on lyve may now be, Of whom we han gret mester, ful sikerle. For sweche konneng hath this man, as here to-forn hym tellen j 3ow kan.	3588 3592
and that the warner and the letter- carrier are the same person.	for to 3ow cam non other messengere but only this man that Js here. and þe lettres tok 3ow this same man that seide how he from 3oure love cam." thanne abascht hym vter ful sore, and of that man he wondred thore.	3596 3600
Uter is incredulous.	"how may j beleven this jlke thyng? this were to me gret merveylyng!" "As wel mown 3e knownen this jlke dede as of oþer thinges þat he to 3ow afore seide."	3604

- thanne seide vter : "ful certeynle,
 j kan not beleven that this scholde ben he."
 the kyng preide merlyne jn wordis fewe
 that som maner of tokenyng he wold hym schewe. 3608 The king
appeals to
Merlin.
- "Goth forth from me," quod merlyne, "henne,
 and anon j schal don hym me kenne.
 For j wele proven hym þe same semblance
 Of that Garsown, *with*-owten varyaunce." 3612
- And forth he wente thanne anon,
 and þat same semblance he took thusson,
 & cam to vter and took his leve,
 For that þe sothe he scholde preve. 3616
- "brother, the sothe knowen not now 3e,
 that this same verray man Js he
 that tolde how haugwis wolde 3ow han slayn?"
 "3is, ful sekyr 3e ben, brothyr, jn certeyn ; 3620 Uter is
convinced
- For bothe wete 3e wel and vndirstonde
 that he knoweth thinges jn dyvers londe,
 bothe that is to comen and that js gon,
 For of aventures kan he tellen manyon. 3624 and praises
Merlin's
wisdom.
- wherefore, brothir, we welen hym preye
 with vs to dwellen, be ony weye ;
 For aftyr his werkyng we len we do
 of alle thinges that vs longen vnto." 3628
- thanne bothe bretheren gonne hym beseche
with hem to dwellen, with ful fayr speche.
 "For so mochel to vs hauen 3e told
 of dyvers thinges manyfold, 3632
- wherefore that j beleve 3ow wel ;
 and that 3e wolden everydel
 Taken governaunce of my brothir and me ;
 and it 3ow likede, it myhte so be." 3636 and be their
governor.
- thanne answerede hem a3en merlyne :
 "this schal j granten 3ow wel and fyne,
 but j wile that 3e knowen, certainly,
 of myn doying prevyly. 3640 Merlin
complices.
- For 3it most j gon forther mo
 to the hed of Gret Breteigne, how so j do.

3626. *dwellen*, *w* corrected from *e*.3635. *my*, *M* roughly corrected from *B*.3642. *of* added above the line.

Merlin promises his help in all troubles,

but weteth wel that j schal haue knowenge
Of alle 3owre nedis, with-owten varienge ; 3644

and Neuere deseisse schal j be 3ow se,
but that j schal helpen 3ow, Sekerle.
and perfore chargeth not whanne j go,
For schortly schal j comen 3ow to. 3648

and wishes to be openly welcomed when he comes to court.

and whanne that j come jnto 3oure howshold,
loke þat 3e joyen many fold
afor 3owre meyne jn my Syht,
That there-offen mowe knowen Every Wyht." 3652

[leaf 102 d]

He goes

Thus belefte merlyne with the kyng,
and with his Brother vter was dwellyng.
so atte laste from hem wolde he gon, 3655

and comes,

jn swich semblaunce þat they myhten hym knowen echon.

So that whanne a3en he cam,
of hym made joye bothe child & man,
and wenten and tolden to the kyng
at eche tyme of merlynes comyng. 3660

and is always received with joy.

and algates whanne þe kyng þere-of herde,
Ful mochel joye of hym he ferde.

and algates wente hym forto mete,
were jt jn feld oþer Jn strete, 3664
and gret joye of hym made.

and ek al the meyne was ful glade,
and token the kyng anon on syde,
& thore hym tolde þat Ilke tyde 3668

that he was the beste devyn, trewly,
except god that is al-myhtty.

The people want his advice with regard to the besieged castle.

" Now preyeth hym, Jn alle wyse,
that he wolde tellen 3ow jn what gyse 3672

how that the castel to bryngen to ende,
and how this werre atte laste schal wende,
and of his kyn to haven victorye ;
of this axe 3e hym, ful certeynlye." 3676

the kyng answerede hem ageyn
that ryht gladliche he wolde it seyn.

whanne the thrydde day j-comen was,

- the cownseyl assemblede al jn on plas.
 thanne the kyng aforn his cownseil
 Enqwered of merlyne wondirly wel :
- “Now, dere Frend,” quod the kyng thanne,
 “J knowe 3ow For Ryht a wys manne,
 and for the beste devyn J 3ow knowe
 jn al this world, owthyr hyghe oþer lowe.
 that 3e wolden me tellen, j 3ow preye,
 of diuers thynges that J schal seye,
 and how this castel that j schal have,
 and Ek my meyne, to kepen hem save.”
 thanne answeride merlyne a-geyn :
- “Syre, j wolde that 3e wisten, ful fayn :
- For sethen his kynnes-men haugwis hadden lost,
 Sethen that tyme maden they non bost,
 ne rekken but lytel, the sothe to say,
 owt of this lond to gon here way ;
 and to morwe vndir trewe hem besende,
 thanne fulsone schole 3e knowen the Ende,
 how they scholen profren to 3elden ageyn
 al þat they holden of 3oure fadyr, certeyn.
 but 3it scholen 3e not don so,
 For whanne here answer cometh 3ow vnto,
 3e scholen 3ow offren hem to conveye
 be sauf coundit and be ryht weye,
 and owt of 3oure lond hem don lede,
 and scheping hem ordeynen jnto what stede,
 jnto what contre that they wylen gon ;
 thus to hem scholen 3e answeren anon.”
 thanne the kyng Sente forth vlfyn
 and thre other knyhtes with hym ;
 and merlyne hem charged with this massage,
 as they weren knyhtes of hygh parage.
- 3680 The king's
council as-
sembles,

and Merlin is
consulted
3684

3688
about the
castle.

Merlin
replies :
3692 “Augwis’
kinsmen are
now willing
to leave the
country.

3696
Parley with
them !

They will
first offer to
3700 remain as
vassals.
But do not
accept this
offer !

3704
Let them go
away !”

3708
The king
accordingly
sends Ulfyn
(cf. ll. 4745 ff.)
and three
other knight-
as negoti-
ators.
3712

Forth these messengeris token here way
 Streylt to the castel, as J 3ow say.
 and whanne they with-jnne syen hem comenge,
 a3ens hem they comen *with*-owten taryenge,
 and axede of hem 3if—“messengeris 3e be ?”
 thanne vlfyn answerede & seide : “3e,

3716 The people in
the castle
receive them,

- listen to their message, the kyng 3ow sente be vs to seyn
that thre wykys trwys scholen 3e hauen, certeyn." 3720
"thanne to counseyl scholen we go,
To wyten how that we mown do.
- [leaf 103 a]
consider their
own helpless
condition, Ryht Wondirfully sore Anoyed We be
of haugwis deth, ful certeynle ; 3724
and therto hauen we non vytaylle
hire forto abyden, sires, saunsfaylle,
Neþer non Refrescheng we mown have
of oure frendis here vs to save ; 3728
and jnto swich a day 3e grauntyn vs trewe,
but here to abyden, it wolde vs rewe.
For it were ful evel soioernenge
jn a place with-owten vytayllynge. 3732
- and offer to
yield up the
castle but we hym don to vndirstonde
that this castel [we] deliueren jnto his honde,
and al the lond that longeth therto,
and we of hym to holdyn it for euere mo, 3736
- and pay an
annual
tribute. and þerto Every 3er hym forto 3elde
thrytty knyhtes with spere and schelde,
an hundryd destreres, & as many of palfray,
and an hundrid fawkowns, the sothe to say." 3740
And they acordyd alle Jn on.
- The negotia-
tors bring
back this
answer. so with this answeere wente þe messengeres anon,
and tolden the kyng word and ende,
of this castel how it scholde wende. 3744
and whanne the kyng herde here answeere,
anon he axede of merlyne riht there
what were here-offen best forto do.
- Merlin
repeats his
previous
advice. "3e," quod merlyne, "thow schalt not don so, 3748
For gret peryl it myhte be jn tyme comenge,
and stille jn this lond they weren dwellenge.
but j schal tellen the what thou schalt do :
anon sende a3en, with-owten mo, 3752
and bidde hem delyveren that castel,
For therto anon they scholen ben Lel,
For they ne hauen non maner of vytaylle,
J seye 3ow, Sires, with-owten faylle. 3756

- and behote 3e hem that they scholen gon
 sauf with here lyves Everychon ;
 And J 3ow Seye, wyth-owten Noye,
 that schal ben to hem a passyng joye." 3760
 thanne the kyng aftyr merlynes sawe
 wrowht on þe morwe, whanne the day gan clawe,
 Forth forto beren this answare
 to hem that jn þe castel weren there. 3764
 and whan they of the castel herdyn this,
 thanne maden they bothe joye and blys,
 and weren cowndyed thorwgh the Lond,
 and browht to the se, as j vndirstond,
 and a redy Navye hem forth to lede
 Jnto what lond owþer jnto what stede
 that hem-selve they wolde to gon.
 thus weren they Exyled Everychon
 onliche be the cownseyl of merlyne,
 that was holden so good a devyne. 3768
 thus was merlyne conseilour and lord
 of the kyng & his brothyr, at on word ; 3776
 Tyl on an day there was to do
 of thinges þat scholde come þe kyng vnto,
 where-offen tweyne Barowns hadden Envye,
 that with the kyng he spak so prevylle,
 and seiden : "sire kyng, we merveillen Echon
 that 3e so beleven vppon this man.
 For wete 3e wel, sire kyng, in certeyn,
 that al his werkyng of the devel cometh, pleyn. 3784
 and þerfore we wolde jn onest manere
 that 3e his compeny lefte here."
 "that were me loth," quod the kyng,
 "For j nolde him wraththen for non thyng."
 "Sire," quod this Barown ageyn,
 "j wile hym not Noyen, jn certeyn."
 Now was this Barown ful of Envye
 and ful of vices, ful trewelye, 3792
 and to the kynges cowrt cam vppon a day,
 & there thus of merlyne gan he to say,

Messengers
are sent once
more,

the king's
offer is
accepted with
joy,

and Augwis'
kinsmen go
into exile.

Envious
barons desire
the king to
give up
Merlin's
company.

The king is
not willing.

[leaf 103 b]	And of hym gret Joye thus he Wrowhte, but Evere anothir was Jn his thowhte. there this barown clepede to-fore the kyng twenty knyhtes, with-owten leseng.	3796
One of the barons, in the presence of the king and twenty knights,	"Now wile 3e sen," quod this Barown thanne, "Merlyne here, so worthy a manne, that tolde the kyng howh Fortagere jn his castel scholde brenne riht þere.—	3800
asks Merlin to foretell his death.	and therfore preye j 3ow, for charite, of my siknesse that 3e wolden tellen me, & that 3e welen tellen me vtterlye On what maner of deth that j schal dye."	3804
Merlin, knowing the baron's bitter heart,	Thanne answerede merlyne, that knew ful wel his malencolyvs herte Everydel :	3808
says that the baron will fall off his horse and break his neck.	"3e han me preid that j schal Seye to 3ow of 3oure deth, trewelye. knowe 3e wel that þe same day that deyen 3e scholen, wit-owten nay, of an hors 3owre Nekke schal to-breke."	3812
	Afor alle these knyhtes thus gan he speke. thanne seide the Barown to the kyng : "God me defende from his talkyng !"	3816
Later on, the baron comes to the king and feigns to be sick.	tho wente he hom jn-to his contre, and there a whille dwelled he, and cam agen thedir as þe kyng was, and Feynede hym sore syk jn that plas, and him forto sen he preyde the kyng, and algates merlyne with hym bryng, so that merlyne ne knowe jn non degre For what maner cause thedir cometh he.	3820
Merlin is summoned,	thanne cam merlyne to the kyng, and axede hym what was his willyng. "3e mosten to towne gon with me, a sik man j preye 3ow þere forto se."	3824
and goes to the baron.	thanne clepid the kyng his prevy meyne with him to gon that man to se. and whanne that thedyr they weren comen echon,	3828

3805. *ac* added in the left margin.3813. *an*, *a* through rough correction.

- thanne seide to the kyng this sik man anon : 3832 The baron
wants to
know if he is
to die from
his sickness.
- "Sire, j preye 3ow, for charyte,
that 3owre devyne may tellen me
3yf j schal deyen of this syknesse,
oper ellis to suffren ony more distresse." 3836
- "Sire kyng," anon quod merlyne thanne,
"of þis siknesse schal not deyen this manne." "No," says
Merlin,
- thanne answerede the syk man, trewelye :
"now, good sire, of what siknesse schal j deye?" 3840
- "Forsothe, hangenge schalt thou ende,
and hangen þou schalt jnto thin ende."
and with that tornede him merlyn there,
and made a semblaunce as wroth he were. 3844
- thus whanne merlyne was forth gon,
this barown to the kyng seyde anon :
"Now mowen 3e knowen be his spelle,
a fool he is swyche thynges to telle, 3848
that swyche tweyn dethes me doth devyse
whiche ben not cordyng jn non wyse !
And the thrydde tyme 3it j schal asaye :
To morwe wil j gon to on abbeye, 3852
and that 3e wolden thider hye,
and merlyne jn 3oure compenye,
and the abbot 3ow schal seyn
that on of his monkes is Sik, certein, 3856
and 3ow schal preyen, for charite,
thike sike monk þat 3e wolden comen se
and merlyne with 3ow forto brynge."
the kyng him grantyd his askyng. 3860
- vpon the morewen, whanne it was day,
the kyng him Rod to that abbay,
and merlyne thedyr with hym rod,
So herden they masse, and þere abod. 3864
- Atte laste cam the Abbot there,
and to the kyng seide jn this manere :
"Ha, Sire kyng, and 3owre wylle Jt be,
that an old syk monk 3e wolden com se, 3868
and 3owre devyne with 3ow to brynge,

"thou shalt
hang !"

The baron
points out the
inconsist-
ency of the
predictions,

and says he
will try the
third time,

counterfeit-
ing a sick
monk.

Next morn-
ing, the king
and Merlin
ride to the
monastery.

[leaf 103 c]

They are
solicited to
go and see
the monk.

3832. *thanne*, abbreviation mark in different ink.

3849. *dethef* added above the line.

and it were 3owre wille, Sire kyngo."

thanne seide the kyng to merlyne tho :

"Sire, with me wile 3e owht go?"

3872

"3e, sire," quod merlyne, "ful gladly!"

and took the kyng on syde jn hy :

Merlin
privately
reproves the
king for being
a party to
these pre-
tences.

"Whanne ferst j a-qweynted with 3ow bothe,

3876

thanne non fool helden 3e me, forsothe.

what, trowen 3e that J ne knowe, sekerlye,

vppon what deth this fool schal deye?

For now sore merveillen scholen 3e ful snelle

of a thing that j schal hym telle."

3880

quod the kyng thanne to merlyne :

"may it be trewe he schal have swich fyne?"

"Now, Sire," quod merlyne, "but 3if it trewe be,

Neuere here-aftyr ne leve thow me!

3884

and 3it er that j parte from his compenye,

J shal hym tellen how that he schal dye."

So wenten they forth al jn fere,

lyk as the abbot hem ladde there.

3888

He says,
however, he
will foretell
the baron's
death once
more.

In reply to
the abbot's
request,

thanne seide the abbot to the kyng :

"Sire, and j dorste preyen 3ow of on thyng :

that 3owre devyn 3ow wolde seye

3if this monk of this maladye schal deye."

3892

and merlyne answerede anon there

jn maner as that wroth he were,

and seide to the abbot vntylle :

"he may arysen, 3if that he wylle,

3896

For siknesse here ne feleth he non,

but that he may bothe rysen & gon.

and 3erto, abbot, to the J seye

that thiike day whanne he schal deye,

3900

and that he
will break his
neck, hang,
and drown.

his nekke he schal breken vnto,

and an honged, and be spilt also.

Now Nedyth hym to feyne no more,

For his herte j knowe bothe here & thore."

3904

thanne ros hym vpe this Ilke Barown,

and seide 3ere to kyng Pendragown :

"Now mown 3e knowen his folye,

that seith on swich maner pat j scholde deye.

3908

The baron
maintains
that Merlin
is a fool,

For this knowe j wel, that may not be
of me ne of non othir man, Sikerle.

Now devise 3ow, Sire, Ryht wel,
how 3e this man leven ony del!"

3912 and warus
the king
against him.

thus thanne this werk gan to Ende ;

and jnto fer contre jt gan wende

how that merlyne gan to Say

on what deth he scholde dyen, jn fay.

3916

So aftyr on a day not forthan

One day, this
baron rides

be-gan to ryde this good man,

and jn his compenye gret plente

Of his owne meyne, ful sykyrle.

3920

So atte laste he cam to a ryver,

where as a brygge of tre was there,

over a bridge.

and peryppon smot he his palfray,

that down on kneis it fyl, jn fay.

3924 The horse
stumbles, the
baron falls
and breaks
his neck,

So that he, whiche aboven was,

Fyl a-down there jn that plas,

and there his Nekke he brak vnto,

And as to the water he scholde han go,

3928

So that his leg jn his Robe fastenyd there,

and alle his oper lymes jn þe water were.

thanne weren there tweyne men Jn compenye,

herden how that merlyne gan seye ;

3932

Jn what maner he scholde ded be,

There they Rehersed, ful Sykerle.

thanne be-gan there an hidows cry

of alle his meyne, ful trewely ;

3936 Two men
relate
[leaf 103 d]
Merlin's
prediction.
There is
great wailing.

whanne owt of the water they hadden him take,

For Sorwe they schoken & gonne to qwake.

thanne seiden they : "folys that they be

that merlyn ne leven not, Sykerle!"

3940

they Beryeden the cors with honour.

and merlyn to the kyng kam thlike same our,

and told bothen hym and to vter

how that *with* the barown it happede ther.

3944

the kyng axede whanne it was, certeinle.

"*with*-june sixe dayes messengeres scholen 3e se.

thanne kept j not to ben here,

The corpse is
buried.
Merlin in-
forms the
king.

Merlin says he will avoid further queries,	For faste they welen of me Enqwere of diuers maters, what so they be, but answe're geten they non, Sikerle, For j wyle no more so openly seye, that the peple schal vndirstonden, jn feye." thanne wende the kyng þat he wroth were, and þerfore weren ful sory there.	3948
and goes off to Blasy.	So wente merlyne to Blaysye anon, and told him of these thynges Echon, and of opere, that to comen were ; jn this maner departyd merlyne þere.	3956
Those present at the baron's death arrive at court.	There dwellede merlyne to þe vj day, tyl they that at the deth weren, [comen], Jn fay, and tolden the kyng how that it stood, howhe þis barown was persched jn that flood, and seiden that merlyne was þe wysest man that Jn al this world was lyveng than.	3960
Merlin's wis- dom is fully acknow- ledged.	For of hym was neuere thyng seid ne don, but 3if he jnto Scripture dide it putten anon. and thus began merlynes propheeye of the kynges of Engeland, certeynlye, and of othere many thynges also.	3964
Blasy con- tinues his book.	he dide holy Blasye it wryten tho. thanne axede Blasye of merlyne there : " wryten they also jn this manere ?"	3968
At court, they write down	" Nay, certeynly, non of hem alle, but they wryten that schal befallē, which thynges they scholen Neuere knowe, Tyl that they be-fallen vppon a rowe." Thanne Retornede merlyne to cowrt ageyn, and azens hym they comen, jn certeyn, and tolden hym of that Ilke tydyng, as thowg þere-offen he ne hadde knowen non thing.	3972
his dark prophecies.	Thanne sette on merlyne and gan to telle Ful dyrke worrdes of propheeyes felle, where-offen a book they maden anon. thanne forth to the kyng merlyne gan gon,	3976
		3980
		3984

and there to hem seyde he ful petowsly :
 "J love 3oure bothe worschepis Badyly ;
 haven 3e not now vndirstondyng
 of haugwys kynnes-men exylyng, 3988
 that owt of this lond 3e deden don dryve,
 aftyr that haugwys hadde left his lyve?"
 "3is, this wele knowen we, Jn certeyn ;
 but for what cause do 3e this seyn?" 3992
 "J sey," quod merlyne, "for this Enchesown,
 That haugwys kynnes-men Everychon,
 with-jnner hem-Self they don thus speke,
 that of haugwys deth they welen hem wreke. 3996
 So that they maken gret congregacyown
 of dyvers peple al abowtes Jn verown,
 and hopen this lond forto conqwere
 and ek forto haven the victorye here." 4000
 thanne, whanne þe kyng herde this,
 and also his Brothyr vter, j-wys,
 Of these tydynges they merveylled gretle,
 And axeden Of Merlyne Howh this Myhte be. 4004 [leaf 104 a]
 "haven they there so gret plente
 Of Fensable peple Jn alle degre?"
 "3e," quod merlyne, "with-owten dowte,
 they haven more peple hem abowte 4008
 thanne 3e owther 3owre brothyr, jn feye,
 For azens on of 3owris they haven tweye ;
 and but 3if 3e werkyn ryht wysly,
 3e scholen ben discomfyt & stroyed, trewely." 4012
 "we scholen werkyn aftyr 3owre wylle,
 what that evere 3e welen seyn vs vntylle."
 thanne axeden they merlyne anon there
 whanne they scholden comen and jn what manere. 4016
 "Atte the elleveneth day, ful trewly ;
 but loke that 3e kepen this prevy,
 and j defende 3ow, as J now kan,
 that there-offen 3e ne tellen neuere man. 4020
 but aftyr my cownseyl that 3e don,
 and sendeth aftyr alle 3oure men anon,
 and that they ben here with-owten let

Merlin
pitifully in-
forms the
king

that Augwis'
kinsmen

will attack
the country

with superior
forces,

in eleven
days.
This, how-
ever, is to be
kept a secret.

Merlin gives
instructions
with regard
to the im-
pending
battle.

the laste wyke of the mounthe of junet, 4024
to assemblen vppon Salisbery pleyn
3owre enemyes to withstondyn ageyn.
so that on of 3ow with half 3owre meyne,
be-twixen hem and þe se scholen gon, Sykerle; 4028
and so tweyne dayes 3e scholen abyde,
and on the thrydde to fyhten, what so betyde.
& 3if 3e thus wilen don, trewely,
J dar 3ow behoten the victory." 4032

The brothers
inquire if the
battle will be
fatal to either
of them.

thanne seiden the bretheren to merlyne there :
" Now, goode merlyne, telle vs now here
3if ony of vs jn bataylle schal ded be."
thanne answeyrd merlyne : " ful Sykerle, 4036
there nas neuere thyng that hadde begynneng,
but of necescite it moste hauen endyng,
ne neuere man owghte the deth drede,
3if he it resceyue Jn tyme of nede. 4040

Merlin makes
them swear,
on their
relics,

and therfore wolde J thanne," quod merlyne,
" doth bryngen me 3owre relykes, þat ben so fyne,
and þer-vppon bothe scholen 3e swere
that 3e scholen don as j schal 3ow lere 4044
bothen for 3owre prow and worschepe also,
and aftyr that schal j tellen 3ow mo."
thus sworn they bothe at his Byddyng.
thanne anon seide merlyne to the kyng : 4048
" 3e hauen sworn to me, with-owten faylle,

to be true to
God and
themselves,

Trewe men to be Jn this Bataylle
azens god and 3owre owne persone,
how so that evere the game doth gone. 4052
For to hym-Self may now man trewe be,
but 3if to god he be trewe, Sykerle.
and that 3e confessen 3ow generally
Forto fyhten azens 3owre enemy. 4056

and promises
them victory.

and aftyr mown 3e ben ful Sure
hem ouercomen bothe clene & pure,
for they beleven not on the Trenite.
And now herkene what j sey the : 4060
Sethen holychirche cam jnto this lond,

Swich a bataylle was non, as j vndirstond,
Neþer not schal ben be owre daye.

therefore, Syker, as j 3ow saye,
on of 3ow schal deyen jn this bataylle,
as j 3ow seye with-owten Faylle.

and þerfore that ryaly 3e 3ow araye

Forto fyhten, as j 3ow saye,
and jn worschepe of the Trenyte,

For 3owre helpe syker wile he be ;

And for his love arayeth 3ow wel

To his plesawnee Everydel !"

Lo, this Was Merlynes Cownsaylle,

As j 3ow sey wit-owten faylle.

these bretheren vndirstoden ful wel his sawe,

and of his cownseyl they weren ryht fawe.

Anon thanne senten they thorwgh al here lond

For here Retenu, J vndirstond.

and whanne they weren asembled Everychon,

grete 3iftes hadden they thanne anon,

and preyden eche man Jn his degre

that redy and arayed he wolde be,

and jn the laste wyke of Jvnet,

on þe pleyn of Salisbery, with-owten let,

next to the cost of the se,

that be hem þe rem defendid myhte be.

thus dwelden bothe bretheren jn Fere,

tyl the day of Somowns were comen there,

and kepten merlynes comandement,

that he hem bothe bad, verament.

So that atte feste of pentecost

thyder they comen with here ost,

here Ryal cowrt to holden there

Fast by the se Jn here manere.

and manye grete 3iftes there 3oven they

To dewk, Erl, and to Barown, trewly.

and so longe abyden they on that grownde,

Tyl þat here enemyes a-ryvede Jn þat stownde.

thanne sente the kyng to prelates anon,

The battle,
however, will
be extraor-
dinarly
murderous,
and one of
the princes is
to fall,

4064

4068 fighting in
honour of the
Trinity.

4072 [leaf 104 b]

4076 The princes
cheerfully
send for their
men,

4080

and ask them
to be ready at
the end of
June,
near Salis-
bury.

4084

4088

4092 At Pentecost
they hold
court there,

4096

till the enemy
arrives.

	that they scholde comen Everichon	4100
	Forto confessen his peple Jn fere,	
	that they weren clene Jn alle manere.	
The entire army is confessed	and so thorw the ost Everychon	
	they weren confessed thanne anon,	4104
	and eche to oper forzaf þere his maltalent,	
and absolved.	and therto clene asoylled, verament.	
	thanne seide the kyng to merlyne there	
	that tydynges he hadde of here powere,	4108
	and howh they weren aryved Echon,	
	alle his Enemyes, be on & be on.	
	thanne seide merlyne to hym ageyn :	
	“that is ful trewe, jn certeyn !”	4112
Merlin, on the king's question, repeats his former in- structions,	thanne axede the kyng of merlyne tho	
	Jn what maner that he scholde do.	
	“3e scholen to morwen senden 3oure brothir vter	
	and half 3oure meyne to ben with hym ther.	4116
	and whanne 3owre Enemyes ben owt of þe see,	
	thanne betwixen hem and þe water schal he be.	
	and thazne wilen they resemblen anon	
	here jnto this contre forto gon.	4120
	and thus tweyne dayes schal he werken there,	
adding that a dragon will appear in the air.	and þe thridde day jn the Eyr schal apere	
	a red dragown, & þanne mown 3e fyhte	
	and the victorye to haven, j seye 3ow ryhte.”	4124
The plan of operation thus settled,	To this cownseyl acordid ful wel	
	both pandragown an vter Everydel.	
	and ful gret joye bothen they made,	
	and of this cownseil they weren ful glade.	4128
	thazne seide vter to merlyne anon :	
	“Jnto tho partyes now wyle j gon.”	
	“Loke that 3e thanne ben a good knyht !”	
	and thus departyd they that Ilke Nyht.	4132
	so that vter took forth his jorne,	
	and with hym half here meyne.	
Uter goes with half the army to cut off the enemy from the sea.	so that be-twene þe see and his Enemyes he abod,	
	and with his meyne thus forth he rod.	4136
	thanne seide merlyne : “abasche the non thyng	
	For deth ne bataylle, be my cownseyllung !”	

- And Whanne that Vter herde this,
 Ful mochel his herte was esyd, J-wys. 4140 [leaf 104 c]
- thane wente merlyne Into North-humberlond
 to Blaysye, his maistryr, as J vndirstond,
 and let this putten Into Scripture
 and many mo thynges, J 3ow ensure. 4144
- thane rod vter with his meyne
 aftyr merlynes counseil, ful Sykerle,
 and lay be-twene the Schepis & that ost,
 whiche that they dredden most. 4148
- So lay Vter Styлле ryht there
 thre dayes Jn this manere,
 and atte the Selve thrydde day
 the kyng remevyd, the sothe to say,
 and kam So Nyhe that meyne,
 that eche of hem myht other se. 4152
- and whanne the ost beheld al this,
 that on bothe sides they weren beset, j-wys,
 and that to here Schipes they myhte not gon
 with-owten bataylle of here fon,
 thanne jn the eyr aperede that syht
 that merlyne afore tyme hem tolde ful ryht,
 of wheche Syhte the enemyes of the kyng
 hadden gret drede, with-owten lesyng. 4160
- thane seide the kyng to his meyne anon :
 " To armes and to hors let vs now gon,
 and also Faste as we mown ryde,
 vppon oure enemyes this Ilke tyde."
 and whanne that vter Say the kyng so do,
 anon with his meyne he remevede also, 4168
- that so on bothe sydes beset they were.
 thanne began anon strong bataylle there
 and gret occisiown on bothe syde,
 and mochel peple ded at that tyde. 4172
- but haugwis kynnesmen hadden the werre,
 Not-withstandyng they comen from ferre.
 but of this bataylle j reherse no more,
 whiche of hem that best bar hym thore. 4176

Merlin goes
to North-
umberland.

Uter remains
in his ambush
for three
days.

On the third
day, the
king's force
advances,

and the
dragon ap-
pears in the
air.

The king

and Uter
attack from
two sides,

and carry the
day.

- The king falls
with many
barons,
- but Pandragown the kyng was there ded,
and manye of his barowns in that sted.
thanne thus recordith this Storye,
that vter hadde there the victorie,
- 4180
- but of the
enemies not
one escapes.
- and þat of his enemyes ne skaped neuer on,
that ded they weren, other taken, echon.
thus endid the bataylle of Salisbery there,
where pandragown was slayn Jn this manere.
- 4184
- Uter suc-
ceeds his
brother.
- thanne hadde vter the rem Jn governaunce,
as was bothe resown, ryht, and chaunce.
thanne vter dide assemblen his meyne anon,
and let beryen his dede men Everichon,
- 4188
- After raising
tomb-stones
over the
fallen,
- and on Every tombe wrot the name,
what he was, and of what fame.
but as towching his brothyr the kyng,
vppon his tombe made he non wrytyng.
- 4192
- For a gret Fool he is, with-owten dowte,
that a kynges tombe ne kan knowen *with-owte*,
For heyere and richere thanne ony oþer it was
that weren J-beryed Jn that plas.
- 4196
- he goes to
Logres
(London),
where he is
crowned.
- thanne remevid vter to Logres anon,
and with hym his prelaceye everychon ;
And there was he sacred and crowned kyng,
and of alle the rewme hadde he the governeng.
- 4200
- Thus was vter kyng of the Lond,
and alle homages resceyvede, J vndirstond.
thanne the Fyftenethe day after Sewenge
cometh merlyne to the cowrt of the kynge.
- 4204
- Merlin, com-
ing to court,
- gret was the joye the kyng of hym made,
and alle the howshold of hym was glade.
Thanne seide merlyne to Vter there :
- 4208
- [leaf 101 d]
tells Uter to
adopt his
brother's
name, and
to design
a dragon like
the one seen
in the air,
- "thy brotheris name J wolde thou bere ;
& benchesown of the dragown, J-wis,
that jn the Eyr aperede, with-owten mys,
and after thyke dragowns semblaunce,
J wolde thou madist on, *with-owten variaunce*."
- 4212
- This kyng let maken this dragown anon
of gold, also faste as it myhte be don,
and vppon a lawnee Jt Sette, Sanz faylle,
4209. & added in the left margin.

- with hym to be born Jn bataylle.
 thus was he clepyd vter Pendragown ;
 his brothir and þe baner was thenchesown.
 thanne merlyne with hym gan there dwelle,
 and on a day to þe kyng gan he to spelle :
 " why dost thou non more reuerence
 there thy brotheris body lyth jn precense ? "
 " what woldest thou, merlyne, that j scholde do ?
 Sey what thou wylt, and it schal be so. "
 " Swich a thing to maken, thou it attende,
 that Scholde abyden with-owten ende. "
 " Sey me thanne, " quod the kyng ageyn,
 " and j wele it don, Jn certeyn. "
 thanne quod merlyne : " Sende thou anon
 Jnto Erlond aftyr gret ston.
 and j my-Self wile thedyr pase,
 to schewen where they ben and jn what place,
 and tellen hem wheche that they scholen brynge
 Jn thi Schepis hider, with-owten lesynge. "
 thus the kyng schepis thedyr sente,
 and merlyne with hem was there presente.
 " Sen 3e now these stones here ?
 jn 3oure Schepis j wolde they were. "
 and whanne these stones they gonne beholde,
 jn here hertes they merveyllled many folde,
 and seiden that nevere schipe hem myhten bere,
 Ne neuere jnto here Schipe scholde comen there.
 thanne tornede they thus hom a-geyn,
 and of that merveylle tolde the kyng, ful pleyn.
 Anon thanne hem answeyrd the kyng :
 " Abydeth here styлле tyl merlynes comeng ! "
 Thanne cam merlyne to cowrt anon,
 and of this the kyng told hym thusson.
 thanne made merlyne his Surawnce
 hem forto bryngen, with-owten variaunce.
 and thus merlyne thorwgh his craft,
 tyl the stones weren there, he ne laft,
 and leyde hem on the Sepulture

4216 to be borne
with him in
battle.

4220 Merlin ad-
vises the king
to adorn
Pendragon's
tomb,

4224
for all ages,

4228
with huge
stones from
Ireland.

4232

4236 Ships are
sent.

Merlin
points out
the stones,

4240

but the men
find them too
large,

4244 and return
home without
them.

4248

Then Merlin
himself
brings the
stones.

4252

	Of pandragown, J the enswre.	
The people are surprised at the size of the stones.	thanne vter Pendragown with gret meyne To the pleyn of Salisbery wente hem to se. and whanne they behelden this grete mervaylle, thanne seide the peple, with-owten Faylle, that alle the world hem ne cowde meve, thowg that they scholden the sothe preve.	4256 4260
Merlin under- takes to raise them,	thanne seide merlyne : " j schal hem dresse mochel bettere thanne they lyn, J-wysse." " howh myhte that be ? " quod the kyng anone, " that may non man do but god alone."	4264
sends away the people,	thanne quod merlyne to hem anon : " Goth 3e now hennes Everychon, and j schal hem dressen, as j have hyht, oper ellis my covenawnt held j not a-ryht."	4268
and performs the task.	So that merlyne belefte there styлле, and his covenawnt he dide fulfille. Thanne cam merlyne to the kyng as to a man þat he lovede with-owten feyneng, and seide : " Sire kyng, herkeneth to me ! j moste to 3ow discure a gret prevyte, on the prevyest that evere 3e knewe, And therfore to 3ow J Wele Jt Schewe, Whiche schal ben ryht a strange thing, as j 3ow say atte the begynneng ; and that 3e discure me to non lyveng man." his axeng anon the kyng grauntid hym than. " J wele that 3e vndirstonde me, ful pleyn :	4272 4276 4280
Merlin then says to the king, he will reveal to him a great secret.	Al the connenge that J have, certeyn, onlych it cometh of the enemy ; and therto god, that is almyhty, Wit and memorie hath grauntid to me thynges that ben comeng to knowen, certeinle ; and be that Sovereyn vertw the enemy hath lost, as j telle 3ow, alle the part that he hadde jn me, thorwh goddis wille, sire, Sykerle. Sire, now have 3e ful knowlechyng	4284 4288
[leaf 105 a]		
He tells him the double source of his skill and divinatory power.		

4264. *do* added above the line.[4285. MS. *grauntid*.4274. *discure*, *re* (?) altered from *r*. *gret*, *g* corrected from *p*.

From whens that cometh al my koznenge.	4292	
Now j wele tellen the what Js goddis wyll,		Merlin further relates
and thow wylt herkene and lestene theretyville.		
and whanne thou knowest of my menyng,		
loke that thou Folwe it Jn werkyng.	4296	
Sire kyng, now vndirstonde thou me,		
that god decendid from þe maieste		of Christ coming to earth to save sinners,
jn-to this erthe the Synneris to Save,		
and for that he wolde here sowles have.	4300	
Also beleve wel that his sene he made		of His supper with His disciples,
among his disciples to maken hem glade,		
and þat he to hem seide Jn this manere :		
'on of ȝow schal betraien me þat is here.'	4304	
Also, Sire kyng, vndirstonde thou me,		
that moche povert and diseise suffrede he		of His death,
of the jewes, and they falsly him Slowe	4308	
aȝens the lawe, with fals witnessse j-nowe,		
and vppon the croys for vs he deyde.		
thanne cam a knyht, as to-foren ȝe herd seide,		and of Joseph, who buried His body.
and axed the body, For his gwerdown,		
of hym that for vs hadde paid rawnsom.	4312	

Sire, aftyr that, he ros from ded		After the resurrection,
Jn scomfiture of the fowle qwed.		
and happede aftyr his vp-Rysyng,		
this knyht with his sowdiours was walkyng	4316	this Joseph travelled with his retinue in a desert,
Jn a place of wast and desert,		
and with hym many of his lignage, apert.		
Sire, þere happede, a famyne cam hem vppon,		his provisions ran short,
and to this knyht, here maister, they compleyned anon.		
Anon thanne this knyht made his preyere	4321	and he prayed to God.
that god som Tokenyng wolde schewen hem þere,		
the cause to suffren Swich deseise,		
that he myhte it knowen, & it wolde him plesc.	4324	
Anon thanne hadde he comandement		He was commanded to make a table, in memory of the Lord's table,
a table forto maken, verament,		
jn mynde of þe table and of swete jesus,		
at which he sat jn Symon lepres hows,	4328	

4306. *povert*, *r* corrected from *p* rather indistinctly.4313. In the right margin : *Nota*.

to cover it
with a cloth,
and place
thercon the
holy vessel
(St. Graal)

which he,
when in
prison, had
received as
a comfort
from God.

A void place
was left at
the table,

to signify the
place once
occupied by
Judas.

[leaf 105 b]

Just as that
place was
afterwards
filled by St.
Matthew,

thus Joseph
here took the
empty seat.

Now the king
is exhorted to
make a third
table.

and that table to koueren (& not to lette)
with whit cloth, and þer-vppon þe holy vessel sette—
'and that the vessel be kouered also
with fair whit cloth, how so euere 3e do!' 4332
whiche vessel browhte the kyng of blys
To this knyht jnto presown, j-wys,
where as he was two and fowrty 3er,
whiche vessel al his hol comfort was ther, 4336
and be this vessel departyd he
the goode from the evel, ful sikerle.
and, Sire, at this Table evere there was
Jn memorie of crist kept a voide plas, 4340
whiche special place doth Signefye
the place that judas jn Sat, trewelyc,
which he Forsook, whanne god hadde sayd :
'on of 3ow hath me betrayed 4344
that with me here doth drynke and etc.'
(Jt hadde ben bettere he dyde it lete.)
So Was this place there voyde styлле,
tyl that aftyr-ward be goddis wylle 4348
anothir, hyht mathy, was there-jne j-set,
as to hym there Jt cam be lot,
and to fulfille þe nombre of þe postelis twelve,
for thus wold god it scholde ben him-selve. 4352
and, Sire, this voyde place þat at þe [table] Is,
Signefieth be josepe, Sire, j-wis ;
and lik as maththy was chosen therto,
riht so was josepe, wit-owten mo, 4356
So that these tweyne tables covenantable were,
and thus pleside crist mennes hertes there.
Sire, this peple clepede this vessel
'the Sank Ryal' oper ellys 'Seint Graal.' 4360
And, sire, 3if 3e welen don aftyr me,
the thrydde table, jn worschepe of þe Trenite,
3e scholen be-gynne, as j 3ow schal Say,
and 3ow to gret worschepe it schal torne Eche day, 4364
and to 3oure Sowle gret mede also,
and manye benfettes 3ow schal comen to,
and thorwgh this world this word schal springe,

- as j 3ow Seye with-owten lesenge." 4368
- Lo, thus Spak merlyne to the kyng,
whiche wordis to hym were gret lykyng.
thanne seide the kyng to merlyne ageyn :
- "J nolde for non thing, Jn certein, 4372
that god non thing ne loste be me
whiche that to his plesauunce myhte be.
wherfore, merlyne, ordeyne as thow wylt,
For vppon me ne schal not lyn the gylt."
- 4376 and leaves
the arrange-
ments in Mer-
lin's hands.
- "Now," thanne quod merlyne to the kyng,
"where liketh 3ow best to ben abydyng?"
- "Now certes," quod the kyng ageyn,
"where þou wilt it ordeynen, jn certeyn, 4380
and where that most plesyng it myhte be
To God, that Syt anhyghe jn maieste."
thanne answerede merlyne, þat was ful lel :
- 4384 Merlin
chooses the
town of Card-
well in Wales;
there a great
feast is to
be held at
Pentecost.
- "jn wales, atte þe town of Cardweille,
and there schalt thou holden thy feste
atte pentecost bothe to mest and leste.
and forth to-foren, Sire, wyl j gon
that Table to ordeynen for 3ow Echon ; 4388
and also hem that there schal Sytte,
j wile hem ordeynen, that thow it wyte."

-
- Ryht as merlyne devisede jn alle thing,
riht so aftyr hym Evene wrowht þe kyng,
and there anon Sente proclamaciown
be messengeris thorwgh-owt his regyown,
his ryals hym to meten, bothe lest and meste,
In cardwel atte pentecost Feste ; 4392
- 4396
- thus was the kynges proclamaciown.
And þanne from the kyng departyd merlyne anon,
and wente to ordeyne that behoven Scholde
To that Table bothe for 3ong and olde. 4400
- and the woke to-Foren pentecost
Thedyr cam the kyng, as he nedis most,
and axede of merlyne how he hadde j-do.
he seide : "Sire, riht wel 3it hyderto !" 4404
"hast thow owht ordeyned whiche scholen sitten here?"
- Chap. IV.*
- Messengers
are sent out.
- Merlin goes
in advance
to the place
to arrange
the table.
- The king
follows.

Merlin promises the king an unexpected sight.

“3e, sire, to morwen scholen 3e sen the manere
and that 3e wenden neuere forto han seye :
Fyfty worthy knyhtes, Sire, jn feye, 4408
of the beste that ben *with*-june thi lond,
certein j do 3ow to vndyrstond.
and þerby myht thou knowen thy worthy men,
that j have chosen be fyve sithes ten. 4412
Also the voide place þere schalt thou se,
that 3it fulfyld it may not be.”

[leaf 105 c]
He chooses
fifty knights,
and places
them round
the table.

Thus merlyne at that Ryal Feste
ches there Fyfty knyhtes of the beste, 4416
and preide hem to Sitten al jn Fere
and there to eten with ryht good chere.
Ryht so they deden be on an on,
and glad they weren everychon. 4420
thanne merlyne, that was so ful of craft,
abowtes he wente, and not ne laft,
and clepid the kyng there forto se
how that they Seten Jn here degre, 4424
and schewed him also the voide place
that thike tyme atte the table wase.
but what that place dide signifie,
Niste þe kyng ne non of his compenye. 4428

Then he calls
the king,
and shows
him the
knights and
the empty
seat.

And whanne merlyne thus hadde j-don,
he preyde the kyng to sitten anon.
and thus viij dayes contenned þe feste ryal
To lordes and ladyes and damyselis *with*-al ; 4432
and there ful grete 3iftes 3af the kyng
bothe to lordis and to ladyes and to damyselis so 3yng.
and whanne this feste gan vp to breke,
thanne to þe Fyfty knyhtes þe kyng gan to reke, 4436
and axede how hem likede there,
and of here Syttyng jn alle manere.

The knights
say they
would like to
stay for ever,
in brotherly
love.

thanne they the kyng answerid ful sone :
“Jt Js owre wylle neuere hens to gone 4440
Neþer neuere to parten oure compeny onsondyr,
For so as we loven to-gederis, it is gret wondir,

4414. *fulfyld*, *d* squeezed in afterwards.

4429. *whāne* added above the line.

- For as bretheren we loven to-gederis jn fere,
and, tyl deth vs sondre, neuere to departen ere." 4444
- And whanne the kyng herde this,
gret merveille he hadde per-offen, j-wys.
thanne charged the kyng to hem anon
to hym ben loveng and trewe everychom. 4448
thanne departyd al this compenye,
eche man to his own contre, trewelye.
- thanne cam the kyng to merlyne there,
and axede him thanne jn this manere : 4452
"Telle me 3if that goddis wyllle jt be
this Table fulfilled that J schal Se?"
- "wyte thou wel certeyn, Sire kyng,
that jn thy tyme it schal neuere haven endyng,
Nethyr he that jt schal fulfyllen,
js not 3it be-geten, j sey the tylle.
but jn the kynges tyme jt schal be-falle
that aftyr the schal regnen in pured & palle ; 4460
and he that hym begeten schal,
knoweth not what aventure him schal befall.
and that same that is to be bore,
Schal fulfillen the place thore, 4464
lyk as josepe dide jn his manere
the Signefiaunce aftyr maththy there.
and perfore, Sire, j preye to the
thy festes here to holden, certeinle." 4468
"Now certes, merlyne," quod the kyng tho,
"and at thy wille it schal be do."
thanne seide merlyne to the kyng :
"Sire, it is tyme to maken a partyng ; 4472
and knowe 3e wel now, syre kyng,
that aftyr myn hens departyng
of a long tyme 3e schole not me se,
J Seye 3ou, Sire kyng, ful certeinle." 4476
thanne axede the kyng of hym a3e
whethir at his festes he wolde not be.
thanne answerede merlyne jn this manere :
"Atte alle tyme j may not ben here." 4480

The king
wonders at
this;

he exhorts
them to be
loving and
true.

The king
asks Merlin
about the
void seat.

Merlin re-
plies: "It
shall not be
filled in thy
time;
its occupier
is not yet be-
gotten.

Continue thy
feasts here!"

Merlin takes
leave,

and says he
will not be
back for a
long time.

4468. *thy*, *y* corrected from *e*; cf. l. 4604.

4473. *now* added above the line.

Merlin re-
pairs to
Blasy.

Thanne wente merlyne to blasye anon,
and þe establementes of þe table told hym echon
and of other thynges manye also

[leaf 105 a]

That At thyke tyme Were to comen tho. 4484

and there dwelde merlyne two 3er styлле,
that the kynges cowrt he nolde comen tylle.

In Cardwell,
some cour-
tiers murmur
at the seat
being left
empty.

So happede it at Cardweille vppon a day
that they whiche lovede not merlyne, gonne to say, 4488

and axeden a qwestiown of the kyng :
why that place was voyde of syttyng,
and why that som good man mihte [not] sytten there,
and thanne the table fulfilled were. 4492

The king
tells them
of Merlin's
prediction ;

thanne answeyrd the kyng : " certeynle,
For a gret merveyl that merlyne tolde me,
that it scholde Nevere ben be my day,
and thus merlyne to me gan say. 4496
and 3it he that him Engendren schal,
Nys not 3it born, more with-al,
that this table schal fulfyllе." .

but they
scoffingly
declare,
that there are
as good men
to be found
now as ever
will be,

they lawhen wel faste, as men þat weren jlle. 4500
" Sire, beleve 3e thanne that jn tyme comenge
þat better men scholen ben thanne be now reignenge,
and that jn 3owre lond [not] as goode there be
as evere here-aftyr scholen comen, sikerle ? " 4504
" Now certes, j wot neuere," quod the kyng.

and urge the
king to let
them try the
seat.

" No[w] we reden 3ow to putten jt jn asayeng."
" Certes," quod the kyng, " j drede me þanne sore
that merlyne wolde ben angry there-fore." 4508
" Sire, thanne, and 3e wylen 3yven vs leve,
his Falsnesse forsothe we scholen preve."

After some
hesitation,

" and j wiste merlyne wroth wolde not be,
wel fayn wolde j asayen it, ful sykerle." 4512

" 3e, Sire, 3if that merlyne know of this,
Siker, there wile he ben, j-wys ;
and þerfore suffreth vs forto asaye,
Now, goode Sire kyng, alle we 3ow praye." 4516

the king gives
his consent.

So that the kyng hem graunted it forto do,
whanne that the feste cam therto.

4482. *hym*, MS. *hem*.

4491, 4503. The negation is missing.

4506. MS. *No*.

thanne weren they glad everichon
 that þe kyng hadde graunted þis thing be don. 4520
 and thus it Taryede jn-to pentecost feste,
 that eche Ryal þere to be atte the kynges heste.
 and merlyne, that knew here thowhtes echon,
 Ryht there to Blayse told jt anon, 4524
 and of alle here jlle thenkenge,
 and of hem þat weren þer-offen þe begynnenge.
 and he wiste wel that provyd jt scholde be,
 that jlke place, ful certeynle ; 4528
 and sethen algates it scholde ben so,
 bettere on a schrewe thanne on a good man to proven it tho.
 and thus merlyne dwelled þere styлле
 jnto qwyuzyme of pentecost, here wil to fulfille. 4532

Merlin knows
of the cour-
tiers' inten-
tions,

but does no-
thing to pre-
vent them.

Thanne the kyng to Cardweille wente,
 and with hym many lordis, veramente.
 and they that comen to asayen this place,
 Seiden there was fallen a wondyr case : 4536
 that a fals wood cherl, jn certayn,
 Jn a wode goode merlyne hadde slayn.
 and thus so styfly they gonnen it say,
 that the kyng belevyd it that day, 4540
 and more principaly the more for on thing :
 be Encheson of merlynes longe abydyng ;
 and also more thanne Supposed the kyng
 þat he wolde it not were asayed, merlyne levyng. 4544
 thanne vpon the Even of pentecost
 there was þe semblance, as Nedes most.
 thanne axede the kyng of hem anon
 ho that place asayen scholde don. 4548
 thanne he that the place assaien wolde,
 Seide þere to the kyng with wordis bolde :
 "Sire, j have begonnen this jlke thing,
 and non but j ne schal have the asayeng." 4552
 Thanne cam he to the table anon

A rumour is
spread that
Merlin has
been slain.

The king
believes it,
particularly
as Merlin
does not ap-
pear.

On the eve of
Pentecost,

the courtier
appointed

goes to the
table.

4531. *dwelled*, *w* corrected from *e*.

4544. After this line there follows, written up the margin: *for to þe peple it scholde ben agrosche(?)*. The end is daubed and indistinct.

[leaf 106 a]	There the fyfty knyhtes Seten Echon.	
	“ J am comen forto Sitten here	
	Forto beren 3ow compenye al jn fere.”	4556
The intruder is met with silence.	and they to hym Seiden neuer a word, but humblylly stille seten at that bord, and behelden what that he wokle do, and so dyde the kyng and manyon mo.	4560
He has scarcely taken the seat,	thanne thussone he hym sette adown amonges al that peple there jn virown. and assone as he was set jn that sted,	
when he sinks down lifeless	he Sank a-down lik a plom of led.	4564
and disap- pears.	Ne non man wyste how it cam to, Neper why he Suffrede that deth ful wo, Ne where his body becomen was, there wiste no man jn that plas.	4568
All rise.	thanne comanded the kyng anon To thyke worthy men Everychon that anon they scholden vp ryse, and so they dyden jn hasty wyse,	4572
	and merveillously astoned this cowrt thanne was, and also the kyng most jn that plas.	
	thus thanne taryede there the kyng	
A fortnight later, Merlin comes to court.	tyl Fyftene dayes after, <i>with-owten</i> leseng. and be that tyme merlyne to cowrt was gon, Of hos comenge weren glad manyon, and specyaly aboven alle othere the kyng, that azens merlyne wente jn metyng.	4576
	Anon as merlyne the kyng gan beholde, these same wordis to hym he tolde :	4580
He reproves the king.	“ certeyn, 3e haven ryht evele j-do ony man jn þat place to suffren sitten so ! ”	4584
The king ex- cuses himself.	“ Now sikerly, merlyne,” quod the kyng, “ they jt deden and me begyleng.”	
	“ certis,” quod merlyne to the kyng than, “ ryht so it fareth be manye a man.	4588
	ho that often desireth to be-gylen anothyr, atte laste on him-self falleth the fothyr. and that, Sire kyng, myht thou proven here vpon this man jn alle manere.”	4592
	thanne afterward preide the kyng merlyne,	

- that was his owne and worthy devyn,
 where that man were, and how be hym it felle,
 he preide that merlyne hym wolde telle. 4596
 thanne answerede merlyne to him ryht there :
 “ what nedeth the aftyr hym enquire ?
 For thowh thou wistest howh *with* hym it stood,
 Jt scholde don the but litel good. 4600
 but thenke on hem that there don Sytte,
 and how that thow schalt wel meynteine jtte
 and othir thynges that belongen to the,
 thy cowrt, thy festes, and thy meyne, 4604
 that thou hast begonnen jn this town.
 Now myht þou se, the table is of renown,
 of renown and of dignete gret ;
 here sixt þou proved, and thow wilt wet. 4608
 Now, sire kyng, from the wyl j gon,
 loke thou kepe wel these thynges echon,
 and that thow do aftyr myn counsaile,
 for j suppose it wyle the somewhat awaylle.” 4612
- Thus departyd merlyne from the kyng tho,
 and jnto othir contres gan forto go.
 thanne the kyng, where he scholde holden his feste,
 Faire howses let he maken aftyr his heste. 4616
 Thanne dede proclame the kyng anon
 alle these festes, everichon,
 that eche man at Cardwel scholde be
 atte these festes as ȝe scholen se : 4620
 that is, at the feste of cristemasse,
 esterne, & pentecost, as j gesse,
 and þe feste of alle halwen also,
 To Cardweylle they scholde comen to. 4624
- so that jt happede atte a cristemasse feste,
 the kyng Somownd his barowus, bothe lest & meste,
 and warned hem Jn this manere,
 that eche lady *with* hire lord scholde ben there, 4628
 here dowhtres, here Sostren, here neceȝ also,
 to Cardweille jn gales scholden alle go,

The king
 asks Merlin
 what has be-
 come of the
 dead courtier.

Merlin gives
 him no satis-
 faction on
 this point ;

he tells him
 rather to
 mind his
 people and
 his feasts,

and follow
 Merlin's in-
 structions.

Merlin de-
 parts.

The king
 erects fine
 buildings at
 Cardwell,
 and appoints
 general fes-
 tivals to be
 held there
 regularly .

at Christmas,
 Easter, Pen-
 tecost, and
 All Saints'
 Day.

[leaf 106b]

One Christ-
 mas, the
 ladies are also
 invited to the
 feast.

	and also bothe knyhtes and bachelere, jn alle wises they scholden ben there.	4632
Amongst others,	Jt were to longe here Names to telle, but of certeyn persones j schal 3ow spelle.	
there appear the duke of Tyndagel and his wife Ygwern.	there was the dewk of tyndagel and ygwerne, his wyf, that he loved ful wel, where-offen spekyth this storye, and a-forn opere putteth it jn memorye.	4636
The king at once falls in love with Ygwern.	Anon the kyng his love there sette (myht no man womman loven bette), and cow[n]tenance to hire made he non, but hire beheld most of echon.	4640
She notices it,	so atte laste sche gan aspye that the kyng hire lovede prevylye, as sche gan aspyen be his chere.	4644
and avoids him.	and perfore sche schoned afor him to comen there, For sche was bothe good and fayr, trewly, and loved god and hire lord Sovereynly.	4648
The king distributes costly pre- sents;	and the kyng, for love of this lady fre, 3iftes abowtes sente, ful gret plente of jewelys and many oper preciows thynges, Nowches, and broches, and manye riche rynges.	4652
to Ygwern he sends a precious jewel,	and to Ygwerne he sente a preecyows jwel, that he supposede scholde plesen here wel. and sche sawh that to alle other ladyes he sente,	
which she dare not refuse.	So dorste sche not refwsen his presente. and in hire herte this lady gan to remene that for hire love he dyde jt ful clene, and that sche scholde his 3ifte receyve, that from his love sche scholde not weyve.	4656 4660

	Thus the kyng there held his Festis with Ryalte, mynstrales, and many gestis. and algates he was with-owten wyf, and thus jn love morneng he ledde his lyf.	4664
The enam- oured prince,	For so was he set jn love of ygwerne, that from loves dart non man myht hym werne.	

4641. MS. *courtenance*. 4648. *hir'* corrected from *his*.4653. MS. *ygwerne*, & corrected from *w*.4666. *lovef*, *f* inserted afterwards.

- thus thanne vp Brak this ryal feste,
 and *pere* the kyng preide both lest & meste
 that at Cardweille they scholden alle be
 atte the feste of Esterne, jn that cyte,
 and also alle the ladyes there Everychon ;
 thanne they hym graunted ryht anon. 4672
 and whanne the dewk of tyndagel departed thenne,
 the kyng hym conveyed *with* manye of his Menne,
 and hym dide bothe worschepe and honour,
 & ek to that lady that jn his eye was flowr. 4676
 and so of hem his leve there he took,
 (but Evere for love his herte sore qwook),
 and torned aȝen, with-owten fable,
 To the fyfty knyhtes of his rownde table,
 and axede hem leve, and wente his way,
 and betawht hem god and many good day.
 that so wente he forth Jn his jorne,
 tyl the Feste of Esterne cam aȝe. 4684
 So that at the feste of pask anon thanne
 at cardweille assembled manye a manne ;
 of ladyes, of damyseles, and other meyne
 J wot there was Ful gret plente. 4688
 and mochel joye there-offe made *pe* kyng,
 whanne *pat* he say thihe fayre assemblyng.
 and at the feste he wolde not werne,
 but the dewk hym to-forn and his wyf ygwerne. 4692
 So that be His ȝyftes and His Entent,
 sche wyste he hire lovede, verament.
 so in gret thowht was that lady fre,
 but al sche suffrede, as nedis it moste be. 4696
 and thus *with* gret ioie contenwed this feste
 to alle tho ryales, bothe lest and meste.
 and whanne this feste was j-dô,
 eche lord took his leve hom to go. 4700
 and the kyng hem preide *ouer* alle thyng
 to comen aȝen at his Sendyng.
 and they grauntyd hym Everichon
 that his comandement scholde be don. 4704

at the end of
the feast,
orders all
to come back
by Easter ;

he sees the
duke and
duchess off
with great
honour,

and takes
leave of the
knights of
the Round
Table.

At Easter,
all meet
again ;

and the king
shows his
love as before.

[leaf 106 c]

At the break-
up, he re-
quests them
to return at
his summons.

- thus departyd this cowrt thanne,
and the kyng there lefte an hevy manne.
so al that 3er jn angwysch lyved he
for Ygwernes love, ful syker 3e be. 4708
and whanne it cam to thende of the 3ere,
he compleyned hym of his angwysch þere,
that certeyn, for the love of ygwerne,
no man to morne ne myhte hym werne. 4712
thanne answerid his prevy counseyl ageyn :
“ what wil 3e þat we do, telle vs now pleyn ! ”
“ j wyle that 3e wolden me rede
how that of hire J myhte spede.” 4716
thanne seiden they to the kyng anon :
“ 3if 3e owht jnto that contre gon,
anon discured scholen 3e be,
and þat were non worschepe to 3ow, Sykerle.” 4720
“ counseilleth me thanne what j schal do ! ”
and they to the kyng thus answerede vnto :
“ the beste counseyl Js, that we can,
that 3e don Somowne Every man 4724
to ben at cardweille atte 3owre feste,
and here ladyes, bothe lest and meste,
and that xv dayes it schal laste,
that eche schal abyde, tyl that be paste, 4728
and so with-jinne thike xv dayes
with ygwerne mown 3e haven bothe dalyaunce & playes.”
this counseille plesid ful wel the kyng,
and he dyde aftyr here counseilleng. 4732
So thanne sente the kyng messengeris anon
To alle his Barowns thanne, everychon,
at Pentecost at cardweille forto be,
eche Barown and his lady so fre. 4736
So comen they thedyr everychon
the kynges comaundement forto don.
At that Feste the kyng Bar corowne
jn chirche, jn paleys, jn feld and towne. 4740
and grete 3iftes 3af the kyng, certeinle,
bothe to lordis and ladyes, aftyr here degre.

4707. *lyved*, *y* corrected from *e*.4713. *counseyl*, *l* squeezed in afterwards.

- At that Feste ful joyful was the kyng,
 whanne that he Sawh that Fayre assemblyng. 4744
 So that he clepede on of his olde counseiller,
 that ful mochel he trusted jn ther,
 hos name vlphyn thanne was,
 that the kyng clepede jn that plas, 4748
 and axede of hym how that he scholde do
 for Ygwernes love, that wrowht hym wo—
 “that nethyr Sleping ne wakyng non reste, certeyne!
 So that hire love doth me distreyne, 4752
 and but j haue the bettere counsaile,
 j am Siker to deyen, *with-owten* faylle.”
 thanne spak vlphyn, and lette for non schame :
 “Now Sekerly, Sire, 3e ben to blame, 4756
 that for a wommans love wenen to deye!
 and it were to me ward, Sire, be my feye,
 as pore man as J am here on,
 and j lovede so as 3e now don, 4760
 j wolde neuere deyen for hire Sake,
 but som othir menes thanne wolde j make,
 owthyr *with* faire speche or 3iftes grete,
 With dalyaunce, and With love hyre threte, 4764
 and to hem that ben hire abowte
 gret 3iftes to 3yven, al that rowte.
 and azens this maner of werkyng
 herde j neuere wommans cownterpletyng. 4768
 and thou thy-self that art a kyng,
 wherto makyst thou al this morneng?”
 thanne spak the kyng to vlphyn ageyn :
 “thou seist wondirly wel, jn certeyn, 4772
 and therto thou knowest what longeth *perto*
 Swich maner of werkyng forto do.
 and *perfore*, vlphyn, J the preye,
 helpe what pou canst be ony weye, 4776
 and to my cofres thou go anon,
 & ches what jewelis pou wilt amonges hem echon,
 and 3eve to hem that ben hire abowtes there,
 of hire that j myhte haven the better chere.” 4780
 “Now resteth, Sire,” quod vlphyn tho,
 “and al my deligence j wele now do.”

The king asks
the advice of
his confidant,
Ulfin (cf. l.
3709),

with regard
to his love-
affair.

Ulfin en-
courages the
king,

recommen-
ding fair words
[leaf 106*a*]
and great
presents,

which no
woman can
resist.

The king
charges Ulfin
to distribute
jewels.

	thus vndirtook Sire vlphynes there	
	to helpen the kyng aftyr his powere.	4784
The king lives in joy and bouny.	thanne was the kyng joyful jn þat stede, For wel he hopede that vlphyn scholde spede. and so that alle thike xv dayes the kyng made gret joye and many playes, and algates the dewk jn his compenye, and many grete jewelis 3af he, Sekerlye.	4788
Ulfin brings Ygwern many a costly jewel.	thanne jn this mene whille also vlphyn to ygwerne spak vnto, and manye a riche jewel he hire browhte, whiche þat hire best scholde plesen him thowhte. but ygwerne reseeyvede non of al this, For why he it dede, wel thowhte sche, j-wys. so that jt happede vppon a day that ygwerne to vlphyn thus gan say :	4792
The lady refuses the gifts,	“sey, vlphyn, what Js the cause and why Swiche 3iftes me to profren so prevyly?”	4796
and remon- strates,	“Lady, for 3owre bewte and 3owre semblance, For 3owre discresciown and good dalyawnee, For 3owre hyghe wyt and 3owre bownte, alle these Londis goodis, 3owre they be, and alle mennes persones to 3ow scholen obeye as to here owne Sovereyn lady, Sekerlye.” “how myhte this be,” quod Ygwerne thanne, “that to me scholde obeye so manye a manne?”	4800
Ulfin praises her high qualities,	“For his herte haven 3e al only to whom alle men scholen obeien lowly.” “O Lord god, ho may that be? j preye the, vlphyn, telle þou now me!” “the kynges herte,” seide vlphyn than.	4804
and tells her that she pos- sesses the king's heart.	“Anon to blessen sche hire be-gan, and seyde : “how longe hath the kyng a tretour be, that my lord So worschepith to-form me, and me wolde don so fowl a schame, and þerto bryngen me jnto endeles blame? Therefore, sire vlphyn, j warne the,	4808
Ygwern con- demns the king.		4812
		4816

4784. *hif*, *f* through correction.4809. *al* added above the line.4813. *than*, *a* rendered distincter afterwards.

- that neuere more swich wordis þou speke to me. 4820
 and ȝif thou it euer do, in certeyn,
 j schal jt tellen my lord, ful pleyn. Ygwern
threatens
to tell her
husband.
 And ȝif there-offen he knowe, trewlye,
 Ful Syker thou be that thou schalt deye ! ” 4824
 thanne answerede Sire vlphyn ageyn :
 “ that were non resown, in certeyn,
 that j so for my lord Scholde now deye.
 Now ȝe ben to blamen, ful trewelye, 4828
 that ȝe refusen so ryal a thyng,
 to haven bothe the love and þe herte of a kyng,
 that so ȝow loveth aboven alle erthly creature,
 So whethir to lyven oper deyen he not, j ȝow enswre, 4832
 but lyveth in hope as a woful manne.”
 “ ȝe gabben,” quod Ygwerne to vlphyn thanne.
 “ Nay, but that ȝe wele now mercy have
 Vppon ȝowre Kyng, And ȝowre-self to save. 4836 [leaf 107 a]
 and but ȝe don as j ȝow here say,
 gret deseise may fallen with-jinne schort day.
 For Nethyr ȝowre lord ne ȝe ne mowen non thyng
 withstonden azens the wyll of the kyng.” 4840
 thanne seide Ygwerne and answered ageyn,
 Ful sore wepyngge thanne, in certeyn :
 “ ȝif j mowe, j schal me defende,
 j schal him Neuere sen, thowh he for me sende ! ” 4844

- Thus departyd they thanne anon,
 and Sire vlphyn to the kyng is gon,
 and tolde the kyng Every word thanne. 4847 Ulfyn tells
the king,
 þe kyng seide : “ sche answerede as a good wommanne !
 Neuertheles, vlphyn, ȝit not thou leve,
 For a good womman hire-self wyle preve
 and not so sone ouercomen to be ;
 ȝit forto assayen j preye to the.” 4852
 So it happede that on the xj day
 after pentecost, as j ȝow say,
 the kyng at his mete sat ful lel,
 and with hym the dewk of tyndagel. 4856 Some time
after, the
king sits at
table with
the duke.

4853. *the*, *h* corrected from *c*.

Ulfín kneel-
ing before
the king,
suggests that
he should
send a gold
cup to
Ygwern.

The king
speaks to the
duke,

who unsus-
pectingly and
gratefully
tells his con-
fidant Bretel

to take the
cup to Yg-
wern.

Bretel goes,

and delivers
the duke's
message.

Ygwern
grows red
for shame,
but drinks
out of the
cup.

a ful riche cowpe stood to-fore the kyng,
and vlphyn, that was to-form him knelyng :
“Syre, take 3e this cuppe & sende Ygwerne,
and for 3owre loue to drynken let hire not werne. 4860
preye 3e the dewk jt nyhte so be,
and as hire owne stille it to kepen for the.”
thanne to this dewk spak the kyng,
and him preyde to fulfillen his askyng, 4864
that he wolde that cowpe to ygwerne sende—
“and for my love to drynken, and me hauen jn mende ;
and that sche the cowpé kepe now styлле,
to don ther-with at hire owne wyлле.” 4868
thanne answered that worthy manne,
that non maner of evel thowhte he thanne,
and clepyd a knyht, that him stood besyde,
that with hym was prevy jn eche tyde : 4872
“Tak 3e this cowpe here ryht anon,
and to 3owre lady there-with 3e gon,
and seyth to hire on this manere,
that sche here-offen drynke *with* ryht good chere, 4876
hertylich for love of the kyng,
and the cowpe to kepen to hire weldyng.”
This knyht Bretel wyth þe cowpe wente ful softe,
and the dewk the kyng there-offen thankyde ofte. 4880
Forth this Bretel to chambre gan gon,
There as these ladyes eten Everychon,
and toform his lady he knelyd a-down,
as to a worthy lady of renown. 4884
“ Lady, this cowpe 3ow sendeth the kyng,
and my Lord 3ow comandeth ouer alle thing
For the kynges love to drynken *with* good chere,
and stille þe cowpe to kepen jn fair manere.” 4888

Whanne this lady these wordis herde,
ful red sche wax, and aschamed sche ferde,
and dorste not refusen hire lordis byddyng, 4891
and drank of this cowpe, and wolde han sent it the kyng.
thanne seide Bretel to that lady fre :

4860. *loue* added afterwards above the line.

4879. *wyth*, *y* corrected from *e*.

- "stille it to kepen my lord comanded the,
 and so the kyng hym faire preide,
 þerfore doth ȝe as j have ȝow seyde!" 4896
 thanne say this lady þat for good ne ylle
 but that thiike cowpe sche moste kepen styлле.
 and Bretel aȝen to halle was goeng,
 and on Ygwernes be-halve thankyd þe kyng, 4900
 Not-withstondyng sche seide non word
 To Bretel, whiles sche sat atte bord.
 Ful mochel joye made the kyng tho,
 that ygwerne his cowpe resceyved so. 4904
 thanne vlphyn anon to chambre þe weye gon take,
 To seu what semblaunce Ygwerne dide make.
 And þere He Fond Hyre jn pensyfnesse,
 angry of chere, and ful of hevynesse. 4908
 and whanne the tables j-drawn were,
 anon cleped sche vlphyn to hire there,
 and Seide: "be tresown thy lord the kyng
 me a cowpe hath sent, aȝens my willyng, 4912
 but lytel wymnege to hym schal jt be,
 For my lord j wele it tellen, Sykerle,
 what tresown that the kyng and ȝe
 han purchased aȝens my lord & me!" 4916
 thanne answerid here vlphyn ageyn:
 "beth wel war what ȝe don Seyn!"
 thanne answerede this lady fre:
 "blame haue he þat spare for hym oþer the 4920
 that j ne schal tellen, every word,
 the tresown of the and of thy lord!"
 Thens vlphynes departyd, and cam to halle,
 There as weren these lordis alle. 4924
 the kyng hadde whaschen and þe bord j-drawe,
 and jn herte was the kyng bothen joyful and fawe,
 and took the dewk be the hond anon:
 "Sire, jnto chambre now lete vs gon 4928
 and sen the chere of these ladyes gent."
 "J graunte," quod the dewk, "Sire, verament."
 thanne wente the kyng & þe dewk anon,
 there as Ygwerne et, þei comen thussone. 4932
 thanne wiste ygwerne ful witterly

Ygwern is
requested to
keep the cup.

Bretel returns
to the king
and thanks
him on Yg-
wern's behalf,
although she
has said
nothing.
The king is
delighted.

Ulfin goes to
see Ygwern,
whom he
finds angry
[leaf 107b]
and sad.

She com-
plains of
treason, and
declares she
will inform
her husband.

Ulfin tells her
to beware,

but cannot
deter her.

The king,
after his
meal, goes
with the duke
to the ladies'
room.

Ygwern
knows it is
for her sake.

that for here jt was only.

so this sche suffrede al that day
with sorweful herte and sore afray.

4936

At night,
Ygwern
retires,
weepingly, to
her lodgings.

So that at nyht to hire ostel sche wente
with hevy chere and wepyng, veramente.
and whanne the dewk Sawh hire of that chere,
he axede hire what that hire eylede there,
and embraccede hire jn his armes two,
and axede hire what the cawse was tho.

4940

She tells her
husband

“Forsothe to 3ow non thing wyl j hele,
but j schal tellen 3ow Everydele
as to my lord that j love most of alle thing
aboven alle creatures jn Erthe leveng.

4944

of the king's
love,

here js the kyng, my lord and 3owre,
he loveth me with gret dishonoure.
For alle these cowrtes, and this feste,
and þe sonde of these ladyes, bothe lest and meste,
js not for non thing but only for me,
that j with 3ow scholde comen, Sykerle.

4948

his many
presents,

thus many 3iftes he hath me sente,
and j non Resceyved, verament.

4952

the ruse with
the cup,

and thus be bretel 3e sente me to say
the cowpe þat j scholde Resceyve this day,
and that for his love drynken J scholde,
and aftyr to kepen the cuppe of goolde,
that Syker j hadde as leef ded forto haue be
as jt han Resceyved so, Sykerle.

4956

4960

and her
constant
annoyance.

and what for hym and fore vlphyn
j may non reste haven, souereyn myn !”

“Thanne se j be 3oure wordis here,
with-owten velonye to remeve, a maistrye it were.”

4964

She begs to
be taken
home to
Tyndagel.

“3e, worthy sovereyn, j preye to the
To tyndagel that 3e wolden leden me,
and jn this place non lengere abyden here,
but jn owre owne lordschepe þat we were !”

4968

The irate
duke sends
for his men,

and whanne the dewk herde al this,
anon ful wroth he was, j-wys,
and sente aftyr his knyhtes faste,
that to hym they scholde comen jn haste.
and whanne to hym they were comen echon,

4972

To hem thanne seide the dewk anon :		
“Retorne 3ow faste forto ryde,		gives orders
and þat non man þere-offen wyte this tyde,	4976	for a sudden
Neþer axeth not of me the cawse why,		and secret
for j schal 3ow it tellen ful pleylnly.”		departure,
thus the dewk with his meyne		
into his contre ladde his lady fre.	4980	and returns
		to his own
		country.
Vppon the morewen, Whanne Jt Was day,		[leaf 107 c]
Whanne the kyng Wyste of this affray,		Next morn-
how that the dewk thus was agon,		ing, the
the dwchesse, and the meyne echon,	4984	king receives
he sente aftyr his cownseyl jn hye,		the news.
and told hem of this velenye,		
also of the spyt he hadde hym j-don,		He calls in
to hym and to alle his Baronye echon ;	4988	his council,
where-offen merveilled al that Feste		relates what
that there beleften, bothe lest and meste.		has happened,
thus Spoken they alle of this clause,		
but lytel wisten they what was his cause.	4992	
“j take witenesse,” quod the kyng, “of 3ow in fere		reminds them
that more worschepe J dede hym here		of the honour
thanne to ony oþer j dede at þe feste present.”		he has always
and that wisten they alle wel, verament.	4996	shown the
“and 3ow like,” quod the kyng,		duke,
“j schal him sende newe tydyng,		
that he come and amendis make		and says he
of that he hath azens me take,	5000	should like to
and that jn the same degre he hennes wente,		send orders
that he azen come with good entente.”		for him to
and herto acorded his cownsaile,		return with
3if that it myhte ony thyng awaylle.	5004	the same
and on the kynges behalve, verament,		company
tweyne worthy men weren there sent,		with which
and comen streyht rydyng to Tyndagel.		he left.
the dewk they fownden & his meyne eche del,	5008	
and seiden as they were charged of the kyng,		Two messen-
and of the dewk they abyden here ansveryng.		gers are sent
		to Tyndagel.

4980. *Contre*, *C* corrected from *l*.5009. *wer*, *r* through correction.

- Whanne the dewk vndirstood al this,
 that nedis he moste aȝen comen, j-wis, 5012
 jn the same degre that he was there,
 thanne moste with hym gon ygwerne, his fere,
 and that wolde he for non maner of thyng,
 and ryht so sente he to seyne to the kyng, 5016
 and seide: "to cowrt j wele not gon
 amongis hem that ben my fon!"
 thus thanne wente þe messengeris ageyn,
 and the answeze tolde the kyng, ful pleyn. 5020
 thanne, whanne these messengeris weren agon,
 þe dewk aftyr his counseille thanne sente anon,
 and tolde hem the cause ful pleynly,
 the cause of his comeng so hastely, 5024
 and what schame the kyng gan hym purchase,
 that cawsed hym to voyden owt of þat plase.
 and whanne they herden his pleyneng,
 they ȝoven the dewk good comfertyng, 5028
 and seiden: "he þat schame to his lige wyle purchase,
 on hym may be-happen the same grace!"
 Thanne preyde hem the dewk anon
 hem of helpe and socour everichon, 5032
 and his lond helpen to defende,
 ȝif þe kyng on hym ony werre wolde sende.
 so that him they grawntyd, with-owten stryf,
 To lesen bothe here hedes and lyf. 5036
 whanne þe messengeris to Cordwel were comen jn fere,
 The kyng they fownden and þe barowns there.
 and word for word they tolden the kyng
 what maner was þe dewkis answeyng. 5040
 thanne seiden þe barowns that weren there,
 they merveilled mochel of his answeze,
 For they helden hym a ful wys man,
 what that so evere eylede hym than. 5044
 thanne preide the kyng his barowns anon
 hym helpen to avengen of his fon
 and of the dispyt he hath him do—
 "and my feste thus distorbled so." 5048
 Thanne answerede these barowns ageyn,
 And preyden the Kyng alle, Ful pleyn,

The duke
refuses to
return to the
court.

The duke
sends for his
counsellors,
and tells
them the
cause of his
sudden de-
parture.

They promise
him their
help.

When the
king's mes-
sengers
return with
the duke's
reply,

the barons
are surprised.

The king
asks them to
assist him.

- of fowrty dayes to zeven hym warneng ;
 and the kyng hem grauntyd here askyng. 5052
 thanne sente the kyng messengeris ful Lel
 to the dewk of tyndagel,
 and seide, atte the fowrtythe day
 he wolde him visite, ȝif he may. 5056
 and þerto he preide his barowns echon
 redy to ben *with* hym thedyr to gon.
 and whanne the dewk herde this tydyng,
 the dewk hym purveyed jn alle thing,
 and abowtes sente faste to his meyne
 hym helpen forto socoure jn that degre.
 and they senten answeze aȝen there,
 they wolden jt don to here powere. 5064
 thanne seide the dewk to his cownseylle,
 he ne hadde but twey castelis þat myhte awaylle—
 “ whiche nethir of thiike two
 he schal neuere wyzne, what he kan do. 5068
 þefore jn tyndagel j schal leven Ygwerne,
 and ten knyhtes hire forto governe,
 the wheche of non assawt ȝyven cure
 of non man lyvenge, J ȝow ENSWRE. 5072
 and to the tothyr j wele go,
 þere to defenden me fro my fo,
 For of non assawt j ne rekke,
 thowh he aȝens me ordeyne neuer so wykke !” 5076
 and that castel ful strong he gan to make
 al only for the kynges Sake.
 thanne to þe kyng comen þe messengeres ageyn,
 and tolden þe answeze to þe kyng, ful pleyn,
 that he wolde defenden hym to his myht,
 as he was trewe an a gentyl knyht.
 thanne sente the kyng aftyr his barown
 thorwh-owt al his regiown,
 and made hem to semblen al jn fere
 atte the entre of the dewkis lond þere,
 beside a ryver jn a fair mede ;
 the barowns þere semblede jn þat stede. 5088
 and whanne they weren assembled Euerichon,
 the kyng rehersed the dyspyt anon

Word is sent
to the duke
that the king
will visit him
on the
fortieth day.

The duke
gathers pro-
visions,

is promised
help by his
men,

leaves Yg-
wern in
Tyndagel,

and goes
himself to
the other
strong castle
that he
possesses.

The king is
told of the
duke's reso-
lute behav-
iour.

He summons
his barons to
meet on the
border,

and puts the
case before
them.

- that the dewk dyde jn his plas,
 at his feste there he was. 5092
- The king
 invades the
 duke's land. and thus entred þe kyng with his meyne
 jnto þe dewkis lond, ful Sykerle,
 and there sesede he al his lond,
 as J do 3ow now forto vndirstond. 5096
- He hears
 about the two
 castles, thanne was Jt told to the kyng
 that jn tyndagel, with-owten lesyng,
 that þere-jinne was Ygwerne þat dewchesse
 Jn strong hold and jn distresse, 5100
 and the dewk jn a-nothyr castel was,
 that was not allynges so strong a plas.
 thanne axede the kyng anon cownsaile,
 whiche castel he scholde ferst assaylle. 5104
 thanne cownseille they 3oven hym everichon
 that ferst to the dewkys he scholde gon.
 and þerto the kyng grauntyd as faste,
 and to that castel anon ryden they jn haste. 5108
 thanne spak the kyng to vlphyn tho,
 and axede hym there what he scholde do.
 "but 3if that j myhte Sen ygwerne,
 of sore morneng kan non man me werne." 5112
 thanne seide vlphyn to hym ageyne :
 "3it a while 3e mosten Suffren peyne ;
 for a thing þat may not 3it be,
 to the Ende moste ben suffred, parde !" 5116
- [leaf 108 a] Longe lay the kyng At this Castel,
 but hit avayllede hym nevere a del,
 So that he was Jn his gret morneng,
 for to that castel he myhte don non thing, 5120
 and alther most for love of the dewchesse,
 whiche browhte his herte jn gret distresse.
 So that vppon a day, as jt fyl thore,
 jn his payylown he wepte ful sore. 5124
 and his meyne goznen it to aspye,
 and thens they wenten ful prevylye.

5096. *Now*, *N* through correction.5109. *thāne*, the *n*-mark and the top part of *e* in blacker ink.5119. *gret* added above the line.5120. MS. *forto*.

thanne cam vlphyn and that aspyde,
and jn to hym goth at that Tyde.

5128

Ulfin goes to
the king,
and asks him
why he weeps.

Anon whanne he him say wepen thore,
hit hym ouerthrowhte wondyrly sore,
and he axede the kyng why he wepte tho.
"what nede is to the to askyn me so?"

5132

The king
says that
Ulfin knows
the reason
well.

For weten 3e wel that j schal deye
for ygwernes love, certeynlye,
and that is now my destyne,
For bothen mete and drynk js benomen me,
and al kende reste is bereft me fro,
that good o^{per} ese ony man Scholde do."
whanne that vlphyn herde al this :

5136

"of Feble herte 3e ben, j-wys,
For a wommans love that 3e scholen deye.
let be, for schame, and nowht so seye!

5140

Ulfin, after
censuring
the king for
his weakness,

but wylen 3e aftyr my cownseylle wende,
anon aftyr merlyne that 3e sende,
where that evere he mowe be fownde,
that he to 3ow come with-junne a stownde.
for he kan 3even 3ow ful good cownseylle,
that to 3owre herte it schal wel avaylle.
and grauntyth hym, so god 3ow save,
For his labour what he wyle hane!

5144

advises him
to send for
Merlin,

For he kan Jt riht ful wel do,
and non man but he, j seye 3ow so."
thanne quod the kyng : "that wot j wel,
he is ful konneng everydel,
and j wot wel he knoweth al my distresse ;

5148

and to give
him anything
he shall
demand for
his help.

but that he be wroth with this, j gesse,
For the place at the table assayed was
at cardweille, jn that ryal plas ;
and so then it is now longes ago
that he to me ne cam not to.

5152

5156

The king
fears that
Merlin is
angry on
account of
the attempt
to fill the
vacant seat,

and j trowe it ouerthenketh him thore
that my liges wif j loue so sore.

5160

and on ac-
count of the
king's unlaw-
ful love.

but Sertes, j ne may non other do,
whethir it torne me to wele o^{per} wo.

5164

Ulfín hopes
that Merlin
will soon
arrive.

and j wot wel he wil me telle myn entent,
that this was þe cause J fore hym sent.”
“of on thing,” quod vlphyn, “J schal 3ow telle :
he is heyl and sownd jn flesch and felle. 5168
and 3if he 3ow love as 3e suppose he do,
he wyl non while now ben 3ow fro,
3if that he knowe 3owre distresse
owther ony part of 3oure hevynesse ; 5172
that sone tydynges scholen 3e here
of hym, and þerfore be of ryht good chere !”

Ulfín asks
the kyng to
cease fret-
ting, and be
merry with
his men.

Thus comforted sire vlphyn the kyng,
and bad hym to beleven his morneng, 5176
and þere to senden aftyr his men,
and to hem gret joye to make than ;
his peyne so scholde he thanne for3ete,
and solace and mirthe there to hym gete. 5180
the kyng hym seide, he wolde so do—
“but my love may j not for3eten so.”

Renewed
attacks prove
fruitless.

thanne thus the castel the kyng gan assaile,
but lytel oper nowht jt dede hym awaylle. 5184

One day,
Ulfín rides
out, and
meets a
[leaf 108 b]
seemly old
man,

Jt happede vppon a day that vlphyn rod
thorwh-owt þe ost, and not abod,
And mette there With a semly man,
that this Sire vlphyn knew not than. 5188
thanne seide this good man to vlphyn tho :

who desires
to speak with
him.

“Sire, j wolde with 3ow speken a word oper two.”
thanne seide sire vlphyn to hym ageyn :
“and with 3ow, Sire, now jn certeyn !” 5192

Ulfín alights,

So forth they wenten, ful wel j wot,
vlphyn on hors-bak, & þe good man on fot.
and there Sire vlphyn alyht a-down
with that good man to han Som resown. 5196

and asks who
he is.

Sire vlphyn axede what he was.
he seide : “as an old man 3e sen jn þis plas,
and of my 3owthe wysdom j kan
as mochel as som other man”— 5200
and þere tolde vlphyn of manye a thyng

5172. *hevynesse*, *y* corrected from *e*.

5190. *with*, *w* corrected from *3*.

that to vlphyn there was wel knoweng,
and atte laste tolde hym Jn cownseyl
how he hadde j-ben atte Tyndagel,
and that but lytel while ago—

5204 The old man
says he
knows of the
king's love
for Ygwern,

“where as a good man Seide me vnto
that 3owre kyng lovede the dewkis wyf,
and for hire distressed sore of his lif,

5208

and 3oure kyng hath distroyed his lond,
For he ladde ygwerne from cardweill, j vndirstond.

and, Sire, and 3e wylen vndirstonden me,
3if 3owre kyng wyle 3even me large fe,
J knowe where that is a good man

5212 and that he,
for a hand-
some reward,
will tell of
one who can
help the king.

that 3ow with ygwerne schal don speken than,
and that ful wel kan cownseillen 3oure kyng
of al his love to haven fondyng.”

5216

and whanne that vlphyn herde al this,
he merveilled what man he was, j-wis,
and preide hym to leven alle manere of thing,

Ulfin eagerly
asks him to
bring the
man.

and that man to bringen to the kyng
that of his love him cowde cownseille,
the bettere that it hym myhte avaylle.

5220

thanne seide this olde man ageyn :

“j wile ferst knowen my wages, certeyn.”

5224 The old man
wants first
to know his
reward.

thanne axede of hym vlphyn there :

“where schal j 3ow fynde, telle me now here.”

“To morwen 3e scholen me here fynde
betwene this and þe ost, haue þis jn mynde.”

5228 They appoint
to meet again
next morn-
ing.

and so there departyd they ful snelle,
and seide to vlphyn þat he wolde hym telle
vppon the morwen Swiche tydyng—

“that to thin herte schal ben gret lykyng.”

5232

Anon Sire vlphyn to the kyng gan gon,
and told hym these wordis everichon.

Ulfin returns
home with
the good
news.

thanne, whanne the kyng herde al this,
he lowhe and made gret joye and blis.

thanne seide the kyng to vlphyn a3e :

“knowe 3e þat man, and 3e hym se?”

5236 The king is
delighted,
and inquires
about the
man.

“3e, sire, it is ryht an old man

- and feble, as j discryven kan." 5240
- The king
inquires
about the
appointed
meeting.
"Sire vlphin, whanne hath he behoten the
aȝen to meten with ȝow, certeinle?"
"To morwen j moste with hym mete,
and hym to tellen what ȝe him behete." 5244
thanne seide the kyng, with-owten drede:
"thedyr, vlphyn, j preye thou me lede!"
"Sire, gladly," quod vlphyn, "that wyl j do."
He is willing
to give any
reward.
"and ȝif behynden me ȝe speken hym vnto, 5248
So behoteth hym what he wyle have,
oȝer any thing that he wyle of ȝow crave!"
and thus abyden they al that nyht,
and the kyng was bothe joyful and lyht, 5252
moche meriere thanne he was to-fore,
that ony of his men knewen thore.
- Next morn-
ing Ulfin and
the king ride
forth.
On the morwe, aftyr masse, thanne vlphyn rod,
and the kyng aftyr not longe abod, 5256
but rod into swich a partye
[leaf 108 c] As he Was Gyded, sekerlye.
and whanne the ost they gonnen to pase,
They see a
blind cripple,
a lame man Syen they jn that plase, 5260
that nethir ne myht gon ne Se,
thus semed hem, ful certeinle.
So that anon they pasten hym by,
who calls out
that he can
help the king.
and thussonne he sette vpe a lowd Cry. 5264
he seide: "sire kyng, god fulfille thi wille,
alle that thin herte desireth vntylle!
and ȝif þou wilt ȝeven me ony thyng,
j schal fulfille thyn owne desireng." 5268
thanne loked the kyng on vlphin ful snelle,
and seide: "is thys he that scholde me telle
of myn desir and of myn honour?
how hast þou, vlphyn, don thyn labour?" 5272
Ulfin says no.
"Nay, Sire," quod vlphyn, "jt nis not he
that j schold hauen, Sire, Sikerle,
that scholde me tellen of thy chawmse,
jt nys not he, with-owten variaunce." 5276

"knowest thou him that scholde meten the,
and of thing that j most love, to tellen me ?

go thow to hym, & thus thou say,

that j the to hym sente this day,

5280

The king
tells Ulfin to
go to the
man and
grant him
anything he
shall demand.

and þat he schal have that he wyle axen of me,

of that j am jn sesyd, ful Sekerle ;

he schal it haven at his owne wille,

ʒif that my desir he wyl fulfille !"

5284

vlphyn this word non thing ne took,

but sette hym down, and þe arende forsook,

besides this lame man sette hym adown.

thussone of vlphyn he axede a resown,

5288

and axede of hym what he dide there,

and for what thing he cam forto enqwere.

he seide: "the kyng sente me to the,

and me to the hath ʒoven, ful sikerle."

5292

thanne gan to lawhen this man anon,

and seide þat—"þe kyng parceyved me son,

and knoweth me bettere thanne þou dost,

and seeth in me more thanne thou wost.

5296

j wile that thou knowe, certeinle,

that thiike old man me sente to the ;

but of non thing j wyl the telle

of owht þat he to me of gan spelle.

5300

go thow forth faste to the kyng,

and seie hym : and he wil hauen his askyng,

grete ʒiftes moste he ʒeven, Jn fay,

his wil to parforme, ʒif that J may.

5304

For fulsone hadde he parceyved me,

perfore þe bettere with hym schal it be."

"Fayn wolde j," quod vlphin, "of ʒow enqwere,

what that ʒe ben, to tellen me here."

5308

"Axe thou thy kyng," thanne seide this man,

"For he ful wel tellen the can."

thanne to horsbak wente vlphyn anon,

and faste after the kyng gan he gon.

5312

and whanne the kyng Sawh hym comen rydyng:

"vlphyn, wherto comest þou, and for what thinge ?

whanne to that man ʒaf j the,

5315. *mā* added above the line.

Thou mayst
ask the king
who I am."

Ulfin rides
to the king.

- wherto comest þou aȝen to me?" 5316
- Ulfen tells the
king what
the cripple
has said, thanne seiðe vlphyn to hym ageyn :
- "he seiðh ȝe knewen hym, jn certeyn,
and konnen me tellen what that he is ;
thus to me, Sire kyng, he seiðe j-wys." 5320
- The king
declares that
the seemly
old man and
the cripple
are the same
person : "Sye thou that man that spak to the
jn semblaunce of an old man so feythfulle ?—
and this man that thow sye here this day,
al it is on, Sire vlphin, with-owten nay." 5324
- [leaf 108 d]
Merlin. "A, Sire kyng, how may this be, Sure,
that a man him-self scholde disfigure?"
"Ȝe, Syre, J Hym knowe Wel and fyne,
For this same man, it js merlyne !" 5328
- Meanwhile,
Merlin has
gone to the
king's tent in
his natural
shape, Aȝen thanne wenten they bothe jn fere
anon with merlyne to speken there.
- and merlyne was gon to þe kynges tente
jn his ryht Semblaunce, veramente, 5332
and axede aftyr the kyng anon.
thanne to seken wente messengeres þussen,
and metten the kyng, and him tolde
that merlyne was comen and hym haven wolde. 5336
thanne was the kyng so joyful a man,
that on word ne cowde he speken than,
but tornede ageyn with al his myht,
and to hym clepede vlphyn ful ryht, 5340
and seiðe : "it is as j the seye :
Merlyne js comen now, certeinlye !"
quod vlphyn : "now that ȝe haven hym at ȝowre wille,
alle ȝoure desire he may fulfyllen. 5344
and loke þat [ȝe] graunten hym that he wyl have,
owther of ȝoure good what he wyl krave,
For þere nys no man þat kan so wel as he
to ygwernes love ȝow bryngen, sykerle." 5348
thanne to hym seiðe the kyng ageyn :
"his wille wile j fulfillen, certeyn !"
- They find
Merlin in the
tent, Thus riden they forth to þe kynges tente,
there Fownden merlyn anon presente. 5352

and whanne the kyng hym gan aspye,

to hym he ran ful hastylle,

and hym Embraced, and kyste also,

and ful gret joye he made him tho,

and seide that ryht welcomen he was,

and often hym kyste jn that plas,

and seide: "to 3ow j wolde me compleyne,

but 3e knowez it as wel as j, certeyne;

For was there neuere non man

that me can declaren that 3e kan;

and þerfore j preye 3ow, for charite,

of myn hertly desir to helpen me!"

"j vndirstonde 3ow wel, with-owten nay,

but with-owten [vlphyn] j schal nowht Say."

thanne wenten they alle thre on syde,

and jn counseill spoken that jlke tyde.

thanne tolde the kyng to Merlyne anone

that to vlphyn he tolde thusseone—

"that 3e weren that olde man,

and sethen the toper þat he beheld than."

thanne vlphyn faste beheld him there:

"may it so ben jn ony manere,

lyk as the kyng here telleth me?"

"3e, Sire vlphyn," quod merlyne, "certeinle!

For assone as he the to me sente,

thanne wist y wel he hadde knoweliching, veramente."

"Now, Sire kyng," quod vlphyn thanne,

"Speke 3e to merlyne, this good manne,

of Swich thinges as 3e haven to do,

and that he wolde 3ow helpen þerto."

thanne seide the kyng to hym ageyn

that— "j kan neþer non thing don ne seyn,

that he ne knoweth myn hole entent,

thowh j scholde maken lesynges, verament.

and sethen that al myn herte þat he doth knowe

and alle myn prevy thowhtes vppon a rowe,

wherfore j preye 3ow, for charyte,

To Ygwernes love that 3e helpen me.

The king
gives him a
heartly
welcome,

5356

and refers to
his own soie
distress.

5360

Merlin says
he under-
stands him.

5364

The king
tells Merlin
of his having
seen through
his twofold
disguise.

5368

Ulfen is in-
credulous,

5372

but Merlin
confirms the
king's words.

5376

The king
avows that
Merlin knows
all his
thoughts,

5384

5388

and implores
his assist-
ance.

5366. MS. *with owten j.*

5375. *lyk, l* through correction.

5378. MS. *wifly.*

- and what thing that evere thou biddest me do,
J schal it fulfillen with-owten mo !” 5392
- Merlin, on
a certain
condition,
promises to
help the
king to the
[leaf 109 a]
possession of
Ygwern. thanne seide to hym *Merlyne* ageyn :
“and thow wilt fulfyllen, jn certeyn,
Of thing that j schal axen of the,
Ryht Wel thyn Arende J-sped schal be, 5396
and jn hire chambre schalt thow Slepe,
and jnto hire bed schalt thow lepe,
and liggen to-gederis bothe two,
body to body, Er that thow go.” 5400
- Ulfyn rejoices; thanne gan to lawhen Sire vlphyn,
whanne he herde that so spak *Merlyn*.
thanne seide the kyng to *Merlyne* tho :
“herkeneth now what j sey 3ow vnto : 5404
loke what maner of thing that 3e wilen crave ;
and it mowe be fownden, 3e scholen it have !”
thanne answeyrd *Merlyne*, ful certeinle :
“how *pere-offen* myht y Syker now be ?” 5408
thanne seide the kyng to *Merlyne* ageyn :
“what Sewraunce axen 3e, sey me ful pleyn,
and j schal fulfillen thy wille,
what so evere come me vntylle !” 5412
- Merlin wants
Ulfyn to be
secure
for the ful-
filment of
the king's
promise. “j wyle that vlphyn swere to me
that *pere-offen* siker schal j be.
and whanne to me hath he sworn Everydel,
yppon the morwen, wete thou ryht wel 5416
that al thy wil schalt thow have
of me, swich thing as þou dost crave.”
thanne seide the kyng, he wolde fulfille
alle þat evere he seide hym vntylle. 5420
thanne axede *Merlyne* of vlphyn there
3if that Sewrawnce he wolde swere.
- Not without
scruples,
Ulfyn com-
plies. “jt forthenketh me,” quod vlphyn, “trewely,
that oth to swere, natheles wele j.” 5424

Whanne *Merlyne* herde this acord,
anon gan he lawhen at that word,
and axede whanne þe Surawnce mad scholde be. 5428
thanne anon the kyng let bryngen, Sykerle,
alle the reliques that he hadde there,

The king's
relies are
brought.

- and his oþer holy thinges Jn fere ;
 and þere-vppon Sworen they bothe two
 that merlyne to hem devisede tho. 5432
 and they sworn be his Sewrawnce,
 jt scholde be don with-owten variaunce,
 with-owten frawde other mal-Engyne ;
 this oth Sworen they to merlyne. 5436
 and aftyr this, with-owten dowtaunce,
 the kyng to vlphyn swor, *with-owten* variaunce,
 To kepen sekerly that he hadde hyht,
 as that he was a trewe knyht. 5440
 thanne seide the kyng to merlyne tho :
 "Now sethen oure Surawnce þat we have do,
 that 3e wolden don that 3e-hauen hyht,
 and therto to putten alle 3owre myht,
 my desir forto don and to fulfille
 of thyke that j spak to 3ow of vntylle !" 5444
 thanne seide merlyne to the kyng :
 "3ow behoveth over alle maner thing
 to ben sad Jn 3owre Governauce,
 For sche is wis, with-owten varyaunce,
 and therto trewe azens god and man.
 and now the sothe j schal preven 3ow than,
 what power j haue hyre forto Engyne,
 3e scholen now heren be craft myne.
 the semblaunce of þe dewk j wyl putten to the,
 that non man schal 3ow from hym knowen, sikerle. 5456
 and thiike dewk hath two knyhtes,
 that he trosteth passyng owt-ryhtes,
 and to hym they ben most preve
 of alle þe men jn cristyente, 5460
 and to Ygwerne they ben also
 the prevyest men that mown go.
 the ton of hem Sire Bretel hyhte,
 The tothir, jordayns, a man of myhte. 5464
 And Bretelis semblaunce j wil take,
 And Vlphyn Jordayns Schal not Forsake.
 so the castel gates j schal don vndo,
 and jn to Entren, with-owten mo,
 alle thre jn this Semblaunce ; 5468

First the
king and
Ulfin swear
on the relics
after Merlin's
dictation ;

then the
king swears
another oath
for the secu-
rity of Ulfin.

This being
done, Merlin
says :
" You must
act pru-
dently,
for Ygwern
is a wise and
true woman.

I will put on
you the figure
of the duke.

The duke
has two
confidants,

Bretel (p. 130)
and Jordan.

I and Ulfin
will take
[leaf 109 b]
their shapes.
Thus we shall
all get into
Ygwern's
castle.

- thus scholen we gon, *with-owten variaunce.*
 but whanne we gon alle jn fere,
 3oure barows a3en þat 3e retourne þere, 5472
 and chargeth hem jn alle wyse
 that to þe castel they maken non aprise
 jnto þe tyme that 3e comen ageyn ;
 that 3e hem 3yven warneng ful pleyn. 5476
 and that to non man that 3e sende
 whedyr 3e schole gon, j 3ow forfende."
 thanne swor the kyng be his oth,
 he wold it not don for lef ne loth. 5480
 "thanne Trosteth me, with-owten variaunces,
 J schal 3ow delyveren these semblaunces."
- Anon the kyng dyde his devere
 of thinges that merlyne comanded hym þere. 5484
 and whanne that thus hadde he do,
 thanne anon to merlyne gan he go,
 and seide : "j have fulfild 3owre byddyng,
 Now do 3e myn over alle thyng !" 5488
 "Lete vs remeve," quod merlyne, "welsone,
 and alle thre to-gederis scholen we gone."
- So longe alle thre to-gederis paste,
 that to tyndagel they comen atte laste. 5492
 thanne seide merlyne to the kyng :
 "betwixen vlphyn and me make 3oure abydyng."
 and whanne merlyne hadde wrowht al his thyng,
 thanne seide he anon to the kyng : 5496
 "Take 3e this herbe that is here,
 and Frote 3owre visage al jn fere,
 3oure hondis, 3oure body, 3oure feet also ;
 jn alle wyse that 3e thus do." 5500
 the kyng thanne dide his comaundement.
 thanne hadde he hol semblaunce, verament,
 lik as the dewk it hadde j-be,
 j Seye 3ow, Sires, ful certeinle. 5504
 thanne cam merlyne to þe kyng :

Meanwhile,
 let your
 barons stay
 quietly out-
 side the
 duke's castle,

and tell no-
 body where
 we are
 going."

The king
 follows
 Merlin's
 directions,

and the three
 start for
 Tyndagel.

The king is
 told to rub
 himself with
 a herb,

and is in-
 vested with
 the figure of
 the duke.

5470. The line was omitted and then written down the margin.

5492. *tyndagel*, *dag* through correction (probably from *gel*).

"be-thenke ȝow now of a thyng :

ȝif evere jordayn that ȝe sye."

"ȝis," quod the kyng thanne, "Sekerlye !"

5508

thussone hadde vlphyn jordayns lyknesse ;

To-forn the kyng he gan him dresse.

and whanne the kyng beheld al this,

he merveilled howh it myhte ben, j-wis.

5512

thanne axede the kyng of vlphyn there :

"how thenkest þou be my semblaunce here ?"

"Sire," quod vlphyn, "be this day

j knowe ȝow not but for þe dewk, jn fay !"

5516

and the kyng him tolde, *with-owten* varyawnce,

that evene hadde he jordayns Semblawnce.

and thanne loked they bothe vppon merlyn tho,

and Bretelis semblaunce hem semede bothe two.

5520

thanne thus abyden they al jn fere,

tyl that the day was past so clere.

and whanne the day was over past,

toward the castel they comen jn hast,

and comen to the castel gate,

and merlyne, as Bretel, clepid þere-ate.

thanne þe meyne that was þere with-june,

comen to the ȝate, and wolden not blynne.

5528

and whanne they Syen the dewk verrayly,

as to here Semeng, ful certainly :

"openeth the ȝate, taketh jn ȝowre lord !"

thus seide merlyne jn Bretelis word.

5532

thanne thowhten alle þat *with-june* weren than,

that it was the dewk, Bretel, & jordayn.

thanne Bretel charged al that meyne

That jn alle thinges they scholde kepen it *preve*—

5536

"And telleth non man of the dukes comenge,

J ȝow charge aboven alle thynges."

but certein peple jnowe þere were

that the dwchesse it tolde to there.

5540

and tyl they comen jnto þe jnnere paleys,

er thanne wolde they not Ses.

The king is
desired to
think of
Jordan,

and in the
same moment
Ulfin stands
before him
in Jordan's
shape.

Merlin puts
on the ap-
pearance of
Bretel.

In the
evening,
they all go
to Ygwern's
castle.

Merlin tells
the garrison
to let in their
lord,

[leaf 109 c]
and to keep
his arrival
secret.

5506. *a* added above the line.

5509. *vlphyn*, *v* corrected from *j*.

5522. *waf*, *f* corrected from *t*.

	and merlyn took the kyng on side, and hym counseilled that jlke tyde that of lyht chere he Scholde be.	5544
The king, attended by Merlin and Ulfyn, goes into Ygwern's bed-room.	and so jnto chambre wenten they alle thre, there as Ygwerne on bedde lay ; alle thre they weren, the sothe to say.	5548
	and as hastely as they myhte, the kyng sone they gonnen vndyhte, tyl that with ygwerne jn bedde he was, where Arthewr was be-ge ten jn pat plas.	5552
She is joyful at the arrival of the pre- tended husband.	gret Joye thanne made that lady, that hire lord wende haue had, verrayly, which that sche lovede Jn herte and thowht ; but thanne ano thir was to hire j-browht.	5556
	and thus to-gederis they lyen that nyht, the dwchesse and that gentyl knyht, and tyl on the morwen, that it was day, that jn the town they gonne to say	5560
In the morn- ing, there arrives news of a battle in which the duke has been killed.	that the dewk j-slayn there was, and his styward taken Jn that plas.	
Merlin steals into the bed- room,	Anon cam merlyne ful prevyly pere as the kyng lay the lady by,	5564
and asks the king to rise	and seide : " Sire, now ryseth vp anon, For merveillous tydynges here now gon, that algates 3e scholden ben ded ; perfore rise vpe ow t of this sted !	5568
and to hasten home, as his people must think him dead.	and that 3e weren at 3owre castel, For al 3owre people weneth ful wel that Sekerly 3e scholden ben slayn ; Swiche wordis ben comen, Jn certayn."	5572
	" Non wondir," quod the kyng tho, " For so prevyly j gan from hem go, that there-offen ne wyste knyht ne sweyne Sauf onliche J and 3e tweyne."	5576
The king rises,	thanne vpe he ros, and now lenger e abod, and to-forn hem alle that there stod	
bids a loving farewell to Ygwern,	he took his leve of gentyl Ygwerne, and hire often kyste, and wolde not werne,	5580

and isswed owt of that castel,
that be hym Supposede non man but wel.

and passes
out of the
castle.

And whanne that owt they weren j-gon,
thanne seide merlyne to the kyng anon :

5584 Now Merlin
reminds him
of their
agreement.

“J haue the fulfylde myn covenant,
that j the made, and myn avenant,
and perfore loke that thou holde me myne,”

Seide to the kyng thanne merlyne.

5588

“that is ful trewe,” quod the kyng tho,

“Ful good Servyse 3e han me do.

bettere neuere man to oþer don myhte,

as that j am a gentyl knyhte.

5592

and therfore thy mede qwyten J schal,

as j am trewe kyng j-kyd oueral.

The king
declares he
will keep it.

Sey on what thyng that thou wilt crave,

and Feithfully thou schalt it haue !”

5596

thanne seide Merlyne to hym ageyn :

“An Eyr thou hast be-getyn, jn certeyn,

vppon Ygwerne that dewchesse,

which is a sone, jn ful Sekernesse,

and that child hast thou 3oven me

For my gwerdoun, Sire, Sikerle.

and loke that thou wryte bothe day and owr

That thou hast wrowht this dishonowr ;

5604

thanne schalt thou knowen in eche weye

3yf Jt be trowthe that J the seye.”

Anon Riht so thanne dede the kyng,

and fulfilled al his askyng.

Merlin
demands the
fruit of the
king's un-
lawful inter-
course :
his son and
heir, whom
Ygwerne will
give birth to.

5600

[leaf 109 d]
The king
assents.

5608

So thanne reden they forth al jn fere,

Tyl that they comen to on Revere,

and there they weschen hem alle thre

here owne Semblaunce to haven, sekerle.

5612

So pasten they forth in gret haste,

tyl to here ost they comen atte laste.

and whanne that his meyne gan hym aspye,

abowtes hym they flokkeden hastelye,

5616

and of hem axede he anon

The three
men ride to
a river,

wash there,

recover their
natural
shapes,

and get back
to the army.

	how that the dewk ded was so son.	
The king is told how the duke, when noticing the king's absence from the army,	and they hym tolden, ful certeynlye,	
	how that cas befyl, ful openlye :	5620
	“Jt happede, as sone as 3e were gon,	
	Ful preve we kepten vs everychon ;	
	and that parceyved the dewk thussone,	
	that owt of the ost 3e were gone,	5624
	and dyde armen his men jn haste,	
made a sally from the castle,	that so on vs they comen welfaste,	
	and mochel harm deden on owre meyne.	
	anon to armes thanne gonnen we fle,	5628
	and vppon hem we precede welfaste,	
	tyl to the 3ates we comen atte laste.	
	So there the dewk fawht sore, certeyn,	
and was killed in the ensuing battle,	tyl that his hors vndyr hym was Slayn,	5632
	and there the dewk was beten adown	
	with 3owre men abowtes jn virown,	
	whiche that knewen hym non thyng,	
	that so cawhte he there his endyng.	5636
	and the remenaunt of his meyne fowhten wel sore,	
	whanne that they syen here lord ded thore.”	
The king is sorry.	Thanne ouerthrowhte the kyng ful sore, j-wis,	
	of the dewkys deth, with-owten mys.	5640

Chap. V.

	Thus, as this Storye Reherseth wel,	
	Ended the dewk of tyndagel ;	
	and the kyng ouerthrowhte welsore	
	of the aventure pat was fallen thore.	5644
He summons his council, and wishes to give compensation.	Anon his cownseyl thanne dide he calle	
	This trespass to a-menden forth withalle,	
	and that his meyne hym blamen ne scholde,	
	but that amendis fayn maken he wolde.	5648
	thanne be-spak vlfyn, ful certeynle,	
	that with the kyng was ful preve.	
	“Sire,” seilde vlphyn, “sethen jt is now so,	
	nedly amendis moste be do.”	5652
Ulfin takes the barons aside,	thanne took vlphyne the barow̄ns on syde,	
	and with hem cownseilede at that tyde.	

5652. *Nedly*, *c* through correction.

- “how mown we best amendes make
 to this lady for hire lordis sake 5656 and asks
their opinion.
 and to hire frendes Everychon,
 that for his deth maken gret mon?
 of wheche the kyng now doth 3ow preye
 hym to counseillen jn the beste weye.” 5660
 “that welen we don with good wille,
 and owre wittes it fulfyllle.
 but, goode vlphyn, alle we 3ow preye,
 the beste counseille þat 3e welen vs seye, 5664 The barons
defer to Ulfín,
 For 3e knowen best the kynges entent,
 what he thynketh to don, verament.”
 “hopen 3e thanne that j am so preve
 with the kyng Jn alle degre?” 5668
 “Sere, 3e, we knowen the for a wys man,
 and mochel of good counseyl thow can.”
 thanne seide vlphyn to hem ageyn :
 “myn avis j schal 3ow seyn, certeyn, 5672
 and thanne 3if ony bettere 3e konnen do,
 that 3e wolde seyen jt me vnto.
 J wolde that the kyng wolde don sende
 Alle abowtes, jnto everich ende 5676 Ulfín
proposes a
general meet-
ing at Tyn-
[leaf 110 a]
dagel,
 Where that the dewk Hath ony meyne,
 at Tyndagel to maken Semble.
 and thedyr wolde j that the kyng wente
 there with hem to meten jn good entente, 5680
 and don his Frendis comen hym before,
 and also the lady that is thore.
 so that the kyng hym qwyten schal, certeynle,
 afore alle the peple that there be ; 5684 where the
king is to
offer satis-
faction.
 that 3if they Refusen his proferyng,
 3e scholen holden hem folis ouer alle thing,
 and the kyng to holden a passyng wys man,
 that so mochel wele proferyn hem than.” 5688
 thanne answerede these barowns ageyn :
 “to 3ow we acorden, Jn certeyn !”
 thanne comen they alle tofore the kyng,
 and tolden hym al of here counseylllyng, 5692 The barons
approve of
this.
 and how they counseilled hem betwen ;
 what therby hym thowhte, now let Sen : The proposal
is put before
the king.

The king
consents,
and sends
messengers
to the late
duke's
kinsmen.

Anon the kyng concentyd therto,
and comanded messengeris faste forto go 5696
with his lettres juto Eche contre,
To the dewkis kennesmen, ful sekerle,
and that to hym they scholde comen echon,
Jn pes and trews to comen an gon, 5700
and there amendement to maken, certeyne,
of alle thing they wolde compleyne.
3it thowhte the kyng thanne ful wel
Forto remeve jnto Cardewel. 5704

Merlin in-
forms the
king that
the advice
given him by
the barons
is in reality
Ulfyn's.

thanne merlyne to the kyng cam anon,
and to hym tolde there thusson :
“weten 3e hos js this cownsaylle?”
“Nay,” quod the kyng, “with-owten faille, 5708
but that al my Baronye
hath me thus cownceilled, trewelye!”
“Nay,” quod merlyne, “jt nys not so,
But vlphynes cownseyl halpe perto. 5712

He further
reveals to the
king Ulfyn's
secret plan
(pp. 160 f.),

For he is bothe wis and war,
and 3e pes amonges hem declarede thar
bettere thanne alle they cowden devyse
owther it ordeynen Jn ony wyse.” 5716
thanne axede the kyng of merlyn
what thing it was that thowhte vlphyn.
and pere merlyn declared hym anon
alle vlphynes thowhtes Everichon. 5720
and whanne the kyng herde al this,
Ful mochel Joye he made, j-wys.

of which
he greatly
approves.

“how thenken 3e?” quod the kyng tho,
“myht it ony wyse bettere be do?” 5724
“Nay,” quod merlyne, “ful Sekerle,
Jt is the beste cownseille 3at may be ;
thanne hast thow thyn hertly Entent,
that thou hast desired, verament. 5728

Finally he
wishes to
speak with
Ulfyn and
the king to-
gether.

Now from the thanne wele j gon,
but with vlphyn and the j wele spoken alon.
and whanne from 3ow that j am past,
thanne mihtest 3ou axen vlphyn ju hast 5732

how that this pes he gan ordeygne."
and þe kyng seide he wolde, certeygne.

Anon thanne clepede the kyng vlphyn
To come spekyu *with* hym and *with* merlyn.
thanne seide merlyne jn here precense :

"Sere, 3e me grawntyð, *with*-owten offense,
that j scholde haven, to 3owre powere,
the child which that is 3ow[re] eyre,
whiche 3e begoten on that dewchesse,
that noble lady, ful of humbelnesse,
whiche non resown that jt is

That 3e it kepen to 3owre ews, j-wis.

For 3e han put þat tyme jn Escript,

For that the trowthe 3e scholde Wyt.

and ek also 3e knowen ryht wel

that by me 3e engendred it Everydel ;

So that the Synne Js most myn,

3if j it not brynge to othyr fyn.

and ek the modyr aschamed scholde be

hyt Forto Norschen, ful Sekerle ;

For wommen ne haven non wyt therto

here owne counseille to helen so.

therefore wolde J that vlphyn here

me wrot a bylle be ony manere,

bothe the nyht and ek the owr

whanne thou dedest that goode labowr.

For no more schalt thou me Se

Tyl the day of his birthe, ful sekerle,

and that same nyht he schal be bore.

but of on thing j preye the be-fore :

that 3e leven vlphyn, what so he say,

be it be nyht owther be day.

For nothing ne wele he tellen the,

but that profit & worschepe to þe schal be.

For the Sixe mownthes after this

with the ne schal j speken, j-wys,

and with the to speken at that tym,

5736

In the presence of Ulfín,
Merlin says
to the king:
"You have
granted me
the child
which is to
be born."

5740

5744

You cannot
keep it your-
self,

! [leaf 110 b]

5748

5752

and the
mother would
be ashamed
to nourish it.

5756

Let Ulfín
write down
the night of
its engender-
ing.

5760

Now you
shall not see
me for some
time.

5764

But believe
in Ulfín:

his advice
will be profit-
able;

5768

5740. MS. 30w.

5742. of added above the line.

5756. me, MS. we.

to him I will
speak."

but onlich schal j speken with vlphyn.
and what that evere to hym j seye,
loke 3e it beleven be ony weye !"

5772

Ulfân writes
down the en-
gendering of
the child.
Then Merlin
says to the
king pri-
vately :
" Ygwern
shall be thy
spouse,

Thus wrot vlphyn thengendrynge
there anon at the kynges byddyng.
and merlyne took the kyng on Syde,
and hym there tolde at that tyde :
" Syre kyng, Ygwerne thou schalt take,
and trostyly sche schal be thy make.
and loke thow be war Jn alle degre
that sche ne knowe nothing of the,
Neper that thou hast be hire j-leye ;
j the defende be ony weye.

5776

but say no-
thing to her
of your
previous in-
tercourse.

For that schal ben cause, wel pou wost,
that sche wele offen abaschen hire most.

5780

If thou ask
who is the
father of
her child,
she shall not
be able to
answer, and
be much
ashamed."

For 3if thow axe that lady mylde
be whom that sche goth so with childe,
sche schal not konnen the answeere
ho that is the fadyr, Jn non manere,
So þat gret schame to hire schal be,
whanne pou to hire spekyst of swich degre.'

5784

5788

The king and
Ulfân go to
Cardwell;

Thus took merlyne his leve there,
and the kyng and vlphyn leften jn fere,
and gonnen to taken here jornay
streyht to cardwell, the sothe to say.

5792

Merlin goes
to Blasy.

and merlyne forth to Blasye wente
hym forto tellen his hol entente
of this aventure and othere mo ;
Jnto scripture they deden it tho.
So now we knowen be that scripture
of these adventures, J 3ow enswre.

5796

5800

The king
speaks of
the peace-
making
with his
counsellors.

and whanne the kyng cam to kardweille,
anon sente he aftyr his cownseylle,
and axede hem what was best to do
of this pes-makyng, with-owten mo.
thane answered they hym anon ageyn :
" pes to þe dewchesse maken, jn certeyn,

5804

and to the dewkes Frendis also,
that to tyndagel now ben j-go"— 5808
and that they scholde agreen ouer al thing
jn resoun to acordement of the kyng.

Thus wenten the barowns to tyndagel,
and the kyng abod at cardweille, 5812

And took vlphyn there thanne onside,
And to hym seide there Jn that tyde,
and axede hym of that cownseyl there,
how þerby hym lykede Jn his manere. 5816

The king
speaks with
[leaf 110 c]
Ulfín on the
point.

and he answerede: "sire, ryht wel
me liketh therby now Every del."

thanne seide the kyng to hym ageyn:

"vlphyn, the pes thow hast ordeyned, certeyn, 5820
and with-jnne thyn herte thou hast it knyht,
and what it is, wel knowe Joh Jt!"

He says that
he knows
Ulfín's plan,

"thanne, 3if that the pes be ordeyned by me,
and 3if 3e it knowen thanne, Sykerle, 5824

thanne connen 3e the sothe Seye,
3if that it owht 3ow plese, Jn feye."

Anon thanne answerede þe kyng vlphyn,
and seide: "it pleseth me now wel and fyn, 5828
and lyk so as thow devised hast here,
J wolde it were wrowht Jn alle manere."

and that he is
well pleased
with it.

"Nou, goode sere, entermete 3ow non thing,
J schal it bryngen to good endyng." 5832

Therto the kyng him preyde ful faste,
and that Jt myhte be don Jn al haste.

thus endyd they here cownsaile,
and forth wenten the messengeris, *with-owten faille*, 5836

The king's
messengers
go to Tyn-
dagel,

Tyl that they comen to Tyndagel,
where as they fownden that lady Lel
and alle the dewkis Frendis also,
that to that lady j-comen weren tho. 5840

thanne tolde these messengeres þere anon,

Toforþ tho lordis Everichon,

how that worthy dewk of high parage

there was slayn be his owne owtrage, 5844

and speak
before the
assembled
nobility of the
duke's death,

and seiden that the kyng ouerthowht ryht sore
of that dede that was don thore,

- and of the
king's desire
to make
peace. wherfore gladly he wolde maken the pes—
“and therefore vs hider he ches 5848
To that lady and his kyn also ;
This is the cause we comen 3ow to.”
- The duchess's
counsellors
are favour-
ably disposed, thanne sien wel the ladyes counsail
that forto stryven, it wolde not avail, 5852
and concentyd ful wel hem to.
- go to her, And to that lady they wenten tho,
and tolden hire the answe~~re~~, as it was,
of þe kynges messengeres jn þat plas, 5856
and how he was slayn be owtrage—
“3owre worthy lord of hygh parage.
and wete 3e wel now, jn certeyn,
that a3ens the kyng mown 3e not geyn. 5860
- and advise
her to listen
to the king's
offer. and þerfore lesteneth and tent that 3e take
what maner of pes that the kyng wyl make.
and jn swich manere mown they seye,
that they scholen not ben refused, jn feye. 5864
For of tweyne badde it is good to take
the bettere, and jt not forsake.
lo, lady, thus to 3ow we Say,
now 3e mown don as 3ow liketh this day !” 5868
- The duchess
consents. Thanne answerid this lady ageyn :
“3owre cownseyl j nele forsaken, certeyn,
For of my lordis cownseyl 3e were,
and so of myn 3e scholen ben here. 5872
For j ne knowe non better jn my lond,
That j myhte better trosten, j vndirstond.”
- Her counsel-
lors return to
the king's
messengers, Thanne departyd they from here cownseyl anon,
and to the kynges messengeris gonne they gon. 5876
thanne [on] of the wisest to hem Spak there,
and thus hem answerede Jn this manere :
“Jt Js my ladyes hol entent
to weten what þe kyng meneth, verament, 5880
of hire lord, that thus ded Js,
what his mendis scholde ben, *with*-owten mys.”
thanne answerede the messengeris ageyn :
- and ask for
particulars.

- “we knowen not þe kynges wille, jn certeyn,
But that he ful pes and gryth Wyle make
to this lady for hire lordis Sake,
and bad that ȝe scholden vs leve,
For as we seyn, he wyl Jt preve.”
- 5884 The messen-
gers reply
[leaf 110 d]
that they
only know of
the king's
wish to make
peace,
- 5888
- “thanne hopen we þe kyng wyl don wel
and a-menden jt Everydel,
and so trewe we holden ȝow therto,
so that non otherwyse ȝe wylen do.”
- 5892
- thus was ajorned jnto the xv day
thanne aftyr next Seweng, with-owten delay,
that the lady and hire cownsaylle
to-forn the kyng schold comen, with-owten faylle,
- 5896
- To heren there the kynges wylle—
“what a-mendement he wele don ȝow vntylle.”
thanne seide the ladyes conseil ageyn :
- “we wilen gladliche, Jn certeyn,
So that we sauf cowndyt have
From tyndagel thedyr to comen save,
and from cardweille to tyndagel aȝen ;
lo, thus acordyd alle we ben.”
- 5900 The proposal
is accepted
on condition
of safe-con-
duct.
- 5904
- thus knydden they vpe that Ende pere,
and hom they wenten jn fair manere,
and tolden the kyng Every del
how that here massage was Endyd wel,
and that þe lady cowndyt wolde have—
“that sche to ȝow myht comen Save.”
- 5908
- thanne answerede the kyng a-geyn :
- “Sche ne axeth but resown, Jn certeyn !”
- 5912 The king is
pleased.
- thus at Cardweyll Soiorned the kyng,
and with hym vlphyn Jn cownceillyng,
and spoken of manye dyvers matere,
whiles that they weren bothe jn fere.
- 5916
- that so aȝens the fyftenethe day
the kyng Sente saufcondit, with-owten delay ;
So that the lady and hire cownsaylle,
To Cardweille comen they, sauns faille.
- 5920
- and whanne assembled they weren Echon,
the kynges conseil and they Jn on,
thanne let the kyng of hem Enqwere,
- Safe-conduct
is given, and
the duchess
and her coun-
sellors arrive
at Cardwell.

The king
sends word
to know what
satisfaction
they desire.

what amendis that they wolden asken þere. 5924

thanne answered the ladyes conseil ageyn :

“ this was not owre comeng, jn certeyn,

Forto asken here ony thyng,

They say
they will
leave it with
the king.

but to knowen the wyl of the kyng, 5928

and what pes and what acord

he wolde maken for this worthy lord.

and this is owre ladyes entent,

we seye 3ow, sires, now verament.” 5932

thanne the cownseyl vppon the kynges side

anon to the kyng comen that tyde,

and tolden hym of the ladyes answer,

that he hire conseyl sche seide there. 5936

and whanne the kyng herde al this,

a wys lady he held hire, J-wys.

The king
thinks the
duchess a
wise lady.

thanne clepyd he his Barowns Everichon,

anon to conseyl thanne gommen they gon, 5940

and axede of hem jn what manere

they thowhten forto maken þe pes þere.

He asks his
barons to
settle the
peace.

thanne answered the cownseyl ageyn :

They want to
get out of it,

“ we knowen non so wel, jn certeyn, 5944

that þe pes kan ordeynen and make

So wel as 3e for the dewkis Sake.”

but the king
insists,

thanne seide the kyng to hem there :

“ jn 3owre ordenaunce j have put it here, 5948

and what that Ewere to me 3e do,

certeyn, j wele concenten þerto,

and neuere 3owre ordenaunce j schal with-seye,

what so Ewere 3e demen, jn feye !” 5952

thanne answered the cownseil tho :

After much
hesitation,

“ Sire, a gret charge 3e putten vs vnto,

That we ne doren not vndirtake,

[leaf 111 a]

But 3if that Sewraunce 3e Welen vs make 5956

that what so Ewere we granten of the,

there-offen to haven non mawgre.”

thanne spak vlphyn with-owten taryeng :

“ j trowe that a fool 3e holden the kyng, 5960

whanne 3e welen not beleven his word,

þat he to 3ow seith be his owne acord !”

they unler-
take the task,

“ 3is, hym beleven we, ful Sekerlye,

but of on thyng we wolden hym preye : 5964 but desire
 that ȝe *with* vs myhten be Ulfin to be
 this pes forto enden feythfulle, their helper
 and to discuren to the kyng and spokes-
 what that Js owre conseillyng ; 5968 man.
 and we after ȝoure conseil wil do,
 what so euer belonge ȝerto."

Whanne the kyng herde hem axen this,
 Semblance of gladnesse he made, j-wys,
 and seide to vlphyn with wordis sadde :
 " A riche man j haue the made,
 Ek norsched, and wis ȝou art ȝerto ;
 ȝefore with hem schalt ȝou forth go
 and conselle hem as thou best can,
 For j holde the a ful wys man."
 thanne seide vlphyn to the kyng :
 " Sire, j ȝow warne of on thyng :
 that kyng ne prynce owhte not to be
 to famulyer with his meyne,
 Nethyr to lowliche he scholde hym make
 the hertes of his men forto take." 5972
 5976 The king
 gladly
 tells Ulfin to
 join the
 barons.

thus wente vlphyn to counseil anon,
 and alle the Barowns everichon.
 and whanne ensembled they weren jn fere,
 thanne axeden they of vlphyn there
 what hym thowghte best to do.
 thanne seide vlphyn hem vnto :
 " wel weten ȝe that the kyng
 on vs hath put alle manere of thyng.
 Now ȝefore to the lady let vs now gon,
 to weten ȝif that sche so wyle don !"
 thanne wente they forth anon jn hie
 to ȝat lady & to hire conseil, trewelye,
 and tolden hem of the kynges wyllle,
 how he ensured was hem vntylle
 and forto holden hym fully agre,
 what ende so they maden, Sykerle—
 " ȝefore we comen to weten of ȝow here
 ȝif ȝe wylen don jn that manere." 5984
 5988 Ulfin goes
 with the
 barons.
 5992 He wants
 them first to
 ascertain
 whether also
 the duchess
 will hold her-
 self bound by
 their decision.
 6000

The counsel-
lors of the
duchess
having taken
the matter
into consider-
ation,

thanne answereden they, with-owten faille,
here-vppon it were good to taken consaille, 6004
and seiden anon hem be-twene
that in better cas myht it not bene

thanne þe kyng to putten it on his lordynges,
bothe high and lowh, of alle maner of thinges. 6008

“ what myhte the kyng bettere do ?

þerfore, lady, concenteth 3e þerto ! ”

the duchess
agrees,

So that this lady with-owten more
Concented to here conseilliche thore. 6012

and assur-
ances are
given on
both sides.

thanne was þere mad Siker assuraunce
on bothe partyes, with-owten variaunce.

thanne to conseyl gonne þese barowns gon,
and Ech of other enqwered anon ; 6016

thanne eche man his avis gan seyn.

Anon of vlphyn axeden they pleyen

how him thowhte be here avys.

Then Ulfen
says :

“ Sires, riht ful wel, as men of prys ! 6020

Now myn avis j schal 3ow telle,
and 3e welen lestene to my spelle.

“ You know
that the duke
was killed
innocently,
[leaf 111 b]

wel weten 3e the dewk ded was
be the kynges strengthe jn that plas, 6024

And trespaced non thyng, As J 3ow seye,
jn non cawse, that he scholde deye,

his wife is
left with
child,

and that the lady Js left with childe,
and þerto hire londis ben mad bothe bare and wilde, 6028

and therto a good womman sche is, Sikerle,
welful of wysdom and of Bownte.

and his kins-
men have
suffered great
losses ;
hence com-
pensation
must be
given.

more over the dewkes kynnes-men also
Ful mochel harm & los han cawht þerto. 6032

and þerfore me Semeth ryht good resoun

that the kyng hem make restetucioun,

So that here love he myhte have

and jn his lond to dwellen more save. 6036

On the other
side, our king
has no wife ;

On the tothir side 3e knowen Echon,

that owre kyng ne haveth wyf non,

So that me semeth be myn avys,

6019. MS. *hem*. 6022. 3e added above the line.

6023. 3e through correction, daubed.

6036. *jn*, *j* through correction.

the kyng ne may not wel mendyn thys 6040 therefore he
 lasse thanne hire to his wif he take, ought to
 and thus hire amendis forto make ; marry the
 the wheche schal torne hym to honour duchess.
 and of al his rem to haven favour ; 6044
 For whanne they heren this jlke pes,
 they welen hym loven, with-owten les.
 and þat the dewkys dowhter wedden they wolde Her daughter
 To the kyng of orkanye with plente of golde ; 6048 might be
 and alle þe Remenaunt of his meyne, married to
 Ful wel agreed scholen they be, the king of
 so þat they scholen holden hym for a ryht wys kyng, Orkney."
 and him loven and worschepen aboven alle thyng." 6052

" Now haven 3e J-herde what J kan say ;
 now ech man his avis tellith, j 3ow pray,
 whethyr that 3e welen concenten therto
 as j have here J-seid, owthir oþer-wyse do." 6056
 thanne answerid they alle anon ageyn :
 " we concentyn therto, Jn certeyn,
 For the beste conseille thow hast J-told
 that ony man myhte Seyn jn this mold !" 6060
 " 3et seyn 3e not j-now," quod vlphyn tho,
 " but welen 3e alle concenten therto,
 and 3if 3e seyn so everychon,
 thanne with this answer forth wele j gon. 6064
 3e sen wel þe kyng of orkeneye js here ;
 on hym schal stondyn mochel of my matere."
 Thanne tolde vlphyn his avis
 To-Forn the kyng and alle his. 6068
 whanne the kyng herde this acord,
 anon he answerede and seide þis word :
 " what that Evere on me that 3e seye,
 J schal neuere breken this pes, Jn feye !" 6072
 and whanne the tothyr partye herden this,
 they helden hem ful agreed, j-wys,
 and comen to the kynges tente,

6041. *wif* added above the line.6068. *ad*, corrected afterwards from *an*.6070. *seide*, MS. *herde*.

Then all assemble.	and the lady was aftyr sente, and alle tho that at thiike conseyll were, anon to-forn the kyng they comen there. thanne, whanne assembled they weren Echon,	6076
Ulfen re- hearses the conditions of peace.	vlphyn there stood vp ryht anon, and amonges hem alle declared this pes Jn Every poynt, Er that he wolde ses, and axede of þe barowns, with-owten faylle :	6080
	“was not this now 3owre consaylle?”	6084
These are accepted by the duchess's party,	Anon therto they acordeden alle, boþe that weren jn tente oþer jn halle. thanne seide vlphyn to the kyng :	
	“how sey 3e be this acordlyng, thus to maken these good mennes pes and ek the ladyes here neuertheles?”	6088
avowed by king Uter,	“3is,” quod the kyng anon tho, “and the ladyes and here frendis concentyn þerto.”	6092
[leaf 111 c]	“More Over We ben Acorded Jn fere that kyng Loth of orcanye, that Js here, that the dewkis dowhter he schal wedde, and as a qwene to his lond ben ledde.”	6096
and support- ed by king Loth of Orkney.	thanne answered kyng loth ageyn, and seide to hem there ful pleyn :	
	“Sires, non thing scholen 3e bydden me do, that j wele gladlich concentyn þerto, So that to the kynges honour it be oþer profyt to his crowne, certeynle !”	6100
The duchess's people	thanne Spak vlphin to þe toþer partye, that on þe ladyes Side weren, trewelye,	6104
weep for joy,	wheche weren ferst pytows & of hevy chere, and aftyr for joye they wepten there. and the same that answered vlphyn thore,	
	vnnethe myhte speken, he wepte so sore,	6108
praise the amends,	and seide þat þer was neuere kyng ne kayser That bettere amendis myhte maken ther. thanne wente the counseil and þe lady jn fere,	
	and amonges hem they seiden there that ther was neuere non Erthly man	6112
and extol the king's justice and truth.	that bettere amendis myht maken than. “For so just and trewe we knowen þe kyng,	

that we welen acordyn to this Endyng!" 6116

and thus thanne was knyht vpe the pes
on bothe partyes there, with-owten les.

thus wedded vter pendragown

Ygwerne, as tho was resown, 6120
Evene vppon þe twentythe day
after that with Ygwerne jn hire chambre he lay.

The two royal
weddings
take place on
the 20th day
after the
king's
nightly visit
at Tyndagel.

and ek the same day j-wedded was there
kyng loth of oreanye with merye chere ; 6124
and vnder on feste bothe weren they holde
with manye knyhtes bothe worthy and bolde.

Thanne thus the kyng Ygwerne hadde,
and to bedde with hym was ladde— 6128

Tyl that sche barneschod wondir faste.

so that þe kyng hire axede atte laste,
and a nyht, as the kyng be hire lay,
there thus to Ygwerne he gan to say :

When
Ygwerne's
condition
begins to be
noticeable,
the king says
to her:

"hos is this child, my lady milde,
that 3e gon with so grete with childe?

For myn 3e knowen may jt not be,
Sethen j 3ow weddede, ful sikerle ; 6136

It cannot
be mine,

For jn scripture J-put it Js,
as often as J 3ow knew, j-wys.

And with the dewk with childe not 3e be,

For hym Syen 3e not, ful Sikerle, 6140
many day to-forn that he ded was ;
with 3ow ne cam he jn non plas."

nor yet the
duke's."

and thus the kyng hire chalanged tho,
whiche browht Ygwerne jn mochel wo. 6144

so there anon, ful sore wepyngge,
answerede Igwerne to the kyng :

Ygwerne
weeps,

"non lesyng Schal j maken, Sekerle,
what so evere that 3e don by me ; 6148

declares that
she will tell
the truth,

and that on me 3e haven mercye,
For sekerly j ne Schal not lye ;

and mplores
his mercy.

and more over forto Ensuren me

that 3e me Refusen Jn Non degre!" 6152

"seyth on," thanne quod the kyng,

"and j wyle graunten 3ow 3oure askyng ;

The king
promises
Ygwern not
to reject her.

so what so Ewere that 3e me telle,
For nothing 3ow Forsaken j Nylle."
Anon whanne that Ygwerne herde this,
Ful joyful thanne was sche, j-wys.

6156

[leaf 111 d]
Ygwern tells
of the nightly
visit

"Sire, of merveilles J schal 3ow seyn,
and the sothe tellen 3ow ful pleyne!"

6160

Thanne Anon gan sche to telle
how that aventure be hyre gan falle.
sche seide, a man, with-owten variaunce,
to hire cam Jn hire lordis Semblaunce,
And with hym tweyne of his knyhtes
Jn here owne Semblaunce owt-ryhtes—

6164

in her bed-
room.

"jn whiche of alle men lyvenge
my lord thanne trosted ouer alle thynge.
and so jnto my chambre entred he,
that al my meyne it dyde pere se.

6168

And so with me he lay that nyht,
For my lord j wende it hadde ben ryht.

6172

So that Nyht conceyved J was
with this child, swich was my gras;
and that same nyht my lord was slayn,
This wot J wel, Sire kyng, certayn."

6176

The king re-
quests her
to keep the
matter quiet,

thanne, whanne the kyng herde hire so telle,
anon to hire he seyde ful snelle:

"loke that 3e kepen this preve
From alle the peple jn cristiente.

6180

and 3if that 3e that thing discure,
to 3ow it is schame, J 3ow ENSwre.

For wel 3e knowen, 3oure lordis jt nys,
ne myn nethyr, with-owten mys.

6184

and to let
him have
the child,
as soon as
it is born.

Therefore J preye 3ow, graunt it to me,
anon as hit is j-born of the;

and that 3e wolde don my comandement,
To deliueren hit to whom þat me list, verament."

6188

"Sire," quod thanne this lady so fre,
"what Ewere 3ow list, 3e mown do be me,
and of me haven al 3owre wylle,
what that Ewere 3e seyn me vntylle!"

6192

6163. *variaunce*, the second *a* through correction, large.

6175. *lord* corrected afterwards from *lor*'.

On the morwe tolde the kyng vlphyn anon
of alle these materis, how it dyde gon.

The king
tells Ulin.

Thanne answerede vlphyn to the kyng :
“now mowen 3e knowen Jn alle thing
that 3owre qweene is bothe trewe and wys,
for of ertthly wommen sche berith the pris.

6196

Ulin praises
the truthfulness
and wisdom of the
queen,

now wete 3e wel sche doth not lye,
ne non blawndise Jn hire konne 3e spye.
and *perto* hauen 3e wel sped the nede
that 3e hyhte merlyne Jn othir stede,
that thike same child he scholde have,
were Jt a maiden *oper* were Jt knave.”

6200

and the prudent
measure taken by the
king.

So Jnto vj mownthis Jt abod styлле,
Tyl that merlyne cam vlphyn vntylle,
and with vlphyn spak Jn prevyte
of swiche thinges as desirede he.

6204

After six
months,
Merlin comes
to Ulin

thanne desirede merlyne ouer al thyng,
er *pat* he wente, to speken *with* the kyng.

6208

and to the
king.

And whanne asembled they weren Jn fere,
thanne tolde the kyng Jn his manere
to merlyne the wordis of the qweene,
and what resouns betwene hem hadde bene.

6212

thanne answered merlyne anon ageyn

To the kyng there, Jn certeyn,

6216

Merlin is
satisfied
with what
has been
done, so far,

& saide *pat*—“vlphyn hath wel agreed *pe* pes
of the dewkis deth, with-owten les ;

but of my gylte am j not clere,

that j hire deseyvede Jn swich manere,

and wot Neuere hos that child Js

with wheche sche goth, with-owten mys !”

thanne seide the kyng : “ful Sykerle,

Merlyne, J wot, so wys that 3e be,

6224

that 3ow 3e welen aqwyten ful wel ;

this knowe j sekerlych Everydel.”

“3e mosten me helpe,” quod merlyne, “*perto* !”

pe kyng seide : “gladliche that wyl j do,

6228

and desires
the king's
aid to that
end.

for wel wot j the child moste ben 3oure,

hit Forto Norsche and to socowre.”

Anon spak merlyne to the kyng than :

[leaf 112 a]
 "There is in
 this country,"
 says Merlin,
 "a passing
 good man
 (called An-
 tron, l. 6520,
 or Ankor,
 l. 6472), with
 an excellent
 wife.

Send for the
 man, and give
 him of your
 goods,
 that his wife,
 who has just
 had a son,
 may take,
 your child,

and send her
 own out to be
 nursed by
 another
 woman."

The king
 sends for
 the man,

welcomes
 him heartily,

and says :
 " I must tell
 thee a great
 secret,

for I want
 thy help

"Jn this contre there Js A passing good man, 6232
 on the beste of thy region here,
 and therto a good womman to his fere,
 the wisest and the moste discreet,
 For of alle vertwes sche is repleet. 6236
 but hire lord js not þe moste richest man,
 therefore, sire kyng, not forthan
 J wolde that 3e aftyr hym sente,
 and of 3owre goodis him 3even, veramente ! 6240
 For his wyf jn gesyne doth lye
 of a knave child, sire, ful Sekerlye.
 and that 3e myhten him so plese,
 that jn tyme comeng he myhte 3ow ese 6244
 this child to kepe and to norrye,
 that hym deliuered schal ben, sekerlye,
 and þat his wyves mylk Sowkyn hit may,
 and hire owne child to ben put away 6248
 Forto sowken Som othyr womman."
 thus seide merlyne to the kyng than.
 thanne anon to merlyne seide the kyng :
 "As thow wylt, hit schal ben Jn alle thyng!" 6252
 thanne merlyne, his leve he took anon,
 and to blayse his maister he gan to gon.
 and the kyng sente aftyr this good man,
 lyk as this Storye tellen 3ow kan. 6256
 So whanne this goodman to cowrt was gon,
 the kyng, with hym there mette he anon,
 and with hym gret Joye gan make,
 where-offen merveille þe good man gan take, 6260
 that the kyng of hym so mochel made,
 and why that with hym he was so glade.
 "Now, goode dere frend," quod the kyng,
 "Herkene now to myn talkyng. 6264
 Nedis j moste discoveren to the
 a thing that Js of gret prevyte :
 of an aventure þat js me befallē,
 J schal the tellen ende and alle. 6268
 and as thow art my lige man,
 So be myn helpe Jn that thou kan,

- and conseyl to kepen hit to 3owre powere,
 "and it neuere discuren fer ne nere!" 6272 and thy discretion.
- To the kyng thanne seide this good man tho :
 "Sire, 3owre comaundement schal j do,
 and to my powere hit fulfille,
 what so Ewere 3e sein me vntylle." 6276
- "Thus me dremede this oper nyht,"
 Seyde the kyng thanne to this knyht,
 "that thou were one the goode man
 whiche is dwellyng jn my kyngdam. 6280
 And so me thowhte on cam to me,
 and merveilles me tolde, certeynle :
 Ferst that to me 3e been trewe lige man,
 and that a child on 3owre wif engendred 3e han, 6284 and that thy wife has just had a child.
 the whiche child, J-born it Js,
 as he me tolde, with-owten mys.
 So that man comaunded me
 þat jn alle wyse J scholde preyen the 6288 Thou wert to send thy own child away,
 that thy chyld owt scholdest þou do
 To som oper womman and norschen it so.
 And thy wyf anothir child kepen scholde,
 and there-with to have plente of golde, 6292 and let thy wife take another child instead, which will be brought to her."
 the wheche child to hire schal ben browht;
 but there-offen the peple may wetez nowht.
 Now do this, bewsire, j preye to the,
 and ful wel thy mede j-qwyte schal be!" 6296
- Whanne that the goodman herde this,
 anon to þe kyng he answerede, j-wys :
 "of a wondyr thyng 3e axen me,
 that me semeth 3gens nature scholde be, 6300
 my chyld to Sowken ony oper womman
 but his owne modyr that bar hym than.
 3yt Nevertheles, Sire, this Wyle J do :
 asayen 3if þat my wyf concente þerto. 6304 [leaf 112 b]
 And 3it of on thing J wolde 3ow preye :
 whanne þat child scholde be born, me for to seye,
 and whanne Jt scholde be browht to me ;
 of this wolde J knowen the certeinte." 6308 but says he will speak to his wife,
 and inquires when it is to be.

The king can give no particulars,	than answered the kyng ful snelle : “sire, thereoffen the sope can j not telle.”	
	Anon answered aȝen this good man, and to the kyng there seide he than :	6312
	“what thing jn this world ȝe comaunden me, J wyle it don, that may plesen the !”	
but makes fine presents.	thanne ȝaf hym the kyng gret ȝiftes thore, For whiche this goodman abascht hym ryht sore.	6316
The man goes home.	And hom to his wyf he goth ageyn, and of alle this mater telleth hire ful pleyn,	
His wife likewise finds the demand strange.	whiche sche jt thowhte a straunge thyng : hire owne child owt to putten jn norscheng, and sche anothir child to susteyne & fynde ; this thowhte þe lady it were aȝens kynde.	6320
But the man urges their duty to their king,	thanne answered this goodman ful mildely, and seide to his wyf, that was hym by : “there is non thyng that longeth hym to, but nedis for owre lord we mosten Jt do.	6324
also the king's pre- sents	and þerto so moche tresor and Fe he hath vs ȝoven, dame, certeynle.	6328
and promises.	more ouer vs hath he behoten to do what thyng that vs behoveth also. and þerfore j wele that we fulfylle Jn alle thinges the kynges wyлле.	6332
	and ȝit more ouer j wyle also that certeyn, wyf, ȝe concenten herto !” thanne answered anon this goode womman, and to hire lord & souerayn seide sche than :	6336
The wife submits implicitly,	“my sovereyn,” sche seide, “ȝowre owne am J, and so Js also this chyld, trewly, and there-fore with vs do ȝe ȝowre wyлле, For ȝowre comaundement am j redy to fulfille. for on thing J hote ȝow now certeinle : aȝens ȝowre wille schal j neuere be, as ferforth as j have wyt oþer konnenge !”	6340
	thanne reioysched this goodman Jn alle thynges, and preyde his wyf ful tendirlye that a norse to geten hire Jn hye here child to norschen with honour,	6344
and they make prepar- ations for receiving the child.	So that he myhte kepen both tyme & owr,	6348

that whanne the tothir to hym were sent,
 he redy to ben purveyed, verament.
 thus this goodman thanne purveyed was
 his child to ben norsched Jn honest plas.

6352

And also the kyng Sawgh be his qwene
 that hire delyveraunce sone scholde bene.

The queen's
 time draws
 near.

And also the day to-forn hire chyldyng
 thedyr cam *merlyn*, with-owten lesyng,
 and prevyliche spak with vlphyn there,
 and to hym seyde Jn this manere :

6356

Merlin comes
 to Ulfyn,

"vlphyn, J alowe ful mochel the kyng,
 that so wysly hath ordeyned for this thing."

6360

And thanne to the qweene he bad hym go,
 & not to taryen, with-owten wordis mo,
 there to 3even warneng of hire chilydng
 and ek of hire delyveraunce, with-owten lesyng,
 that Sekerly deliuered scholde sche be

6364

and wishes
 the queen to
 know that
 she shall be
 delivered
 next day,
 after mid-
 night,

on the morwen aftyr mydnyht—"as j telle the ;
 ek that thow comaunde that lady so bryht
 that child to deliueren anon ryht
 To the ferst man that they konnen fynde
 atte the halle dore there stondynge."

6368

and that she
 must hand
 over the child
 to the first
 man found
 at the hall
 door.

And whanne vlphyn herde hym speken so,
 Ful sone axede of hym vlphyn tho :

6372

"Wylt thow not spekyng With the kyng?"

[leaf 112 c]

"No, sire," quod *merlyne*, "with-owten lesyng!"

Anon to the kyng vlphyn cam tho,
 and hym tolde how *merlyne* wolde do.

6376

Ulfyn informs
 the king.

Anon as the kyng herde this,
 wel mochel joye he hadde, j-wys.

"Ne wyl not *merlyne* with me speke,
 Er from this cowrt that he gynne reke?"
 thanne answerede vlphyn to hym ageyn,
 and seide : "sire kyng, no, Jn certeyn ;
 but doth as he hath comanded 3ow,
 For it wil tornen to 3oure prow!"

6380

6384

Anon the kyng cam to the qwene,
 and of prevyite spak hem betwene :
 "dame, of on thyng J schal warnen the :
 that myn comandement fulfyllen 3e."

6388

The king
 speaks to his
 spouse.

	"worthy lord," quod the qwene tho, "3oure comaundement now wyl j do."	
The king repeats Merlin's prediction	"To morwen aftyr the mydnyht, be the helpe of god almyht, thanne delyuered scholen 3e be, as j 3ow seye now Sykerle. and of on thing J 3ow preye :	6392
and comand,	that whanne It is born, be ony weye To on of 3owre prevyest wommen that anon hyt be delyvered then, and that sche take that chyld so kynde To the ferste man that sche doth fynde ;	6396 6400
and enjoins secrecy,	and that 3e comaunden that persone that thedyr with that child doth gone, that sche 3ow discure jn non degre, how that of chyld deliuered 3e be.	6404
to keep people from talking.	For thanne the peple wolde seyn Jt were neuere myn, Jn certeyn ; No more it were lyk so forto be, Faire lady, sethen that j wedded the."	6408
The queen promises to obey.	"Sire kyng," quod this lady thanne, "Ho hit engendred, j not what manne ; þerfore wyl j don 3owre comandement, as womman that is schamed, verament, of the grete mis-aventure that to me is happed, j 3ow Ensure.	6412
She wonders, however, at the king knowing so well of her delivery.	but of on thyng sore wondryth me : to myn deliuerance 3e ben so preve." "now j 3ow preye," quod þe kyng tho, "algates my comandement that 3e do." "3is, worthy lord, with-owten stryf, 3if so be þat god graunte me lyf!"	6416 6420
Next evening, the queen feels the throes.	Thus departyd bothe kyng and qwene of the conseyl that was hem be-twene, and the qweene abod þere goddis grace. So that on the morwen, jn that place, at Evensong tyme of the belle, jn hire wombe felte sche throwes ful snelle, and travailled forth al that nyht	6424

- jnto þat ovr as the kyng tolde hire ryht. 6428
 so that be goddis helpe delyuered sche was
 aftyr midnyht, as happed the cas.
 And anon as that child was þere bore,
 a prevy womman clepyd sche to hire thore, 6432
 and Seide: "com hydyr, my dere frend,
 do take this child bothe Faire and hend,
 and bere Jt to the halle dore anon,
 and there a man schole 3e fynden son. 6436
 For what man so evere he be,
 this child hym deliuere, j preye the.
 And that man that 3e wel beholde,
 Of What manere of kynde He ben scholde. 6440
 goth now and doth as J 3ow preye!"
 "3is, Sikyr, lady!" this womman gan seye.
 this womman took that child anon,
 and jnto riche clothes sche dede it don, 6444
 and so browht hit to the halle dore,
 where as a ful old man fond sche thore,
 that onlovely was of Face & lere,
 and seide: "Sire, what bydest thou here?" 6448
 "J abyde that thou hast me browht,
 For ellis hydyr hadde j comen nowht."
 "what answeere schal j 3even my lady so dere,
 to whom j have be-taken hire child here?" 6452
 thanne answerede hire this old man tho:
 "what that j am, hast thou not to do,
 but do that thou comaunded were:
 deliuere me the chyld þat thou hast þere!" 6456
 thanne took sche hym this chyld anon,
 and thussonne from hire was he gon,
 that sche ne wyst jnto whiche plase.
 tho 3en sche wente as comen sche wase, 6460
 and tolde the lady bothe word and ende,
 how sche hadde delyverid þat chyld so hende
 To ryht a passyng ful old man—
 "but what he was, telle j ne can, 6464
 For as sone as the child he nam,
 Syker, j ne wyste where he becam."
 thanne was the qwene of hevvy chere,

After mid-
night the
child is born.

The queen
tells a
woman

to take the
child to the
hall door,
hand it over
to the man
whom she
shall meet
there,

and notice
carefully
[leaf 112 d]
what kind
of a man
he is.

The woman
obeys.

At the door
she finds an
ugly old man
(Merlin),

who says he
is waiting
for what
she brings.

He refuses to
give further
information,

and dis-
appears with
the child.

The woman
returns to
the queen
and tells her
what has
happened.

The queen
is sad.

- and fulsore mornede & wepte there. 6468
- Merlin goes with the child to its intended foster-father, Ankor (or Antron), but he that the chyld hadde tho,
ful faste jn his weye he gan to go,
Tyl that he cam to this good man,
that Ankor there was clepyd than. 6472
- who is just on his way to mass, And as to masse ward as he wente,
god to Serven with good entente,
thanne took merlyne a-nothyr Semblaunce,
of a fayr old man, with-owten variaunce. 6476
- Merlin appears to Ankor in another shape: that of a nice old man. Thanne clepyd merlyne that good man pere,
and seide : "Ankor, com speke with me here."
"j come to 3ow," quod Ankor tho,
"with good wille to speken 3ow vnto." 6480
- He gives him the child, quod þis old man : "j have þe browht a chyld,
whiche that Js bothen mek and myld ;
and that thow it kepe as richely
and as thin owne þou wost don tendirly. 6484
- asks him to keep it well, and that 3e don as j 3ow say,
and gret profyt schalt þou hauen, with-owten delay,
and ek thyn Eyres encresyd scholen be,
as j the Seye, Sire, ful certeinle." 6488
- and promises him great rewards, "A," quod Ankor, "j trowe this be he
that the kyng spak offen to me."
"So is hit, Ankor, with-owten faylle,
as j the here telle jn consaylle, 6492
- Ankor understands that the child is the one spoken of by the king, For hit js the preyere of the kyng
and of goode ladyes, with-owten lesyng."
thanne took Ankor this chyld so fre,
that was so 3ong and ful of bewte, 6496
- Merlin tells Ankor to have it christened, and axede of this old man there
3if that this child owht crystened were.
"Nay, but do thow it cristene anon
jn this mynstre, er thou ferthere gon." 6500
- and to call it Arthur. thanne axede Ankor of hym tho
what name he scholde 3even hym vnto.
"Nemne hym Arthewr, j preye to the ;
For mochel worschepe by hym schalt þou se 6504
- and ful gret ences to the and thyne,
and thow hit worschepe & hit propyne.
So thanne vnnethis schalt thou knowe

- Whethyr þou love him bettere oper thyn owne." 6508
 thanne axede Ankor of this good man
 what he was, and whennes þat he cam—
 "And whom schal j sey that this child took me?
 of this, leve Sire, now preye j the." 6512
 thanne answerede this olde man ageyn :
 "of me ne knowest thou no more, certeyn!"
 and so departyd they asondyr ryht tho ;
 thanne eche Jn his weye forth gan to go. 6516
 So that Ankor cristenede that child anon,
 and Arthewr him clepyd þere thus son.
 This man that Ankor here j-clepyd Js,
 his propre name Js Antron, with-owten mys. 6520
 thanne Antron to his wyf hyede ful faste
 (that child hire to brynge hadde he gret haste),
 and seide : "dere wif, lo, this chyld here
 of which to 3ow j spak Thanne Ere!" 6524
 thanne answerede this goode lady anon :
 "To me, Sire, hit is ryht welcom."
 Anon this faire chyld took sche there,
 and axede 3if hit cristened were. 6528
 he seide : "3e, dame," thanne, "certainly!"
 thanne took sche the child and leide it hire by,
 and dyde hit Sowken of hire pappe anon,
 & hire owne to norrye putte owt thus son. 6532
 thanne longe aftyr lyvede vter pendragon
 with reste and pes Jn that regyown.
 So atte laste thanne hit be-fylle
 that the gowte cam hym vntylle, 6536
 and hym held bothen Jn hondis and feet,
 So þat be non wyse hit nolde hym leet ;
 Jn whiche mene while, as j 3ow say,
 his enemyes vp aryveden on a day, 6540
 and jn his lond dyden gret owtrage
 and Ek to his peple ful gret damage.
 thanne sente the kyng to his barowns anon,
 and counseilled with hem everychon, 6544
 preyeng hem with al his myht

Ankor asks
Merlin who
he is.

Merlin gives
no informa-
tion about
himself.

The child is
christened,

taken to
Ankor's
home,

and well
received by
his wife.

After this,
king Uter
lives happily
for several
years.
Eventually,
he gets the
gout,

and is
attacked by
enemies.

He summons
his barons.

- hym to helpe avenge jn his ryht,
and to-gederis they wolden gon,
as trewe lordis for here kyng scholde don. 6548
- The barons
promise their
help,
Anon they seiden, with ryht good wyll
his preyere thanne they wolde fulfyll.
thanne reden these lordis forth anon,
- and encounter
the enemies,
and *with* here enemyes they metten thusson, 6552
that a gret partye of the lond
they hadden j-treted jnto here hond.
thanne this meyne vppon þe kynges side
with here enemyes assembled that tyde. 6556
- but are de-
feated.
Anon thusson j-scomfyt they were,
and mochel of here peple losten there.
whanne this bode was browht to þe kyng,
thanne jn his herte made he morneng. 6560
so they that leften of the bataylle,
to the kyng they comen, with-owten faille.
and the tothir partye enforsede hem faste,
So that furtherere jnto the lond ben they paste. 6564
- Then Merlin
arrives,
Thanne merlyne, that knew of alle this thyng,
Ful faste he hyede hym to the kyng.
- The king,
filled with joy
and hope,
Anon as Pendragoun merlyne þere say,
Ful mochel joye made he that day, 6568
and thowhte of merlyne comfort to haue,
be wheche his rem he hopede to Save.
And whanne that merlyne to-fore hym cam,
anon be the hond he hym nam. 6572
thanne merlyne hym axede of his chere,
why that he thanne so hevy were—
- [leaf 113 b]
“3yt Wel J Wot that syk 3e be,
and fulsore afrayed, as thinketh me.” 6576
thanne answerede Pendragoun aȝen tho :
- and tells him
his distress.
“merlyne, ful good encheson j haue þerto,
For myn owne men mi lond distroye,
that j wende wolden me nowht anoye, 6580
and slayn my men þere jn bataylle,
that litel j wende wolde me asaylle.”
- “Battle with-
out a head
cannot be,”
says Merlin.
“Now,” quod merlyn, “here mown 3e se
þat bataille *with-owten* hed may not be.” 6584
“Thanne, for goddis love,” quod the kyng,

"Merlyne, conseille me now of this thing!"

Anon seide merlyne to hym ageyn :

Merlin con-
tinues:

"on thing j schal telle the for certeyn,

6588

whiche word trewe proved schal be,

3if that thou now wilt leven me.

Do semblen alle thy peple anon,

" Assemble
thy forces,

and that to-gederis that they fast gon.

6592

Anon as they ben sembled jn fere,

thanne do the ordeyn an hors bere,

go with them
on a horse
litter,

and to bataylle with hem thou go

azens thyn Enemyes, þat thou do so.

6596

For wete thou now wel, jn certeyne,

hem schalt thou ouercomen, ful pleyne.

and thou
shalt be
victorious.

and whanne thou hast don this bataylle,

thanne scha[1]t þou wel knowen, with-owten faille,

6600

what vaylleth the Lond þat js lordles,

whanne hit hath nede rankewr to ses.

Azens the Lond that hath Sovereyn,

hit lyte awaylleth, j telle the pleyne.

6604

and whanne this bataylle thow hast j-do,

herk me now what j sey the vnto :

After the
battle,

departe thy good Jn dyvers manere

For thi sowle, whiles þat þou lyvest here,

distribute thy
goods for the
benefit of thy
soul,

6608

and to the pore 3yve thou thy tresor.

& why j seye, wilt thou se wherfor ?

For j hit knowe wel jn my mynde

that þou myht not longe lyven be kynde.

6612

for thou canst
not live long.

therfore j wele that þou schalt knowe

of hem that grete goodis han be rowe,

and deyen, and leven hem belynde,

Whoever
leaves great
riches
behind,

& vppon here Sowles haven [not] mynde

6616

that to departen jn here lyvenge

to pore jn here Sowles fortherynge,

j sey, that good after here departyng,

hit nys not here, with-owten lesyng,

6620

gives them
up to persons
who care but
little for his
soul.

but here it is, & moche more therto,

that for here sowlis litel wil do.

For wete þou wel with-owten dwere

The devil will
appear to
thee. He
appears more
particularly
to rich people
who do not
give, while
they are
still alive.

that þe devel to the schal apere,
and specyaly to hem that han tresor,
that to powre wil not depart to-for,
whiles that they ben on lyve here ;
hit vailleth hem not, *with-owten* dwere.
and þou that Nedis mostest here deye,
j the warne, Sire, now certeinlye,
Thy good departe, thy soule to save,
Jn hevene blysse the joye to have.

6624

6628

The joy of
this world
is nothing.

For the joye of this world here
azens that js nowht, in *non* manere.
and for why, j schal tellen to the,
ʒif that þou wylt now lesten to me :

6632

6636

It fails.

jn this world hath *non* man so gret joye,
that hit ne schal faylle and hym anoye ;

But heavenly
joy lasts.

and jn the tothir js joye endeles,
that evere is durenge, & schal neuere ses.
and ho that disseise Suffreth here,
To him jn hevene js restored there."

6640

[leaf 113 c]
Each man
of property
must do
something to
earn ever-
lasting life.
All the more
thou, whom
God has sent
so great
wealth.

" Thanne moste eche man Jn His Degre,
that god to hath graunted lond *oper* fe,
loke that he purchase Jn this lyf here
the lyf evere lastyng Elleswhere.
than thou, that hast so mochel richesse
of tresowr, of goold, an of prowessse,
and al god hath sent the by grase,
bethenk the in how lytel a spase !

6644

6648

I have loved
thee long ;

J haue the loved ful many a day,
and ʒit J do, *with-owten* delay.

6652

but who loves
thee so truly
as thou
oughtst to
love thyself?

but ho loveth the so trewelye
as thou thy-self owhtest, pleylnlye ?
J have the told hit vndirfonge :

6656

All is in vain,
if the end is
not good.

For alle þe thinges that þou kanst make,
Nis but a good ende forto take.
and thowh alle þe good þat þou myht do,
but ʒif thin ende be good therto,

6660

Ellis art thou Jn weye of lesyng,
 Forsothe j the telle now, sire kyng.
 and thowgh [thou] alle thy lyve hast lyved mys
 and put thy sowle Jn gret distres,
 thanne, 3if that thyn ende good be,
 For3evenesse getest thou, sekerle.

6664 Even after a
 sinful life,
 if the end is
 good, all shall
 be forgiven.

Also j do the to vndirstonde
 that nowht berest þou owt of thi londe—
 but onliche worschepe & almesdede,
 owt of thy lond schalt þou not lede.

6668 Nothing
 takest thou
 with thee
 from earth
 except de-
 votion and
 alms-deeds.

For almesse *with-owten* worschepe do
 azens god ne vaylleth not a slo.

6672

Now j have declared thy lyvenge ;
 and thi qween Js ded, with-owte lesenge,
 and neuere *oper* schalt thou haue non,
 but whanne þou of this world dost now gon,

Thy queen
 is dead,

6676

Thy lond with-owten eyr most abyde.
 therefore to thy-self loke at this tyde,
 and loke, be thy sowle wel that thou do,
 er that this world thow passe now fro.

thou hast
 no heir,
 therefore
 think of thine
 own soul.

6680

thus from the, Sire, wile j now gon,
 For more with the have j not to don ;
 And Sey to vlphyn that he me leve,
 For here-aftyr he schal it preve !”

6684 Tell Ulfyn
 to believe
 in me.”

thanne vter pendragoun spak ageyn :
 “ merlyne, me thowhte J herde 3ow seyn
 that j jn an hors bere to ben save
 azens myn enemys & victorye have.

The king
 inquires
 further about
 the horse-
 litter,

6688

but, merlyne, j prey the, telle me here
 how god to 3elden & what manere.”

about the
 good deeds
 he is to do,

“ Syre, j the Sey, make thou good ende,
 and thanne to blysse thy sowle schal wende.
 Fareth wel, non lengere J tarye with the,
 but after þe bataylle thou thenk on me.”

6692

Thanne axede vter Pendragon
 aftyr 3onge arthewr, that was his son.

and after his
 son Arthur.

6696

Thanne answered merlyne to hym tho :
 “ Of hym hast thow not now forto do,

Merlin tells
the king that
Arthur has
become a
handsome,
well-bred
young man.

For he is become a fair ȝong man,
and mochel norture forsothe he kan."

6700

Thanne axede the kyng hym hertyle
ȝif Ewere his sone he scholde owlt se.
"ȝe," quod merlyne, "ones, Jn fay,
and neuere more aftyr that day!"

6704

After
Merlin's
departure,

Thus departyd merlyne and þe kyng,
as j ȝow seye with-owten leseng.

the king
summons
his forces,

the kyng let Somowne his ost anon
vppon his enemyes forto gon,

6708

goes with
them in a
horse-litter,

and let hym leggen ju on hors bere,
as ȝe to-fore herden telle here.

thanne there thus sembled batailles two,

[leaf 113d]

And mochel Harm Was there J-do.

6712

and wins the
battle.

So that be the cownseyl of here kyng
of here enemyes hadden they conqweryng,
and of hem Slown ful gret plente,
that ful gret deel it was to Se;

6716

And the rem was set Jn reste and pes,
& neuere aftyr ju his tyme non distres.
thanne thowhte the kyng of merlynes Sawe,
that to the deth ward scholde he drawe.

6720

He then goes
to London,

Anon faste to Londone he gan hye,
and sente aftyr his Tresorye,

and dis-
tributes his
goods
amongst
the poor,

and ju his rewm he delt jt faste,
whiles his lif Jn erthe dyde laste,
and gret almesse to powre dyde he
with his owne hondis, Ful Sykerle.

6724

and by the
advice of
Holy Church,

and the remnawnt of vn-mevable good
that ju his Lond bothe lay and stood,
aftyr the cownseille of holy chirche
he hit disposede, there-with to wirche.
and thus his good departyd the kyng,

6728

keeping
nothing for
himself.

that to hym-Self he lefte non thyng
where-offen he myhte haven remembraunce,
that he Jt ne delte (swich was his chaunce)
For the love of god & his modyr dere
Be merlynes cownseyl Jn this manere.

6732

6736

- Fvl meek and bonewre was the kyng
 aȝens god and the world, *with-owten* lesyng ;
 and also to the peple of holy chirche
 Evere ful humbely gan he wirche. 6740
 So that thus longe Syk he lay,
 Tyl that hit happede vppon a day
 that al his peple j-sembled were
 at the cyte of londone alle jn fere,
 and for his deth made gret morneng,
 that so sone deyen scholde the kyng—
 For they knewen wel, ful certeynlye,
 That Nedis the kyng moste dye, 6748
 For of thre dayes he ne spak
 To hem non word, *with-owten* lak—
 Thanne cam merlyne thedyr anon,
 that alle these thynges knew echon. 6752
 thanne comen they to merlyn alle,
 and tolden hym how it was befalle,
 & how that the kyng was ded,
 thus they hym tolde Jn that sted—
 “ whiche that ȝe loveden so wel,
 and ek to ȝow was so good and lel.”
 “ ȝe seyn not wel,” quod merlyne thanne,
 “ He ne may not deyen, so good a manne,
 That so good ende here doth make,
 and so moche deleth for goddis Sake.
 Neȝer hym-self nys not ȝit ded,
 al-thowgh he seme as blw as led.”
 Thanne they hym tolde þat—“ he ne spak
 thre dayes non word, *with-owte* lak,
 Ne neuere schal speken jn this world !”
 thus to merlyne seiden they with on acord. 6768
 thanne seide merlyne : “ be goddis myht
 J hym schal don speken this nyht.
 Cometh now on, and Seweth me,
 and hym speken scholen ȝe heren and se.”
 “ thanne js hit the grettest merveille
 that evere we Syen, *with-owten* faylle !”
 that jnto the chambre gonnen they gon,
 and opened the wyndowes everychon. 6776
- The king is long sick.
- His people are assembled about him.
- When he has lain speechless for three days, Merlin arrives.
- The people say to him that the king is dead.
- But Merlin replies : “ A man who has done so much good, cannot die.
- And king Uter is not dead.”
- The people say that the king cannot speak.
- Merlin replies that they shall hear him speak once more.
- They all go into his room.

The people
inform the
dying king
that Merlin
[leaf 111 a]
has come.

thane seiden they to the kyng Jn fere :
"Lo, Sire, merlyne Js comen to 3ow here,
That 3e Weren Wonted to loven so Wel,
and he hath 3ow hit qwyte Every del."

6780

The king
recognises
him.

thane to hymward tornede the kyng
with al his strengthe and his konneng,
and contenaunce made there to Merlyne,
so that he hym knew ful wel a[nd] fyne.

6784

Merlin asks
the people
to draw close
to the bed-
side.

thane spak merlyne to the peple anon,
bothe to temperal & speritwal everichon,
and seide : "Sires, draweth 3ow now nere
that desiren 3owre kyng to speken to here."
thane axeden they merlyne howhe that myhte be.
"Cometh," quod merlyne, "and stondlyth be me!"

6788

Merlin whis-
pers into the
king's ear :

Thanne wente merlyne to the beddis hed,
and there to the kyng spak Jn that sted,
Softely rowneng Jn the kynges ere :

6792

"Sire, a fair
ende hast
thou made.

"Sire, a fair ende hast thou mad here,
3if hit Jn thy conciense now be
as thy Semblaunce here scheweth to me.

6796

After thee
shall reign
Arthur,
thy son,

And on thyng J telle the Jn certeyne :
that be goddis grace aftyr the schal regne
Arthewr, that Js thy sone so fre ;
of al this rewme kyng schal he be,

6800

and he shall
fill the round
table."

and he schal fulfille the table rownde,
whiche that be the now Js here fownde."

And whanne the kyng herde this,

The king
turns round,
and asks
them all to
pray for him.

Ful sone to hym ward he torned, j-wys,
and preide the peple Everychon

6804

To god alle for hym to preyen anon.

thane seide merlyne anon with-al :

"this 3e laste word that Evere speken he schal!"

6808

thane wondreden alle that weren there,
how that he spak Jn Swich manere.

The same
night, the
king dies.

And so that Nyht he made his ende,
& to hevene blysse his Sowle gan wende.
Anon alle the prelacye of that lond

6812

with alle the Baronage, as j vndirstond,
 jn the most worschepful and reverent gyse
 they hym beryeden as they cowde devyse. 6816

The king is
 buried.

So was that lond with-owten eyr.
 And on the morewen to-gederys the[y] gonne repeir,
 of holy chirche al the prelacye
 and alle the Baronage, with-owten lye, 6820

Next morn-
 ing, the
 prelates and
 the barons

Jn a paleys that cristene hyhte;
 there sembleden bothe clerk & knyhte,
 and token cownseyl hem be-twene

assemble to
 choose a
 successor,

how that the peple governed schold bene, 6824

but Jn non wyse acorden they myhte.
 thanne be-spak a ful gentyl knyhte :

but cannot
 agree.

“let vs alle be comowne asent
 clepen merlyne to cownseyl, þat js present ; 6828

For he Js bothen wis and Ek redy
 good cownseil to 3even vs, trewely !”

So that thus acordid they alle jn fere,
 and aftyr merlyne anon senten there. 6832

They then
 resolve to
 send for
 Merlin.

Whanne that merlyne to-form hem comen was,
 to hym they seyden there jn that plas :

Chap. VI.

“For a wis man, Sire, we the knowe,
 and oure kyng hast thou loved a gret throwe. 6836

Merlin
 arrives before
 the assembly,

Ek therto, Sire, thou knowest ryht wel
 that governour han we neuere a del.

For a lond with-owten governour
 may not enduren azens ony schowr. 6840

and is re-
 quested to
 find them
 a king.

wherfore, sire merlyne, we the preye,
 al this hol cownseille, Sire, Jn feye,

vs to chesen swich a governowr
 the prelacye to plesen, the ðem to honour, 6844

and jn Savaeyoun of the peple also !”
 Anon thanne merlyne spak hem vnto :

He modestly
 promises to
 give them
 his advice.
 [leaf 114b]

“J nam not worthy Jn non degre
 Non swich maner thing to taken on me, 6848

Nethir non governowr forto chese,
 but be my wyt J schal don 3ow ese,

	<p>3if that 3e wilen acorden to me ; herketh now what my cownseil schal be !”</p>	6852
All declare they will follow Mer- lin's advice.	<p>they seiden to hym the[y] wolden asente, alle the hole cownseyl, veramente.</p>	
	<p>“ This rewme J have loved,” quod merlyn, “ and ek al the peple that Js there-Jn.</p>	6856
“ Your king died at Martinmas,” says Merlin.	<p>3e knowen ful wel al jn fere that 3owre kyng now ded Js here, which deide atte qwyn3yme of seint martyn this knowen 3e alle wel and fyn.</p>	6860
“ Christmas is coming,	<p>And hennes Jnto cristemasse we ne haven but ryht a schort spasse. and 3if 3e wilen don aftyr my cownsaille,</p>	
and I will tell you what to do.	<p>J schal 3ow Seyen, with-owten faylle, god to worschepen, the world to plese, and to 3owre hertes bothe joye and ese.” thane seiden they alle to hym ageyn, to hym they wolden concenten, certeyn.</p>	6864
	<p>“ 3e vndirstondyn alle ful wel that now cometh the feste of nowel, jn whiche the goode Lord was bore, that savede hem þat weren forlore.</p>	6868
At Christmas our Lord was born.	<p>and as he Js lord over alle thyng, ek aboven alle oþer he is kyng ; and as verrayly as a maiden hym bere, of good cownceyll preye 3e him here !</p>	6872
If you pray to Him, with good and humble hearts,	<p>For j dar be borewgh, and 3e him preye jn this manere as j 3ow seye, and that eche man preye jn his degre with good herte and jn hvmlyte :</p>	6876
	<p>lik as he was born Jn this feste, 3owre preieris to heren, of nest and leste, and as kyng of kynges he was bore, 3oure Symple preieris to heren thore,</p>	6880
to hear your prayers	<p>and as of alle thynges he is governour, 3ow a kyng to chesen of honowr, that at this Feste chosen myhte be be som tokeneng that they myhten se,</p>	6884
and to give you a king by some token,		6888

- the peple to governe and god to plese,
 and ek the rem to setten Jn Ese,
 So that the peple knewen aryhte
 that the Lecciown were be goddis myhte— 6892
 and 3if 3e wylen don as J 3ow seye,
 Som tokeneng scholen 3e haven, certeinleye!"
 thanne seiden they, so god hem Save,
 Jt was the beste counseil that they myhten have— 6896
 "For there nys non man Erthliche bore
 that bettyr counseille myhte 3even þerfore."
 thanne alle the clergyse there anon
 thorwgh the rewm dyde notyse thus son 6900
 that Jn every chirche and abbeye
 bothe niche and powre scholden preye,
 what thorwgh here preyere and holychirche,
 god to hem Som miracle scholde werche. 6904
 herto acordid they al jn fere,
 and merlyne of hem his leve took þere
 Jnto othir contres forto gon.
 thanne axeden they merlyne anon 6908
 3if that this thyng trewe scholde be.
 "3e, j hope," quod merlyne, "Sykerle!
 For no more nyle j comen 3ow to,
 Tyl that the Elecciown be j-do." 6912
 thanne wente merlyne to blayse jn haste,
 and of these merveilles told hym faste;
 And of thinges that to comen Were,
 To his maystir Blasye tolde he there. 6916
 and thereby haven we now knowenge
 of alle these materis, with-owten varyenge.
 thanne anon alle the Barownye
 and also forth-with the clergyse 6920
 To Londone wenten al jn fere
 there forto maken here preyere,
 and there abyden jnto cristemasse
 jn here preyeris, bothe more & lasse. 6924
 And Antron, that Norsched hadde Arthowr,
 atte halwentyd with gret honour

you cer-
 tainly shall
 have such a
 token."

The clergy
 ordain
 prayers
 throughout
 the kingdom.

Then Merlin
 takes leave.

Merlin goes
 to Blasy.

[leaf 114c]

The barons
 and the
 prelates go
 to London

for Christ-
 mas.

6891. MS. *knowe myhte aryhte*, with *o* corrected into *e*, and *myhte* crossed out.

Antron, who has had his son (Kay) knighted at All-Hallows,	his owne sone let dubben a knyht. and Arthewr was woxen bothe strong & wyht, and was past Sevene 3er old, ek perto was he bothe wyhte and bold ; and his owne Sone he dide hym calle, For so wende Arthewr it hadde befallē, and that his fadyr he hadde j-be, & thus wende Arthewr, ful sikerle.	6928
also goes to London with his children.	So that Antron to Londone gan go, and with hym his children bothe two.	6932 6936
On Christmas eve, there is a large congregation,	Thanne vppon the even of cristemasse there sembled the peple more and lasse, bothe the clergie and the baronage and manye a man of hygh parage, to fulfille merlynys comaundement, that he hem bad with good entent. For but Symple lif ledden they there, and fulstedfast weren jn here preyere To god for swich a governour the cristene to defende Jn euery schowr and cristes lawe to meingteigne, The lond to governe and to susteigne. And thus abyden they, tyl masse was don, gret multitude of peple and manion.	6940 6944 6948
praying steadfastly to God for a ruler.	And Some seiden that Folys they were Swich maner of preieris to makyn there. “what, wene 3e,” quod somme, “that god almyht here kyng to chesen down wolde alyht? lo, these folis wenen for here preiere be miracle a kyng to hauen here !” thus the masse there gan he Synge, a ful holy man, wel faste preyenge.	6952 6956
Some, how- ever, consider such prayers foolish.	and 3it er that he the masse bigan, To alle that peple spak he than : “Here Jn this plase assembled 3e ben For thre Skelis, as 3e schole Sen, and for 3oure profyt everywhere,	6960
Before mass, a holy man addresses the people : “You are assembled here	and which they ben, J schal 3ow declare : Ferst for the hele of 3oure sowles alle,	6964
for the weal of your souls,		

and aftyr for 3oure worschepe, how so befalle,		for the wor- ship of God,
The thrydde to knowen oure Lordis myht,		
that god to 3ow wile schewen be ryht	6968	
of the eleccyown of oure kyng,		and for the election of a king.
thys to sen be 3oure preyeng,		
which schal ben 3oure gouernowr and lord		
and holy chirche to sosteyne in good acord,	6972	
which to vs alle it is Sustenaunce		
and vs defendith from manye hard chaunce.		
Now sethen we ben alle Ensemblyd here		
a kyng to chesin Jn this manere	6976	Now, since we are to make this election,
of on of 3ow, which so that it be,		
but so wise be 3e not in non degre		
to knowen whiche were most profytable		and because our own wisdom is insufficient,
owper this lond to gouerne most were able,	6980	
and for that we ben Jn nown certain,		
perfore to crist let vs preyen, ful pleyn,		let us pray to Christ!"
that is of alle kyngges the kyng,		
so that vs graunte Owre preieng,	6984	
Swich A governowr that We Haue		[leaf 114 d]
Oure londes to meinteigne and to Save!"		
and thus diden the peple, with-owten faille,		
lik as this goode man hem dide counsaile.	6988	The people pray,
thanne to masse wente he forth anon,		attend mass,
also Faste as he myhte gon,		
tyl that the masse was atte gospel,		
and aftyr they offreden wel and lel,	6992	
and owt of the chirche thei gonme to isswe		and issue out of church at dawn.
Jnto a voide place, this was ful trewe.		
and be that tyme the day gan dawne,		
where-offen the peple was ryht fawe.	6996	
Anon the peple of this rowte		
Ful besyly Lokeden hem abowte,		
and behelden where that a foure-quartered ston		
that there lay toforn hem echon.	7000	Outside, they behold a square stone of unknown description.
but of what maner ston that hit was,		
there knew no man Jn that plas.		
Somme there seiden hit was marbil gray,		
and somme seiden operwise, with-owten delay.	7004	

In the middle
of the stone
is an anvil,

and in þe middis of this ston behelden they tho
a merveillous Stythy, with-owten mo,
as thowgh a smythis Styth it were,
half a foote of heythe, with-owten dwere.

7008

in the middle
of the anvil
is fixed a
sword.

and jn þe middis of this Stythþy þer was
a Fayr Swerd pyhte Jn that plas
thorwgh the Stythy Into the harde ston,
that they hit Syen there Everychon.

7012

Those who
first behold
this sight,

And whanne that they beheldyn this
that owt of þe minstre ferst wente, j-wis,

return into
the eathedral,
and tell the
archbishop.

Jnto the minstre they entred thanne,
and tolde hit anon to this holy manne

7016

that here masse gan to Synge,
which was Erchebischepe, with-uten lesinge,
Of Orbrice, as tellith this storye,
and as hit is put into memorye.

7020

The arch-
bishop takes
holy water,
goes to the
stone, bows
down devout-
ly, and dis-
covers a
golden in-
scription,

and whanne that the holy man herde of this,
anon holywater thanne took he, j-wys,
and wente to the swerd *with-jinne* a throwe,
and therto obeysched hym wondirly lowe ;
where as lettres of gold beheld he there,
that Jn this manere endyted were,
and seiden openliche declarenge :

7024

to the effect
that he who
can draw out
the sword,
shall be king.

that swich a man schold ben here kyng
that owt of þe stethy the swerd myhte drawe,
he scholde be governour of lond and lawe ;

7028

For god wyle that hit so now be,
as schewyth be miracle, & non but he.

7032

The arch-
bishop tells
the people.

and thanne this Erchebischepe anon
amonges the peple schewid it thus son.

Ten laymen
and five
clerks are
set to watch
the stone.

thussone this ston Jn warde was pyt
of x worthy men, to kepen hyt,
and to fyve clerkis of hygh clergy
with the tothyr meyne that ston to gye,
and seiden that god ful mochel hadde j-do,
that swich myracle wolde schewen hem so.

7036

The others
return to
mass.

thanne in they wenten anon to masse

7040

7005. Small erasure after *ston*.

7029. *þe* squeezed in afterwards.

- hit owt to heren, bothe more and lasse,
 more-ouer to 3elden god here thankyng,
 and te deum laudamus thei gonne to synge. 7044
 And whanne that te devm was j-doon,
 From the awter he torned anon,
 and seide: "sires, now mown 3e se
 that amonges 3ow somme goode men be, 7048
 that god here now thorwgh 3oure preyere
 To vs swich tokenynges hath schewed here.
 wherfore here J comande 3ow alle
 that, vppon what man this lot befalle, 7052
 For love, for hate, neþer for envye,
 whethir to pore or to riche it happe, trewlye,
 that non man azens this elexioun ne be,
 Sethen it is goddis wille, as 3e mown se. 7056
 For Ho so contrarieth His signefiance,
 J drede on him that he wil werke veniance!"

Thanks-
givings are
offered.

After Te
Deum, the
archbishop
again ad-
dresses the
people,

exhorting
them not to
oppose, on
any account,
him whom
God shall
choose;

[leaf 115 a]
for such
opposition
would be
avenged.

- Thanne forth this goodman his masse gan synge,
 3eving to god bothe lawde and preysinge. 7060
 and whanne the masse was al j-dou,
 alle to that ston they wenten Echon.
 thanne Ech of other gan to Enqwere
 whiche that first Scholde assayen there 7064
 that swerd owt of that styth to drawe,
 and to ben governour bothe of lond & lawe.
 thanne acordid they to-gideris Echon
 that of hem ne scholde assayen it non 7068
 othir thanne the erschebischope schold chese,
 Jn forveture his worschepe forto lese.
 thanne began there ful gret discord
 betwixen communes, gentyles, and lord, 7072
 that to ony enerytaunce hadden Ryht.
 to that swerd they wenten with al here myht,
 which that first mylhte wynnyn therto
 vppon that Swerd his myht to do. 7076
 thanne seide therchebischope to hem agein :
 "Amonges 3ow here, in certeyn,

After mass,
all go to
the stone.

It is decided
that only
those chosen
by the arch-
bishop shall
try the
sword.

However,
such as con-
sider them-
selves more
privileged,
are dis-
satisfied.

The arch-
bishop
admonishes
the people,
saying that
no one knows
the pre-
ordnance
of God,

and that
noble birth
and wealth
avail nothing
here.

All quietly
withdraw
from the
stone.

The arch-
bishop weep-
ingly com-
mends their
humility,

and asks
them to wait
till after the
festival.

So they do.

Then the
archbishop
says:

"When
justice was
first in-
stituted,
the sword
was given to
uphold it;

now, by
means of the
sword, our
election shall
be made.

nis non So wis ne non worthy
that goddis wyl here knoweth, trewely, 7080
whiche of 3ow that he wyle chese,
othir wich of 3ow the stat schal lese.
but of on thing J dar 3ow wel say :
that xeythir gentrye ne richesse this day 7084
ne schal not onlych his wille hauen here,
Sauf onliche god be his powere.
For, Sires, 3it j sey 3ow furthermore,
J trowe that he 3it ne be not bore 7088
that this swerd here owt schal drawe,
To ben 3owr lord of lond and lawe."
thanne acordedyn they alle, *with-owten* faille,
anon to that erchebischoppis cownsaylle, 7092
and withdrawen hem thanne everichone
From that swerd ryht alle anone.
thanne wepe the Bischope for pure pyte,
thanne jn hem he sawgh swich humylyte, 7096
and seide : "this meknesse jnto 3ow Entred Js
be vertw of cryst, *with-owten* mys!
and j wile that 3e knowen owt ryht
that aftyr the wylle of god almyht 7100
J wile werken, Sires, ful otterly,
Goddis wraththe to eschewen pleynty.
Abydeth tyl that this feste be do,
and the swerd to assayen schole we gon to." 7104
So whanne this feste was J-past,
To that swerd they wenten jn hast.
"now, sires, beholdith here goddis myht,
that he for vs hath wrowht aryht! 7108
For first whanne crist ordeyned justise,
Sires, j 3ow seye, hit was jn this wyse :
be the spere and be the swerd
he ordeyned to gouerne al middillerd. 7112
For the swerd was first betake,
holy chirche to defendyn from wrake.
and here be the swerd is oure eleccioun,
this Reem to governen al and Som. 7116

7102. *Goddis*, *G* through correction.

7116. *Som*, *S* through correction.

- and therfore good cownseyl that 3e make
 ho that this wile on hym take,
 be he neuere so hygh, prowde, oper Riche,
 and thowgh he seme non man him liche. 7120
 loke 3e pore men ne ben not wroth,
 thowgh that the Riche to 3ow ben loth,
 thowgh they assayen the swerd to-fore,
 For grettere thanne 3e they ben & worthiere more. 7124
 For vnknoweng hit is to 3ow alle
 3it on whom the lot schal falle,
 whethir on Lord, knyht, or sqwyer,
 On powr, comown, oper on bacheler, 7128
 or which of 3ow alle kyng schal be,
 hit is 3it vnknowen, ful Sykerle!"
- Thus anon acordid alle that Ensemble
 To therchebisschope, ful Sekyrle,
 with-owten ony rankewr of herte;
 there was non word that hem asterte;
 but ho so wolde, scholde hit asaye,
 thus acordid they alle, with-owten delaye. 7136
 thanne assentyd they everychon
 To what lord therto wolde gon,
 and to whom þat god wolde senden his grace,
 openly to ben schewyd jn that place. 7140
 thanne retorned they al jn fere
 To therchebisschope anon there,
 and ij .c. & .L. they chosen anon
 of the worthyest, that myhte gon 7144
 Forto asayen there here myht,
 On whom that god wolde schewen þe Ryht.
 but amonges hem ne was þere non
 þe swerd to remeve owt of þat ston. 7148
 So thanne wente alle opere in fere
 of comunes, of powre men, þat weren there,
 Forto asayen what they myhten do.
 but al availed hit hem not a slo, 7152
 For remeved hit myht be for non man;
 Swich miracle god gan schewen than.
 So that hit was comandel jn hast

Let the rich
be humble,

the poor
forbearing.

Nobody
knows on
whom the lot
shall fall!"

[leaf 115 b]

All approve
of the arch-
bishop's
words,

and make
generous
concessions.

First 250
nobles are
chosen to try
the sword,

but none can
move it.

Then the
others who
are present,
try it,

likewise in
vain.

Finally, ten men are appointed to guard the sword, with orders not to prevent anybody from trying it.

To .x. worthy men to kepen Jt fast,
and that they Scholde non man lette
hit to asayen, ho that myht it fette
and forto taken it owt of þat ston,
That he were markyd ryht anon.

7156

Fruitless trying goes on for a week.

So that thus the swerd asayed was
.viij. dayes. to-gederis Jn that plas.

7160

Then the archbishop holds forth the power of God.

and whanne eche man hadde asayed his myht,
Thanne seide therechebischepe anon ryht :

7164

The people vow they will not leave the town, till they see the issue.

“Now mown 3e alle wel vndirstonde
that this is werk of goddis sonde,
For power of this swerd hath non man, pleyn,
but hym that god hath chosen, certeyn !”

7168

All go to their lodgings.

thanne sworn they alle jn that place
that owt of thiike town they wolde not pace,
Tyl they wyste the victorye ho scholde have ;
thus Sworen they alle, so god hem save.

7172

Then a tournament is got up,

thanne, whanne the masse thus was j-do,
Eche man to his ostage gan forto go.

7176

and the ten guardians look on

and whanne thei hadden eten Everychon,
to this swerd they wenten alle anon,
and þere eche man torneyed with oþer,
þe sone ȝens fadyr, brothir ȝens broþir.
and Evere behelden these .x. worthy men
Ho that the swerd scholde beren then.

7180

with the rest.

more ouer thei beheld the gret Tornaye,
how eche man his myht gan there asaye.
(So happede that antrouys sone þat Tyde
knyht was mad in armes to ryde,
at halewyntyde to-fore þat hygh feste
of cristemasse, as hit lyht in geste.)

7184

Sir Kay calls on Arthur to fetch his sword from their hostel.

and the sothe to tellen, ful Sekirle,
al that town wente to that torne.
and whanne þat tornement begonnen was,
that sire kay clepid arthewr jn þat plas.
“dere brothyꝛ,” seyde sire kay anon,
“That to owre ostage 3e wolde gon,
and that my swerd 3e bringen to me,

7188

7192

7175, 7181. *thei*, *i* squeezed in afterwards.

7186. *hit*, *t* on erasure.

how so euere hit happe, j preye to þe."

thanne arthewr, þat was ful Servisable,

Forth took his weye, with-owten fable,

As faste þrekende As He myhte Ryde,

hom to his ostage that jlke tyde.

and whanne to his ost that he was gon,

nethir man ne womman fonde he non,

but alle weren they gon, with-owten delaye,

Forto Sen that grete Tornaye.

So whanne his brotheris swerd he myhte not gete,

Ful tendirly the teres he dide down lete,

and so wepyngly he torned ageyn,

Tyl þat to-fore the mynstre he cam, ful pleyn,

and sawgh that swerd where hit stood

Faste jn þe ston, & þerto he 3ood,

For toforn asaied he neuere that game

The Swerd to geten to haven a fame.

For 3if the swerd he myhte arere,

To his brothir he wolde hit bere.

and assone as he gan asaye,

the swerd he gat with-owten delaye,

and vndir his lappe hit kepte preve,

and þer-with to his brothir he gan to fle.

and whanne sire kay sawh hym komenge,

azens his brothir he gan to flynge,

also faste as he myhte ryde,

his swerd to haven at that tyde,

and seide: "Brothyr, J 3ow praye,

3eve me my swerd, & not 3e delaye!"

"now certein, brothir, j ne have hit nowht,

but here anothir j have 3ow browht."

and from vndir his cote he drowh it owt.

Anon he hit knew, with-owten dowl,

that the same swerd hit was anon

whiche tofore þe mynstre stood jn þe ston.

Anon he thoughte þanne, with-owten lesyng,

that be that swerd he scholde be kyng.

thanne comaunded he his brothir arthewr anon

7196 Arthur rides
home to the
hostel,

[leaf 115 c]

7200 but finds no
one at home,

7204 and, to his
great dis-
tress, cannot
get at the
sword.
In returning
past the
cathedral, he
sees the
sword in the
stone,

7208

7212 thinks that
he may take
that instead,

gets it out
easily,

7216 hides it under
his lappet,
and hastens
to his brother.

Sir Kay
meets him,

7220

7224 receives the
sword,
recognises it
at once,

7228

and resolves
to make a
deceitful
use of it.

7202. *grete*, *r* corrected from *e*.

7209. MS. *ifortoforn*.

- Kay sends Arthur to fetch his father. aftyr Antron his Fadyr Forto gon, 7232
 where þat evere he myhte hym gete,
 and þat for non thing he scholde lete.
 So longe wente arthewr, that he him fond,
- When Antron arrives, and Forth hym þere browhte be þe hond. 7236
 thanne, whanne Sire kay his Fadyr beheld,
 where as he hovede vndir his Scheld :
- Kay shows him the sword, and says he hopes to be king. “ Lo, be-hold, fadyr, j schal be kyng ;
 This swerd to me is good tokenyng. 7240
 For this same stak In the ston,
 whiche han asayed hyt ful manyon.
 So that Thus is now my destene
 that nedis be this swerd kyng moste j be ! ” 7244
- Antron is surprised, And whanne the Fadyr beheld al this,
 Ful mochel merveille he hadde, j-wys,
 and asks Kay how he came by it. and axede Sire kay ful pleynly
 how he thiike swerd þat he cam by. 7248
- Kay answers that he took it out of the stone. anon he him answered, & not forsook,
 That owt of the ston he hit took.
 and whanne that Antron herde this,
- Antron does not believe him. he hym belevyd non thing, j-wis, 7252
 but seide pleynly he made gabbyng,
 hym forto tellen ony swich thing.
- Father and son repair to the stone. So forth they wenten bothe jn fere
 To-ward the mynstre anon ryht there. 7256
 and whanne that Antron Sawh the ston,
 ek also the swerd away was gon,
- Antron exhorts Kay to tell the truth, thanne seide Antron To his sone : “ sire kay,
 Loke that the sothe 3e me now say 7260
 how þat 3e komen now be this swerd ;
 Sey me þe sothe, and be not aferd.
- [leaf 115 d] at the peril of being dis-owned And 3if ony lesyng 3e to me make,
 For 3oure Fadir 3e me neuere take ; 7264
 and 3if 3e me maken ony lesyng,
 J schal hit wel knowen, with-owten fayllyng ;
- and forfeit-
ing his love. and þerto 3ow to loven neuere schal J
 For non man þat to me speketh, trewely ! ” 7268

- thanne to his Fadyr answerid Sire kay :
 “ Certeyn, Fadir, the sothe j schal 3ow say :
 my brothir Arthewr me hit browhte,
 whanne for myn he wente & fond it nowhte. 7272
 but j ne wot how that he jt wan,
 Neþer howh he it gat, tellen j ne kan.”
 “ Take me that swerd, sone, j the praye,
 and anon j schal don hyt asaye.” 7276
 This swerd, Sire kay to his fadir it took ;
 thanne Antron ful son behinde hym gan look,
 & sawh where Arthewr stood besyde.
 Anon he hym clepede jn that Tyde : 7280
 “ haue this swerd, sone, Jn thin honde,
 and a3en to putten hit thou hit Fonde
 Jnto the same plase there hit ferst was,
 3if that god wil graunte 3ow swich gras.” 7284
 This swerd on honde Arthewr took wel sone,
 and toward that ston he gan to gone,
 and hit a3en sette Jn the Same place,
 as faste holdyng as to-forn hit wace. 7288
 thanne comandid Antron to sire kay, his sone,
 To assaien that swerd þere Ryht anone.
 Anon this swerd he gan to asaye,
 but the grace was not to Sire kaye. 7292
 thanne to hym spak his Fadir Antron :
 “ this swerd took þou neuere owt of this ston ! ”
 thanne Artheur jn his armes Antron gan brace,
 and seide : “ dere child, and j mowe the purchace 7296
 of al this lond here kyng to be,
 dere child, what reward wost þou 3even to me ? ”
 “ Fadir, ony good that j may haue,
 hit most ben 3oures, what 3e wilen crave, 7300
 as child to the Fadyr nedis most seyn,
 3oures schal it ben al hol and pleyn ! ”
 “ Sire,” quod Antron to Arthewr jn hy,
 “ 3owre Fadyr was j neuere, trewely, 7304
 but as be the weye of norture,
 Ful certein, Sire, j 3ow ensure.

Kay confesses
the truth.

Antron
demands the
sword from
him,

and tells
Arthur to put
it back into
the stone.

Arthur
does so.

Then Antron
commands
his son to
try and take
it out.

But Kay
cannot move
it.

Antron is
now sure,
embraces
Arthur, and
asks what
reward he
shall have, if
he makes
Arthur king.

Antron tells
Arthur that
he is only his
foster-father.

7285. *Arthewr*, *t* through correction.

7295. *ntron* on erasure. 7302. MS. *3our'es*.

- Neþer ho the be-gat, j hit not knowe,
whethir he were man hy oþer lowe!" 7308
- Arthur weeps
with disap-
pointment,
and whanne Arthewr this vndirstood,
That his Fadyr denoyede his blood,
he wepte ful harde teres smerte
For tendirnesse with humble herte, 7312
- and wonders
how he,
being of ob-
scure birth,
can attain
such dis-
tinction.
and seide: "dere sire, howgh may this be,
that swich good oþer worschepe scholde turne to me,
this or any othir worldly thing,
Sethen 3e me knowen not of myn e[n]gendryng?" 7316
"3is, Sire, a Fadyr hauen 3e be kynde,
what so Ewere j putte 3ow jn mynde.
but, Sire, and hit be þe wille of god almyht
That to this grace 3e comen be ryht, 7320
and 3if hit mowe be Fortheryd by me,
Sire, what schal thanne my mede be?"
thanne answerid Arthewr to hym welsone:
"What 3e wilen desiren of ony bone." 7324
- Antron in-
quires again
about his re-
ward, in case
Arthur should
have that
grace.
thanne sette on Antron also blyve,
and tolde Arthewr of al his lyve,
And How His Norse that His Wyf Was,
and Norsched his sone kay Jn othyr plas, 7328
and sook the mylk of a straunge womman—
"and my wyf 3ow Fostred, as 3he wel can;
Therefore to me, Sire, and to myn sone
3e owhten to Sen a good Gwerdone. 7332
- and of their
joint tender
care.
For 3ow haue j norsched as tendirly,
bothe J and my wyf, Sire, trewely,
as Euere child norsched myhte be,
j telle 3ow, sire arthewr, ful sikerle!" 7336
- Arthur im-
plores him
still to con-
sider him
his son.
"thanne preye j 3ow," quod Arthewr thanne,
"lik as 3e bien a worschepful manne,
That 3e wolden not disnoyen me,
but J as 3owre sone Euere forto be. 7340
For 3if that 3e wyle me thus forsake,
thanne wot j not how on to take.
and 3if that god this grace me sende,
to 3ow & to 3owre sone j wil ben ful kende. 7344

For what thing that ȝe desiren of me,
certein, Sire, grauntyd sone schal ȝt be !”

Arthur is
willing to
give his
foster-father
anything he
shall choose.

“Sire,” quod Antron, “ȝ ne schal axen non thing

That myhte tornen to ȝowre hyndring, 7348

nethyr ȝowre Lond, ne ȝowre richesse,
ne non thing that ȝow schal distresse.

But of on thing J wolde ȝow praye,

and that ȝe hit me not with-naye, 7352

Antron de-
sires Arthur
to make Kay
his steward,

but that kay, my sone, ȝowre steward be
alle ȝowre Londres forto over-se ;

And thowh that he to ȝow forfete,

owthir to ony other, Jn Jre or hete, 7356

Nethir for non trespas that he may do,

From that offys to putten hym fro,

but as longe as his lyf may endure,

of ȝoure stewardschepe to ben Sure. 7360

and to forgive
his foster-
brother any
transgres-
sion,

And thowgh he be vnkurteys or vnkynde,

thanne jn ȝoure herte ȝe have jn mynde

That of a-nothir my[l]k Norsched was he

thane of his owne modyr, Sekyrle.

and þerfore Suffren him more ȝe moste

Thanne to ony other, as J ȝow troste.

wherfore of this bone J preye to the,

and that ȝe wylen not wernen it to me !” 7368

Thanne answerid Arthewr ful sone anon :

“Alle ȝowre hole askynge ȝ graunt Sone.”

Arthur gives
the promise,

Thussone Antron took Arthewr anon,

and to the hygh awter þanne gonne they gon.

there Arthewr Swor on his Surawnce 7372

that heste to holden, with-owten variaunce.

and confirms
it by a solemn
oath.

And whanne he hadde thus his oth mad,

Thanne antron & sire kay weren ful glad. 7376

So toward the Torneye thanne gonne they gon,

but homward they comen Everychon ;

And that day fynysched was the gret Torneye,

So that toward the mynstre they comen jn hye 7380

There alle here evensong forto here,

By this time,
the people re-
turn from the
tournament,
and go to
even-song.

7363. MS. *myk*.

7367. *bone* added above the line.

For ȝit^of theleccioun they weren jn dwere.

Antron goes with his friends before the arch- bishop,	Thanne clepede antron his Frendis anon, and tofore therchebisschope gonne they gon, and Seyde : “ Sire, here J ȝow praye, Lesteneth to me now what j schal Saye.	7384
and says that his son would like to try the sword before all the lords.	Sire bisschope, j haue a ȝong Sone here That Js non knyht, and ȝit wolde he lere To asayen the swerd that Js Jn the ston afor these Lordynges here everychon. Sire Bisschope, of this he doth me preye, Therefore the arende here J to ȝow Seye.”	7388 7392
The barons are sum- moned.	Thanne clepyd weren alle the Barouns to semble, afor that ston to aperen, ful Sykirle. So whanne assembled they weren Echon, Antron to Arthewr thanne seide anon : “ Go forth, and asaye this swerd ryht here, Hyt Owt to drawen ȝyf ȝe konne lere.”	7396
[leaf 116 b]	Anon Arthewr to this swerd wente afor alle the peple there presente, and that swerd there pulde owt Ryht sone, anon to the Byschope there-with gan gone, and offryd hit vpe jnto his hond Tofor alle þe peple þat there dyd stond.	7400 7404
and offers it to the arch- bishop,	The Bysschope reseceyved hit ful blyve, and ful joyful was in his lyve. So that Arthewr jn his armes þere gan he brase afor al the people Jn that plase,	7408
who joyfully embraces him.	and Te deum laudamus he gan to Synge, Therto alle the bellys anon gonnen ryng. So thus to the mynstre they gonne hym bere, The Bysschope with the clergie þat was there.	7412
With song and ringing of bells, Arthur is carried by the clergy into the cathedral.	Thanne alle the Baronage that þere was, Gret sorewe and morneng maden jn þat plas, and Seyden, certein, hit Scholde neuere be, a knave to be set Jn so hygh degre, Neyther to ben here Sovereyn ne kyng ; They wolde hit Suffren for non thing.	7416
But the barons are sad,		
and disallow the election.		

7382. *dwere*, the first *e* added above the line.

7414. *Maden*, *M* corrected from *j*.

- Anon Therschebisschope wax ryht wroth,
 For here wordis to hym weren ful loth,
 and seyde: "Lordynges, wylen 3e vndirstonde
 Of hym that is kyng of See and Londe,
 he knoweth bettere what is to done,
 thanne alle the compenye of 3ow echone!" 7420
- Anon Antron and alle the comunes jn fere
 To Arthewr anon assembleden there,
 and the Barowns the contrarye helden anon
 a3ens Arthewr and the comunes echon. 7424
- Thanne spak Therchebisschope with angry herte
 wordys ful bolde, whiche þat hem Smerte:
 "knownen 3e wel, Lordynges here present,
 That this Js holy owre Lordis entent,
 how this persone only 3oure kyng schal be
 Of his owne Eleccioun, Lordynges, Sykerle!
 wherfore j schal 3ow schewe, er 3e hyt crave,
 what affyaunse jn god here-offen that j have. 7428
- Now go forth, arthewr, my sone so dere,
 Goddys wyl to schewen among this peple here.
 Goth and sette the swerd there as Jt was,
 Openly to-forn the peple jn this plas." 7432
- anon arthewr with good herte and wyll
 Therchebisschoppis wyl wente to fulfylle,
 and pyhte the Swerd Jnto that Ston;
 and also Faste hit there helde anon
 as Ewere hyt dyle any tyme to-fore,
 as sad, as Faste, and al so sore.
 and whanne thus that arthewr hadde don,
 Thanne to hem seyde therchebysschope anon: 7436
- "A fayrere Eleccioun neuere there was
 Thanne God hath Schewed 3ow jn this plas.
 Therefore goth now, bothe powre & riche, jnfaye,
 vppon the Swerd 3owre myht al to asaye." 7440
- anon asayed every man jn his degre,
 but For hem alle hit wolde not be.
 Thanne seide to hem Therschebisschope ageyn:
 "now ben 3e alle grete Foles, jn certeyn, 7444
- Oure Lordys wyl to contraryen here,
 7425, 7428. MS. *cōunēs*.

The arch-
bishop
angrily re-
proves the
barons.

The com-
mons as-
semble about
Arthur, but
the barons
still oppose.

The arch-
bishop cen-
sures them
again,

saying that
he will show
them God's
will.
He tells
Arthur to
put the
sword in its
former place.

Arthur obeys,

and the sword
sticks as
firmly as
ever.

He then tells
the others
to try.

But all fail.

The arch-
bishop then
exclaims:
"You are
fools to op-
pose our
Lord's will!"

The barons
reply that
they do not
oppose God's
will, but are
annoyed at
Arthur's low
birth.

that in hevene ne erthe he ne hath non pere!"

"Sire, we ne erren not aȝens goddis wyll,

but of on thing hyt greveth vs ylle :

7460

that a knave here owre kyng scholde be

and over vs to haven the Sovereynthe."

"Now, lordynges," quod therchebysschope thanne,

"he that js bothe god and manne,

7464

knoweth bettyr what js Forto done

[leaf 116c]

Thanne Alle the Compene Of ȝow Echone!"

Anon whanne the Barouns herden al this,

Ful sore they weren abasched, j-wys,

7468

and besowghten the Byschope alle in Fere

That thike swerd myhte styлле abyden there

Jnto the Feste Seweng of kandilmasse,

hyt there to asayen bothe more & lasse

7472

that neuere the Sward assayed to-fore,

thanne here myghtes to assayen thore.

They there-
fore desire the
archbishop to
let the sword
remain in its
place till
Candlemass.

Thussone therchebisschope hem grauntyd anon

That al here askyng there scholde be done.

7476

The arch-
bishop
assents.

So whanne this Feste tho comen was,

The peple gan semblen in-to that plas,

and hit assaieden there Everychon,

but of al that peple was there not on

7480

That the swerd there owt taken myhte ;

hit was the lasse wondyr : they hadden non Ryhte.

Thanne Seyde the Bysschope anon ryht to hem alle :

"now knowen ȝe what ryht to ȝow doth falle,

7484

therfore welen we now assayen goddis wyll."

And anon to arthewr he seyde vntylle :

"Go forth now, Arthewr, my child so dere,

To schewen what god wyl don for the here ;

7488

and ȝyf he wyle that thou here Lord be,

the Sward go take owt, now let se!"

Thanne wente forth arthewr ryht anone,

and that Sward pulde owt thussone,

7492

and as lyhtly took hit in-to his hand,

as thowgh non thyng hyt hadde withstand,

and took hyt to therchebisschope anon ryht,

draws it out
as easily as
if nothing
kept it.

- Thankynge only god of his grete myht. 7496
 Therchebisschope and the clergyes alle
 beheldyn how this kas be-gan to falle.
 They wepten alle for joye jn that place,
 and only thankyd god of his grete grace. 7500
 Thanne axede the Byssechope hem jn vyrown :
 "which of 3ow may contraryen this Elecciown?"
 Anon answerede the riche men ageyn,
 and preyden the Bysschope, in certeyn,
 3yt forto Suffren that swerd to stonde—
 "Tyl hyt han assayed mo men Jn Londe ;
 that schal ben at Pask now next sewenge,
 so longe to abyden, for ony thyng. 7508
 And 3yf at that tyme there be non man
 that thanne the swerd owt taken ne kan,
 ellis, Syre bissechope, be thin comaundement
 hym wilen we obeyen alle, verament.
 And but 3yf 3e welen granten vs this heste,
 elles Everyman let don his beste!"
 "wylen 3e," quod therchebisschope thanne,
 "with good herte obeyen, Everymanne,
 and J hyt Suffre jnto that day?" 7516
 "3e, sire," they seyden alle, *with*-owten delay.
 Thanne seyde therchebisschope to Arthewr tho :
 "dere Syre, to the ston agen that 3e go,
 and Setteth the swerd there-jinne ageyn.
 For of on thing j dar Seyen 3ow pleyn :
 3e scholen neuere fayllen of that thyng
 that 3ow hath behoten owre hevene kyng."
 Thanne Arthewr styrte hym forth before,
 and the swerd jn his place putte ryht thore.
 Anon was ordeyned be comaundement
 That swerd to kepen tho, verament,
 Ten worthy men, and clerkys Fyve,
 and fyve lower men of good lyve.
 The swerd that tyme as faste there was
 as Ewere to-fore hit stood jn that plas. 7532
 Thus abod the kynges Arthewr Sacreng

The arch-
bishop and
the clergy
weep for joy.

The barons
want another
respite,

till Easter,

and promise,
if nobody else
can take out
the sword,

then to ac-
knowledge
Arthur.

The arch-
bishop tells
Arthur once
more to put
back the
sword.

Arthur again
obeys.

Men are
placed to
guard the
sword, as
before.

- Into the feste of Esterne next comeng.
- [leaf 116 d] Therchebysschope Seyde to Arthewr thanne : 7535
The arch-
bishop ex-
horts Arthur
to a good life,
“thou schalt ben here kyng, here governour & manne,
Therefore loke evere a goodman that thou be
From this tyme forward Jn alle degre.
and advises
him to choose
his counsel-
lors and
retinue.
and chese now whiche of thy conseyl scholen be,
and jn thin houshold to haven onest meyne, 7540
Evene as this day that thou were kyng alone,
lik as thou schalt be helpe of hevene kyng in trone.”
“Sire,” quod arthewr, “j wyle ful wel
jn goddis ordenaunce putten me echedel ; 7544
and aftyr 3oure cownseyl, Syre, wyle j do,
whethir hit me torne to wele oper wo.
and therfore Swich meyne that [3e] me chese
bothe god and holychirche forto plese. 7548
and Antron. And clepyth my Fadyr to 3owre counsayl,
For he is a man that may mochel avayl.”
Thanne clepyd the bysschope his fadyr Antron,
and bad with hym that he scholde gon. 7552
thussone he tolde hym every word,
how Artheur and he weren atte acord.
They choose
two coun-
sellors,
thanne anon chosen they tweyne conseylleris
of worthy men and gret perys. 7556
and make
Kay steward.
That so be here counseyl, j vndirstond,
sire kay was mad steward of his lond.
and alle the remenant abyden styлле
jnto the feste of Pask with ryht good wylle. 7560
and whanne that feste was comen than,
To Londone they comen Every man.
On Easter
eve the
barons are
summoned to
the arch-
bishop's
palace.
Vppon Pask evenen the bisschope forth Sente
after alle the baronage, veramente, 7564
Jn his paleys to maken here Semble ;
This was his wylle, ful certeinle.
Thanne axede he hem of alle here wylle,
3if to that chyld they wolden consentyn vntylle. 7568
Thanne answeyrd the Baronage ageyn :
“we wyl not contraryen, jn certeyn,
The wyl of oure Lord, hevene kyng.

- But vs merveillesh of this child so 3yng
and therto so lowe j-born of degre,
That Swich a pore man oure kyng schold be."
"Now certein," quod the bisschope thanne,
"j ne holde 3ow none goode crystene menne
To contraryen goddis owne Elecciown,
that to 3ow here is schewed al & Som!"
"Syre, that wyl we not jn non partye,
azens goddis wyl here not applye.
but Sethen 3e knowen of his degre,
and of his Byrthe 3e seyn, sykyrle,
Sire, to vs alle hyt Js vnknowe
and to alle this Baronye vppon this rowe."
"thanne wylen 3e letten now hys crowneng,
at this tyme forto maken hym kyng?"
"3e, Sire Bisschope, tyl we knowen more,
and we Scholen Seyn 3ow a skele wherfore.
Tyl we knowen bettyr what he Js,
and whens he cometh, with-owten mys,
Respyt we preyen of this Sacre,
3if that 3owre wyлле hit myhte so be."
quod therchebysschope to that Baronage :
"now knowe j wel alle 3owre owtrage!"
"nay, Sire, non lengere thanne Pentecost
we hit not axen, with-owten bost ;
and thus we preyen that 3e wolden do,
3if that 3ow lyke to consentyn therto."
vppon this quod the Bysschope thanne :
"we schole ben avysed Every manne."
So thus departyd there that cownsaylle,
Arthewr to worschepe, 3e baronage to dysavaylle.
So that vppon the morewe, Aftyr masse,
To the ston Arthewr a3en gan passe.
and that swerd he took owt fulsone,
lyk as to-fore tymes he hadde there done.
Thanne held they hym only For here kyng
with-owten more varyaunce other lettyng,
and preyden hym to putten the swerd jn ageyn

7572 The barons
still take
exception to
Arthur's low
birth,

7576

7580

wish for in-
formation on
that point,

7584

7588

and desire
prolonged
respite,

7592

7596

till Whit-
Sunday.

7600

7604

[leaf 117 a]
On Easter
morning,
Arthur, as
before, takes
out the
sword,

7608

and puts it in
again

	There as to-fore Jt stood, <i>with-owten leyn</i> ,	
The barons ask Arthur to open his heart to them.	and that to hem he wolde speke and somewhat of his herte to hem breke.	7612
	“Sires, that schal j do with good wylle, and 3e to me wyl lestene vntylle ; and of what thing that 3e preyen me, J Schal Jt 3ow grawnten, Sires, certeynle.”	7616
They take him into the cathedral,	Thanne ladden they hym to the mynstre anon To spoken with hym there everychon. “Sire, we vndirstonde Jn owre entent That 3e ben owre Lord, verament ;	7620
and say that they will ac- knowledge him as their lord and do him homage,	and what 3e desiren from this day, we wylen hit performen, <i>with-owten nay</i> , and therto owre londes of 3ow to holde, and homage to don 3ow ful manyfolde,	7624
but want to have the coro- nation post- poned.	of 3oure Sacryng 3if Respyt that 3e do jnto pentecost, certein, <i>with-owten mo</i> ; and neuere the lasse kyng scholen 3e be, and kepen 3owre stat, <i>worschype, & dignete.</i> ”	7628
Arthur says he will re- ceive no homage,	“How Schold j,” quod arthewr thanne, “Homage Resceyven of ony manne, Tyl J-Sacred Fullliche that j be and jn my stat at alle manere degre ?	7632
but will grant the postpone- ment,	But of the respyt that 3e me preye, j wele not denyen hit Jn non weye. 3yt, that j schal not Sacred be, Sires, j Sey 3ow now certeinle,	7636
desiring no- thing except by the will of the Heavenly King.	That nethyr kyngdom ne worschepe j desire but be wyl of the kyng of the hygh empyre. And ek 3if that 3e consenten therto, Ful moche the bettere hit may be do.”	7640
The barons praise his wisdom.	Thanne answeyrd the Baronage ageyn, and of this chyld Seyden, Jn certeyn : “3if he mowe lyven and enduren may, [he] Schal ben ryht wys, the sothe to say, [F]or wondyrly he doth vs answehere	7644

7632. MS. *degr'e.*

7644-46, 7652-56. The beginning letters were more or less damaged or destroyed through the leaf getting stuck to, and then pulled off from, the strip of parchment used for mending the preceding leaf.

[j]n Every poynt, with-owten dwere!"

Thanne seide to hym the Baronage ageyn :

"Sire, of on thing we preyen 3ow pleyn :

now at this pentecost 3e Sacred scholen be

and Resceyven 3owre crowne and dignete.

and with-jnne this Terme obeyen welen we,

To don 3ow homage, Seryyse, and Fe,

[a]s owre Erchebisschope wyl vs telle ;

we wylen werken aftyr his spelle."

The barons
repeat their
demand.

7648

thanne alle ornamentis browht they forth, sykirle,

That to a kyng belonged Jn alle degre,

Forto assayen Jn here manere

3yf owht coveytous that he were.

Thanne axede this worthy Arthewr anon

of these Estates alle be on & on,

and what Eche man was jn his degre.

So that good departed there anon thanne he,

and 3af bothe Riche Robes, gold, and Fe

To Erl, Barouns, & knyhtes, ful gret plente ;

and the gold and þe Sylver that hym browht was,

anon he departyd jn that plas

To sweche as hym thowhte best weren there,

So that Love he gat hym Every where.

7656

7660

7664

7668

The barons
bring forth
all the royal
ornaments,
to see if
Arthur is
covetous.

Arthur liber-
ally distri-
butes clothes,
gold, and
silver
amongst the
worthiest.

Thus departed Arthewr His 3yftes Alle

that to hym weren browht, bothe grete and smalle.

and whanne they syen hym of alle thinges so gent,

anon they Seyden Jn here Entent

That a worthy man he Scholde be

and neuere coveytous jn non degre.

"But verrayly vs semeth Jn his avyse,

and he hadde Resceyved his dygnete,

that to hym gret grace scholde Resorte,

as Evere to ony man that was of his porte.

For Every man he Rewardyth aftyr his degre,

and Every stat gwerdoneth ful pryncypale!"

And Neuere Evel tach jn hym they fownde

of alle that tyme Jn thyke stownde.

[leaf 117b]

The people
express their
approval

7672

of his liter-
ality

7676

and discrimi-
nation.

7680

7646, 7652-56. See the preceding footnote.

7663. *gold* through correction.

	So thus the Sacreng there gan abyde into pentecost, that holy tyde.	7684
For Whit-Sunday, the people re-assemble in London, and try the sword,	Thanne Sembled they echon ageyn at londone eftsones, J Sey 3ow pleyn. There the swerd a3en they gonne asaye To pullen Jt owte, ho so pullen maye.	7688
in vain, as before.	but there was non man jn that plase That swerd to taken, ne hadde non grase.	
The arch-bishop gets everything ready for the coronation.	Thanne therchebisschope anon nyht alle thinges aparayllede, j 3ow plyht, Bothe corowne, Septre, and the sacrynge, al this he ordeyned, with-owten lesyng.	7692
On Whitsun eve, Arthur is knighted.	Vppon the whitsonne Even, satirday at nyht, therchebisschope took cownseyl at Barown & knyht, and that nyht Artheur knyht was mad, er ony more dignite that he had. and that Nyht in preyeris lay Everyman, Tyl vppon the morwen that hit dawe began.	7696 7700
Next morn-ing, in the cathedral, the archbishop	So vppon the morewen, whanne hit was day lyht, To the maister chirche cam bothe barown & knyht. Thanne bespak therchebisschope Ful sone :	
	“Sires, 3e weten what 3e han to done. Lo, here this man of goddis chesing To ben bothe 3oure Gouvernour & kyng ! beholdith here vestures, and robys ryal, and the corowne of this lond with-al, Be the counseyl of Ryalis and of oþer mo this coronacioun here forto ben do.	7704 7708
displays the royal emblems,		
and inquires if any one opposes the coronation.	3it wolde j weten not For than 3if that here be ony Swich man that this eleccion here wolde with-seye ; of this the sothe wolde j knowen, Jn feye.”	7712
All acquiesces.	thanne answerid they alle be on assent : “we wylen he be crowned, verament.”	7716
The arch-bishop announces that Arthur for-gives all that has happened.	“Thanne with this,” quod the bisschope thanne, “So he haue the hertis here of Euery manne, what a3ens hym hath be wrowht into this day, he it to 3ow for3evith for Evere and ay.”	7720
The barons kneel,	Thanne knelyd they down al jn fere,	

- and to Arthewr cryden mercy there.
 thussone azens hem he knelede vppon his kne,
 and vppon hem he wepe for pure pyte,
 Seyeng to hem there, fulsore weping :
 "J forȝeve to ȝow alle ȝowre trespasyng,
 and so j preye to god an hy
 that he hyt forȝeve, & so wyle J."
 Thanne Rysen they alle be on assent,
 and hym gonne embracen with good entent,
 and him vp boren, and there forth ladde
 there as the Robes the bisschope leyd hadde.
 So thanne they hym vested anon,
 and the bischope thussone to masse ward gan gon.
 Anon As the Bysschope there Redy Was,
 To Artheur there cam he jnto that plas.
 "Sire, to the Swerd now ȝe mosten go
 and hyt vptaken, as tofore ȝe han do,
 wherwith holychirche defenden as a knyht
 and also cristendom with al ȝowre myht."
 Thanne wenten they forth on procession,
 bothe prelates, lordis, and comunes Echon,
 Tyl they comen there as the swerd was
 Stekyng jn the ston jn the forseid plas.
 Thanne seide therchebisschope to Artheur there :
 "Lesteneth now to me, and ȝe scholen here.
 ȝyf hit so be that thow wylt Swere
 and to God avowen & his modyr dere,
 Ek to Petyr and Powl, enswre thou me,
 and to alle Seyntes that jn hevene be,
 holy chirche to susteynen jn hire ryht
 and pes jn thy Lond with al thy myht,
 Ek the vnconseylled forto cownseylle,
 Thy peple to worschepe and avaylle,
 To thy Power this schalt thou do,
 and ryhtful lawes to meyntheyne also,
 with this com forth, take vpe this Swerd,
 whom god hath chosen jn this middilerd !"
 Anon so Arthew[r] herde al this,
- and cry his
 mercy.
 Arthur
 kneels also,
 7724
 and weeping-
 ly says he for-
 gives them.
 7728
 All rise,
 they embrace
 Arthur,
 7732
 invest him
 with the royal
 robes,
 [leaf 117 c]
 7736
 7740
 and walk in
 procession to
 the place
 where the
 sword is.
 7744
 The arch-
 bishop says
 to Arthur :
 "If thou wilt
 swear
 7748
 to sustain
 the Church,
 uphold peace,
 7752
 be a help to
 thy people,
 7756
 and maintain
 just laws,
 then come
 forth, and
 take up this
 sword!"

7734. *ward* added above the line.7759. MS. *Arthew*.

	For pite he wepe, & many mo, j-wys.	7760
Arthur swears,	So that he there Swor be god almyhty althis to susteyne <i>with</i> herte ful trewly— “And be alle thynges that jn erthe be, J schal hem Sosteyne jn my degre.”	7764
kneels down,	with this anon Arthewr he knelyd adown amonges al the peple that was jn vyrown.	
takes up the sword,	Anon the Swerd there vpe he took, Seenge many man that on hym gan look, and as lyhtly took hyt vpe ryht there, as Jn the ston hyt not ne were.	7768
bears it to the altar,	So bar he the swerd forth jn his hond, and to thawter they hym ladde, 3e vndirstond,	7772
and is crowned.	and there hym Sacryd, with-owten dowte, & as to here kyng they gonne to hym lowte. Ek anoynt he was anon therto, & alle that belonged to a kyng also.	7776
After the coronation, the people leave the cathedral.	Whanne this coronacion j- <i>endyd</i> was, and the masse j-Fenysched be goddis gras, owt of the mynstre alle wenten they anon, and behelden there aftyr this Ston,	7780
The stone with the anvil is gone!	But they ne wyste where hit was do, So sodeynliche awaye was hit hem fro. And jn this maner Arthew[r] kyng chosen was, as 3e han me herd rehersyn jn this plas.	7784

[leaf 117*a*]*Chap. VII.*

To Arthur's
court come,
with hun-
dreds of
knights,
king Loth of
Orkney,

king Uriens
of Gory,

king Newtris
of Garlot,

Thus Here-Aftyr the Storie Doth telle
what aftyr in kyng Arthewris cort befelle,
that aftyre his coronacioun the 3er Sewenge
To his cowrt repeyrede bothe knyht & kyunge. 7788
To that court cam the kyng of orkanye
with Fyve hundred knyhtes jn his compenye.
Also thedyr kam þe kyng of core, þat hyht vryens,
with Foure hundred knyhtes Jn his *presens*. 7792
thanne kam the kyng newtris Garlot,

7769. *ād* corrected from *as*.7774. MS. *gōnne*.7782. *was, w* corrected from *a*.7783. MS. *Arthew*.7784. The remainder of the column blank; in the left margin :
Coronacō arthur’.7787. *aflyr*’, *r*’ squeezed in.

that kyng Artheuris Sostir weddid, wel j wot,
and with him vij hundred knyhtes of pris.

And aftyr hym to cowrt pere kam j-wis

7796

the kyng that was of ryht Gorre,

that Carados of brebas hyht, Sykerle;

king Carados
of Right
Gory,

Therto he was knyht of þe table rownde,

and with hym vj hundred knyhtes Sownde.

7800

Aftyr hym kam kyng anguysyaax so fre,

that kyng of scotland was, Sykerle,

king
Angwysas of
Scotland,

a 3ong man, ful hardy, & gret of prowesse,

with fyve hundred knyhtes, more ne lesse.

7804

Aftyr hym to court kam kyng ydyers

with fowre hundred knyhtes stowt & Fers,

and king
Ydiers (of
Cornwall).

wel j-armed & harneysed owt ryht,

Thowgh anon they scholde gon to fyht.

7808

whanne these kynges were Sembled jn fere,

of hem gret joye made kyng Arthewr there,

Arthur is
much pleased,

and many grete festes he hem made

with grete presentes & 3iftes to maken hem glade.

7812

Every lord there aftyr his degre,

grete jewelis he hem 3af, Sykirle.

makes great
feasts in their
honour, and
bestows
ample gifts.

whanne these Barowns beheldyn al this,

the grete presentes and jewellis of pris

7816

and the grete festyng that he hem made,

anon there-offen dysdeyn they hadde,

and amongis hem-Self they gonne to say:

In the barons,
however, the
old envy' and
pride are
roused.

"we mown ben Sory to abyden this day,

7820

To sen a knave of so lowe degre,

kyng of this 3em that he scholde be!"

Anon his 3iftes they refused echon,

and streyht to the kyng wenten anon,

7824

and deden hym wel forto vndirstonde

they ne held hym non kyng of that londe,

and boden hym faste thens to hye

They refuse
his gifts,

disown him
as their king,

owt of that lond ryht Schortlye,

7828

For but 3yf he wolde the lond forsake,

they wolden hym werche bothe tene & wrake,

and threaten
his life.

7801. See Notes.

7815. MS. *beheldyng*.7824. *wentē*, *w* corrected from *g*.

- and but ȝif he thus dede, sekerlye,
 ellis to the dethward he scholde hye. 7832
 whanne kyng Arthewr herde here grete manas,
 thanne owt of strengthe of karlion gan he pas,
 King Arthur must fly and be in hiding. and there logged hym prevyly jn the town,
 For mochel he dred hym of tresown ; 7836
 where as he abod fyftene dayes,
 þat but fewe wysten where, þe sothe to saye.
 Merlin arrives. thanne happed it aftyr, as j ȝow telle,
 that merlyn jnto þat town cam, as befelle, 7840
 and jn his owne Semblawnce aperede openlye,
 For that of the peple he wolde be seye.
 And thussone as they hym Sye,
 gretly they merveilled, Sekirlye. 7844
 The barons send for him, Anon the lordis aftyr him gonne sende,
 and merlyne ful gladliche to hem gan wende.
 Anon as these Barowns Syen him comeng,
 aȝens hym they wenten jn metyng, 7848
 and of hym gret joye they made,
 take him into a palace, and jnto a fair paleys they him ladde,
 that stood be a reverys syde,
 & jnto a fair mede there gonne they byde. 7852
 [leaf 118 a] Whanne Jn that place that they Were,
 anon merlyn they aresownd there,
 and this to hym was here askyng,
 and ask his opinion of the new king. how that hym likede be here newe kyng— 7856
 “That therchebisschope of dover hath crowned here
 aȝens oure leve Jn alle manere.”
 Merlin greatly commends him. “Certes, lordynges,” quod merlyne tho,
 “they myhte non bettere hauen j-do.” 7860
 “what mene ȝe?” quod the barowns thanne,
 “how speke ȝe of this jlke manne?
 jn this rem many worthy lordis there be,
 more worthy to ocupien that worthy degre 7864
 thanne a knave that noman doth knowe
 whens he cam, of hygh oþer lowe!”
 The barons urge Arthur's low birth. “ȝe Seyn as that ȝe thinken,” quod merlyn,
 “but now wylen ȝe heren of cownseyl myn, 7868
 and vndirstondith what j schal Seye :

20

Merlin.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, No. CXII.

1913.

Price 15s.

BERLIN: A. ASHER & CO., 17 BEHRENSTRASSE, W. 8.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO., LEYPOLDT & HOLT
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT CO

207b

Merlin,

A MIDDLE-ENGLISH METRICAL VERSION

OF A FRENCH ROMANCE,

BY

HERRY LOVELICH,

SKINNER AND CITIZEN OF LONDON (AB. 1450 A.D.)

EDITED

FROM THE UNIQUE MS. 80 IN CORPUS CHRISTI COLLEGE,
CAMBRIDGE,

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARIES,

BY

DR. ERNST A. KOCK.

PART II.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,

BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.

AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
AMEN CORNER, E.C., AND IN NEW YORK.

1913

Extra Series CXII

RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON AND BUNGAY.

he is as hygh a born man, jn feye,
as the beste of 3ow that js here,

For here to his Fadyr pere nys non pere.

For Antronys sone nys non thing he,
nethyr sire kay his brothyr nys, sikerle,
that his steward chosen is this day,
but only of norture, as J 3ow say."

"where-offen speken 3e?" quod þe barouns tho,
"moche more merveyll js this vs vnto."

"3e doth aftyr me," quod merlyn thanne,

"and j schal counseillen 3ow as j kanne.

Aftyr kyng Artheur that 3e don sende

Jn Ryhtful trews, as 3e ben hende,

and aftyr vlphyn, that worthy man
that cownseyllour was to Pendragon ;

and aftyr antron that 3e senden also,

that kyng Arthewr hath norsched hedirto ;

and thanne scholen 3e knowen al this thing,

holiche the begynneng and endyng.

And weteth wel, Lordynges, *with-owten* leyne,
that j make non lesyng to 3ow, jn certeyne."

Thanne quod [the] Barowns be on assent :

"we wylen fulfylle thin comaundement,

we wilen hym behoten, ful vtterlye,

Sauf to comen & to gon, certeinlye."

"Clepe forth Breteaus," quod merlyn tho,

"For this arende he Schal wel mown do."

thanne clepyd they forth Breteaus anon,

and to hym the Barowns seiden thusson

that thys arende he scholde do,

this jlke peple to bringen hem vnto.

thanne seide merlyn to Breteaus there :

"Ek therchebisschope of dover jn alle manere,

that he com forth in here compenye,

and Ek the bisschope of londone, ful pleylnlye."

"Sire," quod Breteaus, "this schal be do."

he took his leve and forth gan go,

and jnto that place he wente anon

7872

Merlin in-
forms the
barons that
none of them
comes up to
Arthur's
father,
who is not
Antron.

7876

7880

Merlin fur-
ther advises
the barons
to send for
Arthur,

7884

for Ulfen,

7888

and for
Antron,

in order to
have matters
cleared up.

7892

The barons
assent.

7896

Breteaus
(Bretel,
l. 4879) is
despatched,

7900

7904

with orders
to bring
also the
archbishop
who crowned
Arthur, and
the bi hop of
London.

7877. 3e added afterwards above the line.

7891. MS. *quod Barowns*.

Breteaus summons Arthur	where as kyng arthur he fond thusson. "Syre kyng, the Baronage aftyr 3ow doth sende, and therchebisschope of dover with 3ou schal wende, the bisschope of londone, and Antron also."	7908
and Ulfyn.	and from thens Breteaus to vlphin gan go, and seide that he moste come to the Baronye, also faste as he myhte thanne hye.	7912
The latter is delighted,	whanne vlphin of merlyn herde Speken aryht, thazne jn his herte he was ful lyht, and ful gret joye he hadde thazne, Sykir[1]e,	7916
knowing that the truth will be discovered.	for he wyste wel the trowthe discovered schold be, al the Rote and al the Endyng Of the Birthe of Arthur the kyng.	7920
[leaf 118 b]	Thus Wenten they Forth Alle Jn Fere To the barowns in the paleis there they were; and gret joye vlphyn of merlyn made, and ech of hem mad othyr glade.	7924
Ulfyn and Merlin meet with joy.	Thanne Arthewr and the Bysschoppes also to-ward the paleys gonnen they go, and with hem Antron jn compenye, also faste as they myhten hye.	7928
Arthur with a coat of mail under his clothes.	vndirstondith that Arthewr armed was ful wel vndir his robe with an haberiown of stel. whanne to-fore the Baronage that he cam, on eche partye stood there many a man merlyne to 3even there good awdyence, whyles that he stood jn the kynges presence. and whanne the kyng they Syen comen, trewelye, alle the Baronage azens hym gonne hye ; atte reverence that Sacred he was kyng, azens him they wenten jn metyng, and jn reuerence of therchebisschope also Ek azens hem gonne they go.	7932
The barons go to meet them.	Thanne Seten they down everichon, Sauf only therchebisschope stod alon.	7936
All take their seats, save the archbishop.		7940

"Now, Lordynges, lesteneth what j schal say,
and beth wel avysed alle, J 3ow pray ;

7944

and Ek for Goddis love and for charyte,
what j schal Seye, taketh kepe to me.

J 3ow preye for charyte,
of schedyng of blood 3e hauen pyte,
whiche is cristene blood, as 3e wel knowe,
as wel of the hye as of the lowe.

and thinketh but on man that 3e be,
and assone here deyen Schole 3e,
& assone deyeth the Riche as the pore,
and of þe owr of here deth knoweth no more.”
thane quod the Barowns to hym anon that tyde :

“Sire, we 3ow preye a whyle to abyde,

Tyl we han spoke here with merlyn
of certein thinges of his devyn,

and whanne declared to vs hath he
a thing that to vs Js vncerteynte,

For sethen we comen jnto this lond,
of Sweche thingges cowde we neuere vndirstond.”

the Bisschope Seide: “Seres, with good wylle,
what that evere merlyne seith 3ow vntylle.”

thane sat þere therchebisschope a-down,

and merlyne gan speke to hem jn vyrown :

“Now, Lordynges that ben here present,
what j schal Seyen, take 3e good entent.

J schal 3ow declaren here ful openly

hos sone Arthewr was trewely.

weteth wel alle, Sires, now jn certeyn

that vterpendragones sone he is, pleyn,

and on ygwerne he begat hym that nyht

whiles the dewk, hire Lord, was slayn in fyht.

And on the morwen, whanne he cam owt

From that Lady, with-owten dowl,

a bone j hym axede there anon ryht

of that he hadde begeten on hire that nyht,

For alle the Benfetes and my Servyse

that evere j hym dyde jn ony wyse.

and he me graunted there anon

That al myn axynge scholde be don,

7948 “Have pity
on Christian
blood,”
says the
archbishop.

7952 “Each of you
is but
one man,
and the rich
man dies as
quickly as
the poor.”
The barons
request the
archbishop
first to let
Merlin give
his informa-
tion.

7956

7960

7964 The arch-
bishop agrees.

Merlin ad-
dresses the
assembly.

7968

He tells them
of Uter
Pendragon's
fathership,

7972

7976 the king's
promise to
Merlin

7980 with regard
to the begot-
ten child,

the sealed
confirmation
of the
promise,

wher-offen lettres vndir his Sel
j haue to Schewen, bothe goode & lel, 7984
whiche 3it kepith vlphyn, that is here,
and hym-self there was, wytnesse to bere."

the king's
words to
[leaf 118 c]
his spouse
about her
pregnancy,

" Whanne that Pendragon hadde weddyd ygwerne,
To barnesche with chylde sche wax full 3erne. 7988
And so aftyr, hyt happede as j 3ow Seye :

the queen's
shame

As jn bedde they lyen bothe tweye,
The King Hyre often gan to Repreve,
and seyde : ' now, lady, be 3owre leve, 7992
This chylde js neyther the dewkes ne myn,
how konne 3e this preuen be ony devyn ? '

and grief,

Anon thys lady abassched hyre Sore,
and Euere the lengere more and more. 7996

whanne the kyng Sawh hire scomfyture
and hire schamfulnesse, J 3ow enswre,
hym forthowht sore hyre hevynesse,
that he hadde hire put jn swich distresse. 8000

And for so moche morneng by hyre he Say :
' dame, of on thing j schal 3ow Say :
Sethen hit nys not myn jn maryage,
kyng may he not ben after myn age. 8004

their agree-
ment con-
cerning the
expected
child,

Therefore anon as that born hyt Js,
J 3ow cownseylle with-owten mys,
whom ferst 3e fynde atte the halle dore,
The child to ben deliuered with-owten more.' 8008

its delivery
first to
Merlin,

And the goode lady hym grawntyd anon
that al his desyr scholde be don,
For that sche wolde jn non degre
that hire lord with hire wroth scholde be. 8012
and thus, certein, whanne hyt was bore,
To me it was delyvered at the halle dore."

then to
Antron,

" And whanne delyveryd hit was to me,
To Antron j wente, ful certeyule, 8016
and this chylde there j hym betook,
and that of his wyf hyt scholde Sowk,
For deliuered sche was half 3er tofore

7994. 3e added afterwards above the line.

- of sire kay, hire sone, with-owten more, 8020
 that jnto anothir place was put to norrye,
 and Arthewr here forth sook, ful Sekerlye.
 thus Sire kay Arthewris brothyr Js
 be his modrys pappe, & non othyr, j-wys. 8024
 & this was kyng vter pendragounes preyere,
 and so dyde sche, as j seye 3ow here,
 and therto hit crystenede the same day,
 and arthewr hit nempned, as j 3ow say. 8028
 Therefore j seye 3ow, Lordynges, here,
 God thinketh on his man jn alle manere,
 that hym doth Servyse oper ony honowr,
 he hym forsaketh jn non maner stowr. 8032
 more over, atte Reuerence of so worthy a man
 and of the kynde that he of cam,
 God wyle here 3elden his gwerdon
 bencheson of the seed, be good Reson. 8036
 and weteth wel now, Jn certeyn,
 that god the ston hyder sente, ful pleyn,
 and the swerd there-jnne, as 3e myhten se,
 To proven the sothe, ho that kyng scholde be. 8040
 and al this that j have seyde 3ow here,
 Jt js Ryht trewe, as j 3ow lere.
 Record of vlphyn, let hym now seye
 3if that j varye jn ony manere weye, 8044
 and also of Antron, that here js,
 3if that in ony thing j seye amys."
 thanne axede the Barowns jn þat plase
 3if hyt were trewe that seyde he hase. 8048
 they answeryd anon: "3e, certeinlye;
 merlyne jn these wordis ne doth not lye.
 aud 3if 3e wylen not vs beleven here,
 lo, here the lettre patentis al jn fere 8052
 that kyng Pendragon betook to merlyne
 vndyr his owne Seal wel and fyne."
 these lettres they token anon jn hye
 to therchebisschope to Reden by & bye;
 and he hem radde, as hyt gan falle,
 on be on there toform hem alle.
 And evene as merlyne told hadde before,
- and the bring-
ing up of the
child in An-
tron's house.
- "Therefore,"
Merlin
concludes,
"God re-
members his
servant,
- and has sent
us the stone
with the
sword.
- Now, let Ulfin
and Antron
say whether I
swerve from
truth!"
- Ulfin and
Antron
confirm
his words,
- and the sealed
documents
are examined
by the
archbishop.

(leaf 118 d) Openly to the Baronage He declared Hyt thore. 8060
 The people, greatly moved, side with Arthur,
 and whanne the comune peple herde al this,
 anon for pyte they wepten, j-wys,
 and cursede alle tho that aȝens hym were
 In ony degre here armes to here. 8064

And whanne the Barowns vndirstoden al this,
 that the peple so with hym held, j-wys,
 recognizing God's provision.
 and seyden that hit was be goddis chaunce
 that his man he wolde so here avaunce, 8068

But the barons declare they will have no bastard for their king.
 thanne bethowhte hem the Baronye
 To speken of here kyng more velonye,
 that for me Rehersed schal not ben here.
 but they seyden that a bastard jn non manere 8072
 kyng of that Lond ne scholde neuere be,
 nethyr that Rem Governe jn non degre.

The archbishop expresses his trust in God.
 Therchebysschope answeyrd hem ful sone :
 "sethen that god this Eleccoun hath done, 8076
 he wyl hym leten for non maner of thing,
 but hym Susteyne as a trewe kyng,
 bothe jn his werris and his fyht,
 he wyl hym susteynen as his owne knyht." 8080

Now Arthur's adherents depart to his court,
 Whanne therchebysschope and the clergie
 and the comown peple, Sekerlye,
 herden the vntrowthe of the Baronage,
 how Fers they weren and how owtrage, 8084
 To-gyderys they helden hem everychon,
 and toward Arthewrs court gonne they gon.

and the barons,
 and alle the Baronage departyd away,
 Ful wroth and angry, the Same day, 8088

with threatening words,
 and seyden : "now Every man hym defende
 that with Arthewr halt jnto the ende.
 For oure kyng schal he neuere be,
 we hym defye and his progene, 8092

repair to their lodgings. All arm themselves.
 and al the helpe that he may haue,
 be hym we not sette, so god vs save."
 Thanne to ostage wenten they anon
 and hem dyde armen there everichon. 8096
 And Arthewr jnto þe mayster towr wente

with mochel peple *with* hym, veramente,
 & there hem armeden jn that plase,
 ek al the peple that with hym wase. 8100
 So whanne that alle assembled they were,
 Sevene thowsend harneyssed weren they there ;
 but of knyhtes hadde he but fewe,
 Thre hundred and Fyfty jn that Rewe, 8104
 that Sworen his helpe Forto be,
 Tyl deth hem departed, ful Sykerle.

Arthur has
7000 foot-
soldiers,

and 350 faith-
ful knights.

So whanne the kyng and his meyne
 weren alle j-armed, Ful Sykerle, 8108
 they comen owt Anon of the towr,
 here Bodyes to kepen From dolowr.
 and the Baronage, as j haue told,
 hom to here ostage wenten manyfold, 8112
 and harneyssed here men on hors to Ryde,
 with the kyng to meten jn that Tyde.
 So eche man assemblede to his Banere
 of foure thosend knyhtes that weren there, 8116
 with Seriauntes and arblasterys
 and gret foyssown of Sqwyers that weren ful fers.
 whanne that alle assemblyd they were,
 thanne axede of hem the Baronage there 8120
 3yf that the paleys thei wolden assaylle.
 Somme seiden 3e, with-owten faylle,
 and some seyden, to the Baylle they wolden go
 and that besegen with-owte ony mo— 8124
 “that So we Scholen afferen hem with-june,
 that jn non weye they Scholen owt wyzne.”
 So that Whyles they Weren Jn this Talkynge,
 Towardes hem cam merlyne faste hyenge, 8128
 and seyde : “Lordynges, what wyle 3e do ?
 thinken 3e azens 3owre kyng to go ?
 hyt schal be to 3ow more velenye
 and gret hyndryng and los, ful Sekyrlye, 8132
 and swich veniaunee on 3ow schal falle,
 that Fowlyche scholen 3e ben schamed alle,

The barons

have 4000
knights
with a huge
force on foot.

They deli-
berate on
an attack.

[leaf 119 a]
Merlin visits
them,
and warns
them.

8100. *Ek* added in the left margin.

8121. *thei*, *i* squeezed in afterwards. 8129. MS. *seyden*.

- and of 3owre londis disheryted to be,
 For wrong to hym 3e thinken, sykerle. 8136
 and of the eleccion that god hath sent
 3e don gret wrong, Sires, verament."
- But they scoff
 at his words. "behold," quod [the] Barouns amonges hem there,
 "what this Enchawntour telleth vs here!" 8140
 thussone on hym they gonne to lye,
 eche of hem to othir, ful Sekerlye.
- Then Merlin
 returns to
 Arthur,
 and encour-
 ages him. And whanne merlyne Sawh they taken on so,
 Toward kyng Arthewr faste gan he go, 8144
 and seyde: "sire, haue thou non drede,
 For a3ens thyn enemyes wel schalt pou spede,
 and a3ens hem as mochel helpe schalt pou haue
 as alle they conne cryen other crave." 8148
- In the even-
 ing they
 have a
 consultation. So whanne hit woxen was to Eve,
 kyng Arthewr took merlyn be the sleve.
 Ek therchebisschope, and Antron also,
 Sire kay & sire Vlphyn to-gederis gonne go, 8152
 and Sire Bretel with hem jn compenye,
 these vij in cownseyl to-gederis gonne hye.
 the kyng clepyd merlyne to hym tho,
 So that alle to-gederys gonne they go. 8156
- The king says
 to Merlin: "Dere frend merlyne," thanne quod the kyng,
 "lesteneth now to my talkyng.
 I haue herd told, ful certeinle,
 that with my Fadyr thou were preve. 8160
 So wolde j 3ow preyen, with-owten faylle,
 That 3e wolde ben of myn cownsaylle
 and cownseyllen me of this thing among,
 3if that this meyne wylen me ony wrong. 8164
 wherfore j wolde 3ow hertelyche preye
 my cownseyl to be & the sothe me seye
 lyk as to my Fadyr, kyng vterpendragon,
 3e 3oven hym cownseyl in many areson. 8168
 And wete 3e wel, Sire, jn ful certeyn,
 that j wyl neuere don 3ow ageyn,
 ne thyng that schal 3ow mysplese owher,
- and I will
 follow your
 advice.

8139. MS. quod Barouns.

8142. *hem, e* corrected from *y*.8156. MS. *Sothat*

- as ferforth as lasteth Jn my power. 8172
- and sethen 3e holpen me ju myn 3ong age,
Sosteyne me now a3ens this Baronage
and ek my lond here to Susteyne.
For thorwh goddis helpe and 3ow tweyne, 8176
thorwh 3owre help and-my fadyr Antron,
j hope myn Enemyes to ouercomen Echon.
therefore, God, thorwh thyn grete myht
So Save my peple and me aryht!" 8180
- "Syre," quod merlyn, "drede 3ow non thing
of non of hem, with-owten lesyng.
For assone as 3e deliuered be
of these baronage, that 3e scholen se, 8184
whiche that scholen comen 3ow to assaylle,
Thanne aftyrward werk be my cownsaylle,
and alwey aftyr as j schal 3ow lere,
doth be my cownseylle every-where. 8188
the knyhtes that weren of the round table,
That 3owre fadyr held bothe ferm & stable,
Jn-to Here contre J-passed they be
For the grete vntrowthe and dysloyalte 8192
that they Syen ju this Rem with-june,
Eche knyht to his owne contre gan he wyne.
But there is a Rewm here bysyde
of whiche Leodegan Js kyng this tyde ; 8196
the Rewm of Tarmelyde j-clepyd hit js,
of wheche Rewm the kyng an old man is, j-wys ;
And his wyf ded Js ek therto,
and children hath he lyveng no mo 8200
But a dowhter, that schal ben his Eyr,
to whom al his lond schal repeyr
aftyr his deth, the sothe to Say.
but gret werre he hath 3it be his day 8204
a3ens the kyng Ryown of Jeawnte3
and of wildernesse, that fewe men hawnte3.
And the cause j schal tellen 3ow why :
For so many merveylles pere ben seyn, trewely, 8208

Help me
against the
barons.

I trust in
God, in you,
and in
Antron."

Merlin re-
plies : "Have
no fear.

When you
have repelled
the first
attack of
the barons,

do as I shall
tell you.

The knights
of the Round
Table have
retired to
[leaf 119 b]

their own
country.

That country
is called
Tarmelid.

The king,
Leodegan, is
an old man,
his wife is
dead,
and he has
only one
daughter and
heiress.

His bitter foe
is Rion,
king of a wild
country.

8177. *r'* *help* added afterwards, *r'* on, *help* above the line.

8180. MS. *pe'ple*.

bothe be day and ek be Nyht,
that men mown feren of that Syht."

This Rion

"This kyng Ryowns that j of telle,
a myhty man he js and Felle,
and mochel peple with hym hath he,
that myhty ben & ful of crewelte.

8212

has con-
quered
twenty kings,

and conqweryd he hath be his myht
twenty corowned kynges jn fyht,

8216

whom he has
treated dis-
gracefully,

and alle here Berdes kut of hath he
Jn gret dispyt, as 3e Scholen Se,
and closed they ben, with-owten lette,
and Eche day to-forn hym at his mete
a knyht hem halt, as 3e Scholen here,
as for gret dispyt, with-owten dwere.

8220

and he swears
he will not
cease till he
has con-
quered thirty.

And 3it kyng Ryowns swereth, with-owten faylle,
neuere to leven werre nethir Bataylle,
Tyl that thrytty kynges conqweryd hath he.
and this kyng vppon leodegan werreth, Sykerle.

8224

If your neigh-
bour's land is
destroyed,
yours will
come next;

Now leodegan marcheth vppon the,
and 3yf that his rem dystroyed be,
thy rewm schalt thou lesen, with-owten faylle,
but 3if thou werke be myn cow[n]saylle.

8228

and he would
have lost his
already but
for the
knights of the
Round Table.
Go to him,

and so hadde he his rewm, ful Sykyrle,
xere knyhtes of pe Rownde table hadde j-be.
wherfore, and thou wylt don after me,
with hym a while schalt thou be,

8232

and marry his
daughter.

and his dowhter to wyve, with-owten nay,
and al his rem after hys day.

8236

also therto sche is bothe 3ong and fayr,
and of alle his goodis schal ben his ayr,
therto the wysest j-cownted that may be.

Do not
trouble about
the barons:

and of thin owne rewm nothing drede the,
For the Barowns that azens the werre,

8240

they will have
enough to
defend them-
selves.

So moche scholen they han to done from ferre,
that lytel whille scholen they abyden there,
So mochil here bodyes scholen ben put in fere.

8244

8230. MS. *Cowfaylle*.

8244. The line was omitted and then written up the right margin, preceded by the crossed-out line: *that nethir' to hauē myde on mōn ne sterre*.

but Sore occupyed Scholen they be
 hemself to defende, ful Sykyrle.
 and 3owre strengthes jn warde scholen 3e pytte
 Jn dyvers hondys to kepen hem qwyte, 8248 Put your
strongholds
in order,
 3owre cytes and 3owre castelys bothe
 with arblasteris and seriawnts, forsothe.
 and Ek therchebisschope schal thierto
 acursen hem that 3ow wrong wyl do, 8252 and have your
foes cursed
by the
archbishop
 and hym-Self schal don this Sentense,
 To alle tho that to 3ow don ony offens,
 and to alle the clergie thus schal hyt go
 thorwh the rem to ben declared So. 8256 and the
clergy.
 and 3e scholen sen, in tyme comenge
 what schal behappen of al this thinge.
 thorwh the helpe that j schal 3ow do,
 they scholen ben affrayed, er they go. 8260
 and weteth wel, Sire, jn certeyn,
 That to 3ow evere J schal ben ful beyn.
 and whanne ony xede that 3e haue,
 j schal comen to 3ow, er that 3e me crave. 8264 [leaf 119c]
I will come
whenever you
want me;
 And loke, anon whanne j to 3ow crye,
 that 3e opene 3owre 3ates ful redylle,
 and lete hem Entre there Everychon,
 and thanne that amonges hem 3e ben anon. 8268 then open
your gates
at once;
 thanne So Sore abassched Scholen they be,
 so *pat somme* scholen Sone there fle,
 that discomfyt scholen they ben alle;
 Swych aventure on hem *pere* schal falle." 8272 and your
enemies
will be
discomfited."

Thanne departyd they there fulson,
 and vppon to pe walles pe bisschope went anon.
 and there kyng Arthewr aparayllede his men,
 an merlyne a baner to hym made then,
 wherby he hadde gret Sygnyfyaunce,
 and to his adversaryes ful gret dowtance. 8276 The arch-
bishop goes
upon the
walls.
Merlin makes
the king a
banner
 vppon a lawNSE that Baner was pyht
 with an oryble dragown in here Syht, 8280 with a fire-
vomiting
dragon set
on a lance.

8260. *affrayed*, *d* squeezed in afterwards.

8270. The line was omitted and then written down the right margin.

	that Flawm & Fyr there owt he caste, where-offen the barouns agrysen ful faste ; and therto he hadde a ful long taylle, where-offen they merveyllled, <i>with-owten</i> faylle.	8284
The king ap- points Kay his chief bannerer.	Thanne kyng Arthewr took this Baner, and Syre Kay, his Styward, betook hit ther jn this manere, as j 3ow Say :	
	that whyles he jn this world lyven may, his chef Banorer forto be, Whiles he may lyven jn prosperyte. Thus arayed weren they with-june,	8288
The barons pitch their tents outside.	and they <i>with-owten</i> to Fyhten wolden not blynne, but there they pyhten here pavylouns, with Baners displayed and gonfanouns.	8292
The arch- bishop calls to them.	and whanne therehebysschope beheld al this, anon to hem he clepede, j-wys,	8296
:	and bad hem comen here myhtes to preve, 3yf the towr they myhte wynnen er Eve. they answeyrd a3en, <i>with-owten</i> faylle :	
	"Non men but we hyt scholen assaylle."	8300
He curses all king Arthur's an- tagonists.	Thanne therehebysschope ryht there anon hem cursede alle there Everychon that a3ens kyng Arthewr dyden ony thyng, his rewme to damage other hyndryng.	8304
The barons defy him.	Thussone the Baronage answeyrd ageyn : "of alle thy cursyng we setten not, pleyn, but hym chasen Scholen we ful vtterly, owt of this Lond to dryven hym jn hy.	8308
Merlin sets their tents on fire,	and 3if we mown taken hym be ony weye, he schal not aschepen that he Schal deye." Anon whanne merlyne herde here bobaunce, Fulsone he wrowht hem gret myschaunce :	8312
and brings about confu- sion.	on hem he caste his Enchawntemens, vppon Tentes and pavylouns, <i>with-owten</i> defens, and alle vppon a tyr there hem Sette, That non of hem ne myhten hyt lette.	8316
	So thens they fledden Everychon,	

that now ne wyste of hem whedyr to gon.

Thanne kam merlyne to the kyng anon,

and Seyde: "Syre, now is tyme 3e gon ;

8320

Merlin tells
the king to
sally.

openeth 3owre 3ates and pat Rylt Faste,

and vppon 3owre ENemyes that 3e haste."

Anon the 3ates faste opened they were,

and every man owt prekede there,

8324

So that to here ENemyes faste gonne they ryde

with Baneris displayed fulsore that tyde,

where-offen the Barowns abassched were,

whanne they Syen hem aprochen so nere ;

8328

The barons
are dismayed

For they Wenden, Ful Certeynle,

that swich a peple jn the Towr hadde not be.

kyng Arthewr on hem rod with scheld & spere,

and moche noysawnce dyde hem there,

8332

[leaf 119 d]

by the power-
ful onset,

For astoned they weren of the fer,

that but lytel power ne hadden they ther ;

hem to defende they ne hadde now myht,

So that moche peple they losten jn fyht.

8336

lose much
people,

There 3onge kyng Arthewr kyde his prowessse,

and putte his ENemyes to gret distresse :

hors and men ful faste he Slowh,

and alle the Barowns thens they flowh

Jnto anothyr prevy partye.

8340

and fly to a
remote place.

and there they Seyden tho, plainlye,

a schame hyt were to hem Echon,

and he so lyhtly schold from hem gon.

8344

thanne spak kyng Newtris of Garlot there :

"alle this werre ful Fenysched were,

3if that Arthewr here now were ded ;

j to 3ow kan seyn non better red."

8348

There king
Newtris says
that Arthur
must be
killed.

"goth forth," thanne quod the remnaunt tho,

"that this thing were thanne J-do.

and 3if that ony mestere that 3e haue,

we scholden 3ow helpe that 3e ben Save."

8352

Thanne wente kyng Newtris forth, ful pleyn,

as a 3ong knyht and joly, jn certeyn,

and with hym a thryfty compenye

and returns
to the attack,

of Bachelers holde and chevalrye. 8356
 and ryht a gret spere kyng Newtres bar,
 and with kyng Arthewr he mette ryht thar.

King Arthur,
 with a mighty
 lance, rides
 to meet him.

whanne that kyng Artheur hym say comenge,
 azens hym fulfaste he gan to flynge 8360
 with a gret lawnce, the hed of stel,
 wherwith he besteryd him ryht wel.

For they that him Syen come prekyngge,
 they merveylled that evere a man so 3yngge 8364

.

and so sore to-gederis come they ryde,
 that here hors Fowndrede jn that tyde.

Newtris
 breaks his
 spear,

kyng Newtris Arthewr so sore mette,
 that his spere to-brak, so sore he smette ; 8368

and Arthur
 smites him
 off his horse.

and kyng Arthewr him smot ageyn,
 thorwh Scheld & arm hit wente, ful pleyn,
 ek thorwh the Scholdere there he hym bar,
 and down of his hors threw hym ryht thar, 8372
 his hed to the grownde, his helys on hye,
 that al the Erthe denede, ful Sekyrlye.

King Loth
 hurries to
 his cousin's
 assistance.

büt whanne kyng loth of orkanye this beheld,
 that his cosyn germayn lay jn the feeld, 8376
 his hors with his Spores he took anon,
 and toward kyng Arthewr rood ful Son
 his half-brothyr to avengen there
 (For two sostren hadden they wedded, as j 3ow lere). 8380

Arthur meets
 him,

and whanne kyng loth he say comen so,
 kyng Arthewr azens hym gan to go,
 as ther of hym nothing he ne rowhte,
 but fulfaste on hym kyng Arthewr sowhte, 8384
 Tyl that to-gederis ful sone they mette,
 and ful grete strokes to-gederis they sette.

They break
 their spears,

and so sore they cowntred there,
 that bothe here speris to-borsten were, 8388

alight,

that here hors non ferthere myhte pase.

and take to
 their swords.

thanne sone here swerdis gonnen they vnbrase,

and so sore strokis to-gederis they smette,
that kyng loth was feld, with-owten lette.

8392 King Loth
falls.
[leaf 120 a]
There is a
general rush
to assist the
kings,

Thanne Began thore A passyng Scry
on bothen partyes, ful Sekerly.
and a ful gret stowr began there thanne,
the kynges to Socowren, of Eche manne ;

8396

bothe of knyht and ek of kyng
there was wondyr gret distorbelyng.
and kyng Arthewris meyne cam also
hym forto Socowren what they myhten do.
thanne be-gan there a ful gret stowr
on bothe partyes with grete langowr.
But certein, al this jlke stownde
bothe kynges lyen atte grownde.

8400

and a great
tumult.

8404

Whanne kyng Arthewr thus anoyed was,
his swerd he drowh owt jn that plas,
that jn the drawyng hit ȝaf a clerte,
that alle the peple there myhte hyt se ;
as thowh xx torches hadden ben lyht,
So that there hit semede to alle here Syht ;
therto the same swerd, hos wyle hyt look,
That kyng Arthewr owt of the ston ferst he took.
and abowten the Swerd wreten was ful wel
Escalabort, pe wheche was graven in steel.
a name of ebrew hit was, j-wys,
that jn frensch Trawnchefyst j-clepyd Js,
that is Englesch Forto telle
as Trenchauht, and scharpe, & cuttyng ful snelle.
and that, forsothe, ful trewe hyt Js,
as that here-aftyr ȝe scholen heren, j-wys.

8408 Light flashes
from Arthur's
sword,

8412 the same
sword that
he took out
the stone,
and whose
name
'Escalabort'
is engraven
in the steel.

8416

8420

whanne that kyng Arthewr reconered was,
and his swerd drawn jn that plas,
jnto the grettest pres he gan to go,
There as most pres thanne say he tho,
and thussone there wyth a knyht he mette,
and swich a boffet there thanne hym sette,
the arson of his hors he smot atwo,

Arthur, in
the thickest
press,

8424

kills man and
horse,

	and the knyht to dethe he wounddyd tho,	8428
	that bothe hors and man they fylfen to grownde ;	
and causes terror all round.	and ful gret slawhtre he mad that stownde, So that his strok dorste non man abyde, So Ferd of hym they weren that tyde.	8432
The seven kings, greatly distressed,	Whanne the Sevene kynges Syen this damage, that Arthewr wrowht hem so moche owtrage, thanne ful Sorewful jn herte they were, and alle to cownseyl they drowen hem there.	8436
agree on a joint attack.	"Let vs assemblen on hym Everychon and down to the erthe bringen hym anon." So that with here sperys, that weren so stronge, Towardys hym faste gonne they fonge,	8440
	also faste as they myhte ryde, hym down to beren jn that Tyde.	
They assail him all at once ;	and alle they grated on hym at onys, him to han Slayn for the nonys ;	8444
his armour proves firm ;	but kyng Arthewr was armed so wel, bothe jn erne and ek jn steel ;	
but he falls to the ground. Arthur's men rush to his relief.	but down they boren hym to the grownde. that say vlphyn, Antron, & kay, & Breteaus pat stownde, and so dyde more alle here lynage, To Arthewr thei wente with gret corage. and whanne the vij kynges they Syen this, azens this meyne they wenten j-wys.	8447
Kay strikes king Augwis,	and pere Syre kay with kyng augwys mette, and thorwh the lefte Scholdere ful sore him smette, more over down to the erthe him Bar, thanne as for ded he lefte hym thar.	8452
Antron, king Carados ;	and antron Karados so smot thanne, that he to-brosed hym bothe body & panne, and jn ded swowne lefte hym pat tyde, So that he ne myhte nethyr gon ne ryde.	8456
[leaf 120 b] Ulfin en- counters king Newtris,	And Vlphyn Kyng Newtres mette Anon, that hors and man to-gederys gonne gon.	8460
Breteaus, king Ydiers.	and Syre Breteaus & kyng Ydieres theyre swerdis they broken, they weren so fers,	8464

8450. *thei*, *i* squeezed in afterwards.

8459. *lefte* twice, the latter crossed out.

eche on othyr in that place, So strong betwixen hem the skymesch wase. and al this whyle the Barownes in fere at the erthe with Artheur, as he lay there,	8468	All the time King Arthur is sorely vexed.
and so on the helm there hym they bete, hym there to maken his lyf to lete, that so sore astoned kyng Arthewr was, he wende haue deyð jn that plas.	8472	But now Sir Kay
and whanne Syre Kay al this beheld, his Swerd he drowgh owt jn that feld, and thedyr as that kyng Arthewr lay, as faste he hyeth as he kan oper may.	8476	strikes also king Loth,
and with kyng Loth there he mette, and swich a strok he on hym Sette, that bothe hors and man there wente to grownde, So sore he hym smot that ylke stownde.	8480	and after great slaughter
thanne be-gau there a fulstrong melle bothen partyes to Socowren, ful sykirle, and gret mauslawhtre, with-owten pyte, of men & hors there myhten they se.	8484	
but so faste thei besyed hem, pat meyne there, Tyl that kyng Arthewr azen j-horsed were. but gret payne the[y] hadden therto and gret los of peple also.	8488	King Arthur is remounted.
whanne that pe communes Syen Arthewr so fyhte, Fulfaste they cryden anon pere ryhte, So that the cry there ros al abowte, and to Arthewr they comen, with-owten dowte,	8492	The common people, seeing the king's prowes, shout applause,
and seyden to Arthewr there as blyve : “ we scholen the helpen, whyles we han lyve ; For lyven and deyen we scholen with the here and thin ryht to Sosteyne al jn fere.”	8496	vow fidelity,
thanne this comune peple anon vppon the vj kynges gonne to gon, and pere was bataille wondyr strong, but non rawnsom wolden they fong,	8500	and join in the battle.

8467. *in fere* added afterwards.8485. *thei, i* squeezed in afterwards.8487. MS. *the*.8493. MS. *afblyve*.

but lyf for lyf and hed for hed,
thus pleyden bothe partyes jn that sted.

King Arthur	Thanne kyng Arthewr so ful of Yre owt sprang on horsbak as spark of fyre	8504
encounters king Ydiers,	To-forn alle his othyr meyne, and with kyng Ydyers sone mette he. and vp his swerd he lefte on hy him to han smeten ful grevously.	8508
who loses his horse,	but of his purpos he fayllede tho, and kyng Ydiers hors nekke he smot atwo, that down they fylle bothe to grownde, bothe hors and man in that stownde.	8512
but is relieved by his men.	thanne retorned kyng Ydiers meyne hym forto Socowre, as hit myhte be.	
After great fighting,	thanne strengere fyht was jn that plas, thanne of alle daye to-forn there was, and more harm & more occisioun there was don that tyme jn vyrown.	8516
in which Arthur has his sword bathed in blood,	for kyng Arthewr dyde moche harm jn that pres bothe of hors and men, and wolde not Ses, with Trenchefust, his Swerd so good, that bathed was al in mennes blood ; al his harneys and his armure with mennes brayn was soyled, j the ensure.	8520 8524
king Ydiers and the others fly,	So that Ydiers and his meyne as discomfyt fledden, Sykirle.	
[leaf 120 c] pursued by Arthur,	So that ful Longe Lasted this chas after these vj kynges jn that plas. and of al the good that they thedyr browhte, the valew of twey pens away boreu they nowhte, that alto-gederis j-lost was there,	8528
and having lost all their property.	what thorwh bataylle and thorwh Fyre, which that merlyne vppon hem wrowhte ; Sauf Gold oper Sylver Saved was pere nowhte.	8532

Chap. VIII.

Whanne kyng Arthewr hem hadde conqweryd,
these Syxe kynges, as 3e haven herd,

8536

Be the cownseyl of merlyne, To cardeweyl jn wales he turned ageyn, and Sente faste abowtes jn that contre aftyr Sowdyowrs ful gret plente.	8540	Arthur goes to Wales, collects soldiers, distributes liberal gitt-,
Bothe Robes and fees he 3af hem there, To alle the Sowdeowrs that <i>with</i> him were, bothe to powre, sqwyers, and to knyht, So that they Sworen be god almyht, with hym they wolden both lyven and deye ; thus they hym ENSWRED be here feye.	8544	wins the love of the people,
whanne Kyng Arthewr hadde thus j-sped, & the hertes of þe peple geten jn that sted, and gret love abowtes jn that contre of alle the peple jn here degre, and aftyr he stuffede his cytes echon, his castelis, his garesours be on & be on.	8548	
and sethen to logres he wente, j vndirstond, that now is Clepyd Londone jn Engeland. and there his parlement began he thanne ; To hym there Semblyd many a manne. This cowrt there began, <i>with-owten</i> delay, In Septembre vppon owre ladyes day. atte that cowrt, with-owten dowte,	8556	and equips cities and castles. He then holds his parliament in London,
Many knyhtes he made, both stronge & stowte. and to hem he 3af bothen grete rentes & fe, and to hym dyden they homage & fewte. To Every man he 3af swich gwerdon there, So that here degre wel Sosteyned were.	8560	and makes many new knights,
and thus he gat hym love plente of knyht, Sqwyer, and <i>communealte</i> , So that they hym ENSWREDE here trowthe & feye, with hym to lyven and Ek to deye.	8564	who likewise vow fidelity.
and sethen they dyden him <i>Socour</i> , Sekyrlye, as aftyr 3e scholen heren jn this storye.	8568	
Aftyr that kyng Arthewr thus hadde j-do, and j-mad thre hundred knyhtes & mo, and al his strengthes j-stuffed ful wel,	8572	All this being done,

- bothen cytees, townes, and castel
 (aftyр merlynes counseil þis wrowhte he,
 and ek moche more, ful certeinle), 8576
 and whanne he hadde al this j-do,
 kyng Artheur on syde merlyne took tho,
 and so to counseylle to-gederis they wente,
 and Vlphin with hem they token presente. 8580
 “Syre kyng, a thing j moste 3ow telle
 (that 3e and Vlphyn herkenen my spelle !):
 There js a good man jn on forest,
 that jn wildyrnesse lyveth as a best, 8584
 whiche that Js jn northhumberlond,
 and an holy man he is, 3e vndirstond ;
 and to me he is bothe leef and dere,
 For my modyr he savede and me jn fere.” 8588
 thanne began he to tellen, verament,
 how that his modyr scholde han be brent
 [leaf 120 d] For A Blame and For A cryme
 that on hire was put be old tyme, 8592
 and how Fortager hym dyde seken also,
 Ek how his modyr veylled a nome was tho,
 and how the towр lasteth Jnto this day,
 and stonden hit schal for Evere and ay, 8596
 ek of the dragowns the Signifyance,
 al this hem tolde, *with-owten varyaunce*.
 Thanne tolde he, aftyр the deth of Fortager
 how *with* Vterpendragon he qweynted ther ; 8600
 and of the grete bataylle he tolde also
 That yppon Pendragon was j-do ;
 and how be the dewehesse he made hym lye
 jn the castel of Tyndagel, Sekyrlye— 8604
 “Jn wheche place Engendrid 3e were” ;
 and how Vlphin purposyd the maryage there—
 “be-twene 3owre Fadyр and 3oure modyr, the queene” ;
 alle these he tolde hem be-dene ; 8608
 and how fyve dowhtren hadde sche bore
 (what maryed & ded they weren to-fore),
 8595. *lasteth* inserted above the line, erroneously after (instead
 of before) *Jnto*.

Merlin with-
draws to have
a consulta-
tion with
Arthur and
Ulfen.

He tells of
Holy Blas,

who saved
Merlin's
mother
(Ch. I),

[leaf 120 d]

of king
Fortager

and his tower
(Ch. II),

of Merlin's
acquaintance
with Uter-
pendragon
(Ch. III),

of the en-
gendering
of Arthur
(Ch. IV),

and the
marriage of
his parents
(Ch. V).

Further
he tells
of Arthur's
sisters and
half-sisters,

- and tweyne be the dewk hadde sche ;
 of wheche on weddyd king loth, Sykerle ; 8612 of whom one
 kyng newtres anothyr hadde to wyve, is married to
 lyk as aftyr 3e scholen heren as blyve ; king Loth,
 and the thrydde wedded kyng Vryens ; one to king
 and the fowrthe weddid kyng Bryadens— 8616 Newtris,
 “the wheche that ded now Js he, and one to
 Fadyr he was to kyng Gwyseans, Serteinle, king Uriens ;
 that js now kyng of Scotland, the fourth
 as j do 3ow to vndyrstond ; 8620 is a widow,
 and the fyfthe, at londone hyt is, and the fifth
 and there to Scole it is set, jwys, is at school
 and moche clergie forsoth hit can, in London.
 as of pe age doth ony man.” 8624
- “and wete thou wel, kyng Loth hath here
 Fyve Sones be his wyf so dere,
 of whiche on js thyn ful blod, Sykerle,
 that thou Engendredyst jn londone cyte ; 8628
 and Semly 3onge men they ben Echon,
 of wheche that Gaweyn hyhte pe ton.
 and he schal be the trewest knyht,
 and his Lord loven with strengthe & myht, 8632
 Therto pe worthyest that owher may be,
 and therto gentelest, Sire, certeinle.
 and 3ow schal he loven over al thing,
 and don 3ow worschepe as to his kyng. 8636
 For wete wel pat he schal be pe same man,
 be whom thy lond geten thou kan.
 and thy meyne to hym mek Scholen be
 and him don worschepe Jn alle degre. 8640
 king newtris, anoper brothyр hath he,
 that galatyns hyhte, ful Sykerle.
 kyng vriens anothir hath also,
 that yweyn is clepyd, with-owten mo, 8644
 that the schal Susteyne with body & herte,
 per nis non prowesse schal hym asterte.

8611. A second *and* crossed out before *be*.

8614. The line was omitted and then written down the right margin.

8627. *blod* added above the line.

They shall
both be dub-
bed by thee,
and bring
lots of people
with them.

and wete *pou* wel, *pat* dubbed scholen they not be,
Tyl *pou* hem armes *zyve*, ful Sykyrle. 8648

and they scholen bringen the gret compeny,

For love of here kyn, certainlye,

Of Barowns sones & *oper* mo ;

moche peple *with* hem cometh the vnto 8652

[leaf 121 a]

The Forto Don Alle maner of Seryyse,
whyles that they lyven as *jn* here wyse."

Further, in
Little Britain
there live
two kings,

"also, Sire, *jn* lytel Bretayngne,
dwellen tweyn kynges, *jn* certeyne, 8656

the wheche they holden both of the,

and cosynes germayn bothe they be.

and tweyne sostres *j-weddyd* they han *perto*,

that cosynes germayns there ben also. 8660

with children
that shall be
brave men;

These tweyne kynges, chyldren they han,
that stalworthe scholen ben and myhty men.

and so worthy knyhtes they scholen be,

theyre pere schal ben *jn* non contre. 8664

these kings
are called
Ban and
Boors.

The Eldest of the tweyne kynges of fame,
kyng Ban of Baynoc *js* his Name.

the tother kyng, of gawnes Sire Boors hyhte,

a worthy werrouer and mochel of myhte. 8668

They are
vexed by a
neighbour
(king Clau-
das, p. 234).

but a felonus Neyghebour hath that kyng,
that hym doth gret Travaylle & hyndryng,

and alle he hit doth for envye,

For he ne may hem not justefye. 8672

and for they ben so trewe and so stedfast,

Send word for
them

after hem *j* wolde thou wost senden *jn* hast,

and sende hem to seyne, *ouer* alle thyng

that thou wost ben of here aqweynting, 8676

and with the to ben at al halwen feste.

thanne to the moste comen bothe lest and meste,

to come to
thy parlia-
ment;

To thy parlement, and the obeye.

Somme comen for good, as *j* the seye, 8680

and somme for Ewel *jn* othyr degre,

they will
come with
gentle hearts.

but these tweyne kynges, as *j* telle the,

they comen with hertys deboneyrre,

here to thy cowrt Forto Repeyrre. 8684

- For they ben ful good men and trewe,
 bettyr of condissiouns fyndest þou but fewe.
 and þerfore aȝens hem j wyle thou go,
 and thy Servyse to hem offren also. 8688 Receive them
with honour,
- and mochel thank they scholen konnen the,
 and to þe don homage and fewte.
 thanne whanne al this js j-do,
 and thy covrt they welen gon fro, 8692 make them
your coun-
sellors,
- anon thow hem clepe to thy cownsaylle ;
 and sey to hem, with-owten Faylle,
 that jnto Tarmelyde thou wylt go,
 There to ben avenged of thy fo, 8696 and ask
them to go
with thee to
Tarmelid.
- Preyeng hem to gon with the
 (For ryht goode men Syker they be),
 there to abyden with kyng Leodogan,
 and so preye þou as wel as þou kan ; 8700 They will
want thy
help,
- For thin enemyes aȝens the the lond wilen defende,
 but they scholen not Therto longe attende, 8704 and thou
shalt have
theirs.
- Nethyr Sosteynen non whyle aȝens the,
 thorwgh helpe of these tweyne kynges, sykerle,
 that jn thy compenye scholen abyde.”
- “3yt to 3ow more J seye this tyde : 8708
- a costom J have, j Sey 3ow pleyndye,
 that to the forest j moste me hye
 be Enchesoun of my nature,
 thyder j moste, j 3ow enswre, 8712 I must go
to the forest
partly on
account of
my nature,
- bencheson of hym that me dyde gete ;
 this thing at this tyme wyl j not lete.
 and for anothyr cawse also
 to the wylde forest wyl j go : 8716 partly to
speak with
Blasy.
- with holy Blase to speken there,
 For An Holyere man Knowe J Nowhere.
 and thou schalt neuere have xede of me,
 but Sone that J schal ben with the, 8720 [leaf 121b]
Whenever
you want me,
I shall come.

8702. *hath*, the second *h* squeezed in afterwards.8703. MS. *the þe the*, with *þe* crossed out.8706. *helpe* added in the left margin.8711. MS. *Enchenou*.

- the to cownseyllen what that j may.
 But I shall often appear in another shape
 but of on thing j schal 3ow say :
 often-tymes schalt thou me se
 in other semblaunce, ful sykerle, 8724
 thanne þou silt me to-forþ þe now here,
 often-tymes toforþ þe schal j apere ;
 in order to be known only by a few.
 For j kepte not alle men knewe
 whanne j *with* the spak, but 3if it were fewe. 8728
 more over j wyll that thou swere to me,
 that be the neuere discoured j be
 Never disclose what I say to thee."
 of non thing that j haue told the,
 but that thou kepe hit *euere* preve. 8732
 and 3if thou do, j schal the Seye :
 hyt schal the Torne to angyr and treye."
 The king promises secrecy
 and the kyng hym swoor there anon ryht,
 he schold neuere discoure hym to non wyht, 8736
 and implicit compliance.
 ne neuere schold don thing agens his wyll ;
 thus the kyng Seyde hym vntylle.
 and merlyne Ensured hym ageyn
 that he wolde deserven hyt, certeyn. 8740
- In the city, where the consultation took place, the people rejoice,
 Thus the covenant was fenyssched there,
 be-twene the kyng and merlyn in fere.
 gret joye maden they in that cyte
 of here kyng so 3ong in his degre, 8744
 that so worthy a man of armes he was,
 and therto so hardy in eche a plas.
 so that for joye of that solemnite
 the worthy Burgeys of that cyte 8748
 a qwyntyn they reryd there besyde
 in a fayr medewe that ilk tyde,
 the 3onge knyghtes to bowrdeyen there
 with scheldes hangeng abowten here swere. 8752
 this revel lasted Fully viij dayes
 with grete feste, as this storye sayes.
 After the festival, Arthur returns to London,
 and whanne the feste was al j-do,
 To londone ward the kyng gan go, 8756
 there to abyden his parlement,

at halwenmasse to ben holden present.
thane weren they sent fore Everychon
that homage and fewte scholden don.

8760

and issues a
summons to
another
parliament.

So þat som partye comen at his sonde,
and som partye hit dyde with-stonde.
thane sente the kyng to hem ageyn
that they scholden hit amenden, certeyn,
oper ellis he wolde hym-self ful blyve,
þif god þerto hym Sente his lyve.

8764

Some refuse
to come;
they are
warned by
the king.

Thus sente kyng [Arthewr] Forth Ryht anon,
and bad Sire vlphyn & sire bretel gon
To kyng Ban of Baynok ful blyve
and sethen to kyng Boors, his brother be wyve :
and Ewere they wylen his love crave
owther his Frenschepe Forto have,
That to hym they comen jnto grete breteygne,
at al halewen masse feste, *with-owten* leyne.
Thanne wenten forth these tweyne knyhtes
these two kynges to seken owt-ryhtes.
these kynges Emporyssched weren jn vyrown
Jn tyme of Vter Pendragown.

8768

Arthur sends
Ulfin and
Bretel to call

king Ban

and king
Boors

8772

to the same
parliament.

thus passeden the knyhtes ouer the se,
Tyl jnto lytel breteygne they comen, certeinle ;
and thorwh a place of desert they wente,
That distroyed and brend was, veramente.
Thanne comen they to Anothir cyte,
that boorges in berry is clepyd, Sekyrle,
whiche that kyng clawdas of desert
hyt kalanged openly and apert.

8776

8780

The two
knights cross
over to Little
Britain.

this kyng clawdas of which j 3ow telle,
anothyr castel kalanged ful snelle,
whiche that kyng ban hadde there sette
with-jnnen his lond, with-owten lette.
kyng clawdas gan Ewere hym withseye,
and seyde the Lond was his, jn feye,
where-vppon the castel stood ;
he wolde hyt haven for Ewel oper good.

8784

On their way
[leaf 121 c]
to Bourges in
Berry, a city
claimed by
king Claudas,
they find
the country
laid waste.

8788

This is
what had
happened :

king Ban
had built a
castle ;

8792

his neigh-
bour, king
Claudas,
disputed
his right

8767. MS. *fente kyng fforth* ; either the name (cf. footnotes to ll. 11043, 14226) or the definite article is missing.

	and kyng Ban than answeyrd ageyn, and seyde hit was neuere his, jn certeyn.	8796
a war began ;	So that thorw this, grete werre began ; but kyng Ban wolde leven hit for non man, that the castel he dede vpe make, owther for drede owther for wrake.	8800
	thus began gret hate, werre, & envye, betwixen the two kynges, Sekyrlye. This werre al here lyve dyde laste.	
Claudas invaded the country,	So that this claudas jnto Ban his rem paste, and hym defyede jn many a d[e]gre, and jn that Lond dyde grete adversyte Jn Townes that unvalled were ;	8804
burnt and pillaged,	Sone on fyre he sette hem there, of wheche he took many grete pelages ; the peple he Slowh and dyde Owtrages, For he was with-owten pyte.	8808
but could not take the castle	but as towching to the castel, Sykyrle, that kyng ban hadde areyrd there, he ne hadde non myht to don hyt non dere. This castel kyng ban hadde Stuffed wel With Seriautes and arblasteris Everydel.	8812
from its defender, an old captain ;	and pere-jinne hadde he put an old capteyn, hos Name was gracyn, with-owten leyn. and on of Bannes sones with gracyn was, that Baynyn was clepyd jn that plas.	8816
	this Baynyn was sethen of gret worthynesse, a worthy knyht, and of gret prowesse ; more thanne at this tyme þe Storey doth [not] spelle.	
king Ban	but now of kyng ban j schal 3ow telle, that ful wroth & ful angry was For the harm he hadde jn many a plas. and whanne he knew the certeynte,	8824
collected an army,	To-gyderis he gaderyd his meyne agens kyng claudas forto fyhte, for alle passages he knew ful ryhte.	8828

8805. MS. *dgre*, *g* being tampered with, as if a correction had been intended.

8823. MS. *doth fpelle* ; *p* squeezed in.

8829. *claudas*, *la* blurred.

- Whanne these tweyne osten scholden mete,
 To-gederis to Fyhten they wolden not lete. 8832 gave battle,
 So that there was ful gret mortalyte
 on bothe partyes thanne, certeynle.
 and so moche peple Slowh this kyng ban,
 and dissemmed the membres of many a man, 8836
 that a man myhte han seyn jn the feld
 hepes as of Swyn *oper* of schepe lyn ded.
 So that Fawht kyng Ban & his meyne,
 That kyng clawdas fledde & his compeyne, 8840
 and loste al his harneys and his Pelage,
 that he to-fortymes took be owtrage,
 and the presoners rescued weren Everychon.
 on anothir partye Entryd kyng boors anon,
 that half-Brothyr was to kyng Ban,
 jnto kyng clawdas Lond entrede he than,
 and pere brende and dyde distrocciown
 Abowten Al His Lond Jn Vyrown 8844
 Jnto the cyte of desert ;
 thedyr he brend ful sone and apert,
 and that lond distroyede al abowte,
 that nowher for hym *non* man myhte rowte. 8848
 So gret distrocciown there he dede,
 that jn twenty myle of lengthe & brede
 No man jn that Lond loggen myhte,
 To ligen drye he day ne be nyhte, 8852
 but 3if vndir roche *oper* vndir Erthe hit were,
 cowde no man drye loggen hym there.
 So was kyng clawdas Emporysched there tho,
 that he ne wyste what he myhte do. 8856
 So on the kynges dorste he *non* more werre make,
 lest hit scholde hym torne to Sorwen and wrake,
 thus fownden they this lond distroyed & brent,
 they that on kyng Arthewris message went, 8860
 and mervellyed mochel of this thing
 as jn the contre they paste rydyng.
 So ryden they forth, with-owten les,
 Tyl they comen to þe castel of Trebes, 8864
 8868 They ride on to Trebes.

That kyng Ban *there* dyde arere,
 From his enemyes to defenden him every-where.

They there find Ban's fair young queen, Eleine,	In this castel qwene Eleyne was, kyng bannes wyf jn that plas, and therto the Fairest Lady was sche that owher was jn ony contre, and but of 3ong age, the sothe to say, but xvj 3er 3it be that day,	8872
whose sister is married to king Boors,	and but lytel whyle wedded was sche kyng Boors hire soster wedded, sykerle, a worthy lady jn alle wyse, as ony man on Erthe cowde devyse,	8876
ask for the king, learn that he is with his brother,	whanne Vlphyn and Bretel comen to trebes, after kyng Ban they axeden, with-owten les. they seyden, he was gon to parlement to his brothyr, kyng Boors, verament.	8880
and depart again.	and whanne they wysten he was not there, of qwene Eleyne they token here leve in fere. So armed Ryden they forth anon,	8884
They now have to pass through a country in- fested by robbers,	For the contre that they scholde by gon was perylows forto passen by, as j 3ow Seye, sires, certeynly, For mysdoeris jn that contre.	8888
whom the two kings certainly try to put down.	and many mo Scholden there be, nere drede of þe two kynges so ryhte that on hem don reddure anon with myhte. For 3if ony man that they cowden aspye, And he were taken with felonye, anon to jewyse he Scholde be do and ben destroyed for evere mo.	8892
		8896

Before long, they meet seven of king Claudas' knights.	Whanne these knyhtes from Trebes weren gon, Vlphyn and Bretel to-gederys alon, and er fyve myles they hadden past, vij knyhtes there they Syen jn hast, that weren of kyng clawdas meyne, that theke pas they kepten, Sykerle,	8900
		8904

8869. Abbreviation mark in darker ink.

8888. *by, y* corrected from *e*.

- and weren repeyred owt of desert tho,
there what to *geten* that they *myhten* also.
and whanne the Sevene knyhtes *þat þer* were
Syen Vlphyn and bretel come rydyng there, 8908
“behold,” quod the vij knyhtes thanne,
“Se on what hors *þat* comen these menne ;
and but we letten hem the weye,
we ben but cowardes, be my feye ; 8912
For they ben not of this contre,
Nethyr Here Armes We Knowen not, sekyrle.”
“Sertes,” quod on to anothyr thanne,
“they semen bothe welfareng menne, 8916
bothe on horsbak and ek on foote,
they seme good men, wel j woote.
and 3if oþer mennes Servantes that they be,
Thanne a good man Serven they, Sykyrle. 8920
therefore hem to dispoyle let vs now hye,
For *þer*-of hauen we nede gret, ful Sykirlye.
here hors and here harneys bothe
vs nedyth to han, ben they neuere so lothe.” 8924
- Thussone on of hem prekyd owt
From alle his Felawes (he was so prowde),
and azens these messengeris gan he ryde,
jn a gret haste that ylke tyde, 8928
and seyde : “lordynges, of whens ben 3e,
whom Seken 3e jn this contre ?
and whethyr that 3e Serven kyng Ban
owther kyng Bors, his brothyr, telle vs now than. 8932
and 3yf with kyng clawdas that 3e be,
thanne scholen 3e passen whyder so wylen 3e.
For Ellis, certeyn, scholen 3e ben ded,
and non further to passen jn this sted. 8936
For we ben set here, Certeynlye,
this weye to kepen ful streytlye,
that noman schal passen be this contre,
but 3if *þat* we wyten what so they be. 8940
and 3if to kyng clawdas wylen 3e pase,

These agree
not to grant
free passage

to the
strangers,
[leaf 122 a]

whose fine
horses and
harness

should be
seized.

One of the
knights ac-
costs them :

“Where
do you
come from,
and whom do
you want ?

If you be-
long to king
Claudas, you
may pass,
otherwise
not.

For we are
set to keep
this road.

- thanne forth to passen scholen 3e han grace,
 and Ellis 3owre harneys moste 3e leven here,
 and bothe 3oure hors to-gyderis jn Fere. 8944
 thanne with-owten deth passen scholen 3e,
 o^{per} payeng of rawnsom, Sykyr 3e be.
 therto presonement scholen 3e non have,
 but hey[1] & al hol to passen here Save, 8948
 Sauf 3oure hors and harneys scholen 3e forgone."
 thus seide this knyht þat to hem cam alone.
 Anon as Vlphin this vndirstood,
 For anger he lokede as red as blood. 8952
 "Sire knyht," he seyde, "hye the not to faste,
 For al thy malyce is nygh j-paste.
 mafey, thou spekest ful velenosly !
 what trowest thou þat j sette þer-by ? 8956
 For nethyr hors ne harneys g[e]tyst þou not here,
 For er thou have, thou beyst hem ful dere.
 J trowe thou wene hem sone forto gete,
 and þat schalt thou not, for j schal the lette." 8960
 Whanne that Bretealx vndyrstood this,
 that the knyht to Vlphyn so spak amys,
 he seyde : "sire knyht, þou thinkest ful ylle,
 but of thy bost j schal the sone felle." 8964
 with his spores bretel his hors smot blyve
 azens that knyht to ryden wel swythe.
 and þat beheld thanne this knyht anon,
 and Faste azens Bretel he gan to gon, 8968
 and abowtes his nekke he heng his Scheld,
 there-with to defenden him jn that feld.
 and there fulsore to-gederys they mette,
 So that on Bretel a gret strok he sette, 8972
 and Bretel ful sore smot hym ageyn
 that thorwgh the left scholdere he bar hym, pleyn,
 Tyl that þe tronchon schewede on þe tothyr syde,
 hal[f] schaft and more jn that ilke tyde. 8976

8948. MS. *hey*. 8956. MS. *what*. 8957. MS. *gylt*.

8960. þ^t squeezed in afterwards.

8961. Ornament like a face in the left margin (inside the long flourish of *w*); similarly ll. 8987, 9265, etc.

8967. þ^t squeezed in afterwards. 8976. MS. *hal*.

& pere to þe grownde he bar hym ful ryht,
both hors & man pere jn that fyht.

who falls to
the ground;

There Swowned this Knyht for Angwysch & peyne,
as this Storye here telleth, Syres, jn certeyne.

[leaf 122 b]

than aȝen sire Bretel his spere owt drowgh thore,
al hol and as sownd as hit was to-fore,

he draws
out his spear
again,

and seide to þe knyht thanne jn þat tyde :

and says :

“here mown now ȝe wel resten and abyde
this weye to kepen for man othir knave,
and geten swich avauntage as ȝe mown haue.”

8984

“Now you
may stay here
and keep the
road!”

Whanne that Vlphyn beheld al this,

Ful wel hyt lyked hym, þe justis, j-wys,

and preysede Bretel for his jorne,

For wel had he qwynt hym, ful Sykerle.

thanne forth they reden but a lytel weye,

that the vj knyhtes behelden, jn feye,

hough that h[er]e lord sore wowndyd was

and jn the Feeld lay jn that plas,

and seide that glad scholden they neuere be,

Tyl here lord venged were, ful certeinle.

thanne of these vj, tweyne gommen Owt ryde

to ouertaken þe messengeris jn that Tyde,

al so faste as here hors myhte hem bere,

So that they ouertook hem anon there.

and whanne that they weren hem faste bye,

anon these messengeris they gonne ascrye,

and therto hem manacede wondyr sore,

but fullytel there-offen they ȝoven thore.

and whanne they hem Syen aprochen so xy,

ageyns hem they torneden ful worthyly

with here scheldis and speris anon Riht there,

that with-jinne schort while jsembled they were.

so that alle iiij there so sore they mette,

and so grete strokis to-gederys they sette,

that on pees to-schateryd here scheldis,

and the gobettes flowen jnto the feldys,

that persched was bothen hauberk & habiriown

8988

Ulfin greatly
approves.

8992

The six
knights

8996

vow venge-
ance.

Two of them
ride to
attack the
messengers

9000

with a men-
acing cry.

9004

The messen-
gers turn on
them,

9008

and there is
a fierce
encounter.

9012

- of Bothe partyes there jn Vyrown.
 BreteI fells
 one, thanne aftyr, BreteI with his Lawnce
 Smot his aduersarye atte owtrawnce : 9016
 thorwgh hawberk, haberiown, & porwh þe throte
 he hym there sone bar, god hyt wote,
 that ded of his hors pere fyl he down,
 jnto the Feld ouer his arsown. 9020
 Ulfin, the
 other, and Vlphyn his aduersarye smot so tho,
 that his spere thorwgh his lyft scholdere gan go,
 and down of his hors fyl he jnto the feeld,
 where as he lay styлле vndyr his scheld. 9024
- Two more
 knights ride
 to attack, Thanne of th[e] iiij knyhtes jsswed owt tweyne,
 here felawes to avengen pere, jn certeyne,
 and maden there a ful gret scry,
 and seiden that they wolden deyen, trewly, 9028
 but that here Felawes avenged were,
 er that they pasten ony forthere there.
- are met by the
 messengers, thanne anon the messengeris tweyne
 azens hem here hors hedis tornede ageyne. 9032
 anon Sire Vlphyn dressid hym ful faste
 azens his adversarye, er he forthere paste ;
 and BreteI azens the tothyr gan ryde,
 So that al fowre metten jn that tyde. 9036
- and des-
 patched in a
 similar way. Sire BreteI his felawe th[er]e so smot,
 that thorough the Body the spere hit glot.
 and Vlphin his felawe there so mette,
 and swich a strok on him he sette, 9040
 that hors & man to grownde he bar,
 So that his nekke asondir barst ryht thar.
- BreteI renews
 his scoffing
 speech,
 [leaf 122 c] thanne spak BreteI to his felawe :
 "Syre, of this Jorne 3e mown Ben Fawe ! 9044
 and here to manacen whom that 3e wylle,
 and this passe to kepen, and here lyn styлле,
 Therto good leve, Syre, scholen 3e have,
 thys weye to kepen from knyht oper knaue." 9048

9020. *ffeld*, *ld* on erasure. 9022. *lyft*, *t* squeezed in afterwards.9023. *hors* added above the line. 9025. MS. *th iiij*.9027. *scry*, *c* corrected from *r*.9037. MS. *the* ; cf. l. 11379, footnote.9048. *thys*, *y* corrected from *c*.

And at this lowgh Vlphyn welfaste ;
thane forth jn here weye to-gederis they paste.

Ulfin laughs,
and both set
off together.

Anon jn here jorne ryden they forth there,
as wery men that forfowhten were. 9052

So jn here weye they reden forth ryht,
that to the cyte of Baynoye they comen pat nyht,
wher that they fownden ful gret plente
of diuers peple there, ful Sykerle. 9056

In the even-
ing they
arrive at
Bainoik,

For bothe kynges there weren jn Fere,
and ful gret cownceyl hadden they there.
these two knyhtes ryden forth here weye,
Tyl that to þe paleys they comen, jn feye. 9060

ride to the
palace,

and of here hors they lyhted adown,
and preyden a good man of the town
here hors to kepen and here harneys bothe,
and jnto the cowrt they wente, forsothe. 9064

There sone axeden they aftyr kyng Ban
and aftyr kyng Bors, his brother, than.
they seiden, jn chambre that they were

ask for kings,

Jn gret cownseylle to-gederis jn fere. 9068

and learn that
they are both
in counsel.

thane þe messengeris they weren ful gladdre,
that bothe kynges to-gederis they hadde.

So that the messengeris styлле abyden tho,
Tyl that the kynges here counseyl hadden j-do. 9072

The messen-
gers wait.

And whyles they stooden Jn this degre,
there cam a knyht there forth, Sykerle,
that Leownces of Paerne was his name,
& with hym kam a knyht of gret Fame, 9076

In the mean-
time, two
knights,
Leonces

that fulwel he lovede jn alle degre,
and Sire Pharens hyhte he, Sykerle. and Fariens,

These tweyne knyhtes comen jn fere,
To axen the messengeris what they wolden there. 9080

ask them
what they
want.

they seyden that weten wel they Scholde,
3yf that they so longe abyden þere wolde,

tyl that here message were don there
To bothe bretheren that kynges were. 9084

9073. MS. *Jnthis*. 9078. *Sykerle*, *k* in darker ink.

9083. *there* crossed out before *werē*.

The knights
and the mes-
sengers
recognize
each other as
dear old
friends.

and whanne they herden hem bothe thus seyn,
thanne eche of hem othyr knew, ful pleyn.
anon eche othyr there gan forto embrace,
and mochel joye they maden jn that place. 9088

Hand in
hand, they go
to the kings.

thanne axeden they 3if they speken schokle
with the tweyne kynges, and what they wolde.
and they seyden : " 3e, sires, ful sekyrly,
For therto haven we nede, trewely." 9092

thanne anon as the kynge[s] these two knyhtes sye,
azens hem they wenten ful hastelye, 9096

For wel wisten they thanne, *with-owten* Fayllynge,
that they scholden here som newe tydyng.

The messen-
gers are intro-
duced to the
kings,

Thanne seyde Leownees to these kynges tho :
" Behold these messengeres that fer comen Fro ! 9100

For they comen owt of gret Bretaygne
with 3ow tweyne to speken, jn certeyne."

and welcomed
by them.

and whanne the tweyne kynges herdyn this,
they seyden that they weren welcomen, j-wys. 9104

thanne gret joye to-gederys they made,
and ech of other they weren ryht glade.

Thanne down they seten alle *pere* jn Fere.

[leaf 122a]
They are
asked about
their errand,

Thanne Axeden the Kynges of Hem there 9108
what xede that drof hem jn-to that contre,
For ellys hyt myhte non othirwyse be.

thanne forthermore, as j vndirstond,
they axeden tydynges owt of here lond, 9112

and about
the barons
and their
king.

and 3yf here Barowns hadden ony kyng
after here owne wille, *with-owten* lesyng.
For of the Eleccyown knewen they ful wel,
and of the swerd and pe ston, everydel, 9116
that on cristemasse day there gan apere
afor the mynstre and the peple there.

The messen-
gers give a
full account

Thanne tolden the messengeris here tydyng,
how that jt was, jnto the Endyng, 9120

9095. MS. *kynge* ; cf. ll. 9279, 9788, footnotes.

9101. *Br'taygne*, *r'* corrected from *o*.

9119. Abbreviation mark perhaps added afterwards.

and of alle the Stryf that was there
of kyng Arthewr & þe Sevene kynges jn fere ;
and of the merveillous Fyr also

of Arthur's
victory

that merlyne amonges hem wrowhte tho,

9124

and ek of the grete chevalrye

that þe 3onge kyng Arthewr dyde, Sykyrlye.

aftr they tolden hem word and Ende

and of Mer-
lin's advice,

how merlyn cownseyllde, for hem wende

9128

that they scholden comen to kyng Arthewr

asking the
kings to come
to Arthur.

and not Jt to letten for non langowr ;

where-offen Vlphyn preyde jn haste

answere to haven, Er that they paste ;

9132

For here tyme was schort therto,

and here nede ful gret also.

thane answeryd the kynges ageyn,

and seiden that—"gret werre we hau, certein,

9136

These hesi-
tate on ac-
count of king
Claudas,

agens kyng clawdas jn this contre,

that mochel noysaunce doth to owre meyne.

and 3yt Emporysched he js jn partye,

But 3yt we dreden vs now, Sekerlye,

9140

that and we owt of this contre were,

lest he wolde don vs mochel dere."

thane seiden the messengeris to hem ageyn :

who might
attack the
country
during their
absence.

"That kepten we not, Syres, jn certeyn,

9144

But the mes-
sengers tell
them that
Merlin sent
them word
not to fear.

But merlyne sente 3ow forto say :

whiles that 3e walkyn jn his jornay,

3e doren not of non damage drede,

For he wyl 3ow both wysсен and rede."

9148

Whanne kyng Ban & kyng Boors

herden of merlyne so gret a los,

and merveyllde mochel of his werkyng,

Ban and
Boors marvel
at Merlin's
knowledge,

that he knew thinges þat weren comeng,

9152

thane seyden they to þe messengeris anon,

that syker thens Scholden they not gon,

but hol thre dayes there to abyde ;

and ask the
messengers
to stay for
three days.

the messengeris hym thankyd þat tyde.

9156

the kyng comanded disarme hem anon

(For further, certeyn, scholden they not gon,

- but in his owne place abyden pere styлле),
and hem vnarmed and esed at wyлле. 9160
- When the
messengers
are disarmed,
their friends
notice their
broken
shields,
whanne that these knyhtes vnarmed were,
thussone there comen the two knyhtes there,
and beheldyn here harneys and here armure,
Where-offen they merveylleden, j 3ow ensure, 9164
how that here scheldis so to-broken were,
and here harneys so forbled was there.
they preyden hem, of gentrye, the sothe to seyne,
that al the trowthe to tellen hem, pleyne. 9168
- are told of
the encounter
with the
seven
knights,
[leaf 123 a] thanne begonnen they anon, ful vttyrlye,
alle the trowthe to seyn, ful pleynlye,
Of the vij knyhtes, pat weren so bolde,
And How that Hem Asayllen they Wolde. 9172
“But thankyd be god and owre Ladye,
we ben now here in 3owre compenye!”
and whanne the tweyne knyhtes herden this,
That of tho Sevene they weren delyuered, j-wys, 9176
- and praise the
fine exploit.
thanne of hem maden they gret preysynge,
For they hem knew, with-owten lesynge,
that they weren bothe knyhtes worthy,
and for goode men and trewe, certeynly. 9180
- King Ban
gives them
good cheer;
Leonees and
Fariens serve
them well,
thanne kyng Ban dyde hem sytten anon,
and with worthy deyntes Served hem thusson.
what Leowneces of Paerne and Phareens
To hem they dyden al here deligens; 9184
of alle tho deyntes that myhte ben fownde
To hem they browhten in that stownde.
For toforen tyme they syen in gret bretaygne
hem Servyd with alle deyntes, in certeygne, 9188
in tyme of kyng Vter Pendragown,
that kyng Arthewres fadyr was be resown.
- ban and
Boors are
ready on the
third day;
Thussone kyng Ban & his brothyr in Fere
Forward they gommen to arayen hem there, 9192
So that Redy thei weren be th[e] thrydde day
with these messengeris to gon forth here way,
and tooken here londys in governaunce

9163. MS. *beholdyn*. 9182. *with, h* squeezed in afterwards.9193. *thei, i* squeezed in afterwards. MS. *th thrydde*.

- To Leownces of Paerne, *with-owten varyaunce*, 9196 they leave
 For that he was here cosyn germeyn " their lands in
 and therto bothe good & trewe, jn certeyn. the keeping
 Therto Pharens was left jn his compenye, of Leones,
 and ek the steward of Baynoye, Sykyrlye. Fariens,
 9200 and the
 Thanne seyden the kynges to hem there steward of
 that—"3yf nede be, after helpe 3e Enqwere." Bainoik,
 For they wysten not thanne, jn certeyn, and ask them,
 what tyme that hom they comen ageyn. if necessary,
 9204 to send for
 thanne lefte kyng Ban certein tokenyng help;
 with his Barowns of many a thing. king Ban
 "and 3it more over, 3yf grete nede be, himself
 my Ryng j schal sende 3ow, certeynle." 9208 would send a
 whanne Leownces herde that hyt trewe was ring in case of
 That the messengeres seyden jn that plas, great need.
 Thussone they maden hem redy forto go, The kings set
 Tyl that to the Se they comen vnto. 9212 out on their
 So that Schepyd they weren, bothe lest & mest, journey,
 and Esyly over pasten *with-owten tempest*, and have a
 of which mater this Storye maketh an Ende, smoothe cross-
 and Forth to kyng Artheur now doth hyt wende, 9216 ing.
 that js at londone jn gret Bretaygne,
 that logres tho was clepyd, jn certaygne.

Chap. IX.

[leaf 123 b]

- Now Scheweth Forthere this Storye
 that from Arthewr the messengeris gommen hye, 9220 After the de-
 and stuffeden thanne every garnesown, parture of the
 every good cyte, and every town, messengers-
 with arblasteris and seriawntis also; from London
 thus merlynes comandement dyde they tho. (p. 233),
 For he knew alle tho that trewe were, 9224 cities and
 lik as this Storye Reporteth here, castles were
 For merlyne knew ful wel that compeyne, furnished
 that be hem Treson scholde neuere non be. 9228 with soldiers
 and whanne they hadden thus j-don, (cf. ll. 8551 f.,
 thanne to hem cam merlyne anon, 8573 ff.),
 whom Merlin
 knew to be
 trustworthily.

9200. *Baynoye*, o blurred.9218. The remainder of the column blank; in the left margin:
obvincō Regum.

(Context mis-
understood;
see Notes).

and seide they hadden ryht wel j-do.
 thanne tolden they to merlyne vnto 9232
 how that be the weye assaylled they were,
 and hou of vij knyhtes they deliuered hem there,
 ek with the two kynges j-spoken also,
 and how here londys they hadde deliuered tho 9236
 To tweyne barouns of that contre,
 and the tokene of the ryng also tolden hee.

Merlin ad-
vises king
Arthur to
meet the ap-
proaching
kings.

Anon seide merlyne to kyng Arthewr thanne :
 “Goth, ordeyne 3ow to meten these worthy menne, 9240
 For thin owne men ful Syker they be,
 and Born of hygh lynage, ful Sykerle,
 and Ek here wyves Jn that same wyse
 hyghe Born as ony man kan devyse.” 9244
 thanne answeyd the kyng to merlyne ageyne :
 “As thou me redest, j wyl don, certeyne.”
 thanne quod merlyne jn alle haste :

The streets
are to be
decked,
girls are to
dance and
sing,

“that the weyes ben elensid ful faste, 9248
 and perto alle the maidenis that pou miht gete
 hem to meten dawnsing jn that strete,
 & thus with songe & dawnsyng with-owten pe town
 hym so to meten in merie processiwyn, 9252

and the whole
chivalry
to welcome
them.

and thanne 3oure-self with alle 3oure chevalrye
 ek hem to meten ful worschepfullye.”
 “Now, goode merlin,” quod Artheur the kyng,
 “whanne mai j be seker of here comeng?” 9256

They will
arrive on the
Sunday
morning.

“a sondai next comeng, er pe owr of Tyerce,
 hidyr scholen thei comen bothe heyl & ferce.”
 whanne that kyng Arthewr vndirstood al this,
 thanne aftir merlines wil he wrowhte, j-wys, 9260

Arthur
makes pre-
parations
accordingly.

and merline him tawhte what he scholde do,
 and hou to the kyng he scholde speken vnto,
 that jn non wise jnterupt scholde he not ben
 Jn non thing that he Scholde don other sen. 9264

Vppon this him ordeyned Artheur the kyng
 a3ens these kynges to gon encowntryng.

- thus abyden they stille til vppon the sonday.
 thanne myht me sen men there jn good aray : 9268 On the Sunday, Arthur meets the kings in grand procession,
 the kyng Artheur & al his Baronye,
 therchebisschope of dover with his clergye,
 thus with processiou they hem metten, sykerle.
 thanne gret kysseng & joye there men myhten se. 9272 kisses them,
 thus toward the cyte passeden they there,
 where as dawnsyng many maidenis were
 with many karoles & ryht merye song,
 at that tyme was these maidenis among. 9276 conducts them to the city, where maidens dance and sing,
 and thus thorough the cyte thei gonne to ride
 To the grete towr that ilke tyde. and to the Tower
 Anon as these kynges to pe paleis weren browhit,
 grete jewelis and 3iftis sone weren vpe sowht 9280 where magnificent gifts are distributed
 and to the kinges presentyd there ;
 also cowerseris, palfreyes, & with destrere,
 Ek robes, and armures bothe goode & riche
 To these kynges he 3af and to oper j-lyche. 9284 both to the kings and to others.
 and al this wrowht he be merlines counsaile,
 For after hit dede hym gret availle.
 So that gret love he gat him there
 Of Riche and powre thanne Every-Where, 9288 Arthur thus wins the love [leaf 123 v] of rich and poor ;
 and of hem that neuere hym sye
 To for tyme ne after with here Eye.
 Ful mochel mervylleden the peple tho
 whens that alle tho jewelis comen fro,
 and jn so schort time hit was j-don,
 bothe to hye and to lowe pere rilht anon.
 So that eche man jn his degre
 kyng Artheuris man swor forto be, 9296 and swear fidelity.
 and for nothing hym Neuere to faylle
 jn pes, in werre, nethir jn bataille.

Whanne that these kynges jn pe cite were,
 daunsyng of ladies Syen thei there, 9300 Dancing and tournaments are going on.
 Torneyeng of Bacheleris 3onge,
 that alday lasted jnto evensonge.
 more ouer alle the stretis of the cyte

9279. *kynges*, *f* squeezed in afterwards.9301. Abbreviation mark in darker ink, between *i* and *s*.

The streets are hung with cloths of silk. The weather is fine.	with clothis of Sylk weren hanged, sikerle. and bothe fayr wedyr and cler hyt was, For nethyr rein ne hayl <i>pat</i> day <i>pere</i> nas.	9304
Lamps filled with balm spread sweet odour all around.	and alle the stretys with lampes hanged were, and euerich lampe ful of Bawm was there, whiche that brenden so Swetely, that al the cyte <i>pere-offen</i> savourede, trewly, So that the swete odowr smellyd myhte han be half a myle thanne, ful certeinle.	9308 9312
The royal party attend mass,	So that the barouns forth wenten in fere To the chyf mynstre anon ryht there. there met weren they with processoun, with cros, Baneris, and gomfanoun.	9316
which is sung by the arch- bishop,	Therchebisschope the masse sang, veramente, and aftyr masse to paleys they wente, the thre kynges al jn Fere with alle the baronage <i>pat</i> was there,	9320
and then have a splendid dinner.	where as manye worthy viandes weren dyht <i>perwith</i> the kynges to serven, as hit was ryht. and alle thre kynges to-gederis they sete, with hem therchebisschope, as hit was mete ; at on table alle J-Served they were with rial deyntes whiche weren there.	9324
At table serve	thanne weren there two 3onge knyhtes that thyke day the halle serveden outrihtes with sire kay, sire Vlphin, and sire Bretel ; that day they deden wondirly wel. the names of thes knyhtes so 3onge J schal 3ow declaren Jn Englysch tonge.	9328 9332
Kay, Ulfyn, Bretel,	the ton hyhte Lucans the Botelers, the tothir sire Gyrflis, a knyht ful fers. thus <i>with</i> these knyhtes the halle served was <i>with</i> gret deyntes thike day jn that plas.	9336
Lucans the Boteler, and Gyrflis.		
After dinner, the quintin is raised.	Aftyr noon was ype set the qwyntyn, the 3onge knyhtes <i>pere</i> justed wel and fyn, and Boordeieden there alle theke day, and aftyrward to torneyeng, with-owten nay.	9340

- So weren they devyded on partyes tweyne,
 on Eche side vij hundred, jn certeingne,
 of whyche of the rem of Baynoie, vtterlye,
 thre hundred weren in that compenye. 9344
 and whanne these parties assembled were,
 alle thre kynges weren they there.
 and mochel of the clergie pere was also,
 and of astronomers that jn pe rewme was tho. 9348
 3it vndir hem alle cowden they not telle
 on whiche syde the better befelle,
 Sauf only merlyne he cowde declare,
 whiche side the bettere scholde han thare. 9352
 Thus the thre Kynges And therchebysschope tho
 at Fenestris and wyndowes lokeden tho,
 and hou to-gederys they gommen torneye,
 ek hou that here hors gommen for to neye, 9356
 and hou that the Erthe hyt denede also,
 So faste to torneyeng gomm they to go.
- Thanne thus whiles they torneyed there,
 Into a renge aperyd thanne there 9360
 Sire Gyrfl3, the sone of cardwelle,
 vppon a stede that was stowt & felle ;
 jnto that renge he rod ful faste.
 & 3ens hym cam on atte laste : 9364
 a knyht of Baynoie, that hyht Ladmas,
 with sire Gyrfl3 mette jn that plas ;
 and assone as they to-gederis mette,
 Grete strokes on ech other there sette ; 9368
 with sperys and scheldes toform here breest
 To-gedires they mettyn at here Treest.
 and so sore to-gederis they rommen there,
 that ech vppon other barst his spere, 9372
 For worthy knyhtes they weren bothe two,
 and eche be hym-self desirede also :
 the toon desired worschepe, trewelye,
 The toper richesse and Seygnourye. 9376
 So sore they torneyeden togederis thanne,

The knights
are divided in
two parties.

Clergy and
astronomers
are present.

[leaf 123 d]
The kings
and the arch-
bishop look
on from a
window.

(1) First Gir-
fl3s jousts

with Ladmas
of Bainoik.

They break
their spears,

- that hem thowhte the brayn was owt of h[er]e paine,
 and ek the Eyen owt of here hed,
 So sore they torneyed jn that sted. 9380
 and ech of hem to erthe oper there bar,
 that jn Swowneng stille they lyen thar.
 So that the peple wenden, pat stoden abowte,
 that bothe hadden ben ded, with-owten dowte. 9384
 For so crwel a fyht Syen they neuere ere
 be-twixen two men that knyhtes were.
- (2) Then en-
 sues a general
 rush,
 Thussonne to-broken the renges anon ;
 to rescwen these knyhtes wenten they ful son. 9388
 there on partye with anothyr to-gederis goune mete,
 that on eyther partye lay jn the strete.
 Ek so sore to-gederis metten they there,
 that eche man on othyr brak his spere. 9392
 whanne that here sperys to-broken were,
 anon here swerdis they pulden owt there.
 So that there a melle began ful strong,
 betwixen tho knyhtes hem among. 9396
 3yt was there thanne anothyr knyht,
 that ful merveillously bar hym in fyht,
 that Lucans le boteler was his name,
 cosin germayn to Gyrfles, a man of fame. 9400
 This Lucans so on gan taken there,
 that bothe hors and knyhtes he gan to fere.
 For so harde he took on thanne,
 that his strok ne dorsten abyden non mannè. 9404
 he rente the helmes of hedis adown,
 here scheldes caste ouer here arsown,
 and swiche maistries werken pere he began,
 that of hym merveilled many a man. 9408
 and so deden these kynges thre,
 and of hym merveilleden jn many degre.
- Lucans the
 Boteler, (Gyr-
 fles' cousin,
 gives irre-
 sistible
 strokes,
 and excites
 general
 admiration.

Longe lasted the torneyeng that Tyde
 at Londone faste by temses syde. 9412
 and 3it knew non man the bettyr partye,

9378. MS. *he pāne*.9406. *from* crossed out before *out*.

ho þe victorie scholde hauen, sykyrlye.	
For so many goode men there were	
here myht to preuen on bothe sides pere.	9416
whanne Gyrflës and his felawe vpe weren sette	Girflës and his adversary are re- mounted.
and on horsbak pere, with-owten lette,	[leaf 124 a]
Whanne they Auentyd Weren Jn that plas,	
aʒen they torneyeden with-june litel spas.	9420
thanne sire Gyrflës and sire lweans jn Fere	Girflës and Lucans
Ful grete maystryes begonnen they there,	
and of hem of Baynoic goten they lond,	gain ground on those of
and from here place remeved hem, j vndirstond.	9424 Bainoik.
whanne that this they of Baynoye Sye,	
that here Feleschepe gonnen so forto flye,	
they comen to resewen hem with alle here myht,	
that toforn not ne hadden comen jn fyht.	(3) Fresh jousters join
thanne comen of Arthewris thre hundred knyhtes	9428 on both sides,
aʒens hem of Baynoye pere anon ryhtes.	
and thus they entermellyd bothe jn fere,	
tyl that mervellous werkynge maden they there ;	9432
for so sore to-gederis gonnen they ryde,	and there is a powerful encounter,
that here speris to-borsten jn that tyde.	
and whanne here speres toborsten were,	
anon eche man his swerd drowh owt pere.	9436
and pere began ful gret Tornement	
of tho worthy knyhtes, verament.	
For a man the sothe myhte knowe,	
the worthynesse of knyhtes al be rowe,	9440
and ek of ʒonge knyhtes that pere were,	in which also novices part- take.
that lerned to torneyen with scheld and spere.	
but of alle othere jn that plas	
Sire Gyrflëʒ & Sire lweans gonne hem pas.	9444
Whanne hyt was comen to the owr of noon,	(4) At noon, Kay enters the lista with 16 comrades ;
Syre kay with xvj felawes there cam anon,	
that ʒit non strok j-smeten they hadde ;	
thussone jnto the reng pere he hem ladde.	9448
So that þe ferste they gonne there mete,	they fight keenly with spears
down they hem boren a-myð the strete.	
So sore they justed vppon that grownde,	
that here speris to-borsten pat ylke stownde.	9452

	and whanne here speris to-broken were, anon here swerdis they pulden owt there. that so sore they fyhten begonne, and fowhten, whiles they hadden ony sonne,	9456
and with swords.		
Kay, Girtles, and Lucans excel.	that sire kay on his partye hadde the gre, on pe tother side Gyrfe3 & lweans, sykerle. thane wenten these knyhtes tho jn fere Forto aventen hem owt of pe place there.	9460
They leave the ground for a while.	thane to that resorted pere anon ryht of Baynoye Lordis of ryht gret myht, hos names j schal 3ow telle, and 3e wylen herkene to my spelle.	9464
(5) Several knights of Bainoik	There was Vsmerawnt of pe Roche, ful prest in age, and Gawnes de bloy, & Vryens of pe forest savage, also Belyas Amorews of maydyn castel, and Flawndres le Blans, and Graciens the Lel, and Blyes de la kasse, and Bliobens of desert with melyadus pe bloys & madyeus of crispes, apert, and placydas the gays with hem, trewelye ;	9468
(Usmerant, Gawnes de Bloy, Uriens, Graciens, Bliobers, Placides, and others)	alle these to torneyeng comen jn compenye. whanne this fresch peple cam to tornement, There they so torneyeden, verament,	9472
come to the tournament	So that non man dorste hem there abyde ; So sore they torneyeden jn that tyde.	9476
and drive the other party back.	and whanne Sire kay be-held al this, that here lond his felawes hadden lost, j-wys, and there aventyng as he was & with hym his felawes jn that plas behelden hem of Baynoye lond putten his felawes to pe wers, j vndirstond, Thussone pere hasted hym thanne syre kay	9480
(6) Then Kay	And His Felyschepe With Hym, Jn Fay, and prekeden jnto the grettest pres that he myhte fynden, with-owten les, and with hym his feleschepe in compenye. there goznen they sore to torneyen, trewelye, So that but a lytel whyle hadden they ben there, that they of Baynoye Scomfyt they were.	9484
[leaf 124 b] and his com- rades return,		
and begin afresh.		9488

thus wrowlit Sire kay jn that Turnement,
 that his Name declared was, verament, 9492
 as this storye here-after schal declare,
 hos that there-aftyr wil loken thare.

Syre kay, that of his modyr neuere norsched was, (Kay has a
 but of anothisr womman jn dyvers plas, 9496 bad habit,
 a tach of his norse there he cawhte, taken after
 that of hym geten myhte hyt be nowhte, his nurse,
 3it his modyr a worthy lady was,
 and moche worschepe cowde jn Every plas, 9500
 and perto sche was ful of Bownte
 and ful of gentrye in Eche degre.
 but this Sire kay a custom hadde,
 that he ne rowhte to speken good oper badde. 9504 not to care
 3yt he ne spak hit for non velonye, what he says,
 but moche pat he seide was but folye.
 For often-tymes they that herd hym speke,
 on lawgheng they musten sone owt breke 9508
 ek for disport and his Folye,
 that jn his speche they fownden, trewelye.
 And perto azenward 3it was he
 the beste Felawe that myhte be. 9512 although he
 is a good
 fellow.)

whanne sire kay cam to tornement,
 as to-forn time han 3e herd present,
 and Sire Ladmas, that ful wel hadde J-do
 vppon kyng arthewrs men 3it thedirto, 9516 Kay sees
 Ladmas put
 Arthur's men
 to flight,
 and Sawh his Felawes put to the flyht,
 whiche so him grevede anon pere ryht—
 whanne that Sire kay al this beheld,
 that his Felawes forsaken hadde pe feeld, 9520
 Ful Sorweful he was thanne jn his herte,
 and Forth on horsbak he gan to sterte
 To Sire Ladmas jn that pres,
 and of his Torneyeng he made him ses, 9524
 and made him to meven owt of pat place,
 there as to-forn tyme ful bold he wace,
 and so sore smot hym jn the Scheld,
 and ridea
 against him.

9500. *corde*, *d* immediately corrected from *e*.

9518. *grevede*, the second *e* blurred.

He tilts Ladmas and Graciens off their horses,	that bothe hors and man fyl jn the feld ; and at pe same strok there also Sire Graciens trebens to Erthe gan go. So with that cowrs he brak his spere, and anon his swerd he drowh owt there, and rescwed his felawes Echon. thussone his name diseried was anon, how that alle his felawes socowrede he, that Scomfyt they wenden forto han be. thanne torneden they alle a3en jn fere, and of al that day ne dyden not so wel pere.	9528 9532 9536
The kings notice his chivalry.	These jostes beheld wel Artheur pe kyng, kyng Ban and kyng Boors, <i>with</i> -owten lesyng, and behelden the chevalrye of syre kay, that he there dyde that ylke day, and seiden he was a worthy knyht, vayllaunt & vysable jn Every fyht. and whanne Lweans the Botelers Sawgh kay so do, hym forto helpe hym Nede not to go.	9540 9544
Lucans goes off in another direction ; [leaf 124 c]	Thanne took He His Hors With His spores Anon, and jnto the grettest pres he gan to gon, and smot Syre Bloys so sore there, that al on peces to-barst his spere, and to the grownde him bar down ryht, and his swerd owt drowgh pere forto fyht. thanne began pere gret Torneyenge here felawes to socowr forto brynge.	 9548 9552
he bears Blois to the ground.	Thanne cam Sire Gyrfe3, armed ful bryht, as faste prekinge as that he myht, and Sawgh there Blyobers & his felawes tweye, that abowten Sire kay weren, trewelye. and with here swerdes on hym they leyden faste, that wondyr hit was he myhte hit laste, For grete nede of socowr there hadde he, For he was but on a3ens hem thre, and thike thre pe best men were of Baynoykes meyne pat was there.	 9556 9560 9564
Girls, seeing Bliobers and his two com- rades pressing hard on Kay,		

thanne mette he there with placydes,
 and his helm to-barst jn that pres.
 Aftyr Rod he to Blyobers,
 that thiike tyme was bothe stordly & fers, 9568
 and smot evene a-myddes þe scheld,
 that he there fyl down jn the feld,
 and drowh owt his swerd anon thanne,
 and smot sire placydes so on þe panne, 9572
 So that sore astoned pere he was,
 and from his hors fyl down jn that plas.
 Thanne what tyme Syre kay beheld al this,
 vp ful sone he hym dressed, j-wys, 9576
 and beheld sire Gyrflē, his socourer,
 and thowhte that kyndenesse to qwyten owher.
 So from that day Evere aftyr-warde
 they loveden to-gederis ful strong & harde ; 9580
 Al the whyle they leveden here,
 myht non man departin hit fer ne nere.

breaks Placides' helm,

and brings both Bliobers

and Placides to the ground.

Kay rises,

full of gratitude. He and Gire become friends for life.

Whanne S[i]re Gyrflē Sire kay rescwed hadde,
 and thens as he lay thanne forth hym ladde, 9584
 thanne aspyde Sire kay on þat hylt zeroas,
 that hym sore anoyede jn that plas.
 anon his Swerd Sire kay owt drowghe,
 and, schortly to seyne, there hym he slowghe. 9588
 thanne be-gan there gret noyse & cry
 on the tothyr partye there, certainly.
 thanne comen they thedyr fast prekyngē,
 and ek on sire kayes syde, with-owten lesinge. 9592
 So that gret melle there began,
 that hurt and anoyed was many a man,
 er alle fyve felawes rescwed were,
 owthyr er to-gederis they mo[w]n semblen there. 9596
 but whanne to-gederis they weren alle fyve,
 wel mochel deseysel they wrowhte ful blyve.
 and ȝif ȝe wil knowen whiche fyve they be,
 J schal ȝou here declaren, ful sekerle : 9600
 Ferst Vlphyn, Bretel, and Syre kay pere,

Kay strikes Yeroas.

There is an outcry,

and a fresh tumult,

in which the five knights

(Ulfin, Bretel, Kay,

9583. MS. *Sre.* 9586. MS. *jnthat.*9596. MS. *mō*, *ō* on erasure.

Girles, and Lucans)	Sire Gyrflez, and Sire lwcans þe botelere. and whom so Ewere þese fyve metten jn place, to therthe they wente, ther nas non oper grace,	9604
are a wonder to all the spectators.	For so wel these Fyve gonnen hem be-stere, merveylleng to alle tho that there were. and how they myhte so longe Endure, These thre kynges merveilleden, j 3ow Ensure.	9608
[leaf 124 d]	So that thus ther Was Ful strong melle on bothe partyes there thanne, Sykerle. and gret poyntes of armes þere was j-do, and tyl hyt was Even, hyt lasted tho.	9612
In the even- ing, the kings stop the tournament,	thanne comen these thre kynges adown this Torneye to breken al and som. So that they comen jn-to the place there as this Torneyeng al day was,	9616
declaring both sides equal.	and helden bothe partyes parygal. Anon thanne comen they jn with-al, For they cowde not wel declare on whiche partye the gre schold fare.	9620
They attend even-ong, and go to supper.	and there departed the Torneye anon, So that eche knyht to his jn hom gan gon. and the kynges wenten forth to Evensong, and aftyr to here Soper gonne they fong.	9624
Speaking of the tourna- ment,	and whanne the Soper was j-do, of this tornement thanne spoken they tho, and ho that best bar him thar, and whiche of armes pat wysest war.	9628
king Ban says that six- teen of his knights	thanne anon hem answerede there kyng Ban, & seide: "xvj knyhtes j have here than that jn this Torneyeng bettere han doon thanne alle the remnaunt everichon,	9632
stand highest.	and on this partye heyhte there were, For stronge & harde they peyned hem here, and many merveillous armes dyden they, mo thanne at this tyme j kan wryte oper sey."	9636
At last the prize is given	so vppon this long weren they jn talkyng, and þanne atte laste for the gre 3eveng. So that the los was 3oven, and the prys,	

9608. *Ensure*, *E* corrected from *j*.9616. *al*, *l* squeezed in afterwards.9634. MS. *ffol*.

To Sire kay steward aftyr here devys, 9640 to Kay,
 To sire lucans the botelere, and to Sire Gyrfe, Lucans, and
 To these thre for þe beste, wit[li]-owten les. Gyrfes.

Thanne whanne the tables j-drawn were, After supper,
 jnto a chambre the kynges wenten there, 9644 the kings
 Therchebisschope and Antron Ek also, retire into a
 whiche chambre on þe never stood tho. chamber.

and with hem these two knyhtes wente, 9648 Ulfyn and
 Sire Vlphyn and sire Bretel, veramente. Bretel are
 thanne thus of manye thinges they spooke, with them.

and atte laste kyng Artheur gan loke, 9652 King Arthur
 and aspyde these two knyhtes with-janne a whyle. smilingly
 thanne anon kyng artheur be-gan to smyle, asks the two
 whanne he bethowhte hym vppon the jorne, knights to
 as merlyne hadde hym told, ful Sykerle, relate their
 whanne that on his message þey wenten, apert, adventures
 hou that they thanne spedden jn desert, on the
 & hou from vij knyhtes deliuered they were. journey.

he preyde hem to þe kynges to tellen hit pere. 9656
 and thanne the kynges preyden hem also
 The sothe hem to telle—"er that 3e go." 9660

Whanne they herden the kynges preiden so faste,
 Bretel on sire Vlphyn lowgh atte laste. Bretel, with
 thanne answerid sire Bretel to the kyng : a smile on
 "what nedith 3ow vs to axen of swich a thing, 9664 Ulfyn, replies :

whanne that 3e knowen hyt as wel as we, "Whyd you
 as merlyne 3ow hath told, ful certeinle, ask, as you
 So that hyt were not but wordis jn veyn know it as
 of swiche thinges to speken, certeyn ?" well as our-
 9668 selves ?"

than answered anon kyng Ban : Ban, demand-
 "now, leve sires, ho pere-of 3ou telle kan, ing an ex-
 that 3oure kyng js therto thus preve ?" planation,

"3is, Sire kyng, quod sire Bretel, sykirle, 9672 is told about
 The wysest man of al this Lond Merlin.

9640. *Sir'* twice, the latter crossed out.

9641. *lucans* in the left margin; the insertion mark is erroneously placed after (instead of before) *the*.

9642. MS. *wit owlē*; cf. l. 9182, footnote.

[leaf 125 a]

Other of Al crystyndon, J Vndyrstonde."

Ban inquires
further,

"Now where Js he?" quod the kyng Ban tho,

"and what his xame, telle thou me also."

9676

"Syre, hit is *merlyne*," quod Sire Bretel thazne,

"that we holden ryht a wys manne,

and jn my chambre he lyth to reste.

learns that
Merlin is in
Bretel's
chamber,

he is a man of cownseyl of pe beste,

9680

For be his cownseyl we comen for 3ow,

wheche we hopen schal ben for 3oure prow."

Thanne spak kyng ban anon thanne

To kyng Arthewr there of this manne :

9684

and asks to
see him.

"Now, good Syre, lete 3e vs now hym se,

For gret lust therto we han, parde,

For *merveilles* that we han herd of seye

of that man jn manye a weye."

9688

Arthur sends
Ulfyn to tetch
Merlin.

kyng Arthewr seide, with ryht good wylle

That anon he scholde comen hem vntylle.

Anon thazne sente he For Sire vlphyn,

and preyde hym gon to seken after *merlyn*.

9692

And as Sire Vlphyn gan forth to gon,

Merlin meets
Ulfyn,ryht there with *merlyne* he mette anon.

thanne seide Sire Vlphyn : "welcome 3e be ;

the kyng wolde gladliche speken with pe."

9696

"j come ryht anon," quod *merlyne* tho,"For j ne rekke toform whom *pat* j go."is brought
before the
kings, and
relates of his
knowledge
and his life.Thus entrede *merlyne* jnto that pres,and many thinges seide, that was *non* les,

9700

bothen of his konnenge and of his lyf,

there he hem tolde, with-owten stryf.

King Ban's
clerk, Guine-
bant, ques-
tions Merlin.

thanne hadde kyng Ban a clerk there,

a wyser man ther nas nowhere,

9704

and aposyd *merlyne* of many a thyng ;his name was Guinebant, *with-owten* lesyng.And what evere of *merlyne* he gan to freyne,Merlin
answers,*merlyne* hym answerede anon, certeine,

9708

For *merlyne* knew neuere *non* maner of man,

that hym so aposede as he dyde than.

and the kings
listen.

And evere these kynges stodyn ful styлле,

tyl bothe clerkes hadden seid here wylle,
and tyl the dispetesoun was al j-do
er that⁷ony of hem wolde thennes go.

So that there aqweyntawnce they took,
and neuere there-aftyr hit forsook.

Thanne whanne al this was thus j-don,
merlyne to these two kynges gan to gon,
and seide: "3e ben lordis bothe goode & trewe;
my Lord kyng Arthewr hath sweche to fewe.
beholdeth now my lord and kyng, ful sikerle,
For he 3oure Sovereyn and lord moste be,
and of hym 3oure rem to holden vnder gage,
and him to don bothe Fewte & homage,
and he schal 3oure Socowr and helpe be
agens alle 3oure enemyes, Sykyrle."

"Now, merlyne, telle vs, we preyen the,
jn what maner he was chosen kyng to be,
and 3if that Antron wyste, verraylly,
kyng vter pendragoness sone he were, trewely."

"3e, Sires," quod merlyne, "with-owten lesyng,
that was þe cawse he is chosen kyng.

and of his Eleccioun, with-owten dwere,
they konnen beren witnesse þat ben here,
bothe therchebisschope & vlphyn also;
bothe konne they seyn how hyt gan go."

"merlyne," quod the kyng thanne,

"We holden the for a ful trewe manne;

perfore we wolden preyen the for thi lordis sake
of on thyng vs sewr forto make;

And For A trewe man We Knowen the, sekyrlye,
and for non erthely good thou wylt not lye."

"A," quod merlyne, "3e wolden that j swore
that hit were trewe þat j tolde 3ow to-fore."

thanne gonnen these kynges to lawghen anon:
Swyche on knewe they neuere but hym alon.

9712

9716

9720

9724

9728

9732

9736

9740

9744

The two wise
men become
great friends.

Afterwards
Merlin asks
the visiting
kings

to become
Arthur's
vassals.

These inquire
about Ar-
thur's elec-
tion, and if
he is really
king Uter's
son.

Merlin says
he is,

and refers
to the arch-
bishop and
Ulfen.

The kings
want Merlin
to make them
sure of one
[leaf 125 b]
thing.

Merlin
divines that
they wish
him to swear
to his previ-
ous state-
ment.

9712. *hadden*, the first *d* through correction.

9713. *was*, *f* added afterwards. 9718. MS. *ganto*.

9730. *fone* added above the line.

9731. *merlyne*, the final *e* blurred.

9741. *we* crossed out before *man*.

Merlin is
willing,

but puts it
off till the
next day.

All go to bed,

the kings,
the arch-
bishop,
Guinebant,
and Merlin,
in the same
chamber.

Thanne seide merlyne to hem ageyn :

"what ȝe so me axen, j schal tellen ȝow, pleyn." 9748

So that respyt they tooken that nyht,

Tyl vppon the morwen hit was day lyht.

thus they departyd here cownseyl thanne,

and to bedde they wenten EVERY manne. 9752

thanne jnto on chambre wente that meyne :

thre kynges, þe bisschope, Guinebant, & merlin in coun-
peyne ;

For departen wolden they jn non weye,

and namly pis clerk Guinebant & merlyne, jn feye. 9756

For a gret clerk held hym this merlyne,

as aftyr this storye reporteth wel and fyn.

Chap. X.

Next morn-
ing, when the
bells ring for
service,

Merlin calls
the kings.

They dress,
and go to the
cathedral,

There Merlin
swears on the
Sacrament
that Arthur
is king Uter's
son

and rightful
heir.

Thanne to bedde these kynges wenten ful sone,

and alle these meyne everichone, 9760

and slepten on the morwe tyl hyt was day,

Tyl that to Servysse they rongen, jn fay ;

For abowtes halewen-tyd tho hit was,

whanne tyme they weren jn that plas. 9764

thanne cam merlyne to hem anone,

& pere two wyndowes he openede thussone,

For he wolde som lyhte that there were

hem onestely to arayen with there. 9768

so that they hem dilite, & gonne to gon

to the chef mynstre thanne anon.

there therchebisschope the masse dyde Synge,

and at pat masse merlyne, with-owten lesynge, 9772

Swor on the sacrement jn that place

that kyng Artheur kyng vterpendragones sone was,

and that on Ygwerne begeten was he

the same nyht þe dewk was slayn, Sykerle— 9776

"So that he is the moste ryhtful eyr

That to this lond cowde repeyr."

9747. *seide*, the first *e* blurred.

9758-59. Between these lines there is a blank corresponding to about eighteen lines. Similarly between ll. 10080-81, 10174-75 10258-59, &c.

9776. The *n*-mark in darker ink.

the same oth Sire Vlphin swoor,
Ek sire bretel, sire kay, that weren thoor.

9780 Ulfen and
Bretel take
the same
oath.

Whanne these two kynges herdyn al this,
that this sewrawnce thus was mad, j-wys,
anon to kyng Arthewr they deden homage,
as to a worthy kyng of hygh parage.

9784 Then Ban
and Boors do
homage to
king Arthur,

kyng Artheur hem resceyvede debonowrly,
and for Joye he wept ful tendirly,
and there he hem kyste ful often-sythe,
For of tho kynges he was ful blythe.

9788 who weeps
for joy
and kisses
them.

Thanne to halle Every man wente,
And thankyd God With good entente,
where as here mete was redely dyht,
For kynges, erleȝ, barouns, and knyht.

9792 All return to
the hall,
[leaf 125 c]
where a meal
is ready.

and whanne that this mete was j-don,
thanne to counseyl wenten they anon,
merlyne and the thre kynges jn fere,
Vlphyn, Bretel, & ek Sire kay was there.
thanne to hem seide there merline anon :
“ ȝe ben trewe men pat here ben echon,
For that j knowe as wel as ȝe
that Syker alle trewe men ȝe be.

9796 After the
meal the
kings go to
counsel.

Beholdyth here now ȝoure Lord & kyng,
this worthy sire Artheur, that is so ȝyng !
and ȝe knowen wel that haterede hath he
of his Baronage, ful Sykerle,
that hym nelen don homage ne Servyse,
as that they owhten be many a wyse,
But with hym thus werre they holde.

9800 Merlin, com-
mending the
faithfulness
of Arthur's
counsellors,

there-fore j preie ȝow many folde
that aftyr my counseill ȝe wolden don,
and good counseille j schal ȝeven ȝow son.”
and they hym answeyrd, with ryht good wyll
what so he seyde they wolden fulfyll.

9804 and remind-
ing them of
the barons'
hostility,

9808 ask them to
follow his
advice.

9812 They promise
to do so.

“ Thanne, Lordynges, wylen ȝe vndirstonde
that here kyng Arthewr is kyng of this londe,

“ Well then,”
snyis Merlin,

9788. *kynges*, *f* added afterwards.

9792. *kyges*, *y* through correction.

- "King Ar-
thur here has
no wife.
I know of
a beautiful
princess,
and that non wyf haueth now he ;
wherfore j knowe on, ful sykerle, 9816
that is bothe comen of kyng & qwene,
and a Fairere mayden han 3e not sene,
only daughter
of the old
king Leode-
gan of Tar-
melid (p. 217), and is dowghtyr to kyng Leodegan
of Tarmelyde, ryht a worthy man. 9820
and no mo children now hath he
but only this lady, ful Sykerle.
more ouer an old man js that kyng,
and called
Gonnore, and Gonnore hyhte that mayden so 3yng ; 9824
therto Eyr schal sche ben aftyr his day.
Leodegan has
a powerful
enemy,
king Rion of
the Giants. but gret werre he hath, with-owten delay,
with on kyng Ryoun of Geauntes lynage,
a myhty man & a riche & of gret parage. 9828
and he conqwere kyng leodegan,
kyng Artheuris lond next him lyth than.
For 3if that Tarmalide conqwerid be,
thanne schal neuere kyng Arthewr, sykerle, 9832
his lond ja pes thanne non whyles holde
For this kyng Ryown that is so bolde.
and 3if pat the knyhtes of pe Rownde table ne hadde be,
kyng leodogan his lond hadde lost, ful Sykerle. 9836
therfore this were now myn cownsaylle,
that thyder 3e wente, with-owten faylle,
with kyng Arthur jn this manere
as thowh alle Sowdeours pat 3e were, 9840
and there a 3er oper two forto abyde,
his aqweyntaunce to geten the same tyde.
For non whylle scholen 3e there not be,
that he wel schal 3ow loven, Sekerle, 9844
better thanne hem pat with him now ben,
and that ryht sone scholen 3e now sen.
and j vndirtake for kyng arthur here
that to him he schal ben so leef & dere, 9848
that his dowhter he schal hym 3yve to wyve
and Eyr of that lond aftyr his lyve.
For anon as weddyd thanne he js,
anon the jeauntes scholen han knoweng, j-wys ; 9852

King Arthur
will marry his
daughter,

9825. *schal* twice, the former crossed out in darker ink.
9837. *cownsaylle*, *a* corrected from *e*.

and from that day forward, with-owten lye,
the jeauntes doren not abyden, trewelye,
not be a gret jorne there abowte ;
This is ful trewe, with-owten dowte."

Thanne Answerede Anon Kyng Ban,
and to merlyne seyde he there than :

"my leve frend, j schal tellen the :
what aventure scholde thanne this be
Now to forsaken oure owne lond,
Lyke ju werre as hit doth stond ?
how scholde we thanne taken on pere,
with hem that on vs don so werre
and oure londis distroyen & brenne ?
wers wylen they don, and we ben thenne.
For but 3if we ju owre lond abyde,
hit wyle vs hyndren ju Every tyde,
but 3if that kyng artheures barowus here
oure londis to sosteyne, & we not there.
and ful gret peryl now hit Js,
other men oure londes to defendyn, j-wys."

"A, Sire," quod merlyne to the kyng tho,

"to me 3e speken, as 3ow lyst forto do.

but j 3ow Enswre, ful certeynlye,
that and 3e there lesen on penyne,
two hundred therfore scholen 3e gete,
and of this j dar 3ow wel behete.

For ther ne schal comen jnto 3owre contre
distroccioun nethir to town ne cyte,

while 3e ben ju kyng Artheures presens ;
J schal 3ow waranten ful Syker defens.

and there a ryal rewyn scholen 3e wynne,
and therto al the Lordschepis pat ben with-jinne,
that this Lond defenden schal evere with-al
vndistroyed, and lasten for ay & fynal."

thanne answerede kyng Ban to merlyn anone,
and there to hym he seyde thus sone :

"We the knowen for man ful wys ;

J schal the Seyn now myn avys.

and the
Giants will
be kept in
awe for all
future."

9856

[leaf 125 d]

King Ban
replies :

9860

"My dear
friend, how
can we leave
our own land,

beset, as it is,
by enemies ?

9864

For they will
do still more
harm if we
are absent—

9868

unless Ar-
thur's barons
sustain it,

9872

which, how-
ever, is a
perilous
thing."

9874

Merlin as-
sures them
that they will
gain two hun-
dred times
more than
they will
lose :

9880

none of their
towns will be
destroyed,

9884

but they will
win a king-
dom.

9888

The kings are
convinced,

9862. *doth, d* corrected from *f*.

9886. *Ere* crossed out before *ay*.

	Sethen hit is so as thou dost telle, Aftyr thy cownseylle don we wylle.	9892
ask when they are to start,	but telle vs now whanne we scholde wende, and we scholen pere-offen maken an ende.	
and want to send for their men.	and <i>perto</i> oure retenu scholen we calle, that they mown ben redy alle."	9896
"All be- times," says Merlin. "It will be at Mid Lent. But first we must have a battle with the barons.	"Al betymes," quod merlyne tho, "For hit schal be midlentine, er <i>pat</i> 3e go. and 3it er that 3e gon, <i>with</i> -owten faille, here moste we han a gret bataylle agens the barowns, that rysen ben kyng Artheur to werchen treye & teen. there-fore j wolde <i>pat</i> 3e anon ryhte to gete as moche meine as 3e myhte,	9900
Therefore call your troops,	and that 3e don hem loggen ful <i>prevylye</i> jn a fayr lawnde here faste bye, that js jn the Forest of Bredygum, there as that meyne neuer ne cam.	9904
station them secretly in a plain in the forest of Bredigam,	and dubblefold harm scholen they haue thanne ony of 3owre, 3e mown ben save."	9908
and the barons will have the worse."	Thanne there anon tho spak kyng Ban, and there to merlyne he seyde than :	9912
King Ban asks if it can be done in time,	"3if <i>pat</i> for men jnto my lond j scholde sende, scholden they be tyme hidere to me wende?" "3e, certein, Syre," quod merlyne tho, "For ryht wel hyt may be do.	9916
Merlin offers to bring the men	and on this message, Sire, wyl j wende alle this mater to bryngen to an ende. For this message hastyd most hyt be agens the bataylle, sire, Sykerle, the whiche at candel-masse schal be-tyde the forest of Bredygum there be-syde. therefore 3oure meyne moste hasted be Hedyr Betymes to comen, Sekyrl.	9920
in time for the battle;	For they mosten Ryden bothe day & nyht this jorne to spede, and they don ryht. and wete 3e wel, the sothe forto preve, that j schal be there to morewen Er Eve."	9924
[leaf 126 a]		
they will have to ride day and night;		
as for him- self, he will be in Little Britain the next morn- ing.		9928

- and whanne the kynges herden this,
 here-offen they *merveilleden* sore, j-wis.
 thanne clepede merlyne kyng Artheur anon,
 and bad he scholde ordeygne forto be don
 bothe arblasteris and ek worthy seriawns
 to-gederis assemblen, with-owten varyans,
 the moste prevyeste wyse—"that they mown wende,
 and with hem plente of vitaylle that 3e sende
 jnto that lawnde that j haue 3ow told ;
 among to 3e peple departe hit manyfold.
 and that eche man for hym-self have
 vytailles for xv dayes, to kepen hym save,
 of mele and Salt flesch ek therto
 besiden *oper* vetaylles ; do 3e Ryht so."
 thanne lweans the Botelers and sire Gyrfles
 anon they pasten owt of that pres,
 Also Sire Vlphyn and Syre Bretel,
 whiche pat weren knyhtes bothe trewe & lel.
 Anon seyde merlyne to kyng Ban :
 "Sire, as 3e ben kyng and honest man,
 3oure Ryng to taken me jn this threwe,
 To 3oure cosin le-ownces that j myhte it schewe,
 that the bettere he myhte leven me
 of what thing that j hym telle fro the."
- 9932 The kings
marvel.

Merlin ad-
vises Arthur
to secretly
gather his
forces,

9936 and send pro-
visions for a
fortnight
to the said
plain.

9940

9944 Lucans and
others start
off at once.

9948 Then Merlin
asks king
Ban for his
ring (l. 9208),

9952 in order to be
believed the
better.

9956 The kings
are greatly
astonished
that their
secret should
be known,

9960 and Ban
exclaims :
"Marvel no
more at this
man, for he
knows every
thing!"

9964

Then the
others say :
- thanne answerid they some ageyn :

9962. The line was omitted and then written up the right margin

"Let him
have the ring
and be gone.

"Sethen hit is so as that 3e seyn,
That 3e taken hym 3oure ryng anon,
and that he were forth past & gon.

9968

You shall
hear more
wonders
when he re-
turns."
Merlin con-
firms these
words,

for 3e scholen heren merveilleȝ mo,
whanne that he cometh 3ow agen vnto."
"Now, be myn hed," quod merlyne thanne,
"3e han seyde Ryht as a wys manne.

9972

and gets the
ring.
On his way,
he visits
Blasy,

For more of this scholen 3e han Encres,
thanne oni of 3ow kan seyn, with-owten les."
thanne delyverede him þe kyng his ryng anon,
and þer-with forth merlyne gan to gon,
and he Blaysie, his maister, he took þe weye,

9976

and of alle thinges tolde him, Sekerlye :
that jnto litel Breteignes he scholde go ;
of the message Eke he told him also ;

9980

who writes
down all
these things.

whiche that Blasye wrot in that throwe ;
and elles how scholde we hit knowe ?

Thus merlyne from Blase departed anon,
and forth on his message he gan to gon,
and dyde his message al in good tyme,

9984

Early next
morning,
he arrives at
Bainoik, and
delivers the
king's mes-
sage.

For he was þere he wolde er the morwen at pryne,
and tolde sire Leownces the kynges wyлле,
and the kynges ryng took hym vntylle.
there they beleved hym anon,
and deden al that was forto don,

9988

[leaf 126 b]

Troops are
gathered
from forty
miles around,

And senten Anon bothe fer and Ny,
and faire retenu to gaderen, trewly.
So that with-june fowrty myles abowte
thedyr they gadered with gret rowte,
so that they weren to-forn the cyte
viij dayes to-forn cristemasse, Sykerle ;

9992

9996

and keepers
are set in the
cities :

thanne good warde putten to þe townes alle
that to the tweyne kynges be riht schold falle.

in Gawnes,
a fair lady,

jn that on hold they putten a lady Bryht,
that worthy lady was and of gret myht :
the cyte of gawnes kepte sche thanne
and with hyre ful many a worthy manne.

10000

9974. *oni* added above the line.

9982. MS. *wel hit* (a begun l after *we*).

- Ek Phareens there *merlyne* preyde also
 that al his power he wolde do, 10004 assisted by
Fariens
(cf. Notes);
- and that he hym grawntyð, ful sekerly,
 juto al his power, ful vtterly.
 on the toper syde, jnto Baynoye cyte
 they putten a man of gret degre, 10008 in Banoik,
sir Raier;
- Sire raier, the Lord of Hawt mure,
 a worthy knyht and vaillaunt, j 3ou ensure.
 and jn the castel of Trebes
 they putten Sire graciens, *with-owten* les, 10012 in Trebes,
sir Graciens
- the whiche was godson to kyng Ban.
 and jn that castel with him hadde he than
 Two sostren of Raynes, the worthiest
 knyht *pat pere* was he est oper west. 10016 with two
ladies;
- For it was the strengest castel
 of alle *pat* contre be many a del.
 and at mowntloyr, þe castel of kyng Boors,
 that was don kept with strengthe & foors : 10020 and in Mont-
loir, sir
Placides.
- Sire placydes, that was a worthy knyht,
 That castel he kepte bothe day & Nyht.

- And whanne alle these ordenaunces weren jdo,
merlyne with his meyne forth gan to go, 10024 These ar-
rangements
made, Merlin,
in a moon-
light night,
- and that was be the tyme of Nyht,
 For theke tyme the mone schon ful bryht.
 and *merlyne* condeyede hem the weye
 From alle enemyes, as he wel kowde, jn feye. 10028 conducts the
army to the
sea.
- and to the se he Browht hem ful sone ;
 there Faste to schepe gonne they gone.
 and kyng Arthewr, vppon the toper syde
 To bataille hym arayede the same tyde, 10032 Meanwhile
Arthur makes
secret pre-
parations.
- also *prevyly* as he cowde thazne do.
 So that moche peple him cam vnto :
 bencheson of tho 3iftes grete
 that he hem 3af, they wolde not lete. 10036 His liberality
and his fame
attract great
numbers.
- Also oper peple to hym comen that throwe,
 For that they wolden kyng Artheur knowe ;
 ek other peple hym kam forto se

	For that they herden of his gret bownte.	10040
	So that whanne to-gederis j-sembled they were,	
Ten thousand horsemen,	x thousand on horsbak redy they were ;	
	For foot-men thedyr wolde he non haue,	
	for his meyne and vytaille pat he wolde save.	10044
	and on þe toper syde there comen a-down	
and wagon- loads of pro- visions,	charyettes with vytaylle alle jn virown	
	evene aftyr merlynes ordenaunce ;	
	So was hit don, with-owten variaunce.	10048
	and ful prevyly alle j-logged they were	
are quietly brought to Bredigam.	jn a lawnde besyde Bredigan there ;	
	For that was on the prevyest place	
	that jn that contre owher wace.	10052
All being assembled,	and whanne this was al j-do,	
	merveillously wrowht kyng arthur tho,	
[leaf 126 c]	whiche that merlyne Hyt plesed ful Wel,	
	whanne he hit knew, his wyt, echedel.	10056
	For anon as that they logged were,	
Arthur sets guards in the roads	alle the weyes be-sette he there,	
	that non man therby Scholde passe	
	jnto his lond, nethir more ne lasse,	10060
	but ȝif he were taken and to-forn him browht,	
	Er that ony jnto his rewm forthere sowht.	
to intercept spies,	For he kepte that non aspye	
	his rewm scholde Entren, trewelye,	10064
	For to certefyen his enemyes	
	what was his ordenaunce oper his devys.	
and forbids his own sub- jects to pass that way,	For there kyng Arthewr charged alle tho	
	that to hym belonged vnto,	10068
	that non man thyke pas scholde ryde,	
	tyl hyt were aftyr kandelmasse tyde ;	
	and ho pat dide azens his comandement,	
	To deth he scholde gon, verament.	10072
	So that styлле they helden hem every man,	
	where-offen þe comune peple merveylleden than.	
much to the wonder of the rustics.	So that thus prevyly this was wrowht,	
	& sauf þe kynges counseille wist non man nowht.	10076
	Now leveth this storye of this mater,	

10046. *with, h* squeezed in afterwards.

and aftyr of þe vj kynges hit speketh here,
that at carliown discomfyted were,
as þat to-forn tyme 3e han herd told here.

The dis-
comfited
kings (p. 226),

10080

Thanne here-aftyr Reherseth this Book,
ho so wele here there-aftyr look,

full of sad-
ness

what morneng that maden these vj kynges,
For they hadden so lost alle here thynges

10084

and al the harneis that they hadde,
and al that here meyne with hem ladde.

So that they sworn and maden affyance
there-on to ben avenged jnto þe vttrawnee ;

10088 and revenge,

For Er glad scholden ney neuere be,

Tyl they weren avenged, certeinle,

bothe of kyng Artheur & Ek on merlyn,

10092

the wheche they clepeden his devyn,

be whom they losten al here good ;

thus al amased homward they 3ood.

and for that somme myhten neþer riden ne go,

hom jn a leter weren they lad tho.

10096

so that smale Jornes forth they wente,

Tyl jnto here lond they comen presente.

so that they soiournede, tyl they hol were ;

& with-june a monthe a parlement hadden they there

jn a march that be-twene Engeland was

10101

and scotland, so that hit stood in þe middles of þe plas.

and this was the ende of the parlement,

that every man scholde don his entent

10104

And Senden abowte in-to eche contre

To alle here Frenschepis, where so they be,

and that [eche] of hem to othyr swere

redy forto ben with scheld & spere

10108

To dryven kyng Artheur owt of his lond,

and hit to Sesyn jnto here owne hond.

So that they token day of assemble

that ost to-gederis forto be

10112

Jn a feld besydes Bredygam ;

thus herto assentyd every man.

When their
wounds were
healed, they
held a parlia-
ment ;

there they
resolved to
gather forces

[leaf 126 d]

against Ar-
thur

and to meet
at Bredigam.

	Thanne thus departyd the parlement.	
	Anon Every man abowtes faste sent,	10116
Now there arrive, with thousands of men, the duke of Cambeny,	So that to hem repeyrede there anon the dewk of cambenye & othyr manyon. Fyve thousende men he browhte with hym, that jn bataylle weren bothe stowt & grym.	10120
the king of North Wales,	thanne cam there forth Tradelynaws, that kyng of Northgales tho he was, with vj thousand of Fyhteng men.	
king Clarion,	and on þe tothyr partye come th[e] kyng clariouns then with thre thousand men also.	10125
the king of a hundred knights,	thanne þe kyng of .c. knyhtes cam tho, and with hym foure thousende he browhte.	
the king of Orkney,	thanne the kyng of orkanye owt hem sowhte wit[h] vij thousand jn his compenye.	10128
king Carados of Strangor,	and after hym carados of strangor faste gan hye, that vij thousand men of armes hadde	10132
king Newtris,	thanne cam kyng Newtris, & with hym ladde Sixe thousand men, that weren not badde.	
and king Ydiers of Cornwall.	hym Folewede kyng Ydyers of Cornewaylle with vj thousand men, with-owten faylle.	10136
They ride slowly through the country, and send out spies.	So that smale jornes they gonne to ryde The contre to Serchen jn that Tyde. thanne here aspyes abowte; faste they 3ood, to weten how hit with kyng Artheur stood.	10140
But there are captured by Arthur's guardsmen.	but they that þe march & the weyes kepte, Fulsone to these aspyes they lepte, and token hem, and to kyng Arthewr sente, & anon to presoun they ful sone wente,	10144
The kings arrive at Bredigam.	So that Tydynges agen boren they non. thanne jn here jorne forth gonne they gon, Tyl that they alle j-logged were vndir þe castel of Bredygam pere.	10148
Their for- agers find the land empty,	For thanne they wenden alle han wonne, certain, but hit was alto-gederis juveyn. thanne senten they here forreyerys jnto þat contre, but ful lytel fowndyn they, Sekirle ;	10152

10124. MS. *th Kyng.* 10129. MS. *wit* ; cf. footnote to l. 10046.
10134. MS. *Suxc.*

For al that good was lad before
 jnto castelis and jnto cites thore.
 this was wrowht be cownseyl of kyng Ban
 and Ek of kyng Boors, a ful wis man.

the goods
 having been
 brought into
 safe places.

10156

Whanne that they aspyden al this,
 that the contre thus was warned, j-wis,
 anon they Fireden, an goune to brenne,
 and al the contre distroied thanne.

They then
 begin to burn
 and destroy.

10160

So that owt of here owne Lond they hadden vetaylle,
 as hit scheweth here with-owten Faille ;
 So that of vytaille they hadden plente,
 as For swich a tyme hit longed forto be.

But they
 must send
 home for pro-
 visions

10164

and whanne to-gederis was al this semble,
 Fowrty thousand weren acounted, certeinle,
 of clene pyked men to fyhte,
 ek worthy werroures and of gret myhte.

for the 40,000
 men.

10168

Thus endeth here now of here gaderyng,
 and speketh how merlyn browht to Arthewr pe kyng
 Socour and helpe owt of lytel Breтайngne,
 as here-after scholen 3e heren, jn certeigne,
 and what meyne pat merlin with him browhte
 owt of litel breteigne, where he hem sowhte.

In the mean-
 time Merlin,
 with his rein-
 forcements
 out of Little
 Britain
 (p. 267),

10172

Forthere tellyth this Storye here
 how jn litel Breteygne merlyne spedde there,
 what be Leownces of Paerne, j vndirstond,
 and Sire Fariens, and Antony of pat lond,
 that of Baynoye tho steward was.

[leaf 127 a]

10176

alle to the port comen they in that plas,
 and jnto here Schepis they Entred anon ;
 thanne jnto grete breteigne sone goune they gon.

10180

embarks for
 Great Britain.

and it is good reson that 3e vndirstonde
 why that hit was clepyd Breteigne Londe.
 j do 3ow to wetene here Every man
 that aftyr pe distroccioun of Troye, as j kan,

10184

The origin
 of the name
 of Britain
 is this :

After the
 destruction
 of Troy,

10158. *warned*, *w* through correction. 10160. MS. *distroied*.

10164. MS. *fwewich*.—*longed*, *g* roughly corrected from *d*.

10174-75. On the blank between these lines (at the top of column 127 a) there is written in a later hand: *where it is callyd brytō*.

two kings fled from there	hit behapped that two kynges departyd thenne For drede of greȝois, as this doth kenne, lest they wolden hem han slayn ; this caused these kynges forto gon thayn.	10188
with a large retinue.	These tweyne kynges with gret meyne thens departed ful hastyle,	10192
One of them was called Brute.	of wheche the ton Brewt he hyhte, that was bothe gentyl & worthy knyhte,	
He built a city, and named it New Troy.	that jn his lyve he bylte <i>with</i> gret joye a fair cyte, that was clepid new troye ; bencheson that owt of troye cam he, Troye was clepid that jlke cyte.	10196
The country was called Britain.	Ek the contre thanne clepyd hit was after Brewt Breteigne in that plas. thanne long aftyr, whanne Brewt was ded,	10200
One of his successors, Logrius,	anon kam there a kyng jn his steel, that Logryvs was his ryht name, a worthy man and of gret fame,	10204
improved the city greatly,	that mochel amendyd this cyte, bothe Towres and walles, Sykerle. and whanne thus amended was <i>pat</i> town, thanne wolde he ȝeven hit a Sewrnoun,	10208
and called it Logres.	and after Logryvs Logres cald hit he, that jn gret breteigne stont, Sykerle. So that this name dured forth, in feye, long aftyr that Artheur gan deye.	10212
After Ar- thur's time, a great plague	thanne aftyr the deth of lawncelot, that kyng Bannes sone was, wel j wot, hyt happede that a gret mortalyte jn that lond was after, certeinle, bothe of Barowns and <i>communes</i> also, that thike tyme deyden so tho.	10216
gave rise to the name of 'Blue Britain,'	and for pe grete Los that they hadden thazne, Bloye breteygne hit was clepyd of every manne. and why bloye, j preye now the ? leve sires, for this cause, parde :	10220

10195. *lyve* on erasure. 10200. *aft*, *t* added afterwards.10201. MS. *thanne* with an *n*-mark superscribed.10208. *thāne*, *-ne* through correction.

10218. This line was omitted and then written up the right margin.

10222. *caufe* on erasure.

For here hertes bothe blw and blak they were,
 eche man for here frendis dethis there, 10224 the people's
 hearts being
 blue and
 black with
 sorrow.
 that they losten be mischaunce and be synne ;
 thus every Frend from othir gan twynne.

Now haueu 3e herd declared, jn certaygne,
 why hit was clepyd the Bloye Bretaigne. 10228
 The tothyr prince that owt of troye cam,
 Hyghte Corynaws, a Ful myghty man.
 this corinaus was comen of Jeawntes lynage,
 a worthy knyht and of hygh parage. 10232 The other
 Trojan prince
 [leaf 127 b]
 was called
 Corinaus.

So that he aryvede fast by that contre,
 that thiike tyme the name breteigne scholde be.
 therto he was a merveyllous knyht,
 bothe long and strong and of gret myht. 10236 The country
 where he
 landed,

there arered he bothe townes and castel,
 Strongly j-byt & wondyrly wel ;
 and aftyr hym the lond he dide don kalle
 Cornwaylle jn breteygne of gret & smalle. 10240 and built
 townes,
 he called
 Cornwall.

So that thorwh hym comen jeauntes mo,
 that to Bretouns moche harme diden tho,
 as that here-aftyr now scholen 3e here
 to alle 3oure wyttes declared more clere. 10244 His descend-
 ants did the
 Britouns great
 harm.

of the merveilles that aftyr befalle,
 j hope to declaren to 3ow alle,
 3if that god wile granten me grace & myht,
 helthe of Body, and myn Eyen syht, 10248
 owt of Frensch jnto englysch now wyl j fonde
 hit to drawen, that 3e moun vnderstonde.

Therefore for herry Louelyche that 3e preye,
 that til this be endid, he may not deye, 10252 Therefore
 pray for
 Harry
 Lovelich,
 that he may
 live to com-
 plete this
 work.
 but lyven jn helthe and prosperite ;
 Now, good lord, grante hit moot so be.

Forth to my mater now wyl j pase
 of merlyne & his meine, pat jn the se wase, 10256 As for Merlin
 and his army,
 the whiche he browhte owt of lytel breteigne,
 as here-aftyr declared 3e scholen here more pleyne.

10224. *dethis, d* corrected from *t*.

10251. In the right margin, in another hand: *J henn' louelicñ
 fkyanner' þ' tranſlated þ' boke oute of frenſſhe in to englyſſhe at þe
 inflaunce of harry bartoũ.*

10254. MS. *grnte* with an *ra*-mark above the *r*.

10257. *Owt, t* squeezed in afterwards.

they land in Great Britain,	Thanne anon as a-ryved they were, vppon the se banke he bad hem there.	10260
truss up their harness,	thanne merlyne comanded Every man here harneys al forto trossen than ; For that he wolde For non thing that they maden non taryeng.	10264
march straight towards the camp at Bredigam,	But they holden here ryht weye Thyder as merlyn wolde hem gye, Tyl that to kyng Arthewr they comen ful ryht, there that he lay with al his myht. So that hym they foleweden alle, what so evere there-of myhte falle.	10268
and arrive there on the fifth day.	So that be the Fyfthe dayes ende To þe Forest of Bredygam gonne they wende, where as logged was Arthewr the kyng, that made gret joye of his comeng, and logged hem among his ost ful son, and amonges hem every day gan he to gon.	10272
After a week's rest,	thanne aftyr viij dayes j-rested they were, and merlyne here vetaylle departyd there amonges hem, er that he furtherere wente.	10276
Merlin says he will visit the three kings (fetch them from London). [leaf 127 c]	thanne seide he that he wolde veramente Gon visiten the thre kynges, where so they be, and how they ferde, to knowen & to se. Thanne Seyde Syre Vlphyn to Hym Anon :	10280
Ulfin warns him to be- ware of his enemies.	“merlyn, be war how that 3e gon, For they on the tothir syde don 3ow manace, 3if they mown geten 3ow jn ony place, that certainly 3e scholen be ded, and they mown 3ow geten jn ony sted.”	10284
Merlin reas- sures him,	“3e,” quod merlyne, “3it wyl j not werne that to these kynges j wyl ful 3erne. For of me geten they non power. And ek also amonges hem com j not ther, Tyl that j haue spoken with Arthewr the kyng : j ne schal maken non taryeng.	10288

10272. In the right margin, in a later hand : *bredygam forest.*10274. MS. *maden.*10283. *Vlphyn* added above the line ; over *y* there is a tag like the one over an *i*.10288. *3ow, w* squeezed in afterwards.

- and there-fore gouerne 3e wel this ost,
 that non man Jsswe, nethyr lest ne most. 10296
 For kyng Artheures enemyes jlogged be
 here vndyr Bredygam, ful certeinle,
 and Fowrty thousand of hem ben told,
 wel horsed men, hardy and bold, 10300
 and but xxv thousand men we haue ;
 there-fore we moste loken to kepen hem saue,
 and of hem that non j-lost there be,
 To this mater vs behoueth to se." 10304
- "Merlyne," quod Syre Vlphin thanne,
 "hit is bette 3e sende som other manne."
 "that schal j not," quod Merlyne tho,
 "For that arende my-self best kan do 10308
 and hem to bringen jn Savete,
 that non of here enemyes hem schal se."
 "thanne goth 3e forth in goddis name,
 and he 3ow kepe from angry & blame."
 thanne from hem he wente ful sodeynlye,
 that they ne wyste whanne, trewelye.
 so that they hem blesseden everichon,
 that so sodeinly he was from hem gon. 10316
 A3en to the ost wenten they thanne,
 and there they charged Every manne
 that owt of his tente they scholde not pase,
 but prevyly to kepen hem jn that plase. 10320
 So that fowre dayes contenned this,
 & pat of pe iij kynges non word they herden, jwys,
 Nethir of merlyn neuere the mo.
- For streyht to londone gan he go 10324
 and, as this storrye reporteth here,
 on the morwe er Evensong was he there,
 where that he fond the kynges al thre.
 and they weren ful hevy, Sykyrle, 10328
 For so sodeinly amongis hem comen he was,
 that they ne wysten owt of wheche plas.
 and whanne they wisten that hyt was he,
 gret joye they maden, ful certeinle. 10332
 thanne axeden they hym how he hadde sped,

and asks him
to take good
care of the
army in the
meantime,

the enemies
being 40,000

against
25,000.

Ulfin still
advises Mer-
lin to send
somebody
else,
but Merlin
perseveres.

Ulfin asks
him to go
with God.

Merlin
disappears
suddenly.

The army is
ordered to
remain in
their tents.

Merlin goes
straight to
London,

and appears
suddenly to
the kings.

- and seyde : "wel in Every sted !"
 and bad hem, faste that they scholde hye
 To here ost, that hem Bod, trewelye. 10336
- Merlin asks
the kings
to join their
army.
- Thanne seide kyng Ban To merlyn :
 "bien owre Socours comen wel & fyn ?"
 "that they ben, Syre, ful trewelye,
 and kyng Artheuris host ben logged faste bye 10340
 ju the lawnde besydes Bredygam ;
 there ben they logged Every man.
- He tells them
that the
auxiliaries
have arrived.
- but on the tothyr syde moche peple there js,
 Ten kynges corowned, with-owten mys, 10344
 and ju here compenye a dewk also,
 and xl thousand men they hauen & mo."
 "For oure help now be god," quod Antron,
 "For mochel mischef toward vs gyzneth gon." 10348
 "3e," quod merlyne to hym ryht thanne,
 "as that j am now kyng Arthewris manne,
 and be the oth that j haue hym j-do
 and ek to my maister Blasye also : 10352
 be goddis helpe, and that j kan don,
 To evel Ende schal j hem bringen echon.
 For so moche to Done J schal Hem make,
 that they ne scholen weten how on to take. 10356
 but gret Bataylle schal there be,
 and gret occisiown, ful Sykerle.
- The enemies,
although
numerous,
- but on oure side ne schal not dye
 Not passing iiij score, vtterlye. 10360
 and on here syde deyen thier schal
 be thowsendis & hundredis of gret & smal.
 therefore aparaylle 3ow ryht anon,
 that after Sowper we myhten hens gon, 10364
 and for Every man foure dayes vytaylle,
 For Ellis be the weye scholen 3e faille."
- Merlin
assures,
- shall be dis-
comitted,
[leaf 127 d]
- without the
kings losing
more than
eighty men.
- The kings
must start
the same
night,
with pro-
visions for
four days.

10334. *in Every ft* on erasure ; dashes before *in* and after *Every* to fill the blank.

10339. *ful, f* through correction.

10347. *help* added above the line.

10352. *maist* added above the line.

10356. MS. *onto*.—*take, t* blurred.

10362. *thowsendis, w* through correction.

Anon as they vndirstodyn this,
 Ful faste they hem ordeyned, j-wys. 10368 The kings
 and whanne this thing was ordeyned & do, get ready,
 thanne anon to Sowper gommen they go. and have
 And whanne they Supped hadden Echon, their supper.
 thanne axede kyng Arthewr merlyne anon 10372
 3if that armen they scholde hem thanne.
 and merlyne answered & seide: "neuere a manne,
 For hit wolde 3ow greven 3oure harneys to bere, They are told
 Tyl jnto 3owre ost that 3e comen there. 10376 by Merlin
 For 3e scholen neuere dreden of non man ; to carry no
 swich a weye j 3ow leden now kan." arms,
 as the way
 will be a safe
 one.

So whanne that alle j-Supped they hadde,
 Every man to chambre wente ful gladde, 10380
 and warme he lappede for the cold, Warmly
 that non deseyse ne scholden hem hold. dressed,
 and as hit was the wylle of god almyht, 10384
 the mone schon thorwh-owt al the Nyht. by brilliant
 thussone alle forth gonne they gon tho, moonlight,
 pe thre kinges, merlyne, & Antron also. they start on
 and forth they redyn al that nyht, their journey
 tyl that hit was agens day lyht. 10388
 So that they comen Jnto a forest, and ride all
 there they alyhteden bope lest & mest, night.
 and eten Swich vetaylle as they browhte, Then they
 So pat eche man be oper ful merye thowhte. 10392 alight in a
 and whanne that they hadden eten Echon, forest,
 the kynges & merlyne to counseil gonne gon. and have
 "Sire, weten 3e, Artheur, what j wold mene ? breakfast.
 But ryht a 3ong man of armes 3e bene, 10396
 and therto a gret Rewm forto meyntheigne.
 Now vndirstonde 3e what j schal seyne :
 Somme of 3oure barowns with 3ow they be
 and also a parcel of 3owre comunealte ; 10400
 that maketh 3owre giftes, ful sekerly,
 whiche 3e han 3oven ful plentevosly.
 and perfore 3if that Evere large 3e were
 of giftes to 3even bothe fer & Nere, 10404
 J 3ow now charge that large 3e be

the import-
 ance of great
 liberality,

- Of alle of 3oure 3iftes jn eche degre.
 For mennis hertes geten 3e neuere, trewely,
 So wel as be grete 3iftes, pleynly. 10408
 For therto jnowgh now scholen 3e haue,
 As mochel as 3e wilen axen other crave.”
- “weteth wel, Syre, and vndirstond
 that gret Tresowr js jn this lond ; 10412
 but vnknewen to 3ow schal hit be,
 Tyl that from bataylle 3e comen, sikerle.
 and perfore that 3e marken wel this place,
 whanne alle thy Bataylle j-don thou hase.” 10416
 thanne ladde he him forth to a welle,
 where a tokene he made, as j 3ow telle,
 So that they merveilleden, þe kynges echon,
 of swich thing as merlyne hadde pere don, 10420
 and Ek they merveilleden pere also
 of swich thing as merlyne tolde hem tho.
- thanne jn here weye they gonme to ryde,
 For there nolden they non Lengere abyde. 10424
 So Ryden they forth bothe day and nyht,
 that of hem ne restede neuere a wyht,
 tyl that they comen to Bredygam,
 where as was logged many a man. 10428
 So that kyng Arthewr was logged there
 be a passyng fayr welle and clere ;
 and So gret foyson the water owt ran
 evene thorw the Lawnde to everich a man. 10432
 therto the wedyr ful cold was there,
 For hit was jn the month of jeneuere,
 viij dayes to-forn the kandelmasse ;
 that tyme shortly forsothe hit wasse. 10436
 and there rested they hem two dayes be-dene,
 here harnais to dresen and maken clene,
 thanne to hem kam merlyne anon,
 & seide : “on 3oure enemyes now mown 3e gon, 10440
 and deyseth now perfore amonges 3ow here
 ho þat to-forn schal gon 3owre meyne to lere.
 For jn swich a manere scholen 3e gon,
 that of hem alle schal weten neuer on, 10444

in order to
win the
hearts of the
people.

Arthur will
have enough
to give,

for there is
a treasure
hidden close
by.

They go to
a well,
and mark
that spot.

Then they
continue their
[leaf 128 a]
ride,

and eventu-
ally arrive at
Bredigam.

King Arthur
encamps near
a clear well
with abun-
dant water.

The weather
is cold.

After two
days,

Merlin
advises the
kings to pre-
pare a sudden
attack,

- Tyl that Eueue on hem that 3e falle
 jn þe dirk morweneng, Er ony man calle.
 For 3if that aparcerveyed there 3e be,
 a3ens hem mown 3e not stonden, sikerle. 10448
 and doth thus, & haueth non drede,
 For a3ens 3ow scholen they han but lytel spede."
- Thanne eche man harneysede hym anon
 Jn armes to Bataylle forto gon. 10452
 and the vwarde hadde sire kay
 with kyng Arthewris baner, jn fay,
 and with hym knyhtes bothe stowt & feers :
 Sire gifle3 & sire lucawns the Botelers, 10456
 Marvg de la roche & Gwynaus the bloys
 with dryaunt of þe forest savage & belyas Amorroys,
 Ek with hem forth paste Flawndrys the bres ;
 these viij forth pasten, with-owten ony les, 10460
 and with hem foure thousand jn compenye,
 the vomwarde to gouernen, ful Sykirlye.
 The secund warde hadde Sire Bretel,
 a worthy werrowr ful strong and lel ; 10464
 and thre thousand with him he ladde,
 alle goode men and neuere on badde.
 The thrydde warde there ladde tho
 Sire Vlphyn, that jn armes mochel cowde do ; 10468
 and in his compenye kyng Arthewr was there
 with many a brown vndir that Banere,
 and with hem fowre thousand jn compenye
 of worthy Bodyes, an j schold not lye, 10472
 that neuere here lord nolden faillen there,
 tyl that to þe deth j-browht they were.
 thus eche warde thanne took his way,
 and forth they wenten, Er hit were day, 10476
 and merlyn to-fore, the weye to lede,
 Rydyng vppon a stalworthy stede.

to be carried
 out early next
 morning.

Preparations
 are made.

Sir Kay,
 with king
 Arthur's
 banner,
 takes the
 vanguard,
 consisting
 of many
 knights

and 4000 men.

Sir Bretel
 takes the sec-
 ond division,

Sir Ulfyn,
 the third,

in which is
 also king
 Arthur.

They set out,

Merlin lead-
 ing the way.

Aftyr this devisede kyng Ban his Meyne,

After come
 the forces
 of Ban
 and Boors :

10447. *aparcerveyed*, the second *a* corrected from *e*.

10452. *Bataylle*, *t* blurred. 10457. *Marey* through correction.

10464. *and*, *d* squeezed in afterwards.

	and ek his brothir king Boors, ful sekerle,	10480
Sir Fariens, with king Boors' ban- ner, com- mands the first division,	So that to sire pharens taken they pe ferste warde vndyr kyng Boors baner to ben here garde, and with hym that tyme forth pere wente Sire ladmas with riht good entente,	10484
	and sire moret de laveye forth jn that pres, Syre graciens the Bloys & pales Trebes with Blyobers & sire melidyaus in compenye, and with hem Sire madevs jn gret hye.	10488
	So that thre thowsend with him wente Of Ryht goode Bodyes, Veramente.	
[leaf 128 b] Sir Leonces, the second,	the secunde warde of kyng Ban Sire Leownces of Paerne ladde than,	10492
	and with him foure thousand ladde he of goode bodyes jn his compeyne.	
king Boors, the third,	the thrydde wyng ladde kyng Boors, that of non werre took he non fors,	10496
	with fowre thousand j-armed owt ryht, that evere weren redy forto fyht.	
and king Ban, the fourth,	the Fourthe Bataylle ladde kyng ban, Jn alle degrees a ful worthy man,	10500
Sir Liane, his steward, carrying his banner.	and his baner he took forto bere To sire lyawne, his steward, there, and foure thousand jn his compenye with hym bothe forto lyven & dye.	10504
	and whazne that aH redy they were, an esy pas they pasten forth there.	
They ride quietly forth in the still moonlight night.	and hit was tho past the mydnyht, And <i>perto</i> pe mone schon ful bryht.	10508
	Ek therto pe wedyr was ful style, Ful preve & esy at here owne wylle.	
	Now of this sesyth this storye,	
In the mean- time, some Irish kinges,	and to hem of yrlond hit doth now hye, and of the kynges that to hem marched be, as here-aftyр scholen 3e heren and se.	10512
Brangors,	Now cometh hit here to Remembraunce, that kyng Brangors, with-owten variance,	10516

and kyng margans, with hym there was,		Margans, and nine others,
Ek kyng hardybrans jn that plas,		
and with hem kyng Amynadas,		
that vnle to kyng Augwys was,	10520	
whiche vter pendragon browht in bale		
and him Slowhe, as reherset this tale—		
and whanne they herden telle <i>pat</i> the Barowns		hearing of Arthur's campaign,
here londes hadden left and garysouns,	10524	
and to kyng Artheur comen they were		
jn his werres to helpyn him there,		
thanne these xj kynges jn fere		
moche peple to-gederis gadered there,	10528	gathered an army,
So that they hadden thrytty thousand men		
on horsbak with hem to Ryden then,		
with-owten Footmen gret plente,		
and the contre distroyede, ful sekerle,	10532	devastated his country,
and slown the peple, and deden owtrage,		
and jn that Lond dyden ful gret damage.		
For <i>euer</i> as they reden, they stroyed down ryht,		
therto they ne leften on lyve non wyht.	10536	
and to pe castel vandalyer in Cornewaylle		laid siege to a castle in Cornwall,
they leyden a sege, with-owten faylle ;		
and neuere remeved myhten they be,		and could not be removed,
Tyl thedyr cam kyng Artheur, ful sikirle.	10540	until Arthur himself came [leaf 128 c]
But Whanne Kyng Arthewr Herde of al this,		thither after his reconciliation with his opposers (Ch. XXIX).
and the kynges that with hym weren, j-wys,		
So whanne that acordyd they weren Echon,		
Fulsone on here weye thanne gonne they gon.	10544	
but no more tellith this mater now here,		
Tyl that to kyng Arthewr don we pere,		As for Arthur and his allies
and of merlyne, and to kyng Ban,		
and of kyng Boors, how they spedden than :	10548	
how jnto Bataylle that they gonne gon,		
Azens the xj kynges that weren here fon,		
that remeved weren to Bredyan,		at Bredigan,
The wheche atte Sege pere lyen than.	10552	

10525. *kyng* twice, the former crossed out.10530. *horsbak*, o blurred.10551. *Bredyan*, r corrected from e.

	Thus here Reporteth this Storye	
they march to attack,	how that kyng Arthewr his ost gan gye and the kyng Ban his bataylles also agens the xj kynges forto go.	10556
unknown to the opposing kings,	But these xj kynges wysten non thyng of kyng Artheures ordenaunce ne of his comeng ; So that xyht to bedde wente Every man, For of kyng Artheur rowhten they not than.	10560
who all sleep in the tent of the King of a Hundred Knights.	but hit happede wel that xyht, that pe xj kynges to-gederis j-plyht with the kyng of an hundred knyhtes were, For drede of non man hadden they there.	10564
There king Loth dreams of a great wind,	jn the mene whyle that they Slepten so, kyng loth jn a wondyr drem fyl tho : hym throwhte that so gret a wynd pere was, so merveillous and boystows, jn that plas,	10568
with thunder,	that houses and clochers hit threw adown, and aftyr of thondyr he herde a gret sown, that hym throwhte al the world, j-wys,	
earthquake,	hit astoned & qwook for drede of this. and aftyr him throwte, 3yt say he more :	10572
and inundation,	a gret passyng water that was thore, that alle the howseng it bar a-down, and dreynte the peple jn virown ;	10576
endangering also his own lite.	& hym-Self in peryl hym throwhte he was There to ben persched jn that plas.	
	Jn this maner dremede Sire loth, the kyng,	
When he awakes, he wonders at his dream,	and sone after he fyl jn wakyng. and of his dreme he wondrede, j-wys ; he gan hym blesse, & seide : " what meneth this ? "	10580
and tells his retinue of it.	and to his meyne he wente anon, and tolde hem of his avisoun.	10584
They ask where he saw the sight.	thanne axeden they hym anon ryht jnto what party he Say that Syht.	
He says it came from the forest.	and he seide, from the Forest syde, that thens hyt kam, him throwhte pat tyde.	10588
Then they declare that it forebodes a battle ;	thanne seiden they, with-owten faylle that with-jinne schort tyme to hauen bataylle. thanne eche man awok oper anon,	

- So that to armes faste gonne they gon,
and awoken alle here compenye,
Forto serchen the contre gonnen they hye.
with this the bataylles togederes were,
the xj kynges and Artheur jn fere.
So that merlyne hastyd forth more meyne,
That to-gederis they metten, ful Sykirle,
they that the contre Serchen scholde
and Artheurs meyne, hos wol oper nolde,
To-gederis they weren, er they jt wyste,
and merlyn to-fore rod for truste.
and whazne kyng lothis meyne say this,
So moche peple pere armed, j-wys,
they axeden of him that rod tofore,
what peple it js, was armed thore.
Merlyne seide : " Arthewris meyne ;
this lond to chalange hider comen we
azens hem that him don defende
his lond to entren, Er than they wende."
- anon as they thanne this worde herde,
azen ful faste Bakward they ferde.
and whanne to the ost they comen ageyn,
Anon thanne they gonnen cryen & seyn :
" Treson, Treson amonges vs now js,
and falsly we ben betrayed, j-wys.
as armes now bothe bacheler & knyht,
For 3e hadden neuere more nede to fyht."
So that every man to his harneys Sowhte,
but sone jn gret deseisse weren browhte.
3it of on thing hit happede hem wel :
that here hors weren sadelyd eche del.
but so sore j-hasted neuere they were,
as as theke tyme they weren there.
and whazne that harneyssed they weren echon,
a wondir aventure Fyl hem yppon :
merlyne swich a wynd amonges hem sente,
- 10592 [leaf 123 d]
they arm,
wake their
comrades,
and ride out
to search the
country.
Thus parts
of the two
armies
collide.
- 10596
- 10600
- 10604 King Loth's
men call out :
"What peo-
ple is this?"
- 10608 Merlin
replies :
"Arthur's
men; we come
to challenge
this land!"
- 10612 Then Loth's
men fly back,
- 10616 and alarm
the camp.
- 10620 All run for
their arms,
- 10624 their horses
standing
ready, with
the saddles
on.
- Now Merlin
sends them
a wind,

10592. *faste*, *t* almost obliterated.10615. The first *r* almost obliterated.10620. *gret*, *g* corrected from *d*.

which blows down their tents,	that hit down blew bothe pavylown and tente, and vpon here hedis hit Fyl a-down, So that they weren Encombryd echon. and <i>perto</i> the storm so strong there was,	10628
and prevents them from seeing one another,	that non man othir sawh jn that plas. and this distorblede hem wondyr sere, er that alle Fullich redy pey were, which that Tornede hem to gret damage	10632
whilst Arthur's men slay and destroy.	be Artheuris men, that dedyn owtrage, that Slownen and maden distrocciown of mochel of the meyne jn virown.	10636
The hostile kings flee into the field,	But the xj kynges that departed were, and jnto the pleyn feld weren fled for fere,	10640
and set a bush on fire to collect their men. Those who can escape the violence of Arthur's men,	they setten a busch on lyht Fere thenne, therby to hem to gaderen thanne. and so they deden, as they myhten gon, For of hem pyte Artheurs meyne hadde non, So that er they knewen the day lyht, thre part of here meyne weren slayn jn fyht. whanne they of the ost behelden al this, that agens hem was so mochel peple, j-wys,	10644
flee to their banners, where horns are being sounded.	Eche man fledde to his Banere, where as pe horn herde he sownen there. For these kynges to-gederis j-gadered were Fast by thentre of the forest there.	10648
Thus 20,000 men re- assemble; 10,000 flee,	So that lytel and lytel they gonne releve, Tyl xx thousand they myhte preve. and x thousand torned forto fle on dyvers partyes, ful Sykerle,	10652
and 10,000 are lying on the ground, [leat 129 a]	with weping, cryeng, and <i>with</i> gret mone, For the harm that they hadden echone. and x thousand atte grownde lay down ryht, What Slayn and maymed every A Wyht,	10656
unable to help or hurt.	that non other there Socouren ne may, Ne non man deseisen be Nyht and day.	10660

Whanne Artheur beheld, al this herbergerye

10634. *pey* added above the line.

10641. *flet*, *r* squeezed in afterwards.

10644. *Artheurs*, *A* through correction.

10650. *horn* added above the line. 10652. MS. *flafty*.

- was thus remeved, & so sodeynlye,
 To *Merlyn* kyng *Arthewr* cam anon,
 and axede of hym what he scholde don.
 “J schal 3ow telle,” quod *Merlyne* thanne,
 “3e moste now werken as a wys manne.
 vp to 3one passe 3e schole now gon,
 where as these *Meyne* be rested echon,
 xx thousand jn on compenye,
 and azens hem that thou fyhte manlye.
 and to 3ow schal comen jn *Socowreng* there
 kyng *Ban* and his *Brothyr* so dere,
 and from owt of the *Forest* scholen they gon.
 and whazne the tothir partye loketh hem vppon,
 So Sore abawed thanne scholen they be,
 that lytel defens jn hem *Scholen* 3e se.”
 thus Ech from othyr departyd thanne,
 and took *But* lytel reward of ony manne.
 So whanne they thus to-gederis mette,
 manye harde *Strokes* weren there sette
 with swerdis on helmes, and scheldes to-broke,
 and sperys al to-schatelyd, as seyth the boke.
 with that cam kyng *Ban* & kyng *Bors* also
 jn *socowreng* of kyng *Arthewr* tho.
 there myhte men *Se* knyhtes down throwe,
 and ful thykke jn the weye they lyen ful lowe,
 and al the *Feld* there *Blody* was,
 So moche peple was *Slayn* jn that plas.
 thanne *Syre Kay*, that on pas kepte,
 Ful angwyssowsly thedyrward he lepte
 with thre thousand jn his compenye ;
 azens xx thousand than gan he hye.
 and whanne the xj kynges on a rewe
 behelden hem-self so manye & pe toper so fewe,
 thanne sore aschamed weren they echon ;
 thussone began there gret *Bataylle* anon.
 Thanne so faste they to-gederis held
 Bothe with swerd, spere, and scheld,

10664 Then *Arthur*
asks *Merlin*
what to do.

10668 *Merlin*
replies :

“ You must
attack those
twenty
thousand ;

10672 *Ban* and
Bors shall
help you
from the
forest side.

10676 That will
throw them
into confu-
sion.”

10680 *Arthur's* divi-
sion makes
a violent
attack,

10684
10688 felling and
killing.

10692 *Sir Kay*
comes
with 3000
men.

10696 The hostile
kings,
ashamed at
the small
number
of the
assailants,
hold together
firmly,

10680. *But*, *B* corrected from *n*.

10684. MS. *alto schatelyd*. 10695. MS. *they*.

10699. *thane* crossed out before *they*.

That þe scheltrom onnethis brekyn th[e]y myhte ;
 So Sore the xj kynges gonnen to fyhte.
 but cannot endure long. but longe myhten they hit not endure,
 the stowr so strong was, j 3ow ensure. 10704
 Ulfín rides into the press. Thanne cam Vlphyn jn ryht gret haste,
 and thorwgh that meyne fulsone he paste.

And whanne with-june hem that he was,
 Ful sore he fawht there in that plas. 10708
 and so they cryde and so they ferde,
 that an hol myle the Noyse was herde.
 The din of the battle is heard a mile off. So that wondir strokes weren there set
 on scheldis and helmes, whanne they met, 10712
 and ek many man ded there was,
 and manye hors to grownde wente jn that plas.
 So that mochel harm was there do ;

Ulfín is unhorsed, and Vlphyn onhorsyd on grownde was tho. 10716
 Thanne Say Bretel his Brothyr on grownde,
 and ful faste he prekede thedyr that stownde.
 but though that Vlphyn on grownde were,
 3it he defendid him with his spere, 10720
 that no man dorste hym there comen ny ;
 So sore he fawht and so manly.

Bretel comes to his relief, whanne Sire Bretel sawh that hit was so,
 his hors with the spores thanne took he tho, 10724
 and him so sore he smot that Tyde,
 hym that on Vlphyn there dide abyde,
 that bothe hors and man there wente to grownde ;
 So sore he hym smot that ylke stownde. 10728

King Claioun rides against Bretel ; whanne kyng clariouns beheld that chevalrye,
 Ful angry he was and þerto ryht sorye,
 and a3ens Sire bretel he gan to ryde

[leaf 129 b] His felawe to socowren that ylke tyde. 10732

Bretel meets him ; Whanne sire Bretel Say hym come ryding so,
 a3ens hym faste he gan to go,

and they to-gederis sone metten jn fere,
 their shields are pierced, that bothe here scheldis thorwgh-persched were ; 10736
 So grete strokis & harde smyten they tho,

For worthy knyghtes weren they bothe two.
 So sore they fowhten, that hit was wondir,
 Tyl bothe here speris borsten on sondyr,
 10740 their spears burst,
 and bothe here scheldes flowen jnto þe feld ;
 Swich strokes there eche to oper gan zeld.
 and ȝit Sorrer to-gederis they mette,
 10744 they give each other heavy strokes with their sword-,
 for ech swich strokis on oper sette,
 here eyen hem thowhte out of here hedes wente ;
 So sore they fowten there, veramente.
 and therto so sore they astoned they ben,
 10748 the blood streams from their horses' sides
 and ek here hors, as they that hyt Syen,
 that they ronnen al there on blood ;
 So depe jn here syde the spores wood.
 and therto with fowndryng here hors also
 10752 and knees,
 on here knez non skyn beleften tho,
 So that hyt ran owt blood ful cler,
 as they in the weye reden ther.
 and so longe atte the grownd they lye
 10756 and eventually they lie in a swoon on the ground.
 and so fowle astoned there, trewelye,
 that they ne knewen nethyr day ne nyht ;
 So stronge to-gederis they weren jn fyht.
 So ferforth they wenden that hem beheld,
 10760
 that bothe hadden ben ded pere jn þe feld.
 So that on bothe partyes they comen ful blyve
 10764 Both parties come to rescue :
 To reskwen tho knyghtes and saven here lyve.
 For they wenden, ded that they hadde ben,
 10764 Sir Kay
 on bothe partyes, as they hem Syen.
 but whanne Sire kay this beheld,
 that Sire Bretel lay jn the feld,
 Thedyr he gan hym ful faste hye
 10768
 Sire Bretel to Socowren, Trewelye.
 Thanne thre kynges azens hym comen ryde
 10772 is encountered by three kings ;
 with gret anger, haterede, & with gret pryde ;
 with these azens kyng Arthewr they were
 what that they cowden with scheld oper spere.
 10772
 and þe toper xj kynges, verament,
 Ful harde they fowhten and with good entent,
 amongis whom Sire Gyrfeȝ beten he was
 10772 Sir Gyrfeȝ

10747. *ben* crossed out before *astoned*.10755. *fore* (?) crossed out before *longe*.

and Lucans are unhorsed ;	and Lweauns the Botelers jn that plas. Thanne kyng Brangors & kyng Ydyers as two kynges bothe stowt and Feers, ek kyng Augwyseax and kyng Vryens eche with oper rod forth jn presens.	10776 10780
there is a general tumult.	So that there began ful strong melle bothe partyes to reskwen, Sekerle. for Ful merveillous weren the strokes and stronge that thihe partyes weren there amonge.	10784
Kay puts Girles on King New- tris' horse,	So that with fyn fors and strengthe there, among alle the enemyes that pere were, there reskwed sire kay with strengthe & myht Sire girles, and horsyd hym anon ryht vyppon kyng Newtres, with-owten lye.	10788
and throws down king Loth with a trunchleon.	and <i>perto</i> kyng loth, ful certeynlye, with a tronchon of a spere was so bete, that sothely he wende his lyf to lete.	10792
The King of a Hundred Knights,	And jn this mene while there kam anon the kyng of an c knyhtes ful son and with hym xl knyhtes of prys, as he wolde chesen at his devys, the beste that weren jn his compenye amongis alle oper that he cowde dyscerye.	10796
seeing Kay's achievement,	and whanne pat he sawhe sire kay pere present, that kyng loth So hadde beten, verament,	10800
[leaf 129 c]	Wherfore ful sory He Was that tyde,	
rides against him,	and faste thedyrward he gan to ryde, and toward Syre kay he rood ful faste, whyles that the breth of his hors myhte laste, and there so sore to hym he rod, and non lengere there he ne abod,	10804
bears him to the ground,	and smot Syre kay so jn the Scheld, that down he fyl there jn the Feld,	10808
and leads his horse to king Loth.	and took his hors with-owten more, and to kyng Loth he ladde hit thore,	

10783. *for* added afterwards in the left margin.

10785. *strengthe*, *r* corrected from *c*.

10787. MS. *the*, corrected from *he*, *t* being added in front (in the margin), the *er*-mark at the end.

10794. MS. *ful fon*. 10799. *fawh*, *w* corrected from *y*.

and seide : "syre, where is 3oure thowht ?
 Lo, 3oure enemyes hors j haue 3ow browht !
 Now worth vpe here with ryht good chere,
 and on 3oure enemy ben avenged here.
 For this day han 3e lost mochel thyng
 of worschepe that belongeth to a kyng."

He exhorts
king Loth to
take revenge.
10812

So vpon that hors he wente anon,
 and toward Sire kay gan he gon.
 and whanne Sire Gyrfe3 this beheld,
 That Sire kay lay in the feld,
 and Lweans Ek dyde also,
 how that Sire kay suffrede anger & wo,
 Ful Sorweful they weren thanne, trewelye,
 and faste thedyrward they gounen hem hye
 with two Lawnees bothe stowt and grete ;
 with som of these meyne there gonne they mete.
 So sore they cowntreden that jlke stownde,
 That ech two knyhtes pere bar to grownde,
 and took 3e best hors be 3e reyne anon,
 and there-with Sire kay presentyd fulson.
 thanne he hym horsede, for xede he hadde,
 For ferst he was ful sore be-stadde.

10816

King Loth
rides against
Kay.

Then Gyrfe3

10820

and Lucans

10824 also hasten
thither,

10828 bear four
knights to
the ground,

10832 and remount
Kay.

The King of
a Hundred
Knights and
king Loth

10836 remount king
Newtris

king Ydiers,

10840

and the duke
of Cambeny.

10844

10848

They are
all bent on
revenge.

10822. *kay* inserted afterwards above the line erroneously before
 (instead of after) *Sire*. 10830. *anon* crossed out before *fulson*.

	Thanne thowhten the viij kynges tho, that ful wel they wenden hanen j-do, but lyhtly they losten al jn fere.	
King Arthur coming to the assistance of his men,	For kyng Arthewr fulsone aspyde there, and kam jn comforteng of his meyne, ek thorwh that meyne paste he, sykerle, and so the hors with his spores he smot, that owt hit sprang the Fyr so hot.	10852 10856
and finding Ulfin and Bretel un- horsed,	And sire Vlphyn fond he growndyd there with his swerd on hande hym forto were and Sire Bretel at gret mischef also, that vnnethis to horsbak myhte he go. wherfore ful sory that tyme he was, and forth he prekede jnto that plas :	10860
rides against the king of North Wales,	with a spere bothe myhty & strong jnto the pres there gan he fong, and there mette wyth Tradelamaund, kyng of north wales, as j vndirstond. anon so sore he there with him mette,	10864
[leaf 129 d]	And swych a Strok He on Hym sette, and smot hym Evene amyddes the scheld,	10868
kills him,	that over he fyl there jn the feld. therto his left Scholdre he smot a-down, that he fyl there ouer the hors arsown.	10872
takes his horse,	kyng Arthewr the hors took jn that plas be the Brydel, that ful wel gylt was,	
and leads it to Sir Ulfin.	and lad hit to Sire Vlphyn anon, and bad that he scholde faste vp gon on hors-bak to ben avenged there vppon his Enemy, that dyde hym dere— “and thenketh vppon the grete velonye that 3e han Suffred, and gret anoye.”	10876 10880
Ulfin thanks him,	thanne horsede hym Sire vlphyn hastely, and Seyde : “sire kyng, now gromessy !”	
He rides forth with king Arthur.	anon he prekede jnto that pres, kyng Arthewr & he, with-owten les. thanne there began so strong melle, that pyte and rowthe hit was to se.	10884

For there broken they the buschschement
 that vppon his meyne there was present, 10888
 So that they vppon the tothyr partye
 Ful mochel harm cawhten, Sekerlye.
 and 3it half meyne more they hadde,
 thanne kyng Arthewr thedyr with hym ladde. 10892
 So that gret occision pere thanne was
 of many bodyes jn that plas.
 So that kyng Arthewr merueille3 wrowht pere,
 that eche man dradde hym every where ; 10896
 So that no man dorsten abyden his hond,
 So spetowsly he took on with his brond ;
 For that tyme dorst hym non man abyde,
 So sore he fawht that ylke tyde. 10900

They do the
 enemy much
 harm.

King Arthur
 fights
 wonderfully.

Whanne the kyng of an hundred knyhtes
 Sawh Tredelemaunt anon ryhtes,
 that at pe erthe stille he lay,
 Ful Sory he was that ylke day 10904
 (For he lovede hym ful specyaly),
 and faste ageyn Artheur he gan hym hy,
 and his hors with the spores he smot
 azens kyng Arthewr evene foot hot, 10908
 and hym ful spetowsly smot jn that plas,
 so pat kyng Arthewr sore astoned was.
 and whanne kyng Arthewr that strok felte,
 anon his lyvere abowtes he delte, 10912
 but 3it sorye he was, ful trewelye,
 for sire kay, that was jn his compenye.
 kyng Artheur left vpe his swerd anon,
 and to pe kyng of an hundred knyhtes gan he gon 10916
 and thorwh the left Scholdere han hym bore.
 that beheld anon the toper kyng thore ;
 and whanne he sawh the strok comenge,
 awayward faste gan he flynge, 10920
 and his scheld vppon his hed he caste.
 but kyng Arthewr to hym pere thraste,

The King of
 a Hundred
 Knights,
 seeing his
 special friend
 on the
 ground,

rides against
 king Arthur

and strikes
 him.

King Arthur
 tries to strike
 his enemy in
 return;

but the latter
 puts up his
 shield;

10917-18. *left Scholdre* corrected from *helm Scholde*; the original *bore* altered into *bere*; the stressed vowel of the rhyming word (in 10918) might be read either *e* or *o*.

10921. *scheld*, *d* squeezed in afterwards.

the stroke cleaves the shield,	and so sore smot hym vppon the scheld, that hit flew half jnto the fekl.	10924
descends on the horse's head,	So that his strok discendid there on his hors hed, with-owten dwere ;	
and makes horse and rider tumble. Sir Kay takes	So that bothe to grownde they wente. and <i>pat</i> beheld syre kay, veraymente,	10928
the horse to Antron.	and say that hors astray there gon, and to his fadyr Antron he ladde it anon. So that jn the sadel ful sone he was, and <i>pereof</i> was joyful jn that plas.	10932
Antron rides against Mar- gamur, the steward ;	thanne azens margamur, the kynges stewarde, Sire Antron with his hors rod ful harde, and badde hym greten wel his lord & kyng, that of an hundred knyhtes hadde governyng—	10936
sends jeer- ingly his compliments to the king, [leaf 130 a]	“ And for his Love j schal the mete, For For nothyng J ne Wele Hyt Lete.”	
and fells Mar- gamur.	that thorwh the ryht Scholdere he smot him thanne, and to erthe he Bar hym, hors & manne ;	10940
The horse he takes to Sir Bretel.	So thanne on hym there barst he his Lawnce. and with that hors sone gan he Bretel avance, and to hym hit ladde thorgwh the pres (For tyl he hym fond, he wolde not Ses), of whiche hors Sire Bretel hadde gret nede owther Ellis of sum othyr, so god me spede.	10944
Bretel gets up,	thazne was fulsone Sire Bretel on lofte, and abowtes him he lokede ful ofte,	10948
sees Sir Lucens on the ground, defending himself	and Syre lweawnes ryht sone he say down vppon therthe there he lay, and vp kenerynge was, and defendid hym faste, whiles ony strengthe jn hym myhte laste ;	10952
against four- teen,	that gret Joye hit was hym forto se, For abowtes hym xiiij there weren, sikerle, and he nas but hym-self al alone ; but for al the power that they cowden done, owt of that place hym remeven ne myhte ; and [this] beheld Sire Bretel anon ryhte, and to hym there prekede jn that pres.	10956
and rides to his relief.	So whiche <i>pat</i> first he mette, with-owten les,	10960

10926. *on*, *o* corrected from *h*.10958. MS. *and beheld*.

thorw^h the helm he claf atwo hys hed,
that jn the feeld he fyl down ded.

The Secumd he smot so in the scheld,
that arm and al flew jnto pe feld.

He cleaves
the head
of one,

cuts off
the arm of
another,

10964

and Sire gyrfe3, that Sire lweawns was by,
Sore hym defendyd an ful myhttyly.

3it ek anothyr Sire Bretel Smot,
That at his feet he fyl ful hot.

and throws
a third to
the ground.

10968

Whanne that Sire Gyrfe3 Sawh he had socour,

Ful manfully fawht he thanne jn that stour,

and the ferst that he mette there,

his arm of smot he qwyte & clere,

that to the erthe he Fyl down ryht.

anon Sire lweawns, that worthy knyht,

vppon that hors fulsone he was,

and sory man & angry jn that plas,

that his schamefulnesse wolde avenge.

Sir Gyrles,
who has been
assisting
Lucans, gets
new courage.

10972

thanne sone prekede he jnto that renge,

where as gwycher he say, of scotland kyng,

that on moret, his felawe, was abydyng.

Sire lweawns his hors there smot so sore,

and with Gwycher pe kyng mette he thore,

So that thorwhe hawberk and haberiown

Sone jnto the feld there smot hym down.

Lucans is
remounted,

and full of
vengeance.

10976

thanne whanne Sire moret beheld tho this,

Ful sone jn that Sadel he was, j-wys,

and forth he prekede jnto that pres,

and for non man ne wolde he ses.

thanne Belyas & Flawndryn say he there,

that vppon tweyne of his Felawes rested were,

vppon dryawnt and dynas,

that with Artheur weren jn that plas.

but so gret was there that pres with-jinne,

Er sire moret to his Felawes myhte wynne,

So that so sore there gan he fyhte,

that hit was merveyl to ony mannes syhte ;

and so wel there he hym bar jn that fyht,

He rides
against
the king
of Scotland,
Sir Moret's
adversary,

10980

and fells him.

10984

Sir Moret
jumps into
the saddle,

10988

sees some
friends
struggling,

10992

forces his way
through the
press,

10996

and relieves
them.

- wyche weren dewk escam and kyng Tradelyvand,
 and azens chybret, kyng of Northhumberland, 11036 against duke
Escam
and several
kings.
 and ek azens kyng karados also,
 that a worthy werroure was holden tho.
 and alle these azens kyng Artheur gonnen ryde,
 and there sore fowhten they in that tyde. 11040 These all
turn on king
Arthur.
 For eche azens oper so sore justed there,
 that they to-borsten bothe Scheld & spere.
 For ne hadde socour to kyng artheur sone pere be,
 the wers hadde he had, ful certeyne. 11044 Arthur is on
the point of
succumbing.
 For tho kynges and knyhtes on þe toþer side,
 Ful worthy men they weren that tyde ;
 Ek dowble they hadden azens kyng Artheur,
 that vnnethe they myhten abyden that stowr. 11048
 Thanne happede, kyng Ban and kyng Bors
 that owt of þe forest comen with gret fors
 in releueng of kyng Arthewr there ;
 but þe tothyr partye of hem not war were. 11052 Then (the
first division
of) Ban and
Boors' army
comes out of
the forest
 Anon they gonnen hem askryen so Lowde,
 that hit dynede into the clowde.
 Ful fresch they comen owt of that forest
 as worthy kynges, to fyhten ful prest. 11056 with a
mighty war-
cry.
 Thanne behelden al this these oper barowns,
 and wisten wel that non distrocciouns
 myhte comen but thorwghe theke partye ;
 wherfore to cownseille they gonne hem hye, 11060 The enemies,
realizing the
danger,
 and to-gederis assemblede in a medewe pere,
 al these Lordynges to-gederis In fere,
 and tooken cownseyl what they myhten do.
 thanne seide kyng Loth to hem ryht tho : 11064 withdraw to
a meadow,
and have a
consultation.
 "j wot wel that ech of vs here fyhten muste,
 but to on thyng 3e mown wel troste :
 that j my-self azens fowre oper thre,
 be my josteng ouercomen scholen be. 11068 King Loth
says
that he, for
his part,
will avenge
himself on
three or four.
 Forto avengen myn Noysaunce
 on hem j thenke to don veniaunce.
 for mochel peple han we lost here,

	whiche that they scholen beyen ful dere."	11072
The King of a Hundred Knights praises him,	And whanne the kyng of an .c. knyhtes herde kyng Loth thus Speken owtryhtes, gret preyseng to hym 3af he thanne, as belonged to swich a worthy manne,	11076
(leaf 130 c) and swears to do the same.	And Swor By His creawnce Anon Ryht that the same wolde he don jn Fyht.	
So do several others.	And kyng karados & kyng Newtres also the same oth sworn they bothe two.	11080
	And the dewk Escam of kambenye the same oth there swor, Sekerlye, and ek kyng clarioun of Northhumberlond the same oth swor, as j vndirstond.	11084
King Loth then says that six of them should go against the ambuscade,	"Now schal j seyen 3ow," quod kyng Loth thanne, "what we scholen don now Every manne. sixe of owre feleschepe we scholen ordeygne azens 3one busschement, jn certeyne ;	11088
and the other five remain,	and here scholen beleven othyr fyve azens this meyne to fyhten ful blyve. for xi kynges here we now be to fyhten azens al this meyne.	11092
the former with over 10,000 men,	So that azens this busschement welen we go with .x. thousand fyhtyng men and mo,	
the latter with 8000 men ;	and viij thousand scholen we leven here kyng Artheur to anoyen jn alle manere.	11096
	and toward þe forest welen we go ; tyl azens the Nyht lete vs don so.	
that will be the better plan.	and oure purpos thanne bettere scholen we have and therto owre meyne moche bettere Save.	11100
	For 3if that we abyden here styлле, they ben ful lyk to werkyn vs ylle."	
All approve.	To this cownseyl of kyng loth þere anon thussone concentyd they Everychon. thanne assembled to-gederis they were, and here hol meyne departed there.	11104
Thus King Loth, with part of the forces,	So that kyng Loth took with hym the kyng of an hundred knyhtes so grym, augwyseaus, & dewk Escam of kambenye,	11108

11087. *of* twice, the former crossed out.—*ordeygne*, the last letters through correction.

	And whanne that to-gederis there they mette, many sore strokes to-gederis they sette,	11148
He fights well,	So that the noyse myhte wel han ben herd a long half myle ; so sore they Ferd. Ful gret occisioun thanne there was bothe of men and hors jn that plas.	11152
but is eventu- ally repulsed.	but certeyn kyng Ydiers meyne that storm miht not suffren jn non degre, but fledden away for discomfyture	
Another king helps him.	To kyng gwyseawns, j þow ensure, whiche sone hem comforted sothfastly. and a strong bataylle began pere, trewely,	11156
They press hard on Sir Faryens ;	So that Sire Faryens and his meyne at gret mischef weren, ful Sykyrle.	11160
but Leones (with the second divi- sion) comes to rescue,	and whanne leownees of Paerne be-held al this, Ful sone to reskews he rod, j-wys, and so sore rod vpon that meyne, that jn that place ne lefte he, Sykerle,	11164
and throws them back on the duke of Cambeny.	Non that dorste hym there abyde ; So socowred he Pharyens jn that tyde. and thus drof he forth that compenye Jnto the dewkis ost of kambenye.	11168
The duke pushes for- ward,	Whanne the dewk hem Sawh comen so, thanne jn his herte he was ful wo, and aȝens hem faste he gan to ryde that hem so chasede jn that Tyde.	11172
makes the fugitives return,	and thanne they that flowen to-fore, aȝen with the dewk retorned thore,	
and renews the combat.	and there began ful strong Bataylle, whan that Eche partye gan other assaylle.	11176
Now king Boors ap- pears (with the third division),	thanne thussonne entrede kyng Bors there with his hol meyne al jn fere, and there so sore they meten jn same, that betwene tho partyes was non game.	11180
and king Ydiers ex- claims :	and whanne kyng ydyers kyng Bors beheld, that So kam prekyunge jn the feld, thanne to his feleschepe there seide he anon :	

"god vs defende now everychon 11184 "God defend
 this day from the peryl of ded us from him
 of hym that cometh here jn this sted! who comes
 For hym j knowe be his armure, here!
 that he is knyht bothe good and sure. 11188 I know him
 For neuere his place he wyle forsake by his
 For non dismembrure ne for non wrake. a mour.
 and perto he is so worthy a knyht,
 jn al this world non bettere jn fyht. 11192 In all the
 for thowh al the world were hym ageyn, world there
 but his owne brothyr hit were, jn certeyn, is no one
 of prowess Js there non man better in
 that jn bataylle dar abyden hym than." 11196 fight."

Anon the kyng of an hundred knyhtes thanne
 askede of kyng ydiers what was that manne.
 thazne answerede kyng loth to hym ageyn,
 & seide hit was kyng Bors of Gawnes, jn certein. 11200 The King of
 "but, certein, j ne wot how he here kam; a Hundred
 and behold, with hym he ledeth many a man!" Knights asks
 "what," quod the kyng of an hundred knyhtes tho, who he is.
 "how jnto this contre scholde he comen so?" 11204 King Loth
 "j not, so me god helpe!" quod kyng loth thazne, answers:
 "but this day behoveth now Every manne "King Boors
 to preven hym-self a worthy knyht of Gawnes.
 azens this kyng Bors here in fyht." 11208 I know not
 Anon Answerede Kyng Karados thanne: how he came
 "j-not, this day ho þat kan preven hym a manne, here.
 nethyr this day what we scholen do;
 but j my-self azens hym now wile j go.
 and 3if ony mester that j hane of Socour, 11212 But now it
 loke 3e not me Faylle for non langour." behoves every
 therto they graunteden Everychon: man to prove
 he took his leve, and forth gan to gon. 11216 himself
 thus kyng karados wente forth thazne a worthy
 and with hym jn compenye many a manne; knight."
 an esy pas and sadly they wente, [leaf 131 a]
 til that kyng Bors they metten presente. 11220 King Karados
 and whazne that so Ny to-gederis they were, says:
 of an archer a bowe drawht there, 11212 "I will go
 against him.
 If I need
 help, do not
 fail me."

He rides
forth,

and meets
king Boors.

There is a fierce encounter.	bothe parties to-gederis mette so faste, that ech on othyr here speres gonne breste, so that on bothe partyes they fyllen a-down, and of karados meyne gret occisiown. thanne drowen they owt here swerdis blyve, and manye a man there loste his lyve.	11224 11228
King Boors commands an old knight to bear his banner.	thazne kam kyng Bors to an old knyht, whiche man that Blaaryus hyht, and hym comanded his Baner to bere (and this knyht dorste not refusen it there), and bad hym gon forth hym be-fore, that the Bretowns his armes myhten sen thore.	 11232
He takes a spear, rides into the press,	Thanne took he a Royde spere anon, and jnto that pres he gan faste to gon, and that Reng he to-barst ful sone, and pere-jinne entrede amonges hem Echone. and with a knyht he mette schortly there,	11236
and pierces a knight.	that thorwh armes and harneys he gan him bere. So thorwh the body there he hym smot, that down he fyl thazne, god hit wot, and brak his Nekke jn his fallynge tho ; Swich destenye that knyht cam vnto.	11240 11244
Then he draws his sword.	thanne kyng Boors drowh owt his swerd, and amonges that meyne pere so he ferd. and whazne the peple Say hym faren so,	
King Kara- dos' men flee.	Ful faste to flyht thanne gonne they go. thus kyng karados loste his meyne ; For kyng Bors they gonnen alle to fle.	11248
The King of a Hundred Knights comes to succour.	that beheld the kyng of an hundred knyhtes ; to Socouren karados he kam ful Ryhtes with ij thousand knyhtes jn compenye, that bolde werriours weren and worthye. and there fulsone to-gederis they mette, and many harde strokes to-gederis smette.	11252 11256
Both Boors	For there to speken of king Bors prowessse, how that he fawht there jn that presse ! Also Ek on the tothir kynges syde	

- they fowhten ful strongly that ylke tyde, 11260
 bothe kyng karados and the tothyr kyng,
 that of an hundred knyhtes hath gouernynge.
 [for] so strong was the Bataylle thanne,
 that at mischef there was many a manne. 11264
- Thanne kyng Ban of Baynoyk Entrede anon,
 and with his meyne he entrede ful son,
 and there his steward his armes bar
 with a crowne of gold and azure thar 11268
 with two bendis travers, ȝelw & grene ;
 As ony flowr oper herbe there was hit sene.
 and of this Sixe knyhtes jn swte hadde he,
 bothe hors and man al jn on degre ; 11272
 Bothe trappures and Testerys, Al that per Was,
 so was arrayed there jn that plas.
 and whanne these kynges syen this syht,
 wondirly they weren ful sore a-fryht, 11276
 and seiden they mosten forsaken here place,
 For they knewen there non othir grace.
 thanne to hem assembled kyng Loth,
 Ful sore wepyng there, wel j wot, 11280
 and seide there to his compenye :
 “ Now wot j wel, ful Sekerlye,
 alle is lost that we hauen jdo.”
 So bothe partyes thazne metten they tho ; 11284
 So sere here lawnees they borsten on sondyr,
 that al the erthe qwaked hem vndyr ;
 and out of helmes pe fer owt flew,
 that many a man hit Sawh on rew ; 11288
 and with the strokis pat weren hem betwyzne,
 alle that forest hit denede with-jinne,
 that half a myle men myhten hit here,
 ho that jn that feld tho were. 11292
 whanne that kyng Ban ful sembled was
 azens the tothere jn that plas,
 there nolde but fewe there thazne abyde.
 Anon vppon pe fyve kynges gan he ryde 11296

and his ad-
versaries
fight bravely.

King Ban
arrives (with
the fourth
division),
his steward
carrying his
gorgeous
banner,

and six
knights, in
the same
colours,
[leaf 131 b]
attending it.

Then the
hostile kings
are greatly
discouraged ;

even king
Loth says
that all is
lost.

Yet there is
violent en-
counter,

making the
forest re-
sound.

Many-flee.

- and ek vppon here hole meyne ;
 King Ban kills his foes, For pere made kyng Ban gret mortalyte.
 For anon as they kyng Ban aspyde,
 Ful faste they fledden that jlke tyde 11300
 For the grete occision
 that kyng Ban made abowtes hym jn virowe ;
 and gret martyrdom he made also,
 and thus jn eche reng pere gan he go, 11304
 and breaks their ranks both right and left.
 bothe on lefte syde and ek on pe ryhte ;
 he kyd hym there as kyng and knyhte.
 So that j-dowted he was ful sore
 of alle his enemyes þat weren thore. 11308
- King Loth and the King of a Hundred Knights, Thanne forth cometh kyng Loth tho
 and the kyng of an hundred knyhtes also,
 and Sire margamar here thridde felawe was,
 with here Bataylles jn that plas. 11312
 For thussone the bataylles j-medlyd were
 on with-jinne anoper ryht sone there.
 seeing, with anger and grief, damage done by king Ban,
 and whazne that they behelden kyng Ban,
 that so gret damage dyde there than, 11316
 kyng Loth there-with was angry tho,
 and ek the tothyr kyng was ful wo.
 with here spores smeten they here hors thazne,
 ride against him,
 and bothe they reden aȝens kyng Banne, 11320
 for kyng Loth was a worthy knyht,
 and that he kydde there in his fyht.
 King Loth cuts off a piece of king Ban's shield.
 For with his spere he smot so kyng Ban,
 that a cantel of his scheld jnto pe feld flew than. 11324
 and whazne that kyng Ban felte thys,
 Fulsore he was amevyd there, j-wys.
 King Ban smites the King of a Hundred Knights on the helm ;
 Anon his goode swerd he lefte on hy,
 as a man that was bothe wroth and angry, 11328
 and to the kyng of an hundred knyhtes he rod,
 and hym so smot, there that he stod,
 the glancing stroke hits the horse.
 vppon the helm ; but hit glaweede adown
 There vppon his horsis arstown, 11332
 that Trapped was jn erue & stel.
 but ȝit that Strok hyt bot ful wel,
 For the hors chine asondir there he smot,

that bothe to grownde wenten fot hot.
 And whanne this kyng of an .c. knyhtes
 Felte hym so feld there jn fyhtes
 And therto His Hors Vndyr Hym so Ded,
 thanne was he ryht of Sory red.
 Vpe sone he rekouerele forto stond,
 and his swerd took jn his hond,
 and leyde his Scheld vppon his hed,
 For fulsore he dowede of ded.

11336 Horse and
rider fall;

[leaf 131 c]

11340

but the king
soon gets up
again.

11344

King Bran-
gors, noticing
his plight,

Whanne that kyng Brangores beheld al this,
 that pe kyng of an hundred knyhtes, j-wys,
 was thus feld and leyd on grownde,
 anon to kyng ban he rod that stownde,
 and smot hym Evene a-myddes the scheld,
 there as he hovede jn the Feld.

11348 smites king
Ban on the
shield;

and kyng Ban Sone there tornede ageyn,
 and vppon the helm he rawht hym, ful pleyu,
 that his coyphe of yrne and Serele also
 Evene asondyr smot he tho,
 that to the grownde he fyl down ryht,
 For lengere to sytten hadde he non myht.

11352 king Ban
returns the
stroke,

11356

and fells his
foe.

Aftr, whanne these kynges rekouered were,
 a3ens kyng ban Sore Fowhten they there.
 but he dede hem mochel more grevaunce,
 thanne they hym deden, with-owten dowaunce.
 For 3it nas there non of the kynges two
 but that mochel of here blood hadden lost tho.

In the ensu-
ing fight,

11360

king Ban
keeps the
upper hand
against his
wounded
enemies;

what be here hurtes & woundes bothe
 Ful feynt to fyhten they were forsothe.
 but 3it mochel harm there was j-do
 betwixen thike thre kynges tho.

11364

much harm
is done to
them.

and whanne the bataylle Entre-mellid were,
 asondyr sone weren they departyd there,
 whethyr that eyther partye wolde oper non ;
 but 3it amonges hem moche harm was don.

11368

Thanne hyt happede that ylke tyde,
 that kyng Artheur jnto that pres cam ryde,

11372

King Arthur,
coming
thither,

- Ands king Ban fighting on foot, and fond kyng Ban fyhtyng on fote,
wherfore he was ful wo, god wote.
but Ewere he fawht So sore there,
that non man ne dorste comen hym nere, 11376
and so forth wente thorwh the pres
vigerously fyhtyng, with-owten les.
yet keeping all at bay, but there wolde non man his strokes abyde,
So merveyllous they weren jn that tyde. 11380
thanne entrede kyng Artheur on pe to[thyr] partye
thorwh al the pres ful manfullye
With his blood-soiled sword, with his swerd on honde, that Soyled hit was
with hors blood & mernes jn that plas. 11384
For manye merveylles wrowhte kyng Arthewr,
For jn armes he was bothe Styf & stowr.
but whanne he Say kyng Ban at sweche myschef,
hym thowhte hit was to hym gret repref. 11388
Arthur rides against a knight, Anon kyn[g] Arthewr aspyde a knyht,
that ryaly was arayed forto fyht.
with his swerd to hym kyng Arthewr rod,
and non lengere there he abod, 11392
but with his swerd smot hym so sore,
that jnto the teth he clef his hed thore,
that ded to the grounde he fyl anon.
and takes his horse to king Ban. And kyng Arthewr be pe reyne his hors took son, 11396
and to kyng Ban he ledde hyt ful faste.
"my leve frend," he seide, "worth vp jn haste,
For amonges 3oure Enemyes 3e han j-be ;
this place to forsaken sone scholen 3e hem se." 11400
- Joyfully the two turn on their enemies,
[leaf 131 d] Whanne that kyng Ban Recouered was
Be helpe of kyng Arthewr jn that plas,
Gret Joye Bothe to-gederys they made,
and amonges here Enemyes they prekedon ful glade. 11404
Anon as they on the tothyr partye
kyng Artheur and king Ban dyden aspye,
who are discomfited, anon so discomfyt weren they tho
of the harm pat these two kynges hadden j-do, 11408
that they hadden j-lost elene here talent

11379. *the*, the abbreviation mark in darker ink.11381. MS. *p* to *pye*. 11389. MS. *kyn*.

- to fyhten or ony dede don, verament,
 but Towardis the wode they wente ful faste.
 And *er* they myhten hit keueren atte laste, 11412 and flee to-
 mochel occisiown was don there wards the
 be-twixen the wode and the revere forest.
 there here Stale they rested & kepte. Many are
 Anon here meyne there to hem lepte, 11416 killed be-
 and jn peryl of deth Echon, tween river
 For vnnethis to hem askaped ony on. and forest.
 Whanne kyng Newtris and kyng loth tho
 and the kyng of an hundred knyhtes also, 11420 The hostile
 also kyng karados & kyng ydyors, kings,
 ek kyng Vryens & kyng Brangors,
 that tho was kyng of Northhumberlond,
 To on partye they drowen, j vndirstond, 11424 drawing to-
 Thanne seyde maganors to hem anon : gether at one
 "with 3oure meyne j rede that 3e heus gon point,
 For al hit is j-torned to seomfyture are advised
 and to distroccion, j 3ow Ensure." 11428 to depart.

- Thus hem Enchasede kyng Artheur tho,
 kyng Ban and kyng Bors also,
 tyl that they comen to on Rever,
 that ful wondyrly depe was there ; 11432
 where as þe fugytyves a brygge diden make
 there for to passe ouer that lake. who make a
 So that they pasten ouer Echon, bridge
 and these thre kynges aftyr gonne gon. 11436 and cross the
 thanne merlyn Seyde to kyng Artheur tho : river.
 "Sey me now, what thynekst pou to do ?
 thyn enemyes hast thou ouercomen Echon,
 therefore jn-to thin owne contre thou gon, 11440
 and with the thy frendes thou lede,
 be whom þat pou hast had ryht good spede,
 and hem do thou worschepe and honour,
 For they han holpen the jn many a stour. 11444
 For jn-to the Forest moste me go
 there with my frend Blasye to speken also." and do hon-
 our to his
 helpers.
 Merlin him-
 self must go
 to Blasye.

11432. *wondyrly*, l through correction.11436. *thefc* twice, the former crossed out.

- Thus Arthur
and Merlin
depart. thanne departyd kyng Artheur thenz anon,
and merlyn jnto the forest js he gon 11448
To speken with Blasye, that hym bod there,
that of many thinges dide hym enqwere.
- Merlin tells
Blasye of his
intercourse
with Arthur, and merlyne seide he hadde j-be
to conseillen kyng Artheur, Sykerle. 11452
“that is wel don,” quod Blasye thanne,
“hym to counseillen as a wis manne.”
than tolde Merlyne to blasye anon
- and of all
that has
happened. of al tho thinges that hadden be don, 11456
and hou kyng Arthewr jnto lytel breteyne sente
there socoure to haven, veramente.
Sethen he tolde hym ek also
of the grete Bataylle pat was j-do, 11460
and of the seomfytur of the xj kynges.
- Blasye writes
it in his
books. So that this Blasye wrot alle these thinges,
and jnto his Book pere wrot he Every thing,
Be whom now perof haven we knowleching. 11464
- [leaf 132 a] [B]ut of Al this Bataylle Leven We now talkyng,
[an]d let vs Speken of anothyr thyng,
[Ne]thir of Blasie ne of merlyne at this tyde
- Now let us
return to king
Arthur. [No] more to speken, but let vs forth glyde, 11468
[an]d to kyng Arthewr & to the tweyne kynges also
[tha]t jn his compenye gommen forth to go,
[and] ek of other baronage jn compenye,
[tha]t with kyng Arthewr weren, Sekerlye. 11472

- Chap. XI. [N]ow here putteth this Ilke Storye
- After the
defeat of the
eleven kings, [of t]hese xj kynges Jn memorye,
[and o]f the dewk of Askam also,
[tha]t be merlynes cownseyll conqwered weren tho, 11476
[an]d how joyful from Blasye he cam,
[an]d how that kyng Arthewr ordeyned hym than.
[th]anne here Pavylowus pyhten they ful faste
- tents are
pitched, [an]d ek here tentes jn ryht gret haste. 11480

11457. *fente* above crossed-out *wente*.

11465-90. The beginning of each of these lines is destroyed through the leaves having stuck together. Traces, partly quite distinct, are to be found on the other leaf.

11475. *lweawn* crossed out before *Afkam*.

- [So] that they casten hem there to abyde
 [an]d Forto Resten hem that jlke tyde. 11482
 [th]anne Gouvernours of pe ost goume they orleynen there : watchmen
 [S]ire Leownce, Sire gyrflet, & Sire Lwcawns the botelere. are ap-
 [th]anne Sire Faryens to sire Leownces j-joyned he was pointed,
 [Towar]dis the wode to kepen jn that plas ;
 [and Si]re Lwcawns and sire gyrflet
 [kepte]n the medewes bothe drye and wet. 11488
 [and] the remnaunt to reste gommen to gon, and the
 ly[k a]s *perto* they hadden Nede Everychon. others refres-
 So that they eten & dronken, & maden here play, and rest
 and there hem restede, tyl hit was day. 11492 themselves.
 For j-nowh they hadden of the Beste,
 bothe riche and powre, to gladen his geste.
 Thus they hem restede, tyl hit was day ;
 And thanne kyng Arthewr comanded, jn fay, 11496
 that al the good that geten was
 and ek al the rychesse Juto on plas
 that to-gederis scholde ben browht, ful pleyen,
 For he wolde departyn hit *pere*, jn certeyn. 11500
 and whazne that they hadden herd here masse,
 they wenten there as al pe trosor wasse,
 and there on hepis as that hit lay,
 These thre kynges, with-owten delay, 11504
 departyd this good *pere* to Every man,
 as that hem thowhte he hadde nede than :
 on man lasse and a-nothyr more,
 as hem thowhte they weren worthy thore, 11508
 and ek to many pore knyhtes also,
 Ek to seriauntes that with hem weren tho ;
 they 3ouen hem of *pat* good ful largely,
 Whyles that Hem Last there ony peny. 11512
 and sethen departyd they forth in here compenye
 bothe stedys and palfreyes ful justlye,
 clothes of gold & of Sylk also,
 that nowht to departyn beleft hem tho. 11516
 So that Every man gwerdonen he was
 that with hem was jn that plas.
 thanne xl knyhtes chosen they tho

(Misunder-
standing

of the
context ;
see Notes.)

with hem of Tarmelyde forto go, 11520
which meyne Sire Leownee & sire pharyen
jn governaunce hadden & with hem sire Gracien.
Thus this peple of Tarmelyde
jnto here lond they gozne hem gyde, 11524
that kyng clawdas non harm scholde pere do,
whyles the two kynges here lond weren fro.

The men, on
arriving in
their own
countries,
buy property
with the
money.

Thanne these Barowns to-fore seid here,
Jn here owne contres whanne they were, 11528
hem purchased bothe londes and fe,
everych a man after his degre,
with the grete 3iftes that they hadde,
and with pe tresor pat they out of pe ost ladde, 11532
So that evere riche men they were,
whiles that on Erthe they lyvede here.

The three
kings remain
at Bredigam,

So sojorned kyng Artheur at Bredygam styлле
and with hym bothe kynges at his wyлле 11536
(that was jn the march of gret Breteyne
aud ek of Tarmelyde tho, in certeyne)

waiting for
Merlin.

merlyne forto abyden there ;
this was Artheuris entent, j sey 3ow here. 11540
and vppon the morwen, whanne this was do,
that kyng Arthewr his meyne hadde departyd so,
and at Bredygam hadde mad gret feste
as wel to pe meste as to the leste, 11544

Going out in
the morning,

and whanne they hadden eten Echon,
out of here loggenges goonen they gon
Forto beholden bothe ryvere and mede,
How pat the flowres dyden springen & sprede, 11548
thanne behelden they furthermore :

they see an
old man com-
ing over the
meadows,

they Syen where a old cherl cam thore
ouer alle the medewes, the sothe to sayn,
with his bowe on hande, jn certayn. 11552

with wild
birds hang-
ing from his
girdle,

and boltes vndir his gyrdel bar he,
and wylde fowl hadde slayn, sekerle,
the whiche vndir his gyrdel him heng abowte.
3it anothir bryd aspide he, with-owten dowte ; 11556

11552. *on*, *o* corrected from *j*.

11553. *gyrdel*, *d* through correction.

- anon his bowe to his ere he drowh,
 and anon ryht there that bryd he slowh.
 3it wyld mathelardes he slowh also,
 and evere vnder his gyrdyl he dyde hem do. 11560
 Forth a gret pas thanne cam he there
 into place þere as þe thre kynges logged were.
 tha[anne] these kynges hadden beholden ful wel
 the schetyng of this cherl Every del. 11564
 So towardis here loggeng cam he faste,
 tyl that thyder he was comen atte laste.
 thanne King Arthewr axede hym ful snelle
 3if any of that wyld fowl wolde he selle. 11568
 “3e,” quod the cherl, “with good wylle anon
 j wele hem Sellen Everychon.”
 “To what prys?” quod Arthewr the kyng.
 and thanne the cherl wolde seyn non thing. 11572
 the aray of this cherl j schal declare,
 and so wel as þat j halde ben thare :
 Whit russet hosen he hadde vppon
 with a peyre of grete clowted schon, 11576
 With a cote and Surecote of Blak Burnet
 vppon his Body ful lewedly j-set,
 and j-gyrt he was with a schepis skyn,
 and þerto he was bothen long, stowt, and Grym, 11580
 therto on his hed nethyr coyfe ne hood,
 but thus al barehed the carl forth 3ood.
 For lyk a wodman he semed, oper a felown
 that hadde don som distrocciown. 11584
 and to kyng Arthewr he seyde thanne :
 “j ne can non skele of sweche maner memme
 That Loven so wel here Tresore ;
 hyt is ryht nowht, j telle the fore.” 11588
 “but thou ony Servyse cowdest do,
 to avaunzen the scholde j wherto ?”
 quod this carl : “haue thou this fowl thanne.
 3it for me art þou than the rychere manne, 11592
 and thou of thy good 3evest me non thyng,
 not the lest part of on ferthing.

and shooting
more game
as he passes
along.

The man
comes quickly
up to the
kings.

Arthur asks
him if he will
sell the birds.

The man says
yes.

The king
wants to
know the
price;
but the man
is silent.

He is dressed
poorly,

[leaf 132 c]

is tall, stout,
and grim-
looking.

He hints at
the king
being stingy.

The king
retorts.

The man
says: “Have
these birds,
thou, the
richer man,
who givest
nothing.

11562. *thre*, *r* corrected from *e*. 11563. The paper is damaged.

11574. *þ^t* corrected from *as*.

Yet giving
would do thee
credit."

and forto ȝeven of þat thou hast geten here,
me thinketh for thy worschepe gretly it were." 11596

The kings
look at each
other in sur-
prise.

Whanne that the kyng Arthewr vndirstod this,
eche kyng on othyr thanne lokyd, j-wys,
and sethen they seiden hem be-twene :
" where-of devel spekyth this carl so kene ? " 11600

Ban asks him
what he
means.

thanne pere anon hym clepede kyng Ban,
and axede what devel he seyde than.

He answers
not, but says
to Arthur :

but this carl to hym non word wolde speke,
but to king Arthewr he gan for to reke. 11604

"Take these
birds; for I
will depart."

"haue þou," he seide, "these Bryddes here,
For j wele walken jn myn manere."

Ban asks him
who he is.

thanne Spak kyng Ban, certeinle :
" Sey what maner man that thou be." 11608

He replies :
"Such a man
am I,
that Merlin
has told me

"Swich a man am here j," quod he,
"that a savage man thus tolde me,
whiche that merlyne is his name,
jn this lond a man of ryht gret fame — 11612

he will come
here and
speak with
you kings."

and that same merlyne tolde to me
that hider wolde he comen, ful sykerle,
For to speken with ȝow kynges present ;
thus merlyne me tolde, verament." 11616

Ulfín, coming
out, over-
hears the con-
versation.

and jn the tyme of this talkyng
cometh Vlphyn owt of a chambre goyng,
and herde the pletyng of hem two,
hou kyng Ban to merlyn spak tho. 11620

Ban is in-
credulous.

"O," quod kyng Ban, "hou may this be,
that merlyne scholde speken with the ? "

The man
says he may
believe it,
or do the
other thing.

"what," quod the carl, "ȝif þou wylt me leve,
chese ; the oper ellis thou beleve." 11624

Ulfín smiles,
knowing that
it is Merlin.

And [whiles] the veleyn hadde seyde al this,
euer stood sire Vlphyn and herkened, j-wys,
and thussone he gan for to smyle,
and knew hit was merlyne be his wyle. 11628

Merlin asks
him to take
more birds
to his stingy
king.

whanne that merlyne aspyde him so,
towardis hym he gan forto go.
"haue here mo Bryddis to thy kyng,
that grochecheth forto ȝeven onything." 11632

Thanne lowh Vlphyn wonderly sore
of the wordis that Merlyne seide thore,
and seide : "sire, 3if hyt thy wylle be,
wylt pou juto chambre gon with me
For diuers thinges that j haue to seyn
betwene the and me pere, jn certeyn."

"3e, sire, gladly," quod this veleyn tho,
"with the to chambre now wyl j go."

Thanne beheld the kyng sire vlphyn,
and axede to what ende oper fyn

That so Faste He Lowh there,
and why that his Skele were.

"Sire," he seide, "jn tyme comeng
3e scholen hit knowen Every thing."

there mette the veleyn with Sire kay,
and thus to him he gan to Say :

"Go make Redy this wykle fowl here,
that hit be at thy lordis Sopere."

"3e, sire," quod Vlphyn to that veleyn,
"hit nys not the ferste, jn certeyn."

and with this cam pere sire Bretel,
and herde these wordis Everydel.

So whanne they hadde ben there a stownde,
thanne wyste Bretel he hadde merlyn fownde,

and vndyr his mentyl he lawhed anon.

thanne axede of hym the kyng thusson :

"Why dost pou lawhen here so sore?"

"Sire, and pe carl wyle, j schal tellen 3ow fore."

thanne this veleyn there lowh ful faste,

and seide to Vlphyn atte laste :

"Sey now on what js thy wylle."

than Vlphyn seide the kyng vntylle :

"Sire," he seyde, "knowe 3e not merlyn,
whiche that is 3oure owne devyn?"

"3is," quod the kyng, "why axen 3e?"

hym j wel knowe, and j him se."

"Sire," quod vlphyn, "this js now he

Ulfin laughs,

11636 and asks for
a private
talk.

11640 The man con-
sents.

Arthur asks
Ulfin why he
laughs.

[leaf 132 d]

11644

Ulfin answers
he shall know
by and by.

11648 Now Sir Kay
comes;

the man asks
him to pre-
pare the
birds.

11652

Bretel also
arrives,

11656 recognizes
Merlin,
and laughs
in his sleeve.

The king
again asks
why he
laughs.

11660

Merlin laugh-
ingly says to
Ulfin that he
may tell.

11664 Ulfin says:
"Do you
not know
Merlin?"

11668 Arthur re-
plies: "Of
course, if I
see him."

Ulfin says:

11633. *Vlphyn*, MS. *p^r kyng* corrected from *mslyne*.

11640. *to* above the line.

11656. *thāne*, *ne* through correction.

"Why, this
is he?"

that here tofore 3ow now 3e se,
that ij or thries 3ow hath serued thus.
why not 3e hym knowe, j merveylle, be jesus." 11672

The king
wonders
greatly,

Whan that the kyng herde vlphyn spokyn so,
wondirly abasched sore was he tho,
that he nyste what forto seyn.
thazne seid Vlphyn to hym ageyn : 11676

and still asks
who the man
is.

"that j haue seyn oftere thanne one,
the bettere j schal knowen hyt eft sone."
that seide the kyng to hym ageyn :
"Sey me now, what js this veleyn?" 11680

Ulfin says
again: "Do
you not know
Merlin?"

"Sire, knowe 3e not merlin, and 3e hym se?"
"3is, what scholde ellis now Eylen me?"
"thanne beholde 3e this good man so hore,
3if euere 3e syen hym owht here before." 11684
and the kyng beheld him ful wel,
but he hym knew neuere a del.

He will think
his service
badly
applied."

"Now certes," quod sire vlphyn *with* that,
"he may thinken his Servise evel beset,
that 3ow so mochel servyse hath j-do
an 3ow j-loved so wel therto
and 3ow hath holpen jn alle manere
agens 3oure enemyes, where so they were." 11692

Arthur
crosses
himself,

and the other
kings also
marvel.

thanne whanne kyng Arthewr herde this,
fulsone thanne he hym blessedde, j-wys,
and the tothyre tweyne kynge[s] also
ful mochel merveylle hadden tho, 11696
and seiden: "merlyn, how is this be-tyd
now to ben clothed jn swich an abytt?"
thanne seide merlyn to hem ageyn :
"hit may ful wel ben, in certeyn." 11700

Ulfin says
that Merlin
will show
his true
semblance.

thanne seide Vlphyn: "Sire, basche 3ow not,
for his semblawnee he wil schewen, wel j wot,
that 3e tofore haueu hym jnne seyn ;
he wile hit 3ow schewen, jn certeyn." 11704

The kings
are pleased
to hear it.

"that wolde we fayn," quod these kynges,
"To bringen vs owtt of distorbelynges."

11675. *what*, *h* corrected from *a*.

11688. *may*, *a* through correction. 11695. Cf. l. 9095.

11703. *seyn*, *a* in darker ink.

- “ Now into A chambre go 3e Wyth me.”
 and so they deden, these kynges thre. 11708
 thanne seyde sire Vlphyn to Artheur the kyng :
 “ Sire, haueth 3e non merveylle of this thyng,
 For many semblances he kan 3ow schewe,
 vj other vij sone vppon a rewe. 11712
 For also often as hit js his plesaunce,
 he wyl sone chongen his semblance,
 and al be craft of Negremaunye ;
 Sire kyng, this is soth, ful certeynlye. 11716
 and gwymebant the clerk witnesseth this,
 For of clergie he can ful mochel, j-wys.
 For often here-aftyr 3e scholen hym se
 jn dyvers semblance, ful feythfulle. 11720
 For he doth wel that he do so,
 For in this contre he hath many a fo.
 Now go we jnto the chambre ageyn,
 and pere scholen 3e hym sen, jn certeyn, 11724
 jn the same semblance he was to-fore ;
 there scholen 3e sen hym thore.”
- Whazne that to pe chomber ward pey wenten ageyn,
 jn the halle merlyn they fownden, ful pleyn, 11728
 as he was jn his ferste kynde,
 where-offen they merveilled jn here mynde.
 they gonne Embraceen hym anon,
 and gret joye they maden echon, 11732
 as men that hym lovede with al here herte ;
 eche man there to him gan sterte.
 thanne gonnen they lawhen everychon
 of that cowntenance that he hadde j-don, 11736
 and of that he seide to the kyng ;
 eche man tho took hyt in boordlyng.
 thanne seyde kyng Arthewr to merlyn :
 “ Sire, now j knowe ryht wel and fyn 11740
 that 3e me loven now, certeynlye,
 and that these bryddlys 3e han 3oven to me.
 and for 3oure love j schal hem ete,
 and for non thing j nele hyt lete.” 11744
 thanne merlyn gan to lawhen tho,
 and seide : “ Sire, hyt js ryht wel j-do.”

11746. *feide* added above the line.

[leat 133 a]

Ulfin takes
them into a
chamber,
and says :

“ Wonder
not!
He can show
you six or
seven differ-
ent shapes

by means of
necromancy,

as testified by
Guinebant.

He does well
in disguising
himself,
for he has
many foes.
Now let us
return,
and you shall
see him in his
old shape.”

They find
Merlin in the
hall,

marvel,
embrace him
joyfully,

and laugh at
his disguise
and his words
to the king.

Arthur says
to him :
“ Now I know
that you
love me.

You have
given me the
birds,
and I will eat
them for your
sake.”

Merlin laugh-
ingly replies :
“ Well done,
sir!”

Arthur stays
at Bredigain
till Mid-Lent.

Thus they sojourned there Everychon,
tyl that mydlentone was al a-gon.

11748

So that kyng Arthewr vppon a day
be merlynes leve, the Sothe to Say,

He makes the
acquaintance
of a fair
maiden called
Lysanore;

he aqweynted hym with a mayden so ȝyng;
hym thowhte he sey neuere a fayrere thyng.
hire name Lysanore y-clepyd hit was,
therles dowhter Sevayn, that deyde be kas.

11752

she and many
barons have
come thither
to pay hom-
age to the
victor,

that mayden homage cam forto do
and with hyre Barowns manye mo
anon after the Seomfyture
of the xj kynges, j ȝow ensure.

11756

in order that
they may
keep their
lands,

thus for drede they comen to hym tho
here londes to holden with-owten wo.

11760

For his bettere neuere j-seyn was;
that thus for here londys they sowhten here gras.
So that jt happede that this mayde,
of whiche to-forn tyme j ȝow seyde,

11764

Lysanore
lodges with
a rich
burge-s.

cam to the castel of Bredyngham,
where that sche osteyed hyre than
wit[h] a riche Burgeys, as j rehers,
that was bothe riche, stowt, and fers.

11768

The king
desires her,

and anon as the kyng hadde cast his eye
vppon that mayden, the sothe to seye,

[leaf 133 b]

Thanne With merlyne Spak He Anon,
that they to-gederis myhte speken alon.

11772

sleeps with
her,
and begets
Loost,

So be that mayde that xyht the kyng lay,
and on hire be-gat, the Sothe to say,
On hylte Loost, as good a knyht

11776

one of the
knights of
the Round
Table.

as euere armure scholde beren jn fyht.
which that was after, with-owten fable,
On of the knyhtes of the rownde table.
This Loost dyde many a mervayllous thyng,
as here-after hit schal come to rehersyng.

11780

After Mid-
Lent, the
three kings
leave for
Tarmelid.

whanne that mydlentone was fully gon,
kyng Arthewr of this damysele took leve anon.
that so bothe kynges and ek he
jn-to Tarmelyde wenten, certeynle.

11784

11749. *vpp* crossed out before *Arthewr*.

11752. *he, e* corr. from *a*. 11767. MS. *wit*.

Now of hem resteth this Talkyng,
and lete vs speken of a-nothyr thyng,
and to the xj kynges retornen ageyn,
whyder that they weren chased, jn certeyn.

11788

Now the narrative turns to the defeated kings.

Now begynneth this Tale and telleth here
of the xj kynges that conquered were,
how that they reden al that nyht
Sorewenge & wepyng, j 3ow plyht,
For here grete los and here damage ;
thus ryden they Soreweng, bothe knyht & page ;
Nethyr of al nyht rested of rydyng,
which was to hem alle an hevy thyng.

11792

11796

For nethir drynk ne mete was hem among,
Nethyr of al day whiles pe bataylle was strong,
so pat day & thike nyht they weren meteles,
and therto gret passing cold, with-owten les,
therto strong frost and Ys there was ;

11800

So weren they evel esed in eche a plas.

thanne ryden they forth to a cyte
ful hungry & ful cold, as j telle the,
whiche cyte Sorhant it hyhte,
of kyng vryens, that was jn fyhte.

11804

So there they weren rescayved alle
and wel j-esed, as tho myhte befalle.

11808

For there-offen they hadden ful gret mester,
For many man was hurt and wondyd ther.

and manye there deyden for noysaunce,
For at thike tyme swiche was here chaunce.

11812

And Skars thre dayes there hadde they be,
that hem comen tydynges, ful sykerle,
owt of cornewaylle & orkanye

of gret distroccioun & of pe felonye
that to here londes pere weren j-do,

11816

and toforn pe castel of Vandeberis Sege leyd also,

And therto the peple is Fled A-Way,

that neuere to-fore remevede, j dar wel say.

11820

Chap. XII.

The defeated kings ride all night,

sorrowing and weeping,

thirsty, hungry,

and cold.

They arrive in a city

called Sorhant,

and are well received.

Many die from their wounds.

News arrives

of an invasion of their lands

and besieging of one of their castles.

[leaf 133 c]

The kings tremble	and whanne these Barowns herden of this, alle here flesch gommen to tremble, j-wys, For that so sodeyn an aventure To hem scholde comen jn that langure.	11824
and weep.	thanne wisten they, with-owten dowte, that they weren destroyed al abowte, and Gommen thanne to wepen ryht sore, alle the peple that was thore.	11828
King Bran- gors sends for the others.	So thanne hit happede vppon a day that kyng Brangores this myschef say. So that he sente messengeris faste To alle the kynges osten jn haste, and that to hym they scholde comen anon jn alle the haste that myhte be don.	11832
They assem- ble in king Uriens' hall.	So that thyder assembled many men jnto the halle of kyng vryen.	11836
After listen- ing to King Uriens, they move off, red-eyed	and aftyr that they hadden herd p's kyng speke, alle jnto on partye they gommen forto reke with Eyen rede and al for-wept, that longe waked hadden & lytel slept.	11840
and silent.	and amonges hem spoken they word non, but stodyn ful styлле there Everychon.	
King Clariounes	and whanne that kyng claryowns say this, that there non man wolde Speken, j-wys, anon vppon his fet he was there stondyng,	11844
wants to know why Brangors has sent for him.	and seide openly to Brangore the kyng : " Syre, hyder am j comen now to the to weten what thou wylt Seyn to me. Now telle me, Sire, what js thy wylle, & to my power j schal hit fulfyllen."	11848
Brangors replies : " I will tell you.	thanne seide sone kyng Brangores ageyn : " j schal 3ow schewen, sire, jn wordis pleyн the cause why that j for 3ow sente ; j schal 3ow tellen, Sire, veramente.	11852
King Augwis' kinsmen have invaded our lands.	Lordynges, hit is not to 3ow vnkowne that the kynrede of kyng Augwys this throwe jnto oure londes Entred they ben,	11856

- and there don they bothe bre~~n~~nen & slen.
 ek to to the castel vandeleris jn cornwaylle
 they han leyd sege there, with-owten faylle. 11860
 and therefore counseyl we mosten take
 From that Sege to gon hem make,
 ek hem forto dryven owt of kontre,
 other Elles alle distroye[d] we be, 11864
 and alle oure Eyres j-put to nowht,
 that jnto this world we han forth browht.”
- “3e, Sire, wyle 3e vndirstonden now me :
 azens kyng Arthieur we han now j-be 11868
 and non thing Eneresyd jn his Lond ;
 this owten 3e wel forto vndyrstond.
 Nethyr, Syre, vppon the tothyr syde
 of the Londes of Tarmelyde, 11872
 that Somtyme oure socour wolde han be,
 but power hauen they non now, Sykerle,
 but the kyng Ryowns, that js myhty
 and therto ryche & of Body worthy, 11876
 and this two 3er dede he non werre.
 Nethyr anothyr kyng, that js nerre :
 kyng Pales of lystenois he hyht :
 also he is a worthy knyht, 11880
 but that he kepeth his Brothir, trewelye,
 kyng Pelynore, that lyth in maladye,
 of whiche he schal neuere recouered be,
 Tyl on þyng be don, Sire, ful certeynle : 11884
 Tyl that seynt Graal to ende Be Browht ;
 take this forsothe, 3if 3e welen owht.
 Also kyng Aleyn, that Syk lyth also,
 non rekewr jnto þat tyme may be do, 11888
 and tyl that a bettere knyht of Breteyne
 Jnto this lond be comen, certeyne.”
 (anon axede of hym kyng Brangor
 what maner of thyng the Graal was thore.) 11892
 “Nether of Norga, of Sornoleys the kyng,
 mowen 3e hauen there non Suecoureng,

We must see
how we can
drive them
away.

In king
Arthur's land
we have
gained
nothing.

And no help
can be ex-
pected from
Tarmelid ;

nor from king
Pales,

who tends his
sick brother ;

[leaf 133 d]

nor from
king Alein,
who is like-
wise sick ;

nor from
king Norga,

who defends himself against the Giants;	For vppon the jeawntes werre halt he, that moche noysaunce hym don, Sykerle. For the jeantes wolden held his lond al of hem, as j now vndirstond, and he defendyth hym as a man, as long as that he may & kan.	11896 11900
nor from Perdenian,	Nethyr of Perdenyan the kyng mowen 3e hauen non helpyng,	
Amadonan,	nethyr of the kyng Amadonan,	
and Clamades, who war upon king Galaost.	nethir of kyng clamades, j telle 3ou kan ; For they werren vppon kyng galaost, the wheche is cosyn, wel thou wost, To the kyng of an hundred knyhtes ; and a3ens hym they kepen here fyhtes."	11904 11908
And if Gala- ost conquers,	" But assone as kyng Galaost hath conqweryd the tothyr ost the wheche he halt werre ageyn, thanne wot j ful wel, jn certeyn,	 11912
he will want Uter Pen- dragon's hand.	that non thing so sore doth he crave as pat was vterpendragons Lond to have. So that other cownseyl geten 3e non of me but that grete God oure conseil be.	 11916
Now let us consider,	and therfore, sethen we ben jn fere, amonges vs lete vs casten here ; For neuere so moche nede hadden we as now, and 3e wylen therto se.	 11920
or we shall be all destroyed.	For and we disturben now this matere, we ben alle distroyed, with-owten dwere. For we knowen wel everychon	 11924
Our good and glory is gone—	that hope oure good & worschepe is a-gon. For pe damage that we han, wete 3e wel,	 11928
all owing to Merlin, who felched Ban and Boors out of Little Britain,	Be merlynes conseyl hit is don eche del, whanne tho two kynges he fet, certayne, kyng Ban and kyng Boors, out of lytel breтайne, that jn al the world bettere knyhtes ne be, and to Arthewr han don homage & fewte.	 11928

11897. *held* afterwards corrected from *he*.

11901. *Perdenyan*, *P* roughly corrected from *B*.

11905. *Galaost*, *l* squeezed in afterwards.

11928. *breтайne*, *a* roughly corrected from *e*.

- For wete[*t*]h wel, as longe as *merly*[*n*] *with* hem *js*,
the bettere of hem *geten* we not, *j-wys*. 11932
- For there *nys non* man so myhty here,
nethyr so *wys* in *non* manere,
that kan hym *kepen* from *Merlyn*es wyle,
& that he ne *schal* vs alle *begylle*. 11936
- For he knoweth of alle thyng,
what that is *don* and what is *comeng*.
and *perfore* *nethyr* with *wepying* ne *with* mone
we mown not *helpen* that *js* to done, 11940
- Neper* therby *wymmen* but lytel thyng;
For offys of *wommen* hit is *wepying*.
and *perfore* *operwyse* we mosten ordeyne
oure *londes* and *peple* forto *meyntheygne*
a³ens this that vs *don* *Noysaunce*, 11944
- whiche that not be of owre *creaunce*.
Therefore, goode Lord, for thy gret pyte
on vs and oure *peple* thou haue *merce* ! " 11948
- after this word these *Barouns* *Echon*
seten ful *style*, & word spoken they *non* ;
And thus a gret *whyte* this *dyden* they *hawnt*.
Thus *Sone* *Vpe* *Ros* *Kyng* *Tradelivant*, 11952
- that of *northwales* was *kyng* tho ;
to thiike *assemblyng* *spak* he *vnto* :
" the beste *cownceille* that *j* now can,
that we now vs ordeyne *Every* man 11956
- vypon* that *contre* to *setten* *keping*,
there as the *hethene* *hauen* here *Entring*,
and that with al oure *chevalrye*
Faste thedirward now let vs *hye*, 11960
- and *stoppen* hem of here *vytaylor*,
and of here *socour* *Ek* to *Faylle*.
& *in* that tyme *mowen* we than
gaderen to vs many a man. 11964
- So that whanne we han *gadered* oure *myht*,
thanne with hem *scholen* we *fyhte*,
For *ellis* *j* ne knowe in none *degre*
From here *sege* *remeved* to be." 11968

and is most
powerful
and wise,

and all-
knowing.

It is no use
weeping ;

that suits
women.
Let us do
something for
our defence ;

and may the
Lord save
us ! "

After a long
silence,

[leaf 134 a]
Tradelivant,
king of
North Wales,
rises :

" Let us
watch the
country
where the
heathens
have entered,

and cut off
their supply
of victuals.

In the mean-
time we will
gather forces,

and then give
battle."

11931. MS. *catch*, *h* in darker ink.—MS. *myly*.

11936. & added in the left margin.

- Whanne that the barouns hadden vnderstandyng
 of the wordis of Tradelivaunt the kyng,
 Ful wel they hym preisede euerichon,
 & seiden that bettere myhte they not don : 11972
 and lik aftyr his owne wylle
 plenerly thei wolde hit fulfille,
 and axeden into what partyes thei scholden go,
 and what meyne ek scholden gon perto. 11976
 So that forth they wenten, with-owten faille,
 with hem that leften of the bataylle
 Sauf only to kepen that cyte.
 forth thanne they wenten ful prevyle, 11980
 and kepten the vitailles of the contre,
 that non refressching to the hethin scholde be—
 “thanne with the meyne that we gaderen mown
 To putten hem to gret distruccioun. 11984
 and ȝif hit happe hem j-scomfyted to be,
 thanne rich may ben al oure meyne.
 This is the beste counseil that j kan ;
 Now sey his avis here Every Man ! 11988
 For my counseill at this tyme this js :
 now let Every man Sein his beste devys !”
- Thanne ros vpe kyng loth there anon,
 and to that peple he seide echon : 11992
 “Lordynges, Sekerly, j ne kan not se
 how that these marches kept scholen be,
 but that we setten good asspye
 vppon kyng Artheuris londis, Sekerlye, 11996
 bencheson of the kynges that with hym be,
 and For merlyn, that is maister in mani a gre,
 that al oure conseil knoweth ful wel
 & al that we don here now Everydel. 12000
 For ȝif we ryden the hethen to aspye,
 anon he wyl comen vs to distroye
 be othir partyes juto othyr contre :
 vppon vs ryden wilen they, ful sykirle. 12004
 Fore for the hethen they wylen not lette

that vppon vs here men wylen they sette,
 and therefore 3if we now departyd be,
 we scholen ben destroyed, ful Sykerle. 12008
 For 3if the hethen^e entren vs here,
 thanne of oure socour ben we jn dwere.
 Neuertheles 3it scholen 3e vndirstonde
 that forth to ryde now wyl j fonde, 12012
 and redy to gon with 3ou jn fere ;
 now every man his best avis sey here !”

to attack and
 destroy them.

As for him-
 self, he is
 ready to go
 with the
 others.

At that word ros vp anon ryhtes
 the kyng that was of an hundred knyhtes,
 and seide to tho lordynges Everychon :
 “ of kyng lothes wordes dowte haue 3e non ;
 For kyng Artheur & his helpinge
 ben owte of londe, with-owten lesynge, 12016
 To Socouren leodagan the kyng,
 that jn his contre hath gret werryng :
 jn his lond of Tarmelyde
 he hath werre on ech a syde 12020
 of kyng ryown of Yrlond,
 as it is don me to vndirstond.
 & as sowdeours they ben forth went
 Be merlynes counseyll, verayment. 12028
 but alle here strengthis ben kept ful wel,
 and of oure deseysse they knowen Echedel.
 and therefore we mown the Savyelere gon
 Forto defenden vs from oure fon ; 12032
 For of Artheur hath non drede.
 therefore j wolde, so god me spede,
 that pes purchaced were betwixen vs two,
 als so hastely as hit myhte be do, 12036
 that be his socour and strengthe of honde
 To dryve the hethen owt of this londe.
 therefore let vs werkyn jn alle thing
 after pe counseil of tradelyvaunt the kyng. 12040
 but er that we passen out of this contre,
 be counseil be gouerned it is good to be.
 there is a mayde here vs be-syde
 that Asses Roche is cleped this tyde, 12044

The King
 of Hundred
 Knights
 rises :

“No fear of
 king Arthur !
 He has gone

to help king
 Leodagan

against king
 Rion,

[leaf 134 b]

after leaving
 all his strong-
 holds in safe
 keeping.

I wish we
 could have
 peace with
 him,

and his help
 against the
 heathen.

Let us follow
 king Tradeli-
 vant's advice.

But first for
 a maiden
 who dwells
 here in the
 neighbour-
 hood!

- and jn that Roche dwelleth that may,
 that ful good counseil to vs kan say.
 For jn that castel sche dwellith, j-wis,
 that maiden, that is so mochel of pris, 12048
 hadegabrantis Sostyr, with-owten lye,
 that mochel cowde of Negromauneye,
 wherby often-tyme socoured they be ;
 wherfore be my counseyl, certeinle, 12052
 with hire to speken is myn entent,
 & ellis greved now we ben, verament."
- Whanne that pe barouns vndirstodyn al this,
 that kyng Artheur was forthe, with-owten mys, 12056
 thanne merveilled the barouns everichon
 For what maner cause he wolde so don.
 but thanne vndirstoden they alle
 that be Merlynes counseil hit gan falle. 12060
 So that they repentyd al jn fere
 that evere with merlyn angry they were ;
 but alto late hit was tho
 hem to repente : he was a-go. 12064
 So that they acorded alle jn fere
 alle the marches to don kepen there.
 Thanne sente they forth be eche partye
 to kepen the marches, ful sekerlye, 12068
 bothe olde & 3onge that myhte gon
 & of straunge Sowdiours manion.
 So that forth they wenten & wolden not blyme,
 hoping gret richesse forto wyne 12072
 and also to geten hem bothe pris & fame
 the better to ben beloued of every dame.
 but owt of kyng Arthewris lond
 non sowdiour wolde comen, j vndirstond ; 12076
 For good j-nowgh they hadde be-fore,
 and for pat cawse they wold not comen thore ;
 For Artheur avaunsed hem everichon,
 er that he owt of his lond gan gon ; 12080
 and 3it he behyhte hem better to do,
 whanne that agen he come hem vnto.
- She can give
 good counseil,
 for she is
 the sister of
 a negro-
 mancer."
- The kings
 marvel at
 Arthur's
 departure,
 but under-
 stand that
 it is due to
 Merlin,
 and repent
 of their anger
 with him.
- They resolve
 to have the
 borderlands
 watched.
 Troops are
 sent,
 also mer-
 cenaries.
- From Ar-
 thur's land,
 however, no
 one comes,
 on account
 of the king's
 liberality.

The fyrste cyte that they dyde kepen tho
was toward Cornewaille, with-owten mo,
whiche that thiike tyme Nawtes hyghte,
there as the hethene gonnen alyghte.

Thyder gan gon kyng Ydyers
with a meyne bothe prowde & fers,
that beleften of his Bataylle,
as j þow seye with-owten faylle.

and whanne kyng ydyers cam to þat cyte,
Ful glad and blithe gonnen they to be.

For Every day affrayed they were
of tho hethen that weren comen there,
that Everyday there, certeinle,
they wenten abowte that cyte

and distroyed alle jn virowne abowte
the contre there, with-owten dowte.

For of hem Sevene thousand there be
jn this partie aryved, ful sekerle.

so that there dar non man passen therby
with-owten gret strengthe, Sekerly.

12084 (1) King
Ydiers
marches to
Nawtes in
Cornwall,
the landing-
place of the
heathen.

12088

12092 The inhabit-
ants are joy-
ful,
having been
exposed to
the depreda-
tions

12096

12100 of 7000
vikings.

The tothyr cyte that they Senten Vnto
hindicam hyghte at thyke tyme tho.

Theðir rod kyng Newtris of Garlot
with thre thousand knyghtes, wel j wot,
that beleften hym of his bataylle ;

to that cyte he rod, with-owten faylle.

thanne they of the cyte ful gret joye made,
and of his comeng they weren ryht glade.

For with-owten comfort & socour they were
aȝens the hethene that aryveden there.

for they distroyeden al that contre
bothe of corn and of bestes, ful certeinle.

but whanne kyng Newtris entryd that cyte
that jn cornwaille stood, ful pleynerle,

he it wel gouernede with al his myht,
lyk as he was bothe worthy kyng and knyht.

and alle the strengthes that belonged *perto*,

[leaf 134 c]

12104 (2) King
Newtris
marches to
Hindicam ;

12108

its inhabit-
ants likewise
rejoice at the
relief.

12112

12116 The king
manages
well,

equipping the
strongholds,

	Ful manfully he let Stuffen hem tho,	12120
sending for soldiers,	and sente aftyr sowdeours jnto Eche contre,	
	Tyl Sevene thousand he hadde in semble	
	what on hors and what on foote	
	(So manye he hadde, wel j wote)	12124
	with-owten tho that weren jn towne that day,	
	Fyve thousand men sensible, j dar we[1] say.	
cutting off the supply of the enemies,	thanne so wel kepten they that contre,	12128
	that non of the hethene, ful Sykerle,	
	but lytel refresscheyng cowden they wyne,	
and giving battle every now and then.	and euere among was bataille hem betwyne.	
	So that the hethen be aventure	
	lost en gret peple, j 3ow ensure.	12132
Newtris has a son,	for kyng Newtris was a worthy knyht,	
	and a sone he hadde of ryht gret myht	
	be his wyf, that Soster was sche	
	To kyng Artheur jn alle degre.	12136
sixteen years old,	this 3ong child was xvj 3er of age,	
	ful of bewte and of gret corage.	
by his wife Blasine, who is a daughter of Ygwerne (Arthur's mother) by her first husband, the duke of Tyndagel.	his modir qwene Blasine hyghte,	
	Qwene Ygwerne's dowghter, j sey 3ow ryhte,	12140
	that vterpendragon hadde to wyve,	
	aforw dewk Tyndagellis wif be his lyve,	
	whiche dewk this blasine on Ygwerne be-gat,	
	er that he deyde, j wot wel that.	12144

	Vppon this same qwene Blasine thanne	
	begat kyng newtris this worthy manne.	
This son, later on a knight of the Round Table, is called Galachim.	For as here reherseth this stoye,	
	a knyht of pe rownd table he was, sekerlye.	12148
	his name was that tyme jn presence	
	Sire Galachim, that tyme dewk of clarence.	
When he hears of the war between his father and Arthur,	So whanne this galachim gan to vndirstonde	
	that Swich a werre there was jn londe,	12152
	how his fadir kyng Newtris with Arthour gan werre,	
he asks his mother about her parents,	To his modyr he wente, & sowhte not ferre,	
	and seide : "dere modir, j preie now the,	
	The trewthe of on thing telle thou me :	12156
	were 3e not dewk hoelis dowhter of tyndagel	

and of Ygwerne j-born, that men knewen ful wel?
 wheche after wedded kyng vterpendragon,
 on whom he gat kyng Artheur, man of renown, 12160 and about
Arthur's
birth.
 the wheche myn vncle sothly he js
 and therto a worthy kyng of pris,
 that xj kynges scomfyted in bataylle This glorious
conqueror,
he thinks,
 with ryht fewe peple, with-owten faylle. 12164
 and therefore, my modir, j charge now the
 of this the sothe that 3e tellen me.
 For evere hit remeth jn my thowht
 that of so worthy prowesse werð he nowht, 12168 would not be
so valiant,
 but 3if he were Vterpendragones sone the kyng,
 that most worthyest was jn his reigneng." were he not
the son of
king Uter-
pendragon.

Whanne that his modir vnderstood al this thing His mother,
 of galachim hire sone, that was so 3yng, 12172
 Anon gan sche to wepen ful sore,
 as a lady that knew the cause wherfore, with tears,
 And Seide to Galachym Anon Ryht tho,
 as that tyme hire herte fyl vnto, 12176 [leaf 134 d]
 and ful sore wepinge sche gan to telle
 of al the cas, how hit be-felle,
 and seide: "myn owne dere sone thanne,
 thin En he is, that worthy manne, 12180 that Arthur
is his uncle.
 and my brother he is, ful Sekerly,
 for bothe weren we born of on body,
 as j haue herd my modyr say
 to-forð this tyme ful many a day, 12184
 that for that child made gret mone,
 So sone affir his birthe away was done,
 and deliuered was to on veleyn; She tells of
the sending
away of Ar-
thur after his
birth,
 that is now soth pat 3e heren me seyne. 12188
 and how aftyr hit was discovered Echdel
 be Antron, that hym xorsched ful wel,
 of whom ek that merlyne the sothe tolde,
 and ek that witnessid Vlphyn the bolde. 12192 the eventual
disclosure by
Antron,

Merlin, and
Ulin,
 and how that Vter pendragon the kyng
 me maryed to my lord aboven alle thyng.
 but j am sory in mani a degre her own
marriage,

- the opposi-
tion of the
barons,
- that the Barouns of this contre
ne welen not reseceyven hym as for here kyng,
whiche me sore repentith ouer alle thing.
but behold, the grete god of myht,
considering that he is kyng be ryht,
hym ches be myracle of the ston
& of the swerd aforn hem echon"—
and hym tolde of mani an aventure
that of hym be-fel, j 3ow ensure.
- 12196
12200
12204
- Galachim
prays to God
to be knighted
by Arthur,
- Whanne that galachim gan vndirstonde
the dedis of þat worthy kyng jn londe,
anon he besowhte god, certeynlye,
that jn this world he scholde neuere dye,
Tyl that kyng had mad hym knyht,
that holden was so worthy jn fyht.
- 12208
- and vows
fidelity.
- "and 3if onis with my swerd gyrd he me,
al my lyve after, ful certeinle,
with hym to dwelle, to lyven & to deye,
j sey 3ow, modir, be my feye!"
- 12212
- He leaves his
mother,
- thus from his modir departed he thazne
as an hevy & a pensyvous manne,
and him be-thouhte thazne Everich ovr
how he myhte comen to kyng Arthewr.
- 12216
- and sends a
messenger to
his cousin
Gawnehel
(or Gawein),
- Anon a messenger dide he sende
after gawnenet, his cosin so hende,
that was kyng lothis Sone,
that to hym to brokelond scholde he come
also prevyly as he Evere he myhte ;
the day was set of metyng ryhte.
and with this the messenger wente his way
To his cosin gawnenet, þe sothe to say.
- 12220
12224
- appointing a
secret meet-
ing.
- Now lefe we here of this storye,
and to speken of þe kynges now let vs hye
that at Sorhant to-gederis dwelle,
and how that of aventuris they don telle.
- 12228
- Now let us
return to
the kings at
Sorhant.
- Now aftyr cometh hit Jnto memorye
hou from Sorhant departyd kyng loth, sekerlye,
- 12232

[leaf 135 a]

(3) King Loth

12197. *hym*, *y* corrected from *e*. 12220. *afte*, *t* added afterwards.

and wente forth streyht To Garle cyte		marches to Garle,
with ful thre thousand of his meyne,		
that weren holden worthy knyhtes & goode,		
whiche with him out of þe bataille 3oode.	12236	
& whanne he was comen to that cyte,		
the cetezeins maden joye and solempnite ;		and is wel- comed by the distressed inhabitants.
for the bethen diden hem ful gret anoye,		
and al that contre they deden distroye	12240	
what <i>with</i> robberye and brennenge ;		
that contre they wasted jn alle thinge.		
Anon as kyng loth knew of this,		He sends for soldiers ;
For sowdeours he sente, <i>with-owten</i> mys,	12244	
Faste abowtes jnto Eche contre		
to geten as manye as þanne myhte he.		
and er a mounthe was fully past,		
ten thousand sowdeours he hadde jn hast	12248	within a month he has 10,000 men.
<i>with-owten</i> hem of that cyte,		
weren foure thousand, certeinle,		
To kepen that cyte bothe day & nyht,		
whiles þat kyng loth rod owt to fyht.	12252	
So that often-tymes he <i>with</i> hem mette,		He often meets the enemies.
and to-gederis many strokes they sette.		
So that his pore bachelerye		
gat often gret goodis, sekerlye.	12256	
and al that evere they myhte wyne,		Whatever booty is won, is distributed.
kyng loth hit parded there hem betwyne.		
and that causede that gret meyne		
To kyng loth repeede, certeinle,	12260	
For bencheson of his gentillesse & fre,		His liberality attracts more people.
Sprang so wyde jnto Eche contre ;		
Thre thousand comen to hym anon ryht,		
For that he was holden so fre a knyht.	12264	
and faire children he hadde be his wyve ;		
worthiere bodyes weren non on lyve.		

Soth hit is that kyng lothis wyf
was kyng Artheuris soster, *with-owten* stryf, 12268
ryht evene fully jn the same degre

King Loth's
wife is also a
stepsister of
king Arthur's
(p. 329).

12267. In the right margin: *the birthe and the Engēdrure of Mordret.*

	as was kyng Newtris wyfe, Sekerle.	
She has four sons by her husband:	this lady bar be hire lord, Loth the kyng, fowre worthy childeren, with-owten lesing :	12272
Gawnehet (or Gawein), Agravains, and Garrers, and Gaheries ; and one son by Arthur : Mordret.	Gawnenet, Agravains, & sire Garrers, Gaheryes, foure knyhtes bothe goode & fers, on the tothyr syde was Sire mordret hire Eldest sone, with-owten let,	12276
I will tell you of his generation,	whiche that on hire be Artheur engendrid was, and wyle 3e now hereu be a wondyr cas. For j thenke to tellen 3ow Every del how he was begeten on hire ful snel,	12280
of which many are ignorant.	So thazne the bettere may this storye ben more alowed, ful Sekerlye. For mani men knowen not how pat it was of his be-geteng, ne nowht the cas.	12284
The barons were assem- bled at Car- dif in Wales	therfore they preisen it moche the lasse, For they ben vnkneweng of day & plase. hyt behappede, as j 3ow schal say, that the barons alle vppon a day	12288
to choose a new king (p. 181).	of pe rewyn of logres assembled were at kerdyf jn wales, with-owten dwere, there forto chesen hem a newe kyng after vter pendragoun, with-owten lesyng.	12292
Loth and his wife were there ;	so that kyng loth with hym gan lede with hym his wyf jnto that stede ; and so dyden oper barons also, that here wyves dyde with hem go.	12296
Antron,	So that kyng loth j-logged he was and alle his meyne jn a ful fair plas, jn wheche place Antron jlogged was he	
Kay,	and with hym Sire kay, ful certeinle.	12300
and Arthur	and artheur ful previly jlogged he was jn pe kyngges chombre, so fil the cas.	
[leaf 135 b]	And Whamme Kyng Loth to mete Was Set, after Antron he sente, with-owten let,	12304
	and also anon after Sire kay, that but a 3ong knyht was that day.	
were to stay in the king's lodgings.	So pat kyng loth ordeyned there that Antron & Sire kay j-logged were jn his owne chambre ful previly ;	12308

and 3ong Artheur was logged faste by
at thentre of the chambre jn a kornet,
as befyl that tyme for a worthy sqwyer.

Arthur slept
in a corner
of the room.

12312

this Artheur was a faire 3ong man,
and mochel of norture that tyme he kan.
and that lady he was fayn to plese
& ek to kyng loth to don him Ese.

Arthur was
handsome
and courte-
ous,

12316

This lady was both fayr & 3yng
and a good womman ouer alle thing,
whom that Artheur lovede prevyly.
but sche ne rowhte sche wiste not, sikerly,
for stedfast sche was to hire Lord
and him to plese at his owne acord.

the queen
was young
and lair,

and Arthur
loved her
secretly.

12320

So hit behappede, as J 3ow say,
that al the Baronage hadde taken a day
at the Blake cros to meten jn fere
there forto touchen of here matere.

One morning
the barons
were to meet
at the Black
Cross.

12324

So on the nyht before hit happede tho,
that kyng loth scholde thider go,
he charged prevyly his meyne
that hors & harneis redy scholde be
at midnyht with him forto gon ;
thus prevyly he charged hem Everichon.

12328

The king
ordered his
men to be
ready to start
at midnight.

12332

So that his meyne, verament,
Fulfil jn haste his comanndement
vnknowen the lady of alle this thing.
ful prevyly from hire wente he stalkyng,
and jn hire bed lefte hire styлле on slepe,
for of his goynge took sche non kepe.

The queen
knew nothing
about it.

12336

and Artheur, that wel knew of al this,
that jn that corner pere lay, j-wys,
took good kepe of the kynges goynge,
and ful prevyly to here bed wente he stalkynge,
and there he turnede hym bothe to & fro,
but 3it this lady on slepe was tho.

But Arthur
noticed the
departure of
the king,

12340

and stole into
her bed.

12344

So as hit happede this kas gan gon,
this lady awok & hire tornede anon,
and him embraced al jn hire Slepe,

The queen
embraced
him uncon-
sciously,

as if it had been her hus- band.	that of non othir took sche non kepe but of hire owne lord so dere, weneng to hire to ben hire fere.	12348
Arthur, understand- ing how it was,	and whanne that Arthewr felte this, thane wiste he wel, with-owten mys, that of hym sche took non kepe but as a womman that was jn slepe.	12352
embraced her in return,	So that he Embraced hire ageyn, and so be hire he lay, jn certeyn, where-offen the lady ful joyful was ; sche wende hire Lord hadde ben jn pat plas.	12356
and begot Mordret.	and that Nyht, in certein to say, was mordret begeten, with-owten delay, jn this maner as 3e now here. And whanne that Artheur his wil hadde there,	12360
When the queen had fallen fast asleep, he stole away.	he ne slepte non maner thing, tyl that lady was fallen jn Slombring ; thane stalkyd Artheur previliche a-way. For per-of ne wyste non, the sothe to say,	12364
Next morn- ing he told her,	tyl on the morwe, as hit gan falle, that hym-self hit tolde jn the halle,	12368
whilst serv- ing her at dinner.	whanne sche was set at hire denere, and Artheur as hire kervere knelede there.	
She had noticed his long kneel- ing, and made a remark about it.	So that hit happede tho, this lady gent of his long knelyng took good entent. "leve sevs," sche seide, "3ong Bachelere, Ful longe [now] 3ow thinken that 3e knelen her."	12372
[leaf 135 c]	And He Answerede Ful Boldlich Ageyn :	
He replied : "I cannot kneel too long. For I cannot deserve the great boon." She axed for an explan- ation.	"to longe may j not knelen, certeyn, For j ne may not deserven the grete bownte, myn owne lady, that 3e han don for me." thane axede this lady anon ryht :	12376
Arthur made her promise not to tell anybody,	"what bowntes ben tho, gentyl wyht?" thane seide Artheur, certeinle, that for him discovered scholde hit neuere be, xe non thyng to hire he wolde discrye, but 3if of trowthe sche wolde hym affye	12380 12384

12364. *Slombring*, o blurred.12374. MS. *longe 3ow*.

- that neuer sche scholde discouere it to non creature,
 and also anothir thing sche schold hym Sure :
 that harm to his body scholde sche neuere do,
 ne be hire to ben purchased nether to ne fro. 12388
 And sche hire trowthe Ensured hym ful sou
 as womman of that mater took kepe non.
 thanne anon Arthewr gan hire to telle
 prevyly betwixen hem how hit be-felle, 12392
 and jn what maner that he be hire lay ;
 al he hire tolde thike same day.
 Anon this lady gan wexen red,
 that for pure schame sche was ny ded ; 12396
 but non wyht wiste of here covyne.
 for at that tyme wolde sche no more dyne
 but let tables ben drawen, verament,
 and ful faste to hire chombre sche went. 12400
 lo, thus 3onge Artheur be his soster lay,
 that kyng Lothis wif was that day ;
 but hit behappede neuere aftyr more.
 and thus was mordret of hire body bore, 12404
 For sche knew wel be tyme & space
 that be Arthewr with childe sche was.

and not to do
 him any
 bodily harm.

Then he told
 her how it
 all had hap-
 pened.

The queen,
 almost dead
 with shame,

left the table,

and hurried
 into her
 room.

She never
 after had
 such inter-
 course with
 him.

- Whanne that the tydynges gonnen forto springe
 that this 3onge Artheur scholde be kyng,
 and this mordret was tho j-bore, 12408
 thanne jn herte louede sche him wel more
 thanne ony man cowde tellen that day,
 but for hire lord sche dorste nowht say. 12412
 and mochel sorwe sche hadde jn herte
 for that werre, that was so smerte,
 and jn that rewme so many a schowr
 betwixen hire lord and kyng Arthowr
 and betwixen oper peple also 12416
 that in theke rewme weren tho.

When the
 news of
 Arthur's
 exaltation
 spread, and
 Mordret was
 born,
 she loved him
 in her heart.

She was very
 sorry for the
 war

between him
 and her hus-
 band.—

- So that hit happed vppon a day,
 that 3onge Gaweyn scholde hym go play,
 and qweyntely was he arayed there
 jn manere of a 3ong sqwyere
 that on huntynge scholde fare 12420

One day, Ga-
 wein comes,
 ready for
 hunting,

	to chasen bothe the hert & hare	12424
with many greyhounds,	with two les of grehoundis jn pat place, & besides him stood there ȝit two brace.	
He is a fine man,	he was the fairest schapen man that jn his tyme only knew than ;	12428
	but this storye not declareth here	
with one peculiarity: at the dif- ferent hours of the day,	Sauf of on thing in this manere : that he hadde certein tymes of pe day ; what that they weren j schal ȝow say.	12432
	whanne that he ros on morwen vpryht, jn the world ne was there a strengere knyht ; and at the owr of pryne, <i>with-owten</i> delay,	
his strength increases and decreases (cf. Notes).	his strenkthe hit doubledde Every day ; and at the our of Tiers hit doubledde eft sone, and eft-sones hit dowbled at the None ; and so alle the oures of the nyht <i>with</i> him it abod jnto day lyht ;	12436 12440
	So that every morwenyng thus ferde gawayn, <i>with-outen</i> lesyng.	
He finds his mother by the fire, [leaf 135 d]	Whanne gaweyn entrede the chambré there, as ȝe haueu herd rehersed here,	12444
	His moȝyr Lay be on chemene, and there:jn fyr ful gret plente,	
brooding over the war between the Christians,	as a woman that ful pensif was For hire brothyr jn that plas,	12448
	and for the werre, was hem be-twene ; thus lay that lady & morned be-dene ; and for schedyng of blood ful gret plente,	
and the inva- sion of the heathen,	that was amonges the cristiente, and for the hethen that entred were jnto that Lond amonges hem there.	12452
	Whanne that lady Gaweyn beheld, that tyme it were to beren armes & scheld,	12456
When she sees him,	Sche began to wepen riht sore.	
she begins to weep,	Anon Sire gaweyn axede hire wherfore. “ certes, sone, j haue now gret Skyl,	
“ You and your brothers waste your time ;	For ȝe ȝoure tyme ne don but spyl and ek ȝoure bretherin, jn certeyn, ȝe don but spillen ȝoure tyme jn veyn,	12460

- that worthy knyhtes myhten be
 in kyng Artheurs cowrt, ful certeinle.
 For 3oure vncle he is be ryht,
 and in this world not a bettere knyht.
 with him I wolde 3e weren in plase
 pes betwyxen 3oure fadir & him to purchase.
 for hit is ful gret pyte
 that be-twixen hem swich distaunce schold be
 and of othir barouns in the Rewm,
 that of here kyng wylen taken non 3em.
 and god knoweth the Ryhtwysnesse,
 that hath hem browht in gret distresse ;
 For mochel more han they lost thanne wonne.
 & now this hethen on vs han begonne,
 that scholen distroyen vs Everychon,
 3if goddis help ne come not Son.
 and of hym helpe geten we non
 that scholde vs fende from oure fon,
 which is 3oure oncle kyng Artheur,
 that scholde vs helpe in Every stour.
 worschepe & los scholde 3e purchase
 and pes to maken in Every plase,
 and namly that 3oure fadir & he
 goode frendis that they myhten be.
 and non other good 3e don this tyde
 but Eche day on huntynge forto ryde
 To chasen the hare in Eche contre,
 and thus 3oure tyme lesen 3e ;
 wherfore 3e ben alle to blame,
 that myhten becomen men of better fame."

12464 you might
be knyghts
at Arthur's
court,

12468 and make
peace be-
tween him
and your
father.

12472 God knows
the justice of
his cause.

12476 The heathen
destroy us ;

12480 and we get
no help from
Arthur,

who ought
to be our
defender.

12484

12488 No good do
you do but
going a-hunt-
ing every
day."

12492

Gawein
inquires

12496 about Ar-
thur's rights
and relation-
ship.

12500 His mother
gives full
information.

Thanne to his modyr spak 3onge Gaweyn
 wordis that to hire weren ful pleyn :

"telle 3e this for trewthe to me,
 that Arthour be ryht kyng scholde be,
 and pat 3oure brothir he is also,
 & Ek 3e seyn oure vncle perto?"

"3e, sones, with-owten drede,
 he is 3oure vncle, so god me spede"—

12467. *A* corrected from 3e.

- & sette on & tolde hem al on Ende
 holyche hou that mater gan wende.
 And whanne that gaweyn herde al this,
 anon to his modir he seide, j-wys : 12504
 " he pe trowthe j owe to God & 3ow,
 of on thing j schal maken avow :
 that swerd ne armvre to beren jn fyht,
 tyl that kyng Artheur haue mad me knyht. 12508
 and to help him against his foes.
 and we to his cowrt scholen gon
 him forto helpen azens his fon,
 3yf 3e welen helpen vs owht perto ;
 bothe my bretheren scholen pedir go 12512
 of hym forto ben dubbid knyhtes
 & after to helpen him jn his fyhtes
 [leaf 136 a] Azens Hem Alle that Hym Wrong Wylen Don ;
 we scholen him gon helpen everichon." 12516
 The queen says she will bless the day when Loth and Arthur are good friends again.
 " Now, swete children, as towelching me,
 neuere distorbeled scholde 3e be.
 For that day wolde j ones abyde,
 and blessin j wolde that jlke tyde, 12520
 To sen 3oure Fadir & 3oure oncle jn fere
 as goode frendes as euere they were ;
 hit were to me as joyful tydyng
 as to ben lady of alle worldly thing." 12524
 Gawein asks her to cease weeping ;
 " Now, leye modyr," quod Gawayn tho,
 " lef 3e 3oure weping & doth not so.
 For on avow j schal here make :
 Aftyr that j my leve take, 12528
 J schal neuere sen 3ow eft ageyn,
 tyl my Fadir & min vnele, certeyn,
 ryht goode frendes that they be,
 Er that Eftsones 3ow, modir, j se. 12532
 and min owne bretheren scholen gon with me
 azens my Fadyr al forto be."
 And she replies : " God make you all good men !"
 " Now swete sone," quod the modir thanne,
 " God make 3ow alle Ryht goode memme !" 12536
 During this conversation,
 And as Gawayn thus to his modyr spak,
 jnto the chambre there entrede, with-owten lak,
 12507. *armvre*, *v* a hybrid of *v* and *u*.

- bothe Agrevains and Ek Guerrers
 and Gaheries, *pat weren* stronge & fers,
 and herden there of here talkyng
 & also of here modris gret morneng.
 thanne seide Agrevains to Gaweyn anon :
 “*3e ben* more to blame thanne we echon,
 For *3e ben* eldest of vs alle ;
 therfore to *3ow hit* hadde be-falle
 vs to han lad, knyhtes to han be
 mad of him, most of dignite.
 and him to serve let vs now reke,
 of whom worschipe al the world doth speke.
 For god forbede but *3if* that we
 as worthi *jn* armes scholden be
 as they sein Ambroy oyselet is,
 For here he moste kithen his pris.
 For the hethene ben entred vs vpon,
 & distroyen the contre be on & on,
 and *jn* this contre peple non *js*
 hem owt to dryven, with-owten mys,
 but only be helpe of kyng Arthewr.
 therfore now let vs gon this owr
 and armes of hym forto take
 and with him to risen, bothe slepe & wake,
 and with him to fyhten aȝens his fon,
 For so is vs mochel better to don.
 For here non thing ne mown we wyane ;
 therfore lete vs faste hens twyane,
 rathere than here to lesen oure renown
 and *with* the hethen ben taken & leid in presown
 and so to lesen bothe oure tyme & age ;
 this is non of the sevene sage.”
- 12540 Gawein's
 brothers
 have
 entered the
 room.
- 12544 Agravauns
 says to him :
 “ You are
 most to blame
 for our indo-
 lence, for you
 are the eldest.
- 12548 Now let us
 go and serve
 him whom
 the whole
 world praises.
- 12552 The heathen
 are over us,
- 12556 and only king
 Arthur can
 drive them
 away.
- 12560 Let us take
 arms of him,
 and fellow
 him,
- 12564 rather than
 losing here
 renown and
 liberty.”
- 12572 Gawein,
 delighted at
 his brother's
 words,
- Whanne gaweyn herde his brothir so sayn,
 thanne was he *jn* herte ful fayn,
 and was ryht joyful of his talkyng,
 whiche him plesede ouer alle thing.
 “ Now lakketh vs nowht at this Tyde

asks his mother to see to their equipment.	but oure aray wherwith to ryde ;	12576
	and therefore <i>with-jnne</i> these xiiij dayes, modyr, 3e helpen here now to arayen vs."	
She joyfully promises to do so,	whanne that here modyr vndirstod this, a ioyful womman sche was, j-wys,	12580
	and thanked god ful many a Sithe. " For 3ow to arayen j schal hyen me blyve, For hors ne harneys scholen 3e non lakke, Nethir that be-houith to 3oure bakke."	12584
and her sons are as merry as bird on bough.	thanne weren the children glad jnowh and also merye as bryd on bowh.	
	Now of this leve now we oure talkyng, and let vs forth speken of the kyng,	12588
	that out of sorham cite ryt ful hevyly bencheson of the hethene pat ben him by.	
[leaf 136 b]	Now forthermore let vs tellen son	
After the three other kings have left Sorham,	how that these iij kynges ben agon	12592
	owt of Sorham, that cyte there, jnto othir contres, <i>with-owten</i> dwere.	
(4. king Cla- riouns starts,	thanne rod owt kyng clarioun, j vndirstonde,	
	that was kyng of Northhumberlonde,	12596
and rides to Berland	and rod him to on fair cite, that berland hyhte, certeinle ; whiche cite he kepte wondir wel	
with 3000 men.	<i>with</i> iij thousand men bothe goode & lel	12600
	<i>with-owten</i> hem that jn the town were, of whiche fyve hundred fond he there.	
He holds the border-lands, fights the heathen with varying success,	So that tho marches he kepte ful strong, and euere with the hethene he fawht among,	12604
	and often he wan & often he loste, as hit behappeth jn every oste.	
and cuts off their supply.	thus this kyng anoyed hem sore, for jn that contre vitaille no more	12608
	mihten they geten to here refressching ; So hit hadde vpe gadered clarioun the kyng.	
(5.) Then the King of a Hundred Knights,	So that after kyng Clarioun was gon, the kyng of c. knylites isswede anon	12612
	12591. The top of the column blank.	

owt of sorham cite, ful Sekerly, with iij thousand men of armes him by. to the cyte of malehant gan he ryde, pere a gentyl lady hym abod that tyde ; this cite marched vppon his lond. and for the hethene, j vndirstond, abowtes faste by they lye, that was pe cause pedir gan he hye. and the barouns hym preiden Echon vppon the hethen with hem to gon. this kyng, that was so worthy a man, fulfilled the barouns wille than.	12616	with 3000 men, rides to the city of Male- hant,
(this kyng Ewere kept an c knyhtes, wherby he hadde his name be ryhtes ; but his name was be his baptesm Aingnignes clept aftir his borntempe.) that [tho] marches kepte he wel al abowte, So that of pe hethen they hadden litel dowe.	12620	which is sur- rounded by the vikings.
	12624	
	12628	The real name of the King of a Hundred Knights is Aingnignes.
		He guards the border- lands well.

Aftyr him past owt Tradelivaunt the kyng owt of that cyte, with-owten lesyng. and to northwales he took the way, to on of his cites, as j 3ow say. with iij thousand of armed men jnto his contre Rod he then. and of his comeng they weren ful glad, for of the hethen gret drede they had, that dyden ful gret distroccioun al the contre abowtes jn virown. thane sente this kyng anon riht there aftyr sowdiours Every where, So that vij thousand men he hadde with hem that he ferst forth ladde what on hors & what on fote ; this was his somme, wel j wote, with-outen hem of pe town, plainly, pat weren iiij thousand, sekerly, Wheche Hem Defendyd Jn Every tyde agens a chastel there beside.	12632	(6) King Tra- delivant marches to North Wales.
	12636	
	12640	The inhabit- ants are glad of his coming.
	12644	He sends for soldiers, and soon has 7000 men,
	12648	besides the 4000 in the town.
		[leaf 136e] From a neighbouring castle,

a maid called Car- ville assists the heathen.	that a maiden that carville hylte, Socoured the hethen with alle hire myhte ; hadagabrantis soster, certein, was sche, that thiike castel hadde jn baylle.	12652
They are safe in those border-lands,	And be tho marches, j sey 3ow ryhte, non of the kynges there ne myhte, for non power that they myhten do, non noysaunce the hethen don vnto. for bothe viaunde & vytaylle pe hethen hadde out of pe castel ech day to hem ladde.	12656 12660
and the castel cannot be taken.	for that castel so strong hit was tho, that non harm myhte comen hit vnto.	12664
(Carville is an enchantress, like Morgain	(For this carville cowde more of enchantement than any oper womman, verament,	12664
and Juanne,	Except morgain, that Sostir was To kyng Artheur, jn everi plas, oper ellis juanne, the love of merlyn, that of enchantement coude wel & fyn ; For sche knew more of merlynes konnyng thane alle pe creatures that weren levyng,	12668
of whom more later on.)	as 3e scholen heren jn tyme comeng, whanne 3e me heren speke of swich a thing.) what so porwh helpe of that castel the hethen ben refresschid wel,	12672
The expul- sion of the heathen is reserved to Arthur	wherfore cast out of londe now they not be but be helpe of kyng Arthour, Sykerle, and be the helpe ek of kyng Ban, that is holden so worthi a man, also kyng Bors jn here compenye (pe sonere out of pis lond scholen they hye), and be helpe of oper mo :	12676 12680
and king Loth's children.	kyng Lothis children with hem scholen go, as here-afte[r] 3e scholen heren say jn stoyre j rad this jlke same day.	12684
(7) King Brangor rides to the city of Strangor,	Than owt of sorhant wente kyng Brangor with iij thousand men j-armed thor, and to strangore cite he rod ful faste ;	

12680. *fon^{te}*, abbreviation mark in darker ink.12683. MS. *here afte*.

- For next to the roche hit was ful preste, 12688
 there as the hethene j-logged were.
 and aftyr sowdiours he sent Every where, and sends
 ty! that assemblyd he hadde the ryht for more
 vj thousand armed & redy to fyht 12692 soldiers.
 with-owten iij thousand he with him browhte,
 that forto werren on the hethen ne dredden they nowht.
 this kyng brangores hadde a wif, . King Brang-
 kyng Andoannes dowhter, with-ouen strif, 12696 gors' wife is
 that of costantyn-xoble was Emperovr a daughter
 and therto a man of ful gret honour. of Andoans
 and be his wif, that ded was, (Adrians),
 tweyne dowhtres he hadde jn that plas, emperor of
 of whiche kyng Brangor weddid pe tone, Constanti-
 and pe tothir at costantyn beleft alone, nople.
 that wedlid was to the kyng of hungrye, Her sister is
 as j sey 3ow certeinlye. 12704 married to
 So that at thende of fyve 3er, j wen, the king of
 a knave child hadden they hem be-twen Hungary.
 of the fairest forme that myhte be, These have
 that becam bothe worthi & strong, sikerle. a son,
 at whiche tyme whazne kyng brangor handsome,
 out of Sorhant paste thor, 12708 brave, and
 thike child of age that tyme was strong,
 a knyht to ben mad jn ony plas. 12712 old enough
 and he was clepid be his ryht name to become a
 3onge sagremour, that child of fame, knight,
 whiche that after dyde gret prowess, and called
 as the lond of logres bereth wnesse, Sagremour.
 as aftir jn this storrye here scholen 3e fynde, 12716
 whazne aftyr to this mater j come be kynde.

- The Renown that Sprang Abrod so Wyde [leaf 136 d]
 of kyng Artheur jn Every syde 12720 When king
 and of his largenesse & of his gentrie, Arthur's
 alle the world hit spak of, trewelye. fame spreads
 so pat jn alle stronge contres, with-owten lesynge, throughout
 was non speche but of Artheur the kyng. 12724 the world,

12688. A second *Roche* crossed out after *ful*.12696. *d* crossed out after *kyng*. 12710. MS. *paften*.

- For his los tho sprange so wyde,
 that jnto costantynnoble hit cam that tyde ;
 that so ferforth hit cam to Ere,
 so 3onge sagremour herle perof there. 12728
 that nas 3it but fyftene 3er old,
 a fair 3ong Bachelere and a bold.
 and whanne that he herde this tydyng,
 he ne wolde not letten for non thing, 12732
 tyl he were mad knyht of his hond,
 the sothe j do 3ow to vndirstond.
 and often to his counseil seide he
 that a worthy man moste he nedis be— 12736
 “ whanne that myn ayel, adrians the kyng,
 of him knyht was mad, with-owten lesing.”
 For that he was pe nexte Eyr
 that to theke Empire scholde repeyr. 12740
 so that Sagremour swor, certein,
 that knyht scholde he neuere be, pleyne,
 tyl that kyng Artheur of Breteygne
 hym knyht hadde mad, jn certeygne. 12744
 So that they spoken per-offen so ofte,
 that thike noise wax hye on lofte.
 So that Adrians gan him to hye
 Sagremours to sende forth, Sekerlye, 12748
 jn-to breteygne with gold & fe
 and what thing that to him belonged on lond & se.
 now speke we no more 3it of this matere,
 but here-after more scholen 3e here. 12752

- 3yt procedith forth this stoyre :
 whanne kyng brangores was past, trewlye,
 owt of Sorhant thike cyte,
 kyng karados attir wente, sikerle 12756
 with his meyne arrayed ful ryht,
 foure thousand men redy to fyht.
 and to strangore cite he wente ful faste
 (alle his men of armes with him paste) 12760

12731. *whāne*, *n* corrected from *t*.12742. *pleyn*, *p* corrected from *f*, appearing like a hybrid of those characters.12747. *him* twice, the former crossed out.

whiche cite he kepte ful wel as a wys worthy werreour & a lel. ȝit sente he abowtes wilde where aftyр mo Sowdyowrs to han hem there, so that atte laste assembled there was viȝ thousand men ȝn that plas wel j-armed with swerd and lawnee, of stedis & coursers pat cowden wel praunee. ȝit at that tyme non hethen there were, wherfore eche nyht they lyen owt there ȝn feldes and ȝn weyes bothe to asprien whanne pe hethen comen, forsothe and anon as that they myhten aspye that ony of the hethen drow ther xye, aȝens hem faste the wolden ryde and with hem fyhten ȝn that tyde. So that often they womnen gret good, Whanne that the hethen hem withstood.	12764	He sends about for more sol- diers,
	12768	
	12772	keeps a good look-out for the heathen,
	12776	and often attacks them with success.
Aftyр that these vȝ Kynges Weren gon Out of Sorhant cite Everychon, thanne of Scotland Agwyseax the kyng out forth he paste, with-owten lesyng, The richest kyng of that contre ; but as of armes onnethis cowde he. this kyng out forth rod with v thousand men, and to pe cyte of corange wente he then, whiche that ȝn scotland tho Stood, where as manye of the hethene abod. For there nas but xx scottysch myle where as the hethen lyen thyke whyle at the castel of Vauudebers, where as the sege was strong & fers, that non man of hem the nombre cowden telle of the hethen, that weren so felle. whanne this kyng into corange j-entred was, of the ceteȝeins fond he ȝn that plas Fyve thousand redy armed to fyht.	[leaf 137 a] 12780 12784 12788 12792 12796	(9) King Aug- wiscas of Scotland rides to the city of Corange. Twenty Scotch miles from there, numerous heathen be- siege a castle. In Corange are 5000 fighting men.

More soldiers are sent for.	<p>3it sente he forth bothe day & nyht to seken soudeours be every syde ; So that him comen with-june a tyde what on hors & what on foote x thousand Saudious, wel j wote, with-owten alle his owne meyne and ek the peple of that cyte.</p>	<p>12800</p> <p>12804</p>
They fight the heathen, and repair the walls of the city.	<p>so with the hethen helden they bataille, & often goodes women, with-owten faille, and repareilled the walles of here cyte, pere as it was most wont feble to be. thus longe durede pe werre tho be-twene thike partyes bothe to.</p>	<p>12808</p>
(10) Duke Escam	<p>Thazne afir this out of Sorhant wente dewk Escam of kambenye, veramente, with iiij thousand j-armed ful wel what on hors & on foote echedel. And forth he rod bothe day & nyht, tyl to Cambenie cite he cam ful ryht, the whiche of richesse hadde gret plente and per-june thre thousand men, Sikerle. and whanne they syen pe dewk cambenye, gret joye they maken, certainlye, For pe deseisse they hadde there of the hethen, that weren hem nere, that comeng weren to on castel, For whiche kyng Artheur ordeyned ful wel, er that he paste over the se jnto tarmelyde lond, Sikerle.</p>	<p>12812</p> <p>12816</p> <p>12820</p> <p>12824</p>
rides to his city Cambeny, and is wel- comed by the inhabitants.	<p>3it sente that dewk al abowte to geten more peple to his rowte ; So that vij thousand he hadde redy, as this storie witnessith apertly, with-owten hem pat weren jn that cite, which pat kepe weren ordeyned, Sykerle.</p>	<p>12828</p> <p>12832</p>
He sends for more people and fights the heathen.	<p>and with the hethen fowhten they ofte, for mochel Sorwe was pere on lofte.</p>	

12827. A paragraph mark before this *3it*; it seems to have its right place before the *3it* of l. 12835.

- 3it whanne these barouns out of sorhant were gon,
 thanne lefte kyng Vryens behinde hem echon, 12836 (11) King
 and sent his gold jnto eche contre Uriens, who
 aftyr sowdiours ful gret plente ; remains at
 so that viij thousand to him comen ful ryht, Sorhant,
 and jn the cyte viij thousand redy to fyht. 12840 sends for
 For a sege there lay hem faste by plenty of
 but on jorne thennes, Sekerly ; soldiers.
 so that often they metten jn same
 al on Ernest & not on game. 12844
 som tyme they wonne & losten also,
 as the aventure torned bothe to & fro.
 so that v 3er, whilles hit dede endure,
 was gret meschef, j 3ow ensure, 12848
 That othir levying was not jn that contre
 But as ech of other Hyt tok, Sykerle,
 the cristene of the hethene som on day,
 & the hethen of cristene anothir, jn fay. 12852
 thus was destroyed that contre,
 that pyte & rewthe hit was to se.

 In this manere the werre dyd laste,
 that ech a3ens oper bekeryd ful faste. 12856
 thenns torned the hethen from pat contre
 jnto kyng Artheures lond, certeinle.
 And there didn they gret damage,
 for there nas non to letten here owtrage, 12860
 but as it kam be aventure,
 as gret god wolde, j 3ow ensure,
 bothe faire & good of sqwyers 3onge,
 as goode as myhte ben rehersed with tonge, 12864
 that kepten ful wel that ylke lond,
 tyl kyng Arthewr cam hom, 3e vndirstond.
 and now scholen heren more of this,
 how kyng Arthours lond was kept, j-wis. 12868
- In the neigh-
 bourhood,
 a town is
 besieged.
 They fight

 with varying
 success,

 [leaf 137 b]
 constantly
 snatching
 the food from
 each other.—

 Eventually
 the heathen
 invade Ar-
 thur's land,

 where an en-
 counter with
 the young
 squires,

 and with king
 Arthur, is
 in store for
 them.

Now telleth this tale 3it furthermore :
 whanne that galachim herde tellen thore,

Chap. XIII.

Galachim sends a mes- senger to his cousins to ask for a private mee- ting (cf. ll. 12219 ff.).	he took a messenger ryht anon, and to Gaweyn he sent him ful son, that preveliche to-gederis scholden they mete jn a certeyn forest, & not to lete, and his bretheryn with him to brynge, and that he make non Taryenge, but on the morwe next Pask day there forto meten with-owten delay.	12872 12876
The messen- ger arrives in Orkney, and delivers his message,	the messenger rool bothe day & nyht, tyl jnto orkanye jn wales he kam ful ryht, and dide his arende <i>pere</i> ryht anon To Gaweyn & to his bretherin echon, and seide that—"Galachim sente 3ow to say with him to meten swich a certein day jn the forest of Brokelond at swich a place, 3e vndirstond. For <i>pere</i> sekerly he wyl 3ow abyde, 3if he be heyl, what so be-tyde."	12880 12884 12888
They gladly	whanne that they herden this messengere, gret joye they maden amonges hem there, and seiden, with-owten ony lettyng they wolden ben there be pe day spring. for som nede <i>per</i> was, they wisten trewelye, that they were aftir sent jn so gret hye.	 12892
promise to come,	thanne to this messenger they 3oven a steede and <i>oper</i> gret 3iftes to his meede.	 12896
and reward the messen- ger,	thanne spared the messenger neper hors ne man, tyl that to galachim ful sone he cam, that jn that place abod styлле there of his cosynes to heren answe-re.	 12900
who speedily returns home,		

Galachim, on hearing the answer of his cousins,	Whanne that this messenger was comen ageyn, to his lord galachim he seide, ful pleyn, the answe-re of his cosines dere and that they gretten him al jn fere. "and aftyr Pask the thrydde day they scholen there 3ow meten, with-owten delay." thanne ordeyned him fast this Galachym	12904
gets ready,		

12897. MS. *meßeng* with an *es*-mark at the end and an *er*-mark above it.

- and other certein meyne with hym, 12908
 & ryden forth to þe forest of Brokelond.
 but 3it weren they not comen, j vndirstond,
 But Abod Galachym there Stylee,
 tyl that they comen at here owne wylle. 12912
 whanne gaweyn and his bretherin comen were,
 gret joye amanges hem was thanne there.
 thanne gaweyn to galachym spak vnto :
 "cosin, for me 3e sente," he seide tho, 12916
 "lo, my bretheren and j ju fere
 be comen to knowen 3oure wille here,
 and elles j ne hadde comen at this tyde,
 For into oper contres we casten to ryde,
 and perfore we comen to taken oure leve,
 For vs were loth 3ow forto greve." 12920
 "whider wolde 3e riden?" quod galachim tho,
 "with-owten me 3e owhten not to do. 12924
 perfore j preye 3ow that 3e me telle
 jnto what conteward 3e ben so snelle.
 and aftyr j schal tellen 3ow my wyl,
 3if that 3e welen owht assentyn þertyl." 12928
 "Cosin galachim, wilen 3e vndirstonde me,
 of merveillous thinges j schal tellen the :
 of the largete and of the prowessse,
 of the fre herte, deboneure, & swetnesse, 12932
 and of the worthyest knyht þat in þe world is,
 of whom that j haue herd tydynges, j-wys."
 "A god mercy," quod galachim tho,
 "leve cosyn gawayn, ho tolde 3ow so ? 12936
 For that same cause for 3ow j sente,
 as j 3ow now seye veramente."
 "Forsothe," quod gaweyn thanne ageyn,
 "his Name owhte to ben knowen ful pleyn. 12940
 For his name hiht Artheur the kyng,
 the best body that day may be spryng ;
 and 3oure oncle and myn he is
 and þerto the worthiest kyng of pris 12944
 & ek þerto oure kyng with ryht,

and rides to
the meeting-
place.

[leaf 137 c]

Gawein and
his brothers
arrive.

Gawein says :
"You have
sent for us.

Here we are,
to know your
will.

Then we will
go into other
countries."

Galachim
asks where
they want
to go.

Gawein re-
plies by ex-
tolling the
worthiest
knight in the
world.

Galachim
exclaims :
"For the
same reason
I sent for
you!"

Gawein con-
tinues : "His
name is
Arthur.

He is our
uncle

and our right-
ful king.

12940. *Owhte*, *h* squeezed in afterwards.

12941. *hiht* corrected from *hit*.

The barons
oppose him
unjustly.

I will be
made a
knight only
by him."

& *with* wrong þe barouns aȝens him goune fyht.
for weteth wel," quod gaweyn, "Sekerlye,
that knyht j wele ben mad of his bodye
and neuere er armes to here,
certein, galachim, j ȝow swere."

12948

Galachim is
delighted,

and they all
rejoice.

They tell
each other
of their
mother's
words.

Then after
agreeing to
meet again
in a fort-
night,

they ride
home to equip
themselves.

Galachim
musters 200
well-armed
warriors.

He leaves
home without
telling his
father.

[leaf 137 a]

His cousins

Whanne that galachym vnderstood al this,
his herte was ful of joye and blys,
and als moche joye to-gederis they made
as thowh alle the world they hade,
and told hym þat for non othyr thyng
for hym he sente, *with-owten* lesyng.
Ek he told hym al jn fere
hou it kam be talkyng of his modir dere.
thanne to galachim spak gaweyn þe bolde :
"Ryght *evene* the same my modir me tolde."
and whanne that thus they hadden spoken jn fere,
anon they acordlyd thanne ryht there
whanne they wolden taken here jorne :
with-june xv dayes, ful Sykerle.
thanne wenten they forth ech jn his way
hem forto purveyen alle *maner* aray,
as behouede to swyche children so goode,
that comen weren of so hygh a blode.
thanne rod forth galachym anon ryht
hym forto ordeyne with al his myht,
tyl ije. of knyhtes & sqwyers had he
ful wel j-harneised jn alle degre,
of the beste that he cowde chese,
for be his wyl he wolde non lese.

12952

12956

12960

12964

12968

12972

12976

12980

And thus wente he *prevyly* forth his way,
that non word to his fadir wolde he say.
And streyht to Brokelond thanne Rydeth He,
and there abydeþ with his meyne,
Tyl gawein & his bretherin comen were ;
this galachim abod hem ryht There.
For they hem purchased on here syde

- v. .c. men with hem to ryde
 what of worthy knyhtes & of sqwiere
 wel j-horsed & harneysed al jn fere, 12984
 and lordis children weren they alle
 and þe most part knyhtes, as hit gan falle.
 but of galachymmes meyne
 nere but xx knyhtes, certeinle. 12988
 whanne they to-gederis weren j-met,
 there was gret joye, with-owten let.
 thanne conseilled they to-gederis tho
 jnto what partye they wolden go. 12992
 thanne acorded they everichon
 that to Londone in breteine pey wolden gon,
 the chyef cyte of Artheur the kyng ;
 For þere scholden pey sonnest heren tydyng 12996
 bope of the kyng and þe hethene also,
 that jn that contre dide mochel wo.
- Now, as 3e me heren bope reden & say,
 jn the begynneng of the mounthe of may,
 whanne trees & medwes wexen grene
 and faire flowres growen hem be-twene,
 ek also Bryddis meryly don Synge,
 also swete dewes jn the mornenge, 13000
 and also hertes lyhtenen be kynde,
 ek thanne is merye vnder wode lynde,
 thanne thouthte Gaweyn & galachim,
 Gaheris & gwerrers, & mo with hym, 13008
 and Agrevayn jn here compenye :
 faste to ryde gozne they*hem hye,
 whiles the morwenyng hit was cold ;
 they thowhten to ryden, þat weren so bold. 13012
 for they weren tendre and 3ong of age,
 hardy, bold, & ful of corage,
 and þerto j-armed wondirly wel
 bothe jn erne and ek jn stel, 13016
 here swerdis hangyng on here sadellbowe,
 and thus they reden al be rowe.
 for jn þat contre was gret doute
 of the hethene. that ryden aboute 13020

have 500
noble
followers,

mostly
knights.

When they
all meet,
there is great
joy.

They decide
to go to
London.

In the love'y
month of
May,

Gawein and
his cousins
start on their
journey,

full of cour-
age and well
armed.

For the land
is infested by
the heathen,

who plunder
everywhere.

bothe for pray and ek vytaylle ;
alle that contre didnen they asaille.
whiche contre so ful of good hit was,
whanne they entrede jnto that plas, 13024
that gret deol hit is to here
what distroccioun they maden there.

On the third
day,
they meet
four viking
kings,
[leaf 138 a]

The thridde day whanne they goune ryde,
3e scholen here what hem gan be-tyde : 13028
they metten kyng leodegroun, verament,
Kyng Sonygroun, And Kyng mandelent,
Therto kyng Sernagn jn compeyne,
that hadde destroyed al that contre ; 13032
For thens they ladden many gret praye
of wyn, flesch, vytaille, The sothe to saye ;
and the portis weren aryved with marchaundise,
the ryalest that ony man cowde devyse, 13036
that v hundred somers weren charged there,
xv chares, & ten .c. charyettes jn Fere.
this cariage so wondir gret hit was,
that the powdir ros wondirly jn that plas, 13040
that onnethes ony other myhte se
For dowst, that was so gret plente,
therto the Fyr & smoke so strong also,
that non man myhte sen where oper gan go. 13044
whanne these 3onge children herden the cry
of the powre peple that cam hem by
For the harm that the hethen hadden do,
of whom ther weren ten thousand & mo 13048
with-owten hem that weren on foote,
that both robbed & brende, god hit wote—

The young
squires ask
for king
Arthur.

Whanne the children this dolour Sye
of that poure peple to-forn here Eye, 13052
they axeden where kyng Arthour was.
they ne wiste, they seide, jn non cas—
“ but he be jnto the lond of Tarmelyde,

The people
answer: “ He
must have
gone to
Tarmelide.

13029. *kȳg*, *g* squeezed in afterwards.

13038, 13039. *.c.* and *so* added above the line.

13047. The second *the* corrected from *he*.

- as we suppose this jlike tyde. 13056
- but ȝit er that he forth wente,
 alle his strengthes he stuffyd, veramente,
 that non of these hethen harm may hem do,
 and therfore, Sekyr, they ben ful wo, 13060
 and therfore they distroye this contre
 thus al abowtes, as ȝe mowne Se.”
- whanne that the children herden this,
 that kyng Artheur was owte of lond, j-wis, 13064
 they wolden chalangen bothe lond & pray
 that the hethene hadden forreyed that day,
 and kepen that lond jnto his comeng,
 that was bothe here vncle & kyng. 13068
- whanne that these passantes herde hem so say,
 thanne of on thing they goume hem pray :
 to tellen what maner of men they were.
 “his kynnes-men we ben many of vs here.” 13072
- and whanne the passantes herden this,
 Ful mochel joye they maden, j-wys,
 For his kynnesmen, they goume vndirstond,
 Scholde sosteine & kepen kyng Artheurs lond. 13076
- whanne that the children al this beheld
 how thikke the careage kam ouer the feld,
 here hertes gounen to rysen anone,
 and as armes they cryden thus sone. 13080
- “sow let sen here, worthy sqwyers,
 whiche of vs schal ben most bold & fers
 here to defenden oure herytage,
 ju whiche these paynemis don gret owtrage.” 13084

But before
 that, he
 equipped his
 strongholds,

and now the
 heathen
 plunder in
 the country.”

The squires
 decide to
 challenge
 both land
 and spoil.

The peasants
 find out who
 the young
 men are,

and are glad
 of their help.

The squires
 cry: “To
 arms!”

They ride
 against the
 enemy,

followed by
 the peasants.

First they
 meet a num-
 ber of carts

13057. *forth*, *h* added afterwards.

13078. *Carriage*, the first *c* corrected from *a*.

conducted by 3000 heathen.	that they ladden toward here ost with thre thousand Paynemis of gret bost. and hit was passed the mydday, as this stoyre here doth say,	13096
It is a very hot day.	Ek wondir hot hit was tho ryht both for sqwyer and Ek for knyht. Anon as þe chyldren here enemyes Sye, azens hem faste gommen they hye,	13100
[leaf 13 ^v b]	Also Faste As they myhten Ryde ; with here enemye they metten that tyde, and theke tyme slowen doun ryht Euerichen, that thiike tyme from hem paste not on.	13104
The squires attack and slay the heathen ;	thiike day be gaweyn so manye weren ded, that body & hors weren al blood red. For azens the ax that he bar on hond, there myhte non man his dynt with-stond.	13108
Gawein,	þeke his other bretheryn dyden wel tho, For they slowen that day mani a fo. and galachym with gawayn Ewere was, that mani merveilles wrowh jn that plas ;	13112
his brothers,	For al that Ewere stood jn his weye, he slowh down ryht, as j ȝow seye. but of þe Marterdom þat made gaweyn, hit is wondir to tellen, jn certeyn ;	13116
and Galachim doing wonders,	For azens his strok wolde nowht abyde nethir harneys ne man that ilke tyde. So fowhten the children that jlke day with hem þat ladden that jlke pray,	13120
more particu- larly Gawein.	that there ne skaped but xx men, of whiche ȝit there weren ten that returned to hem that comen behynde, of hem socour ȝif they myhten fynde ;	13124
Only twenty heathen escape ; ten of them reach the 7000 men who come march- ing behind.	of wheche vij thousand fully there were, but alle wel armed weren they not there, for hit was trossed hem be-Fore among the chariettis that wenten thore :	13128
Many of these carry no arms on account of the heat.	For the gret hete that was thanne, onharmed ther rod ful mani a manne.	

13094. *bost*, *t* through correction.13115. *made*, *d* through correction.

whanne these ten fugytyves comen ageyn
to tho vij thousand, they tolden hem pleyn
how that alle jslayn they were
that here cariage cowndyet there.

13132

The fugitives
tell of their
defeat.

Whanne that the hethin vndirstodyn al this,
anon to here armes they wenten, j-wis ;
thike that ony armure hadden tho,
dyden as wel as they myhten do.

13136

Those who
have their
weapons at
hand, get
ready.

so that the thridde partye there
of armure destitewd they were,

13140

But the third
part have
their armour
lying on the
carts

whiche jn chareettis was trossed be-fore,

pat these 3ong sqwyers hadde wonnen thore ;

whiche to Londone they senten, with-owten let,

13144

now seized
by the squires
and sent off
to London.

be theke passauntes that with hem met,

and let counlie hem be anothir way,

lest pat these hethene scholde hem betray.

and sethen they seweden forth the chas,

til that they comen jnto that plas

13148

The squires,
in pursuit of
the fugitives,
fall upon the
heathen force.

there as thei to-gederis mette,

bothe hethen & cristen, with-owte lette.

thanne there began ful gret bataylle.

For there slowhe caweyn, with-owten faille,

13152

Gawein
cleaves the
body of one
of their
kings,

kyng Noas the Brun of yrlond.

his strokis weren sweche, 3e vndirstond,

that with his ax he clef him vnto,

that asondir fyl his Body tho.

13156

Galachim
cuts off the
head of an-
other,

Galachim so smot tho kyng Sonigran,

that jnto the feld his hed fley than ;

for so took galachim there vppon,

that his strok dorste abyden non.

13160

Gaheries
chases a
third, Guine-
bant,
who has hit
Guerrers with
a spear.

And Gaheries chased kyng Gwyneband

the drawht of an archier, j vndirstand.

for he hadde beten his brothir gwerrers,

perfore jn herte he was ful fers.

13164

(That Guer-
rers was
unhurt,

(with a spere gwyneband him smot, sikerle,

wherfore gaheries wende ded he hadde be ;

but Gwerrers harm cawhte non

13152. *ffor*, *ff* through correction. 13160. *strok*, *k* blotted.

13161. *Gwyneband*, *d* corrected from *t*.

- that ilke tyme of his fon ; 13168
 Gaheries did but that wiste not the sothe gaheries.)
 not know.) So forth he prekede jn that pres
 with his swerd j-drawn on hande,
 as faste as the hors myhte fleande. 13172
- [leaf 138 c] Whanne Gwynebant Gaheryet tho beheld,
 Guinebant flees in terror. that he cam so prekyng jn the feld,
 he fledde faste from hym a-way
 For drede of deth he hadde sein that day. 13176
- (For Gaheries has that day made almost as great havoc as Gawein. (For he was of merveillous prowess,
 and that day nygh dede as gret dystresse
 jnto litel partye as dyde Gawayn,
 and al the sothe now Scholde j sayn. 13180
- He has sworn an oath thanne swor Gaheriet anon there
 be god & be his blessed modir dere
 that 3if euere he myhte armes welde
 to ben a knyht and beryn a schelde, 13184
- never to rest, that he scholde neuere jn place abyde
 xethir day ne nyht, that he nolde ryde
 vpon the hethen, avenged til that he be
 of his brotheris deth, ful certeinle. 13188
- till he has avenged his brother's death.) For he wende gwerres hadde ben dede
 Ful Sekerly there jn that Stede.)
 and euere he sewed forth ful faste,
 tyl he ouergat him at the laste. 13192
- Gaheries overtakes Guinebant. So that behindes him weren the hethen men
 Behind him are the heathen men. an arblastes, j wot wel then.
 thanne swed hym gwynebant's meyne,
 that from that bataylle gonnen they fle. 13196

- So that to-gederis they metten jn fere,
 Gaheries felis his toe, that Gaheriet so smot Gwynebant there
 thorw the helm (ful Sone hit glod)
 that down he fyl with-oute ony abod 13200
 So that the ryht qwarter fley away
 jnto the Feld that same day.
 and wants to return. thanne torned gaheriet his hors hed,

13176. MS. *that day*. 13184. *and, d* corrected from *b*.
 13200. *oute* added above the line.

- and was ful joyful jn that sted, 13204
 that he hadde venged his brothers deth ;
 So that to his compenye forward he goth.
 3it this Gwynebant, as he lay,
 Cryde and made ful gret deray. 13208
 So that to him they comen be eche partie,
 als so faste as they myhte flye,
 and with here cleyves comen gaheryet aboute,
 both hym & his hors jn that rowte. 13212
 to the erthe down they there bar
 bothe gaheryet and his hors ryht thar
 and his hors they Slowen vndyr hym.
 than wax Gaheries wondir grym, 13216
 and vppon his feet he stirte ful blyve,
 as man that thowhte to Saven his lyve.
 and so he besterid jn that plas,
 that there non of hem so hardy was 13220
 ones to leggen vppon hym ony hand.
 therfore otherwyse they gonze fand :
 with longe speris & swerdis bothe
 and with al manere of scharpe knyves, forsothe, 13224
 that ij or iij on knes was he browht ;
 So that longe Enduren myhte he there nowht
 but 3if that he were taken or ded ;
 he myhte not flen owt of that sted. 13228
 thanne was there a sqwier, that him say pace
 to purswen Gwynehannt jn that place,
 kan wringeng his handis with hevye chere,
 and al to-tar & For-drowh his here. 13232
 thanne to Gaweyn streyht gan he go,
 that Gwerriers hadde j-rered & horsed tho
 vppon kyng Sernagnes hors,
 that this sqwier wan *with* gret fors. 13236

But Guine-
baut cries
murder,

and Gaheries
is soon sur-
rounded,

and thrown to
the ground.

He leaps to
his feet,

and defends
himself.

They attack
him with long
spears,
swords, and
knives.

His situation
is desperate.

Now a squire,
seeing the
danger,

hastens to
Gawein,
who has just
helped Guer-
riers to a
horse.

He cries :
" What are
you thinking
of ?

Whanne this sqwier Gaweyn Say tho,
ful lowde he cryde : " what thenke 3e do ?

13206. The scribe omitted this line ; in writing it afterwards up the right margin, he again left out *compenye*, which was ultimately inserted above (*i. e.* to the left of) the (vertical) line.

13211. *aboute*, *b* corrected from *d*.

- Your brother
Gaherries is
lost, unless he
gets speedy
help.
- 3e han lost gaheriet, 3oure brothir dere,
but he som socour the sonnere haue here, 13240
For a cursed hethene he chasede ful blyve,
where-thorwh j trowe he hath lost his lyve.
[leaf 138 d] For the Hethen He Beet down to grownde,
but the paynemys sewed jn that stounde, 13244
and 3ondir jn 3one dyrke valeye
there lyth gaheriet beten, *with-ouen* delaye.
For passing gret los it now were
thus forto lesen 3oure brothir dere." 13248
- Gawein prays
to God and
the Virgin
that he may
not lose his
brother,
- whanne that Gaweyn herde of this tydyng,
anon he preide to hevene kyng
and to blessid marye, his modir jn fere,
that he scholde not lesen his brother dere. 13252
- for if he does,
he will never
be glad,
- "For 3if j hym lese jn this degre,
joyful jn herte schal j thanne neuere be ;
nor fight
agaim.
- and 3if j thus lese hym jn this feld,
abowtes my nekke neuer hangen schal scheld !" 13256
- He lets the
squire indi-
cate the spot,
- Anon of the Esqwier axede he
jn what partye that he myhte be.
thanne he him tolde : "jn 3one valeye
vndir 3one wode, as j 3ow seye." 13260
- and calls on
his men to
follow.
- thanne 3onge Gaweyn ascryed anon
that his meyne scholde with hym gon.
- Galachim
says :
"We have
laboured hard
to-day,
and must
labour harder
still!"
- "leve cosyn," quod galachim tho,
"For this nede whom somone 3e so ? 13264
we han laboured Sore this day,
and 3it we mosten sorrer, jn fay."
So that they disrenged pere anon,
and to-forn hem alle gaweyn gan gon. 13268
and also faste he gan forth to ryde
as qwarel of arblast doth owt glyde,
with a ryht good ax jn his hond.
- Gawein takes
the lead,
as swift as
an arrow,
- and swich martirdom he made, j vndirstond, 13272
that thus they Slowen bothe to & fro
a myle wey, Er gaheriet they comen to.
- and works
his way
- and atte laste gaheriet they fownde
- to Gaherries.

13257. *axede*, a through correction.

13259. MS. *than* with an abbreviation stroke over *an*.

13267. MS. *difregend*.

- liggende ful plat to the grownde.
 (his helm they token of jn that sted,
 for they wolden han smeten of his hed.
 but they bethouhten hem also blyve,
 that they wolden han taken hym on lyve,
 and sende him forth to kyng Bernage,
 on of the hethene ful of corage.
 thanne torned they gaheriet pere anon
 to bynden his hondis behinde his bakbon.)
 thanne cam gawein rydyng ful faste,
 whiles ony breth on him myhte laste,
 with a myhty ax beryng on honde;
 there-with the hethen he thouhte don schonde.
 whanne so with his brothir they token vppon,
 he thowhte of hem to sparen not on.
- Thanne on bothe Sydes he gan on leye,
 that wondir hit is al forto seye,
 that non man dorst his strok abyde.
 thanne behekden they that ylke tyde
 that his brothir helden hem be-twene,
 For swiche strokes hadde they non sene.
 So that non lengere wolde they him kepe,
 but ȝif to the deth that they wolde lepe.
 whanne Gaheriet say his brothir gawayn,
 tho vp he Stirte and was ful fayn,
 and cast his helm vppon his hed
 ful rediliche jn that sted
 and took his swerd & fawht ful faste.
 ek Agrevayn his brothir he spide atte laste,
 that him an hors pere browht jn hyghe
 and seide: "gaheriet brothir, trewely,
 worth vp faste vppon þis stede.
 For ȝe ben to blame, so god me spede,
 so fer from ȝoure felawes forto gon;
 So myhten ȝe han lost ȝoure lif anon.
 Anon as gaheriet to hors was dyht,
 the bretheren semblede with al here myht,
- 13276 Gaherics is
lying on the
ground.
The heathen
have taken
off his helm,
- 13280
- 13284 and want to
bind his
hands behind
his back.
- 13288 Gawein
breathes
vengeance.
- 13292 He attacks
the heathen.
- 13296
- 13300 These must
desist,

and Gaherics
jumps to his
feet.
- 13304 Agrevain
brings him
a horse,
- 13308 and chides
him for his
foolhardi-
ness.
- 13312

13276. *Grownde*, *wn* on erasure.13280. *hȝ*, *y* corrected from *e*. 13281. *fende d* corrected from *t*.13307. *p*^s squeezed in afterwards. 13312. MS. *alher*.

The squires
collect their
forces;

[leaf 139 a]

so do the
heathen.

and gadered here peple to-gedere jn same,
For hem was comeng mochel grame.

For the Hethen Wenten Faste Abowte

here batailles to gaderen jn-to a rowte.

13316

Now let vs resten of this Talkyng
bothe of the hethene and pe children so 3yng.

And of the passauntes let vs now talke,

that with the cariage to Londone gonne walke.

13320

In the mean-
time, the
peasants
hurry on to
London with
the booty,

Now reherseth forth here this Storye,
that the passauntes gonnen faste hem hye,
as men joyful and glad they were

that the cyte they hadde aprochyd so nere,

13324

For but fowre myles they weren then;

anxious to
bring it into
a safe place.

and amanges hem but lytel defens,

wherfore they hyed hem wondir faste,

tyl juto pe cyte that they weren paste.

13328

for they wisten wel, the hethene wolden asaye

3if they myhte geten a3en that praye.

The citizens
are amazed
at the sight,

whanne they of the cyte behelden that Syht,

Sore jn here hertis they weren afryht

13332

of that good & of that richesse

that thiike meyne browhte, *with-outen* distresse.

and ask who
have wrought
such a brave
work.

The cete3eins axeden the passauntis sone

ho that al that prowesse hadde done.

13336

The peasants
answer:
"Gawein,
his brothers,

they seiden that—"gaweyn, kyng Lothis son,

his bretherin & cosines jn viron,

Gaheriet, gwerres, & Agrevayn,

and their
cousin
Galachim;

and galachim here cosyne, jn certayn,

kyng newtres sone, as j 3ow telle,

13340

with the hethene they fyhten ful felle,

they have
left their own
hands to help
king Arthur.

and leven Londis, richesse, & alle thyng,

and comen to helpen Artheur oure kyng;

13344

that neuere for joye ne3er for wrake

oure kyng Artheur xilen not forsake;

With 700 men
against 3000
they have
won this.

but vij hundred felawes in compenye

a3ens iij thousand this women they, trewlye,

13348

and hem they slowen everychon;

that so with this pray gonne we gon.

and now they fyhten with vij thousand mo,
 that this cariage purswede tho. 13352 Now they are
 Openeth the gates, this good 3e take, fighting
 and som rescus for hem 3e make ; against 7000.
 For hit were bothe rewthe and pyte
 but 3if that they reskwed now be." 13356 Open the
 gates, take
 these goods,
 and send
 them some
 help!"

Whanne the cetezeins vndirstodlyn this,
 anon the gates thei opened, j-wys, Then the
 and resceyved jn that Tresor, gates are
 that the passauntes browhten thor. 13360 opened,
 and sethen a meyne, with-owten lesyng, the goods
 scholde gon the children jn socouryng. received,
 anon to pe maister tour they wente, 13364 and the fight-
 and an horn they blewen pere, veramente. ing men sum-
 thanne was pere the custum tho moned by
 that eche man thanne to armes scholde go. means of a
 So that there Weren Redy Anon Ryht horn blast
 Sevene thousand men j-armed to fyht. from the chief
 channe seide the captein of that town tower.
 that hit nere non good resown— [leaf 139 b]
 "that manye hens scholde go, 13368 7000 men
 what maner of xede we han hem to. assemble;
 and perfore me thinketh best hit were the captain
 that somme of hem abyde how here." (Doon of Car-
 so of pat meyne v thousand forth wente, diff) wants to
 and the remenant to pe cite weren sente. 13372 leave some in
 the town;

Thus pasten they forth be dalk and dale
 tyl that they comen jnto the vale
 where as they fowhten sore jn fere 13379
 and be pat tyme vij thousand newe hethen comen were,
 and whanne they were comen to pat gaderyng,
 they preisede here felawes ryht non thing,
 that azens so lytel a meyne
 so longe to holden ony chawd melle. 13384
 "for but 3onge berdles boyes they ben, Meanwhile,
 7000 more
 heathen have
 arrived;
 these blame
 their com-
 rades for
 fighting so
 long against
 "beardless
 boys,"

13358. *thei*, *i* squeezed in afterwards.13371. *henf* corrected from *hennef*.13385. *boyef*, *f* squeezed in afterwards.

a small
force only.

but iiij xx knyhtes, as j kan sen,
and but v. hundred of sqwyers,
that nethir ne semen prowld ne fers, 13388
and xx that not dubbed ne be,
and iij c besides thanne, Sykerle."

The chier-
tains of the
heathen,
Medelans
(Mandelent)
and Guine-
hans (Guine-
hant, -haut)
have their
forces divided
in two bri-
gades.

but the hethene *gouvernours* that *pere* were,
medelans & guinechans bothe jn fere, 13392
hadden departyd here meyne
jnto tweyne bataylles, Sykerle ;
and jn Every bataylle iiij thouse[n]d was
of tho hethene jn that plas. 13396

Guinehans
rides for-
ward ;

So that this Guinehans cam forth be-fore
with a strong spere jn his handis thore ;
and gawayn, that to-fore alle *oper* was
with his ax on honde jn that plas, 13400
and boldeliche he rod him to mete ;
for non *maner* of thing he wolde not lete.

They meet.

this guinehant *with* his spores his hors tho smot,
& mette with gaweyn anon foot hot, 13404

Guinehant
breaks his
spear on
Gawein.

and agens the brest Smot him so sore,
that al on peeces the spere fleygh thore.
for his hauberk was strong jnowgh,
of double mayl bothe good & towgh, 13408
and him-Self a worthy Bachelor,
that on enche wolde not remeven ther
for non strok that he cowde Sette.

Gawein hits
him on the
helmet,

that 3onge gaweyn ne did him lette, 13412
but to hym he rawhte ful ryht
with his ax so trechaunt as man of myht.
vppon his helm he smot him so,

and throws
him to the
ground.

that Top ouer tail he gan to go, 13416
and with that hiȝ hors fyl to grownde,
and this was don jn a lytel stownde.

The heathen
are amazed.

Whanne that the hethene behelden this,
of that strok they *merveilleden*, j-wys, 13420

13389. *not*, *t* blotted. 13395. MS. *thoufed*.

13403. *hors* added in the right margin.

13405. *Smot*, *s* daubed.

13413. *ful* twice, the former crossed out.

- For they wende here king ded hadde be ;
 hym to socouren faste gonne they fle.
 and gaweyn amonges hem gan to ryde,
 and they with him fowhten on ech syde,
 and *with* here gleyves slowen his destrer
 betwene his thyes, as he rod ther.
 thanne thussone he was on foote
 bothe angry & fers & of herte ful hoote,
 and on bothe sydes he leyde so vppon,
 that of hem dorste neghen hym non.
 thanne cam socour hym abowte,
 so *pat pere* was strong fyht, with-owten dowte,
 abowtes gawayn jn that stounde,
 and Ewere lay kyng Guinehans atte grounde.
 For the hethene jn dowte were
 whethir to reren guinehant they scholden gon *pere*
 Owther Abowtes Gawayn forto Abyde ;
 thus jn dowte they weren that Tyde.
 but gawayns felawes Fowhten there sore,
 and the melle wax hard Ewere more & more.
- 13424 They hasten to his assistance,
and kill Gawein's horse.
- 13428 But Gawein keeps them at bay.
He gets help.
- 13432
- 13436 The heathen do not know whether to assist Guine-
[leaf 139 c]
hant, or turn on Gawein.
- 13440
- Whanne gawayn wist where-abowtes they were,
 that they wolde taken him presonere
 & an hethen hadde smeten his *proper* Agrevayn,
 wherfore he was sory, in certayn,
 and stirte him forth jn al that pres
with his ax on honde (he wolde not ses),
 and lifte vp his ax *pere* on hy,
pat he 'hethen to han Smeten, trewly.
 this he hen ne myhte not wel asterte,
 but caste vp his Scheld also smerte ;
 & with his ax he smot hit on peces two,
 that juto pe feld they flowen tho.
 the strok vppon pe left scholder alyhte,
 and down to pe girdyl he clef him down ryhte,
 that down to pe Erthe he fyl anon,
 and gaweyn his hors took ful son.
 thanne vp he stirte jn ryht gret haste,
- 13444 Gawein, in danger of being taken,
makes a rush into the press,
- 13448
- 13452 cuts through a heathen's shield,
- 13456 cleaves him to the girdle,
and throws himself on his horse.

13430. *hym*, MS. *hyn*.13442. *they*, *y* squeezed in afterwards.

- Encouraging
his comrades,
anon to his Felawes he ascriede wel faste :
"let se, Eche man prove his prowesse,
that *with* vs here ben, more oper lasse. 13460
For now scholen 3e sen pat bothe my strokes & myht
this oure ben doubled, j 3ow plyht."
- he plunges
into fresh
combats.
thanne amonges the hethene gan he ryde,
and gret martirdom he mad that tyde, 13464
that the pecis flowen jn-to the feld
as wel of mennes bodies as of scheld.
- By this time
Guinehans
is put on
horseback ;
be that tyme guinehans was vp set
To asayen 3if he cowde don ony bet. 13468
he took a stowt lawnce, jn certeyn,
and faste he rod azens Agreveyn,
that his owne cosin hadde j-slayn
be-for his owne Eyen, certayn. 13472
So azens him he rod *with* mayn & myht,
and sire Agrevaynes he smot ful ryht,
that hors & man to grownde he wente ;
thanne wenden his bretheryn he hadde be schente. 13476
- and throws
him to the
ground.
There goes
a chill
through the
hearts of the
friends,
jn here hertes they woxen ful colde,
for siker they wenden he hadde be de[d] ;
him to Reskwe they wente jn pat stel. 13480
- Galachim
strikes
Guinehant
on the helm,
Galachym was pe ferste tho
pat to guinehant gan forto go,
& vppon the helm so hym smot,
that his bak bowede anon fot hot ; 13484
- Guerrera
wounds him
in the arm,
and Gaieries
cuts off his
head.
and guerriers smot him thorgwh the arm
(3it ere he wente, hadde he more harm),
and Gaieriet betwene pe nekke & pe scholder bon,
that jnto pe feld pe hed flygh anon ; 13488
and galachim with his foot that stounde
threw down pe Body to the grownde,
and took his hors & ladde to Agrevayn,
that on foote fawlit with strengthe & mayn. 13492
and whanne Agrevayn was vpe j-dyht,
- Galachim
takes the
horse to
Agrevain.

13479. MS. *be de*.

13486. This line was omitted and then written up the right margin.

thane begynne there wondir gret fyht.
 but of gaweyn wiste they non thing,
 for he was ful harde in bekering
 amonges the hethene vndir the lynde ;
 so fer hit was, he was harde to fynde.

13496 Gawein is
 fighting far-
 ther off.

whanne the hethen saw that gwinehaut
 was so ded thorw his owne defaut,
 they torned faste anon to flyht.
 to kyng mandelentes ost pey wenten ful tyht,
 that was here chief gouernour ;
 to him they wenten for socour.

13500 The heathen,
 seeing Guine-
 haut (Guine-
 hans) killed,
 flee to
 Mandelent
 (Medelans).

Thanne Gaweyn, that Was So fer In gon,
 whanne tydinges of his bretheren herde he non,
 he wende discomfit that they hadde be,
 and gan to withdrawn him, certeinle.

13504

[leaf 139 d]

hym thowhte he say his bretherin comenge,
 which to his herte was gret lyhtynge,
 and toward gawayn they comen that res,
 but they ne myhte him neighen for pres.

13508

Gawein, hear-
 ing nothing
 from his
 brothers,
 begins to
 retreat.
 Then he sees
 the brothers
 coming,

for kyng mandelent hadde gret plente,
 bet than vij thousand hethen, Sykerle,
 and pat causede that ȝonge gawayn

13512

but Mande-
 lent's brigade
 stands be-
 tween.

to his feleschepe miht not come, certayn,
 whiche that were ryht gret pite
 for alle Breteyne, Sykerle.

13516

be that tyme weren they of londone there
 with v thousand wel armed jn fere.

13520

By this time,
 the 5000
 Londoners
 appear.

whanne the children behelden that siht,
 and pat here banere was displaied ful ryht,
 and knewen hem that wenten hem fro
 with pe cariage to Londone forto go
 and boden hem to ben lyht of herte—
 “for socour ȝow cometh also smarte.”

13524

The young
 squires recog-
 nize them,

Whanne that the children wisten this,
 that they weren of Londone, j-wis,
 jn herte they hadden ryht gret joye,

13528

and rejoice.

13496. *was*, *s* through correction. 13510. MS. *lyhtynge*.

13518. *Breteyne*, *B* corrected from *g*.

	For þe lasse the hethen hem scholde anoye.	
They attack afresh;	they torned here hors al jn fere, & vppon þe hethen they ryden jn there.	13532
	but thanne weren the hethen sory, For kyng Guinehaut lay ded hem by.	
	thussone they gommen medlen sone ; thanne was þer not a litel to done.	13536
spears are broken,	here speres schatered jn þe feld, & many hethen ded vndir his scheld.	
	And whanne here speris to-broken were, eche man to his swerd took there.	13540
swords are drawn,	So ech with-jinne oper gan to ryde, So that gret bataylle was þat tyde.	
	bothe of hors & Ek of men	
and much blood is shed.	ful strong bloodsched was þere then, that it ran down be eche vale,	13544
	as here reherseth this ylke tale ; þerto þe dost so gret hit was,	
	omethis ony oper knew jn þat plas.	13548
The furious battle	Ful strong was þanne that melle of the children and [hem] of Londone, as ȝe moun se,	
	agens tho cursed hethen wyhtes, that so longe Endured jn fyhtes.	13552
lasts until evensong.	From morwen jnto Evensong belle, so longe they fowhten, as j ȝow telle.	
	There dede Gawayn worthy prowesse amonges the hethene jn that presse,	13556
Gawayn meets with Mandelent,	thanne mette with kyng mandelent ; with him to fyhte hadde he good entent.	
who has struck one of his kin,	For he hadde smyten on of his kyn, þerfore he thowhte to meten with hym.	13560
Doon of Cardif.	Doon of kerdyf was his name ; a man he was of ful good fame.	
	to þe erthe he hadde him browht, whiche þat Gawayn ful sone him sowht.	13564

13532. *there, th* on erasure (probably *f* was erased).13545. *that it ran*, the second *t* and *an* blotted.13550. MS. *and of London*.13557. *mandelent*, *nt* corrected from *is*.13564. *Gawayn*, *G* corrected from *f*.

he wolde han smeten of his hed,
 but anoper thowht gawayn jn þat sted.
 Atte laste 3it gaweyn with mandelent mette,
 & on strok he on him sette;
 thorwh his helm Ran gaweyns dynt,
 and at his teth pere hit stynt,
 & he fil ded down to þe grownde;
 thanne sory weren þe hethen þat stonde.

13568 Mandelent
falls.

13572

Whanne the Hethene Behelden tho
 that kyng mandelent was ded so,
 Ful sore abassched alle they were,
 So þat echon they fledden there,
 and to Vandobers they goune hem hye,
 where as the Sege was, Sekerlye.
 thanne began the chas ful strong
 and ek gret dowst, þat ros hem among,
 that non man oper myhte knowe,
 not þe fadyr the Sone jn that rowe.
 So that Sore was that Bataylle,
 that jn thyke chas weren slayn, sauns faille,
 what be gaweyn & his Felawis there
 and with helpe of hem of londone jn fere—
 xij thousand weren Slayn vpryht,
 that onnethe of þat meyne askapen ne myht
 not thre thousand of al that rowte;
 So they were chased bothe jnne & owte.
 thus the hethene weren scomfyt echon,
 & homward ful joyful þe children gonne gon
 To the cyte of londone ful rapelye;
 these children ful faste gonne hem hye.
 with presoners and pray faste þedir they ronne,
 with the goodis þat tofore tyme þe hethene hadden wonne.

[leaf 140 a]

Then the
heathen take
tright,13576 and flee to-
wards Van-
dobers,
the besieged
city.13580 They are
pursued;

13584 slain are

12000 men;

13588 scarcely 3000
men escape.13592 The young
squires return
to London13595 with prison-
ers and booty.

Whanne that these children to Londone weren went,
 gret joye the cetezeins maden, verament,
 and to-forn hem they Browhten anon
 alle the prayes that they hadden don.
 thanne to Gawayn seiden they there,
 jn maner as chef lord that he were,

13600

The citizens
of London
are full of
joy.They ask
Gawain to act
as chief lord

and distribute the goods.	that he scholde maken distribucioun of this good there al Jn vyrown.	13604
But Gawein leaves it to Sir Doon of Cardiff,	Thanne answerede Sire gaweyn anon that for non thing he nolde hit don.	
	"but let Sire doon of kerdylf cyte departen hit as that he wyl for me.	13608
who knows the people.	For he knoweth bothe Poure & riche and aftir eche degre to departyn aliche. perfore at his wille hit Schal be do, For of hit j wele entermete no mo."	13612
The citizens praise Gawein's gentleness and modesty.	and whanne the cetezeines herden this, Ful mochel gaweyn they preiseden, j-wys, and hym they lovedyn with stedfast herte, For he was gentyl, debonewre, meek, & aperte.	13616
	thus jn londone restede that meyne with mirth, Joye, and Solempnite.	
Now we will speak of king Arthur and his followers	Now a while reste we of this matere, and of kyng Artheur let vs speken here, of kyng Bors, and of kyng Ban, that thike tyme weren ful worthi men, and also of here compenie tho,	13620
in Tarmelide.	that jnto tarmelide with hem gonne go with kyng leodegam forto dwelle jn maner of Sowdiours, as j 3ow telle.	13624
<hr/>		
[leaf 140 b] <u>Chap. XIV.</u>	Now Forthere to this mater Let Vs pace, zif that god wyle graunten vs grace,	13628
King Arthur, with Ban and Boors,	hou that Arthewr past owt of his lond and with hym these kynges, 3e vndirstond, bothe kyng Ban and eke kyng Bors, that weren men of myht and Fors ;	13632
arrives at Tartaise (Tortaise).	how that they riden Jn here jorne, Tyl to Tartaysse they comen alle thre, where as lay kyng leodegan, j vndirstond, that was a worthi man of his hond.	13636
on the eve of Palm-Sunday,	On palmes-sonne Eve jn gonnen they ryde and with hem merlyn that jlke tyde.	
Merlin riding in front.	there thus merlyne rod hem be-fore on a fulfair stede to pe paleis thore,	13640

where as was tho kyng leodegan,
 that jn ful gret thowht was he than.
 For kyng ryowns hadde entred his lond
 with xv oþer kynges, j vndirstond,
 and hym they hadden chaced so sore
 and from place to place dryven hym thore.

So that these kynges logged hem alle
 a-Forn Neblaise cite, as gan be-falle,
 which cite was riche and plentevous
 of goodis & of vitaille delicious.

wherfore that tyme kyng Leodegan
 jn herte was a ful hevy man,
 For he niste how Forto do,
 nether how his lond defenden hem fro
 (For jn his Lond hadde he. non meyne
 that Sege to remeven, certeinle),
 ne how owt of his lond he myhte hem chace;
 of wheche he axed counseyl jn that place
 of knyhtes and of othere mo,
 that at thiike tyme weren comen hym to.

King Leode-
 gan is sitting
 sad in his
 palace.
 For king
 Riou has
 chased him
 from place
 to place.

13644

His enemies
 are encamp-
 ing at
 Neblaise,

13648

and he does
 not know
 how to ward
 them off.

13652

He is asking
 the advice
 of his coun-
 sellors.

13656

13660

Jn the mene whyle, whiles here-of they speke,
 kyng Arthewr and his compenie gonnen jn Reke,
 and cam to-fore kyng leodegan,
 that with his barowns counseil held than.
 be tweyne and tweyne they entred tho,
 and jnto his halle they entreden so,
 and merlyne jn here compenye,
 but xlij vndir alle, with-owten lye.
 Ful richely vested & arayed they were,
 and alle Berdles bacheloris thanne jn fere
 Sof þe two bretheren kynges þat there weren than,
 kyng Boors of gawnes and kyng Ban,
 whiche that to-forn wenten tho;
 and merlyne þe message þere gan do.
 but alle the lordis þat with-jinne were,
 of this peple hadden merveil there.

Now Arthur
 and his com-
 panions enter
 the hall,

13664

two and two,

being, apart
 from Merlin,
 42 in number.

13668

They are rich-
 ly dressed,
 and all beard-
 less youths
 except Bau
 and Boors.

13672

The lords are
 surprised.

13676

13641. *was, w* corrected from *t*.13653. *fforto do* corrected from *to do*.13660. *hym, y* corrected from *e*. 13661. MS. *Juthe*.

- The strangers
bow to the
king;
he rises. and whanne they comen to-fore the kyng,
they hym obeyeden jn worscheping.
Anon the kyng ros hem ageyn,
as this storrye reporteth certeyn, 13680
For they semeden ful worthy men
be here aray that they hadden then.
Thus whanne they weren entred echon,
Ban salutes 13684
him; thanne bespak kyng Ban pere anon,
and Salwede kyng leodegan.
anon thussone he 3ald him than,
the king
says they are
welcome, and seide that alle welcomen they were—
if their inten-
tions are
good. "3if that for good 3e be comen here." 13688
Ban replies: thanne bespak kyng Ban tho,
and to kyng Leodegan he seide vnto :
"For no evil
do we come, " Certein, Sire, with-owten lesyng,
For non maner of evel is oure comeng, 13692
Ne not we comen owt of oure contre
here jn thy lond Forto noyen the,
but to help
you. but as jn manere of socouryng,
For sothe as j 3ow seye, Sire kyng, 13696
and 3ou to don Servise jn swich degre
that to 3oure plesauce now myhte be.
If you will
not have us, and 3if 3e wilen not with vs don so,
Owt of 3oure lond, sire, we scholen go 13700
[leaf 140 c] And to Betaken 3ow god Al-myht,
that algates he spede 3ow jn 3oure ryht ;
we will go
thither where
people are
glad of our
coming. and we scholen gon jnto an nothir contre,
theper as men of oure comenge glad wylen be 13704
and vs resceyven jn Swich a manere
as we to 3ow oure Servise profren here.
However,
we were told
that you keep
all manner of
mercenaries." but certainly hit was vs tolde 13708
that alle manere of Sowdiours 3e with-holde,
and perfore was hedyr oure comeng ;
Therefore 3oure wille telle vs, Sire kyng."
- King Leode-
gan consults
his counsil. Thanne answerede kyng Leodegan
that with his counseil spoken wolde he than. 13712
so pat he axede of hem anon
what that were best forto don.

and they to him answerid anone
that he scholde with-holden hem Echone.

13716 He is advised
to keep them
all,

“For worthy men they Semen alle,
what so Ewere there-of may befallē.
and also hastily as ȝe mown don,
that ȝe knowen here names Echon,
and whens they ben & of what contre ;
al this that [ȝe] knowen jn certeinte.”

13720 and to find
out who they
are.

thanne partyd leodegan from his cownsaile,
and to these Barouns he cam, sauns faylle.

13724 He says to
them :

“J merveille mochel of ȝoure askyng,
& that ȝe wilen not discuren ȝow for non thing,
ne tellen what ȝoure names ben ;
swich anoper meyne haue j not Sen.

“I wonder at
your demand
and at your
not telling
your names.

but goode men me semeth be ȝoure chere ;
that causeth me to rescyeuen ȝou here.

13728

and ryht welcome mooten ȝe be
bothe to my Barouns and ek to me
as Frendis and felawes to my Socowr,
thus to ȝow troste j bothe day & owr.
and to this ȝe scholen don me affiaunce
with me to stonden jnto owtraunce ;
& as longe as ȝe ben jn my compenye,
trewly me to helpen ȝe scholen me affye.

But you seem
to be good
men ;
therefore I
will keep you.
Be welcome
as friends and
helpers,

13732

but of on thing j wolde ȝow preye :
that what ȝe ben, ȝe wolden me Seye ;
and for this cause, ȝe vndirstonde :

13736 and promise
to be true to
me.

ȝe moun ben swich men of oȝer londe,
that hit myhte ben gret schame to me
of ȝow Servise to taken, certeinle,
and that j not of power were
ȝoure mede to qwyten jn non manere.

Tell me who
you are.

13740

For j Suppose, ful trewely,
that ȝe ben grettere men than am j.”

Perhaps it
would be a
shame for me
to accept your
service ;

13744

Thanne they answered hym ageyn
that him misplesen they nolden, certeyn,
but hym to Serve jn Swich degre,

13748 for you may
be better men
than I.”

They promise
to please him

13717. *they, y* squeezed in afterwards.

13722. MS. *althis that knowe*.

13726. & added in the left margin.

	that likyngge to hym Scholde hit be.	13752
and to tell their names as soon as possible.	and thus Ensuredede kyng Ban, certeinlye, For hym and for al his compenye, and that, as hastily as he myhte, alle here names to declaren owt ryhte.	13756
Then Arthur and his men are conducted by Merlin	Thanne thus departyd they from the kyng jnto the town to taken here loggeng of the beste that they cowden gete. So þat merlyne hem hadde jnto a strete	13760
to the house of a good young man,	To ryht a good 3ong Mannes hous, that was bothe riche and plenteuous and ryht good esement jn alle degre ; thydir hadde hem merlyn, certeinle.	13764
and his de- vout wife.	ek a good womman there was at house, that wel lovede god and ek hire spouse. and him-Self was curteis ek also, and of good lif they weren bothen two.	13768
He is called Blaires, she, Leonel.	therto hym-Self Blaires hyhte, his wyves name Leonel be ryhte. whanne to þat hostel þat they comen there,	13772
They alight, are welcomed by the host,	anon they alyhten al jn fere, and Blayres wente hem ageyn, and seyde they weren welcomen, jn certein. Anon they Answerede Hym Ful sone	13776
[leaf 140 d]	that he scholde han Crystes benysonē.	13776
walk into the beautiful hall,	they alyhteden, and jn-to halle they wente, whiche was onestly arayed and gente.	13780
and have their horses put into the stable. They spend a week in good cheer, serving king leodegan at his court.	and the 3omen loggeden here hors anon, and deden jn stable what was to don. thus there they sojorned viij dayes, not but eten & dronkyn, & merye playes and on morwe they to court wente and ek at Even after here talente.	13784
Then the king sends out messen- gers	so thus they servede kyng leodegan with alle the worschepe they cowden than thanne sente forth this kyng anon be sondry messengeris many on	13788

that alle thiike that myhte armes bere,		to call every fighting man
hem-self to defende, here ENEMYES to dere,		
that jn Torayse they scholde ben		to Toralse on Ascension Eve,
on ascencioun Even bothe fair & clen.	13792	
and ho so brak this comandement		
Jn ony degre be his Entent,		
lik a man-mordrere he scholde ded be		on pain of death.
and perto his good to lesen, ful sikerle.	13796	
On the tothir syde sente Leodegan		He also hires soldiers
of al his kynrede to Every man		
and al aboutes jnto Eche contre		in various countries.
there he supposede ony sowdiours to be.	13800	
for he ne sparede for Siluer ne Goold		
that plente of Sowdiours hauen he would.		
So pat with-owten ony more let		
at assencioun, pe whiche was set,	13804	40,000 men assemble.
xl thousand jn tente and pavyloun		
weren logged vndir toreyse town		
what on hors and what on foote		
with-outen hem of pe town, wel j wote.	13808	
jn the mene while that this kyng		Meanwhile,
hadde thus aboutes sent his warneng,		
happed that vppon the Even of may		
vppon hym entrede, with-owten delay,	13812	the country is invaded by four heathen kings,
kyng plariours & kyng Roallaund,		
whiche weren bothe of yrland,		
Ek of assirois kyng Sonigrans,		
and of pe same Lond kyng Sorohans.	13816	
these from the ost comen adown		
jnto Tarmelyde al jn virown		
with xv thousand armed ful clene		
For nede of vytaylle, as that j wene.	13820	who come in search of provision,
So hit happede, as hit hem befelle,		and approach Toraise
that nygh to torayse they com ful snelle,		
where as soionnede kyng leodegan,		
that his meyne abod there than.	13824	
so pat there was gret noyse & cry		with great noise.

13798. *his* added in the left margin ; *k* corrected, daubed.13808. *wel*, *l* added afterwards.

	of these malfetours, sekerly, that robbede & stroyede that contre.	
The citizens shut the gates.	Anon the citezeines aspiden hit, sykerle, and here gates they schetten ful blyve, that owt scholde gon non man on lyve.	13828
All the knights as- semble.	anon asarmes they gomme to crye, the cheualrie þat with-jinne was, trewelye, and to-form the gate they semblede anon, knyhtes of þe rownd table Everychon.	13832
(1) The 250 knights of the Round Table have Hervy of Rivel and Malet le Brunz for leaders,	and the cheventeyn of hem was hervy of Ryvel jn that plas, and malet le brunz was his felawe, that many a man browhten of dawe, with cc. & fyfty jn here compenye of worthy Bodyes, with-owten lye, that vndir hevene non bettere nere thanne tho bodyes that weren there.	13836
	these be hem-selven weren alone, For with opere meddelen wolden they none.	13840
and keep to themselves.		13844
	On the tother part they gonnen hem dyhte, the cheualrye of þe towne anon ryhte, And of hem iiij thousand ther were, That myhte Bewelden Bothe Scheld and Spere.	13848
Their leader is Cleodalis,	this meyne hadden a cheventeyn that cleodalis hyhte, Jn certeyn, that wont was the kynges baner to bere bothe jn pes and ek jn werre.	13852
who used to carry the king's banner before the arrival of the 250 knights,	but sethen the knyhtes of þe rownde table that Lond Entreden, with-owten fable, thanne was hervy of Ryvel the kynges banorer Everidel.	13856
but now car- ries a small ensign.	but he bar a lytel gomfaynoun & did it sprede with tweyne Langues be ryht resoun rede, the Feld gold with corowns of ynde.	
The great banner, carried by Hervy of Rivel,	and the grete baner, that cam behynde, whiche that hervy Ryvel Bar. jn this maner was araid thar :	13860

13830. *scholde* corrected from *schelde*. 13850. MS. *hyhten*.13852. *werre*, the second *r* corrected from *e*.

with foure langues fayre & pleyne, and there-jinne coronns of gold, jn certeyne, the Feld asure bothe fair and schene ; 'thus this Baner bar he hem betwene. whanne redy armed that they were, afor the 3ate they sembleden there, and abyden the kynges comeng, that 3it at that tyme was anarmyng. and whanne the kyng j-armed was, anon he asemblede jn that plas, and pere drowh to hervyes Baner sytteng vppon a good destrer. and pere he houned with his compenye To knowen of these jresch more certeinlye.	13864	has four lozenges with golden crowns.
	13868	The knights assemble at the gate ;
	13872	the king joins them,
	13876	and waits there.
On þe thridde partye was armed than kyng arthur, king Bors, & kyng Ban, and his compenye al jn fere, of wheche but xliij ther were. and ful ryaly they weren adyht, and merlyn here baner bare in fyht. and whanne j-horsed alle they were, thanne to hem Seide merlyn there that thyke day bothe gret & smalle to Sewen his baner, what enere befallē. "jn what place that Ewere 3e hit Se, loke 3e hit Sewe and foleweth me." and alle they seiden with on cry chat So they wolden, ful trewely. thanne so they reden thorwh þe town, and merlyn bar here gomfaynown. but richere arayed thanne they were, jn that town was neuere seyn there. and here baner was ryht merveyllous Forto beholden and ryht spetous : his Baner hit was on dragown, and not ful gret hit was jn virown ; the tayl a kebyt and an half was long, al j-mailed as a serpent ful strong ;	13880	(3) Arthur and his 42 companions likewise get ready.
	13884	Merlin, who carries the banner, asks all to follow it,
	13888	whatever may happen.
	13892	They ride through the town.
	13896	Their banner is of strange and grim device : a dragon
	13900	with a scaly tail,

- and his throte so gret & sterne hit was,
 and vomiting fire.— that hit Semele hem jn that plas
 so that the tonge that stood with-jinne
 euere enflawmeng & wolde not blynne, 13904
 that thorwh the throte owt fyr hit caste
 vpe jnto the ayr, hit semele hem faste.
- By this time the heathen have come to the town,
 and jn the mene while the jresch Men,
 that hethen tho weren, as j zow ken, 13908
 with here speres comen to the town,
 and the zates asayllede jn virown.
- and assail the gates;
 then they go into the meadows,
 and seize the grazing cattle.
 and sethen jnto pe medewes they wente,
 & alle the bestes they token, veramente, 13912
 that abowtes the town jn pasture weren tho;
 with hem they maden hem forto go.
 For pere nas non man hem to defende,
 Tyl that god sone grace gan sende. 13916
- Merlin
 [leaf 141 b]
 thorwgh pe town paste merlyne anon,
 There As the peple Weren sembled Echon,
 and thorwgh that pres redily he paste,
 tyl to the zate he cam atte laste 13920
 and with hym there al his meyne.
- arrives at the gate with his troop.
 He says to the gate-keeper: "Let us pass out."
 Anon to the porter thanne seide he:
 "let vs now, porter, here owt pace,
 Fore hit is tyme to comen on place." 13924
- The keeper replies:
 "Not without the command of the king."
 and pe porter answered hem ageyn
 that they Scholden not passen hit, Jn certein,
 with-owten comaundement of the kyng,
 and thus zaf he hem to answeyng. 13928
- Merlin says:
 "That's bad,
 "that is be misaventure," quod merlyn tho,
 "that thou pe zate ne schalt vndo,
 whanne that j am as strong as thou,
 and that Schal j sone preven now." 13932
- as I am as strong as you."
 He pulls out the gate with his hand,
 Anon kam merlyne to the zate,
 and with his hond pulled there-ate,
 and pulde pe zate owt from the ston.
 thanne owt they wenten there Echon, 13936
 ho so wolde or ho so nolde;
 owt they Riden al glytered jn goolde.
- and out they ride.

- Whanne that the two an fowrty men
 owt of þe cyte weren passed than, 13940
 the ȝate closed aȝen also faste
 as hit ne hadde neuere ben vnwraſte.
 For whiche merueille thanne anon
 these thre kynges blessed hem everichon, 13944
 and so diden al that companye.
- but faste forward merlyn gan hym hye,
 And ouertook of that meyne
 two thousand hethen jresch, certeinle, 13948
 and ladden with hem a ful gret praye.
 thanne anon as merlyne hem ſaye,
 anon he Sewede with his Banere,
 and his compenye holy folewede him there. 13952
 betwene hem pere was gret bataille,
 that certeinly, with-owten faylle,
 be half a myle nygh hem was non
 but the xliȝ there al alon, 13956
 and token the pray, & lad it ageyn
 afor the ȝates tho, jn certein.
- and they ne hadden not ryden but a stounde,
 that they Sien vppon the grownde
 the foure kynges rehersed be-fore
 with xv thousand men j-armed thore,
 that with hem ladde so gret plente
 of kariage & of pray to-ward the se, 13960
 that they hadde Robbed jn that lond,
 as j do ȝow here to vndirstond.
- Anon as merlyn Sawh al this,
 thanne to his feleschepe he cryde, j-wys :
 " Seweth me now for ony thyng,
 and ȝe scholen Sen a good boordying."
 there they hym seweden everichon,
 but euere to-fore merlyne gan gon. 13972
 and swich a wynd he gan to arere
 with wondir blastes of tempest pere,
 that swich a powdir amonges hem pere was,
 amonges here enemyes jn that plas, 13976

The gate
 closes behind
 them.

All marvel.

Merlin first
 overtakes
 2000 heathen

with plenty
 of booty,

attacks them,

and brings
 the booty
 back to the
 city.

Then he sees
 the four
 heathen
 kings with
 15000 men,

likewise laden
 with spoil,

and cries to
 his company
 " Follow me,
 and you shall
 see a good
 joke."

He raises
 such a wind
 amongst the
 enemies

13966. *here*, *he* through correction.

13976. *he*, abbreviation mark in darker ink.

that they can- that non of hem *oper* myhte Se ;
not see one
another. So merveillous dowst hit was & gret plente.

The 42 fel- lows attack the heathen.	Anon as these two and fowrty men with-jinne these hethen weren entrid than, they beten and slown so many a-down, that ded abowtes they lyen jn virown.	13980
Now king Leodegan orders the gates to be opened ;	Anon comanded kyng leodegan that the gates anon opened weren than ; and so they weren jn ryht gret haste, So that thiike meyne owt <i>pere</i> paste.	13984
[leaf 141 c]	There the Steward Rod forth Be-fore with iiij Thousand men wel armed thore, and they founden the gate schet ful faste, there as merlyne and his meyne owt weren paste. with xv thousand they fowhten that whyle <i>pere</i> Ful merveillously a ful gret tyde in fere.	13988 13992
Cleodalis, with 4000 men, sallies out,	Thanne forth cam cleodalys tho, and to that pres faste gan he go. So that the noyse of speris that <i>pere</i> were, the brekyng of hem, jnto the cyte was herd there.	13996
Great de- struction is wrought ; the din resembles thunder.	there was thanne so gret distroccioun of men dede & hors slayn j[n] viroun, So that hit Semede be here gruntyng that hit hadde ben a merveyllous thondryng, but merveillously wrowhte these xliij men that vndir merlynes Banere weren than.	14000
The four heathen kings divide their army :	Whanne that the iiij kynges Syen al this, that <i>with</i> the cristene they weren thus mellid, j-wis, they departed her meyne anon vntwo, of wheche vij M ^t to pe cyte gan go azens the baner of kyng leodegan. whanne they aspide hym comeng than, ech of hem azens <i>oper</i> gan forto ryde, also faste as they myhten that Tyde.	14004 14008
7000 go against the approaching banner of king Leo- degan,		

13988. *T* through correction. 13991. *pere* added afterwards.
13992. *whytle* crossed out, and *tyde in fere* added, at the end of
the line. 13998. MS. *j viroū*.
13999. *he*, abbreviation mark in darker ink.
14006. MS. *u* with *t* at the top (= *milū*).
14008. MS. *comēng*.

- and þe toper viij thousand fowhten ful faste,
 whilles that here strengthe myhte laste. 14012
 but leodegan and this othir meyne,
 betwixen hem gret bataylle was, Sikerle,
 that bothe helmes & hauberkes j-borsten they were,
 Neþer non mail of steel lasten myhte not there, 14016
 that down they fillen al blody to grownde,
 For þere was ȝoven many a dethes wounde.
 And whanne here speris j-borsten they were,
 anon here swerdis they drowen owt there. 14020
 thanne began there gret Bataylle,
 that merveille to beholde hit was, sauns faylle.
 and namly the knyhtes of þe rownd table
 merveillously they fowhten, with-owten fable, 14024
 of wheche weren but two hundred & fyfty,
 and of the tothere vij thousand, ful sekerly.
 but at gret mischef they weren there,
 that here bodyes gonnen tremblen for fere ; 14028
 and whethir they wolde other none,
 here grownd to forsaken mad weren they sone.
 but they helden hem so faste jn fere,
 that no man with-jnnen hem entren myhte there ; 14032
 Nethir litel ne mochel, lasse ne more,
 with-jnnen hem entren cowde not thore.
 whanne Plareouns & kyng Roallaunt
 To-gideris swich a meyne gonnen se haunt, 14036
 and of hem so lytel peple there was
 azens so gret meyne jn that plas,
 Ful gret dispit hadden these kynges bothe,
 and sworn ful bitterly many a gret othe 14040
 that of hem askape scholde not on,
 as ferforthly as they myhten don.

8000 remain.

The fight
with king
Leodegan is
fierce ;many are
killed.The knights
of the Round
Table excel,but are in
great dis-
tress.They keep
close to-
gether.The heathen
leaders of the
7000 menviciously vow
that none of
them shall
escape.

- Thussone they maden an ordenance
 Forto han wrowht this meyne mischance. 14044
 So that xl of that litel compenye
 weren sore defowlid, with-owten lye.
 And cuer this jresch hethen peyned hem fulsore

Forty of the
knights are
overthrowu ;14028. *he* abbreviation mark in darker ink.14030. *grownd* added in the left margin.

	hem to han de-fowlid ful mochelis more	14048
	and hem to han maymed, ȝif hit myhte han be ;	
still they keep the assailants off.	but they myhte not thanne for here compene. For with-ȝane hem <i>pere</i> non man there paste, as fer as ony of here dyntes of swerdis myhte laste.	14052
	And ȝn this mene whille, as ȝ ȝow telle, vppon kyng leodegan they fowhten ful felle,	
King Leo- degan is captured,	So that fulsore beten he was ȝn that place, and there with his enemyes ȝ-taken he was	14056
and led away by 500 men	and lad forth there anon tho ryht with v hundred redy armed to fyht.	
[leaf 141 d]	So Hym Forth they Ladden, As <i>J</i> Vndyrstond,	
towards king Rion.	towardis kyng Ryown of ȝrlond,	14060
	And with gret joye they forth hym ladde, for they wenden the werris Ended ben hadde. So thus they hyede hem wondir faste, Tyl owt of the ost that they weren paste.	14064
When he realizes his plight,	And whanne that kyng leodegan Say this, that with his enemyes he was taken, ȝ-wys, and him forth ladden moche maugre his hed,	
he is faint with grief.	For sorwen he swownede ȝn that sted, and wepe ful Sore, & made gret pyte, that ȝn swich a maner ȝ-taken was he. they hym forth ladden vppon the weye two Skottysch milles, the sothe to seye.	14068 14072
The battle is continued.	but Evere the noyse ful gret hit was of the vij thowsend ȝn that plas and of the cc. and fyfty knyhtes,	
The knights bemoan the loss of king Leodegan ;	that aȝens pe vij thousand held fyhtes, that maden gret sorwe & gret mone, For kyng leodegan was so gone. and whanne they syen, hit wolde non oper be, that non reskeus was there, sekerle,	14076 14080
they defend themselves in a compact body,	they dresseden here bakkes al ȝn fere, and ȝn maner of a scheltrom they stoden there, and there thanne so sore they fowhte, that non man deren hem ne mowhte.	14084
and kill many	but they maden gret occisioun of men & hors aboutes hem ȝn virown	
	14082. <i>and</i> corrected from <i>an</i> (in darker ink).	

- with-owten remevyng of ony place;
 ful mochel peple be hem j-slayn pere wace. 14088 without mov-
 ing from the
 spot.
- So that they swetten for gret peyne,
 so hydous the storm was & so sodeyne,
 that they that atte wyndowes gonnen loke
 out of the cyte, as Seith the boke, 14092 The lookers-
 on in the city
 weep with
 anguish,
- wepten for angwysch & for pyte
 for the sorewe that they be these knyhtes gonnen se,
 and merveilled gretly jn here mynde 14095 and marvel
 at their
 bravery.
- how swich hertis with-jnnen hem myhten they fynde.
 but whanne gonmore beheld hire fadir dere,
 that with his enemyes forth lad was he there,
 Ful gret deol sche gan to make,
 and Riht gret Sorwe to here gan take. 14100 Gonmore
 bewails the
 fate of her
 father.
- Now a while lete vs here dwelle,
 and of kyng Artheur lete vs now spelle
 and also of his compenye, sauns faylle,
 how that they spedden jn bataylle 14104 Now we will
 return to
 Arthur
 and his 42
 followers,
- Azens viij thousand forto fyhte,
 thiike xliij men of gret myhte,
 and with hem the steward of Tarmelyde,
 that cleodalis hyht that tyde. 14108 together with
 Cleodalis the
 steward

Now reherseth this Storye ryht here
 of the xliij whiche pat there were,
 & of the iiij thousand that cleodalis
 vndir his Baner browhte, j-wys, 14112 and his 4000
 men,

whiche with viij thousand j-medled were,
 that kyng sonigrenx & Sorohanx cowndiet there;
 of whiche weren manye defoulyd & slayn,
 as this storye reherseth here jn certayn. 14116 in melée with
 the 8000
 heathen
 under Soni-
 grens and
 Sorohans.

And Whanne they Hadden Longe Fowhten Jn Fere, [leaf 142 a]
 merlyue with his Banere owt prekede there,
 and to his meyne he cryede Jn gret haste
 that they hym Scholden folwen faste. 14120 After a long
 fight,
 Merlin calls
 on his com-
 pany to follow
 him;
 they ride
 swiftly,

and so they dyden Ryht Swyftly tho,
 as faste as here hors cowden renne oper go,

14101. *here*, *h* corrected from *d*.14105. *Azens*, *A* corrected from14116. *Certayn*, *a* corrected from *e*.

and overtake the prisoners, convoy.	tyl that they comen jnto on valey, where as these v hundred ladden away kyng leodagan, here presoner.	14124
Merlin cries:	And anon merlyn ascryed hym ther :	
"Rescue the king,	" Now, barouns, let Se, kythe here 3oure nyht To reskwen the kyng here with 3oure fyht.	14128
or he goes his way!	and but 3if 3e don, he goth his way." And evere he cride : "Tray, tray, tray !" So that these knyhtes Sewede on faste, Tyl they hym ouertoken atte laste.	14132
They rush into the con- voy,	Thussone they entred hem betwene with manye gret strokis, as hit was sene, and slowh & maymed al that <i>per</i> were, that nowht on his hele hadde there.	14136
slay, and maim.	there pese xliij maden swich martyrdom, of men & hors a ful gret Som, that vnnethes askaped ony away	
Of the 500 escape only five.	of thiike v hundred, the Sothe to say, Sauf only fyve, that fledden be-fore, anon as kyng leodagan they hadden forlore.	14140
King Leo- degan marvels,	And thus Reskwed was Leodagan the kyng, whiche to hym was ful gret <i>merveyll</i> ing, To sen Swich martirdom In that plase as of thyke lytel peple j-mad there wase.	14144
	and whanne he beheld the dragown þat merlyn bar, thane wiste he wel his frendis weren thar.	14148
and thanks God for such soldiers.	thane thankede he god of that dede, that so his Sowdeours with him dyden spede. Anon merlyn there to hym wente, and <i>pere</i> hym sesede anon presente.	14152
Ulfin and Bretel alight,	Whanne Vlphyn beheld kyng Leodegan, anon of his hors alyhte he than, and sire Bretel jn the same wyse, anon he alyhte to þat kyng of pryse,	14156
unfetter the king,	and him vnbownden, & armed hym wel,	

14138. *of*, *o* corrected from *a*.14142. *leodagan*, the first *a* corrected from *e*.14148. *wiste* he twice, the former crossed out.

- and sette hym on a destrer bothe good & lel.
 whanne Bretel & Vlphyn horsid hym hadde *jn pat* wise,
 he thankede hem ful hyhly of here Servise. 14160
 thanne *merlyne* began to aseryen eft sone :
 " Now thynketh, Barouns, what *ȝe* han to done.
 Seweth now me, what euere *ȝe* do,
 and be non wyse partyth not me fro." 14164
 he took his hors with the spores welfaste,
 and toward the cyte he prikede *jn haste*,
 where that the knyhtes of the rounde table
 at gret mischef weren, with-owten fable, 14168
 of wheche two hundre[d] and fyfty knyhtes
 there nere but xx on hors owt-ryhtes,
 and al the remnant on foote were,
 and ful manfully fowhten there. 14172
 thanne *merlyne* prikede so faste to-fore,
 so faste hym Sewede his feleschepe thore,
 that here hors on swot they weren echon ;
 So faste thyderwardis dyden they gon. 14176
 And the dragoun *pat merlyn* Bar,
 Swiche plente of fyr hit cast owt thar,
 that tho whiche weren *jn the cyte*,
 Large half a myle they myhten hit se, 14180
 the clernesse of that Fer so bryht,
 how jnto the Eyr hit wente vp ryht.
- Whanne that the ceteȝeins of that cite
 behelden that jlke litel meyne, 14184
 thanne wisten they wel, the xliȝ it were,
 that *jn feleschepe* weren *jn fere*,
 and with hem was kyng leodagan,
 that these xliȝ hadde reskwed than. 14188
 wherfore gret joye they gonne to make,
 and so dede gonnore for here fadris sake,
 merveilleng sore what these knyhtes were,

and put him
on a good
horse.

Now Merlin
again asks
them to fol-
low him,

and set off
towards the
city,

where of the
250 knights
only 20 are
still on
horseback.

He rides fast;

the dragon
vomiting so
much fire

that it can
be seen at
fully half
a mile's dis-
tance.

When the
citizens see
the little
troop coming

with king
Leodegan,

they rejoice.

So does Gon-
nore, and
wonders who
these knights
are

14166. *welfaf* (*f* not completed) crossed out before *jn haste*.

14169. MS. *hundre*.

14172. MS. *ful manfulmanly*; cf. l. 14298.

14174. *so, s* corrected, in a fashion, from *T*; the character still looks like a *T*.

14182. *ryht, r* corrected from *R*.

[leaf 142 b]	That so Vygoursly fowhten there.	14192
that fight so marvellously.	For lyk as thondyr here dyntes ferde, that juto the Eyr hit myhte ben herde ; For so merveillous was here fyltyng, that alle that weren jn here stondyng	14196
They fall upon the heathen.	they Slowen down ryht as they come, that to-gederis they lyen on many a throme. and whanne the xlij jn fere amonges tho jeawntis weren entred pere,	14200
Ban gives irresistible strokes,	thanne began the fyht so strong, that wondir passyng noyse was hem among. so that conmore, with-owten nay, that hydows noyse myhte heren, Jn fay.	14204
	there dyde kyng Ban of Baynok, with correccense, his swerd, 3af many a strok. For whom that Evere pere-with he smot, to grownde they wenten anon foot hot,	14208
slaying man and horse.	that neyther helm, hauberk, ne haberjon withstondyn his dyntes myhten nouht on. and thus took he on jn that Bataylle, pat downryht slowh man & hors, with-owten faille.	14212
So does Boors,	so there nas non, myhte with-stonden his dynt, Tyl of here lyve; that they weren stynt. and jn the same manere ferde kyng bors, that of alle the Enemyes gaf he non fors.	14216
and so does Arthur.	and whanne the hethene behelden this of pe merveillous strokys they Syen, j-wys, and how kyng Artheur with kalybrond merveillous strokis 3af with his hond	14220
	(a3ens weche swerd, the sothe to say, myhte there non armure lasten that day, For evere he vsede to smyten so sore, that non man his strok abyden myhte thore)—	14224
In the course of the battle,	Thanne, whilles they fowhten Jn this manere, happede, kyng artheur 3it neyghede hym nere,	

14194. MS. *myhtē*.

14198. *they, t* (very small) inserted afterwards.

14212. *downryht, w* corrected from *o* (and something else).

14221. *weche, w* corrected from *f*.

14226. *artheur* added afterwards above the line.

- and mette *with* on that hyhte caunlent,
 that hem of þe round table anoyede, verament, 14228 Arthur meets
 and þerto dide he his power tho. with one who
 but Artheur, as hit happede so, is called
 mette *with* this caunlent, j 3ou Ensure, Caunlent;
 whiche chef was of passyng mesure : 14232 this chieftain
 xiiij fote long he was, j wene, is 14 feet
 of swich maner feet as now þere bene. long.
 And whanne kyng Artheur there him mette, 14236 Arthur, with
 a wondirful strok þere on him he sette : a stroke from
 besides his Scheld he smot hym so, the side,
 that thorwh bothe scholdres calibrand gan go. cuts through
 And anon he fyl a-down, with-owten les, both his
 and his hors forth ran thorwh-out þat pres. 14240 shoulders.
 So they that jn the castel were,
 behelden how Arthour gan him bere ;
 Also gonnore, þe dowhter of kyng Leodagan,
 merveilled mochel what was that man ; 14244 Gonnore and
 and so dyden þe peple Everychon who see him,
 that hym behelden be on & on. are full of
 wonder.

- Ful strong was þe stowr and þat melle,
 that thike tyme was to-fore the cyte 14248 Violent is the
 where as þe .cc. knyhtes & fyfty fight of the
 and the two and fourty felawes, sekerly, 250 knights
 aȝens viij thousand helken here fyht and the 42
 as worthy persones of power & nyht. fellows
 but what thorwh the strokis þat þere weren deld, 14252 against the
 ne left but fyve thousand jn the feld. 8000 heathen.
 whiche weren ful Soreweful jn here degre,
 that kyng Cavnlent was ded, sekerle. Of these now
 14256 only 5000
 remain.
 thaune happede, kyng Ban cam ful blyve,
 as worthy a knyht as ony on lyve,
 and with his good swerd, þat was so Brown,
 anon there rawhte he to kyng plarioun, 14260 Ban hits a
 that þe grettest jeawnt was he of þat ost ; gigantic
 but þere kyng ban thouhte to fellen his bost. chieftain
 vppon the helm So he him there rawhte, on the helm,

14228. *that* corrected from *the*.14262. *ban* added above the line.

	that ryht ful sone gret harm he cawhte ;	14264
[leaf 142 c]	The strok thorwh the panne Hit gothe	
slitting him from fore- head to girdle.	and thorwh the left scholdere Evene, for sothe, and jnto the gyrdelstede Evene down ryht, that ded down he fyl for fawt of myht.	14268
Boors cuts off the banner- bearer's arm.	Thanne kyng Bors pere smot so Sarmedoun, that bar these jeauntes Gomfanown, that bothen arm, Baner, and scheld ful fer hit fley jnto the feld.	14272
King Leo- degan says to himself:	these strokes beheld kyng leodagan, and to him-self jn his herte seide than :	
"Never king had better help!"	"there nas neuere kyng, so god me spede, that better socour hadde atte xede."	14276
Now the heathen turn to flight.	and whanne the jeauntes syen here lordes ded, and here baner was slayn jn that Sted, anon they Tornede hem to the flyht, Eche man be hym-Selve, hos gon myht.	14280
A party out of the city pursue them.	thanne that Syen they of the cyte, & owte pere comen a praty meyne, wel two thousand j-armed ful bryht, and folwed that chas pere anon ryht.	14284
But Merlin returns to Cleodalis (p. 377).	but merlyn wente not that contre, For sone to cleodalis thanne turned he, where as he with his iiij thousand men agens vij thousand fawht he then,	14288
	whiche Sonygrenx hadde jn gouvernauce and kyng Sorohaunx with mischaunce.	
He finds him unhorsed,	Whanne merlyne cam to that Bataylle, he fond Cleodalis, with-owten faylle,	14292
	vnhorsed and at the Erthe, jn certain,	
but standing upright with his banner,	but on his fet he was rekeuered ageyn, and the baner kepte, with-owten lesyng, For that wolde he not leven for non thyng.	14296
and defended by his men.	and abowtes him stoden his compenye, that him defendid ful manfullye, but they weren at gret mischef.	
	Natheles merlyn gan sone hem relef,	14300
Merlin and his party	and amonges hem entrede with his baner, & pe xlij felawes him folwede ther.	

thanne jn they flyen as stordly		dash upon
as Ewere dide tempest out of þe sky,	14304	the enemy;
and so worthily they fowhten there,		
thyke xlij felawes þat weren jn fere,		
that neuere men myghte bettere do		
than thyke compenye didnen tho.	14308	
but Ewere this kyng leodagan		king Leo-
here feleschepe nolden not forsaken than.		degan is ever
whazne these xlij amonges the jeawntes were,		with them.
Swich a noyse amonges hem was þanne there,	14312	The din is
as of alle þe world the carponteris		tremendous.
jn wodes hadde hewen stowt & fers.		

This was ȝit the angriest stour		The struggle
that thike day they suffreden be ony our,	14316	is the fiercest
and þe most dolorowse and angwisschous,		that day.
but Ewere hem socourede swete jesus.		
For there a man myhte beholde		
bothe men & hors fulmanifolde	14320	Men and
as thikke fallen vnder here scheld		horses fall
as that motes fien jn the feld.		as thick as
There myhten ȝe sen hors walken astray,		moths in the
that non man of hem took kepe, jn fay,	14324	field
of wheche the Sadelis ful bloody were		horses run
of þe knyhtes that vpon hem weren slayn there.		about with
and swich a noyse amonges hem was,		empty,
For lyk as thondring hit ferde jn that plas.	14328	bloody sad-
So that theke xlij persones		dies;
merveillously boren hem for þe nones,		the noise
that aftyr the deth of hem, j vndirstond,		resembles
nit was of hem longe spoken jn that lond,	14332	thunder.
and, as this storrye reporteth now here,		The heroism
that So manye Bodyes weren slayn there.		of the 42 was
Beheueded, qwartered, dislemed Also,		spoken of
that many day aftyr men myhten go	14336	long after
into þe places as the batailles were		their death;
be men dede & hors that lyen there		
thorwh the conqwest, as J ȝow telle.		[leaf 142 d]

Here follows	hos names here-aftyr J schal 3ou spelle,	14340
	For so wyle here this storye,	
the list of	aforu goode men to rehersen hem, vtterlye.	
the	The ferste kyng Ban of Baynoc hyhte,	
	the secunde kyng Bors, a man of myhte,	14344
	the thridde kyng Artheur that tyme was,	
	the fourthe was Antron jn that plas,	
forty-	the fyfthe was vlphyn, as j 3ow tel,	
	the sixthe was goode sire Bretel,	14348
	the seventhe that tyme hihte sire kay pe fers,	
	the viijthe sire lucauns the botelers,	
two	the ixthe, the sone of kerdif, hihte pan doo,	14352
	the xthe moret le Roche cleped was tho,	
	the xjthe dryauns of pe forest sauage, j vndirstonde,	
	the xijthe hyhte lorgelons de la launde,	
	the xiiijthe, j kan tellen ful wel,	
heroes	hihte belias Amoreus of mayden castel,	14356
	the xiiijthe Flaundris ly brez, wel j wot,	
	the xvjthe hihte ladmas of Baynot,	
	the xvijthe hithe Amoreus ly brews,	
who	the xvijthe Anchalanx ly rows,	14360
	the xvijthe bloys of casel, fel & fers,	
	the xixthe hihte goode Bliobers,	
	The xxthe hihte canodes pat tyme be vois,	
had	the xxjthe hihte melyadon de bloys,	14364
	the xxijthe Aladank le cresse, þis storye says,	
	the xxijthe hihte plaicides ly gays,	
	the xxiiijthe Lampadys Plangwye,	
come	the xxvthe geroas lenches in compenye,	14368
	the xxvjthe cristofre de la roche Byse.	
	the xxvijthe engelyn desuans, a man of prise,	
	the xxviijthe calogrenaunt the fre,	
to	the xxixthe Agwysale le desyrre,	14372
	The xxxthe thanne hyhte good Agravel,	
	the xxxjthe hihte thanne claryel,	
	the xxxijthe Gryves de lambele,	

14361. *of*, MS. *of*. 14364. *xxjthe*, *j* corrected from *l*.14375. *Gryves*, *r* corrected from *y*.

the xxxijthe 2weodyn, þat was fayr & lele,	14376	Tarmelide
the xxxiiijthe hyhte than merangus,		
the xxxvthe Gornayns karadus,		
the xxxvjthe hihte clariaunt of Ban,		
the xxxvijthe lay3 hardis, a worthi man,	14380	as
the xxxviiijthe Amayndan the stowte,		
the xxxixthe hihte o3enan jn that Rowte,		
the xlthe hyhte galet cownde,		
the xljthe gales the chans, parde,	14384	soldiers.
the xliijthe was bleene, kyng bors godsone,		
the xliijthe, merlyne, gan with hem wone,		With them were Merlin and Leo- degan.
the xliijthe was the kyng leodegan,		
that here Feleschepe wolde leven for non man.	14388	
alle these worthi men jn fere		
To Resku cleodalis wenten there,		Cleodalis, who was re- lieved by them,
that steward was of Tarmelyde.		
as a worthy man he prevyd him that tyde :	14392	was a man of rare no- bility of soul :
3it for non wrong kyng leodagan hadde hym j-do,		he never for- sook his king,
neuere from hym departen wolde he not tho.		
And 3it so wolde not many a man		
don þere as cleodalis dyde than,	14396	
but he dede that many a man wolde not do ;		
For the cause 3e schole knowen also.		
and 3it wolde he neuere his lord forsake		
For al the wrong he suffrede & wrake,	14400	notwith- standing all the wrong he suffered from him.
but enere be him stood in al mysehef,		
as powh to hym he hadde ben good & lef.		
 This is the trowthe, As J 3ow telle,		[leaf 143 a]
how that cleodalis the steward hit befelle.	14404	This is what had hap- pened :
hit behapped that kyng Leodegan		King Leo- degan wedded a noble lady.
a lady of hygh parage wedded had than,		
and therto she was of gret Bewte,		
and jnto Tarmelyde browhte hire he	14408	
owt of hire faderis owne lond,		
as j do 3ow to vndirstond.		
& with hire sche browhte a mayden ful gent		
of wondir gret bewte, verament,	14412	She brought with her a maiden of wonderful beauty.

14407. *therto, o* blotted.

MERLIN.—II.

C C

- Cleodalis loved this maiden,
and asked the king's permission to marry her.
- the king consented.
- At the wedding feast,
- she surpassed all in beauty.
- The king fell in love with her,
but said nothing at the time.
- One Midsummer, he sent Cleodalis on an expedition against his enemies.
- The wife stayed at home, keeping the queen company.
- One night Leodegan lay by his wife,
and begot a daughter.
- whiche mayden cleodalis lovede ful derne,
For there-of myhte non man hym werne.
So that he preyde leodagan, verament,
that he myhte wedden þat mayden gent 14416
For alle his goode longe Servise ;
he axede no more to his apryse.
- the kyng hym graunted with riht good wylle,
For þat he was mochel beholden him tyllle. 14420
and whanne j-wedded hire that he hadde,
and from cherche as sche was ladde,
and browht was jnto the kynges paleys,
and down at mete was set on deys, 14424
therto apparaylled ful Ryaly
aboven alle ladyes that seten hire by,
thanne hadde sche moche more bewte
thanne ony oper lady, Sykerle ; 14428
wherthorwh þe kyng on hire his herte caste,
that for non thing aȝen myht he hit wreste.
So that styлле Leodagan the kyng
a gret whylle dwellede jn morneng, 14432
For sche was the fairest creature jn ony londe,
as this Storye doth me to vndirstonde ;
and thus at that tyme seyde he no more than.
but as hit happede that kyng leodagan 14436
at an hygh feste of seynt Johne,
Leodagan Cleodalis owt he sente anon
a certeyn chevachye forto do
vppon his enemyes, þat hym noyede tho, 14440
and his faire lady behinde lefte there
the qwene compenye forto bere
(For bothen they loveden as paramour,
the qweene & sche, *with-owten langour*)— 14444
- hit behappede vppon a nyht,
Leodagan be his qwene lay, as wile ryht.
that nyht on hire he be-gat tho
a fair dowhter, with-owten mo, 14448
that jn hire age Gonn[or]e hit hyhte,

14415. See footnote to l. 14142.

14431. *c* crossed out before *Leodagan*. 14449. MS. *Gonne*.

whiche that was a wondir fair wyhte.

this qweene sche was of gret bownte

and an holy lyuere, certeinle ;

14452 The queen,
who was very
pious,

and on costom hadde this qweene :

þat but fewe nyhtes hit scholde bene

and regularly
attended
matins,

that sche ne wolde to mynstre go

hire matynes & servise to heren tho.

14456

that same nyht þat sche conceyved was,

went also
this time,

To matynes sche ros a ful gret pas,

and be the stewardis wyf sche cam ful stille,

and fond hire Slepynge, & thowhte non ylle.

14460

thanne forth sche wente, & wook hire nowht,

without
waking the
steward's
wife.

To serven hire god, as sche hadde thowht,

and lefte this lady there styлле on slepe,

that of non creature took sche kepe.

14464

Forth wente þe qweene alone *with* hire sawtyere

to þe mynstre, that faste by was there.

Anon this kyng leodagan tho

The king

this lady thowhte to werken wo.

14468

and whanne þat the qweene to mynstre was,

anon vp he ros jn that plas,

and qweynte alle the lyhtes þat weren wyt[h]-inne,

rose,
put out the
lights,

For er wolde he þat tyme not blynne.

14472

Sethen to the bed he goth ful ryht,

and went to
that lady's
bed.

there cleadalis wif lay jnne that nyht.

Whanne the Lady Felte On Jn Hyre Bed,

[leaf 143 b]

sche axede ho was there Jn that sted.

14476

“hold thou thi pes,” quod kyng leodagan ;

She asked
who was
there.
The king told
her to be
silent,
or else he
would kill
her.

“and þou discure me to ony man,

vppon my swerd thou schalt deye,

j the Swere, dame, be my feye.”

14480

This lady defended hire with al hire myht,

Her resist-
ance availed
little ;

but non noyse dorste sche make owt ryht.

but lytel awayllede there hire defens,

For be hire he lay there jn presens,

14484

the king
begot on her
another
daughter.

and that same nyht begat on hire tho

anoper dowhter ryht also.

14451. *was* crossed out before *sche*.

14459. *wyf* added above the line. 14471. MS. *wyt jnne*.

Both were born in the same night.	hit happede, whanne this qweene deliuered was The same nyht of a dowhter ju that plas, the same nyht, with-owten ony faylle, the stewardis wif gan forto travaille, and anoper dowhter hadde of gret bewte ; a fairrere creature myhte non be.	14488 14492
They were so like each other, that they could be dis- tinguished only by a peculiar birth-mark.	thanne so lyk bothe children they were, that on from anothir knowen myhte not pere, Sauf gonnore þat þe qwenes dowhter was, a wondir mark hadde sche ju prevy plas : vppon the keynes that child behynde hadde þe fygure as a corowne of a kyng. and but hit were be thiike mark, cowde non man hem disseuere ju lyht ne derk.	14496 14500
Both were called Gon- nore, and brought up together.	and ech of hem gonnore hyhte, as be here baptem j-named be ryhte. And Ewere weren they norsched bothe ju fere, tyl that the qweene after deide there.	 14504
After the death of the queen, the king con- fined the steward's wife in a castle.	and the kyng aftyr hire deth anon aftyr cleodalis wif sente ful son, and al azens that ladyes wylle ju a castel he closede hire ful stille, bencheson that his steward of prise with hire scholde speke ju non wyse.	 14508
Five years later,	and thus he contenede v 3er, that cleodalis his wif ne say not ther ;	 14512
the steward's friends re- monstrated with the king,	til on a day þe frendis of þe steward than there-of spoken to kyng leodagan, and hem answerede : whille he hadde werre, he scholde hire not hauen nethir nyh ne ferre.	 14516
but in vain.	that 3it kepte he hire Styлле jnto the comeng, that jnto his lond entrede artheur the kyng.	 14520
Yet Cleodalis remained faithful.	Now 3it, behold, for al this distresse the steward þe kyng Servede neuere the lasse.	 14524
Now we will return to the battle ;	but 3it torneth this Storye ageyn, and of this Steward speketh, certein, how with the jeauntes he fawht on foote, that him and his felawes helden ryhte hote.	 14524
more of the Gonnore's later on.	and after, as processe cometh and tyme, of bothe Gonnore's scholen 3e here ju ryme.	

- Evere the bataylle ful gret hit was,
 there as cleodalys was jn plas. 14528 In the battle
where Cleo-
dalis
and the 12
fellows fight;
 And assone as these xliij men
 amonges þat peple weren entred then,
 they fowhten faste on eche a syde,
 and moche peple was Siayn that tyde. 14532 great de-
struction is
wrought.
 many speres to-borsten weren there,
 helmes j-cloven & scheldes jn fere ;
 dede bodyes fillen faste adown,
 eche man on othir jn vyrown. 14536
 So that jn þe feldes al abowte
 Stedis þere wenten a ful gret rowte,
 here reynes hangeng betwene here feet,
 that eche man forth hem passen let. 14540
 and euere þe steward defendid him faste,
 tyl he was reskwed atte laste.
 there many a lady was husbondles,
 and many a sostyr brothirles, 14544 many women
become hus-
bandless,
brotherless,
or childless.
 and many a modir was childles,
 Thorwh strokis of cleoda[li]s jn þat pres.
- Whanne Sonygranx And Kyng Sorpharouns
 beheldyn al tho grete distroeciouns 14548 [leaf 143 c]
Sonigrans
and Sorfarins
(p. 382)
assemble
their people
by sound of
trumpets and
timbrels.
 and the grete slawhtre that there was,
 anon kyng Sonigranx jn that plas
 his trompes let Blowen, his tymbers let bete
 here mene there forto gaderen to hepe. 14552
 And anon as assembled they were,
 Sire kay amonges hem entrede there,
 Sire Lucans and ek Sire gyrflees
 amonges hem prekede jnto þat pres. 14556 Kay, Lucans,
and Gyrflæs
ride against
them.
 ech of hem hadde a gret Stowr lawnce,
 þer-with amonges hem they gonne preken & praunee.
 Anon sire kay kyng Sonygranx mette,
 and swich a boffet þere he him sette, 14560 Kay throws
Sonygranx to
the ground;
 that tope ouer tayl he goth to grownde,

14538. *al abowte* crossed out, and *a ful gr't rowte* added, at the end of the line.

14540. *man*, *M* corrected from an uncompleted *f*.

14546. *Thorwgh*, *T* corrected from *a*.—MS. *Cleodas*.

where he long
lies motion-
less.

where as he lay a ful long stownde,
that neuere remevede foot ne hand,
as j do ȝow here to vndirstand.

14564

Lucans and
Girles kill
two men.

Ryht tho sire Lucauns and sire girles
slowen tweyne stark ded jn that plas.

The heathen
try to rescue
Sonygraux;

Whanne kyng Sonygraux to grownde was leyd,

14568

but the 42
fellows sur-
round him.

anon these hethen maden a gret Breyd
hym to reskwe with alle here myht,
but that the xlij felawes anon ryht
abouten Sonygraux assembled echon,
that thiike tyme nyhe hym myhte come non.

14572

So that gretly defoulyd he was,
as he lay there jn that plas,
er that he myhte recoueren ageyn;
the hethen abowtis semblede. certeyn.

14576

Merlin,
carrying his
banner,

and merline, that bar the Banere,
the cccc he cam to refreschen there,
and the xlij felawes jn his compenye
jn þat bataylle weren sprad, ful Sekerlye.

14580

and Cleodalis,
remount-
ed on a good
courser,

and cleodalis Sormowntyd was
& on a good destrer sette jn þat plas,
and his Baner evere held he styлле.

14584

at the head
of a party,

Thanne ascryen he gan with good wille,
that tyme assembleden they ful faste,
and ho so myhte to-fore gon, they gonne haste.

make a fierce
attack

Anon there be-gan a merveillous stour,
that was ful of angwis & of dolour.
there knyhtes feld men myhten se
betwixen hors legges ful gret plente.

14588

on the com-
pact mass of
the heathen.

but of the hethene so gret peple was,
that hard it was to entren jn that plas.

14592

Now arrive
the 5000
fugitives
from Toraise
(pp. 381 f.).

and so they fowhten evere than & then,
tyl atte theke v thousand men
that fledden from Torayse atte þe bataylle,
aȝen retorneden, with-outen faille.

14596

they repeyrede anon to kyng Sorpharins
and to kyng Sonigranx, with-owten lesinges.

14596. This line was omitted and then written down the right margin.

14597. *Sorpharins*, o daubed.

- But these xlij goode Saudioures,
 that jn that Bataylle weren stout & fers,
 wolde not remeven non foot of lond
 there as Sonigranx was beten, j vndirstond.
 Atte laste this Sonigranx remounted was
 with gret sorwe & peyne jn that plas.
 thanne began there anon newe bataylle,
 For avenged wolde he be, with-owten faylle.
 Anon the kyng sonigranx & his meyne
 the xlij they hadden Envyrownd, Sekerle.
 thanne Entrede merlyne with his baner
 with al þe myht that he myhte ther.
 and the cc & .l. knyhtes of þe rounde table,
 they weren Sourmontyd, with-owten fable,
 and a ful gret pas they comen rydand
 to þe banere pat merlyne bar on hande,
 and to that part they gonnen drawe,
 where-offen merlyne was ryht fawe.

14600

Notwith-
standing the
42 fellows,

14604

Sonigrans
is at last
remounted.

14608

He wants to
take revenge.
The 42 are
surrounded.

14612

Merlin comes
to their re-
lief;the 250
knights, now
remounted
(cf. l. 14170),
arrive
(cf. l. 14249),
and join him.

14616

- Whanne that these cc & .l. knyhtes
 to the bataylle weren sembled jn ryhtes,
 Amonges Here Enemyes they gonne to Reke,
 there many a spere gonne they to-breke.
 and whanne here Speres to-broken were,
 anon here Swerdis they drowen owt there.
 So strong was the bataille, certeinle,
 that hit was wondir to behold & se.

14620

There is a
wonderful
fight.

[leaf 143 d]

14624

- On the tothyr partye þe steward cleodalyz
 with his meyne ful sore fault, j-wys.
 but for non power that was hem among,
 here a stale myhten they not kepen ful long,
 but sorpharynis to the cyte ward wente
 ryht velonusly with his entente.

14628

In the mean-
time, Cleo-
dalis' force
is driven by
Sorfarins
towards the
city.

- thanne cam þe two thousand of þe cyte,
 that toforn tym jn the chas hadden be.
 and whanne they syen the stywardis banere
 and with him gret compenie there,
 anon they torneden jnto that partye.

14632

They meet
the 2000 pur-
suers
(l. 14283).

These at once slay a thou- sand hea- then;	and jn here goynge thedirward, sekerlye, they slown a thousand jn here comeng, and thanne with cleodalis they maden restyng.	14636
and there begins a new boisterous battle	thanne there began a newe bataylle, as j 3ow seye with-owten faylle, that the Noyse wel herd myhte haue ben passeng a ful long myle then.	14640
against Sor- farin and his force.	this kyng Sorpharyn hadde on his side x thousand men that jlke tyde, and cleodalis hadde on his partye but fyve thousand, certeynlye.	14644
The 250 knights and the 42 fel- lows, who fight against Sonigrans,	On the tothir partye was gret fyhtyng of hem of pe round table, with-owten lesyng, and the xlij sowdiours jn fere azens kyng Sonigranx fowhten there, that azens viij thousand helden bataylle, and weren at gret mischef, with-owten faylle;	14648
are in great distress.	For they myhten not long endure azens swich a meyne, j 3ow ENSURE.	14652
Merlin says to Ban they must destroy the five lead- ers of the hostile army.	thanne merlyne clepede kyng ban anone, and to hym he seide ful sone : “barouns, bachelers, bothe fre & bolde, what stonde 3e stille & so beholde? here ben but fyve geauntis in this stede that thus this meyne doth ouer-lede. weren theke fyve distroyed sone, thanne were al this bataylle done.”	14656
Ban asks where they are.	“what partye ben they,” quod kyng ban tho, “3ondir jn bataylle hope to & fro?”	14664
Merlin says that Ulfín and others struggle with them:	“certes,” quod merlyn, “j schal 3ow telle : Vlphines, Gyrles, & bretel the snelle, Sire kay, & Sire lucauns also, with hem they fyhten & suffren wo.	14668
“Now follow me, and we will see who does best!”	and behold & seweth now aftyr me, thanne the sothe there scholen we se, wich of this compenye best doth him here ; the sothe thanne scholen we preuen there ”	14672

14664. This line was omitted and then written down the right margin.

- thussone *Merlyne* faste forth Rod,
 and these knyhtes *non* lengere abod,
 but forth they *entrede* jnto *pat* bataylle,
 vj knyhtes *azens* xx *jeauntis*, saun faylle,
 that weren passeng owt of mesure. 14676
 Merlin rides
 ahead;
 the others
 follow.
- kyng Ban to-fore Rod, j *3ow* Ensure,
 and *pe* ferst man he mette that day tho,
 was kyng *Sonygranx*, with-owten mo. 14680
 Ban meets
 king *Soni-*
grans,
- kyng Ban jn honde his swerd held,
 that al forsoylled was jn that feld
 of *menis* blood & *menes* brayn,
 as j *3ow* declare Jn certayn. 14684
 hits him on
 the helm,
- perwith* vppon the helm he smot him there,
 that thorwh the *Serle* hit wente ful clere
 and thorwh the *vysage* *Evene* down ryht,
 that vppon the left scholdre hit alyht, 14688
 and cuts off
 his left arm.
- that hit fley jnto the feld
 bothe the left arm & Ek the *Scheld*.
Thanne made He gret *Noyse*, & *Fowle* He ferde,
 that fer jnto the ost hit was herde. 14692
 [leaf 144 a]
- And kyng *Bors* smot *marganaus*, for soth,
 that thorwh the *panne* hit wente jnto *pe* teth. 14696
 Boors splits
Marganaus'
 head.
- On the tothyr partye kyng *Arthour*
 Ful wel he bar hym jn that *Stowr*. 14700
 Arthur kills
 one giant,
- he smot a *jeaunt* thorwh *hauberk* & *scheld*,
 that he fyl ded down jn the feld.
 and vlphyn anothir *geaunt* slowhe,
 Balaater, a strong thef and a towhe. 14704
 Ulfen, an-
 other,
- And *Bretel* slowh *Gordaunt*, & *kay* *dendonart* ;
 these *jeawntes* *Slowen* they jn here part.
Lucauns slowh *maleez*, & *Gyrflus* *manadape* ;
 these *jeaw[n]tis* *slowen* they, hit was here hape. 14708
 Bretel, a
 thirde,
 and so forth.
- And *meraungis* slowh *Sadut* jn that plas,
 and *gornauns* *kadrus* *Slowh* *dolas*.
 Anon as the *hethene* *Syen* these thus slayn,
 To *flen* ful faste they weren ful fayn. 14712
 Now the
 heathen
 yield,
 despairing of
 success.
- For they seyden hit wolde not awaylle
azens the *cristene* to holde bataylle.

	Avauzt knyhtes of the table rownde and þe two and fourty Soudiours jn þat stownde ! 14712 Anon the hethene sore abasched they were, For of hem we[r]en slayn mochel peple there.	
They flee to king Sorla- rins,	So that faste they gonne forto fle, that alle the Sowdyours hit myhte se,	14716
who is fight- ing with Cleodalis, dash through the place of battle,	tel to kyng Sorpharyns they comen, j-wys, that bataylle held with Cleodalis. thanne borsten the hethen Jnto that pres, that non man there ne myhten hem ses,	14720
and press on to the city.	So harde, that they whiche jn þe place were, Forsoken here place maugry here. and neuere they wolden astynte ne abyde, tyl that to-fore toraysse they comen that tyde.	14724
The citizens are greatly alarmed, seeing neither the king's banner,	Anon thanne the peple of the cyte wondir Sore affrayed weren, Sykyrle, that the Banere Syen they not than of here owne worthy kyng leodagan,	14728
nor the king himself,	wherby thei thowhten thanne anon that taken or dede they weren echon. On þe tothir partye they syen not here kyng, that the Sowdeours hadden be reskewyng ;	14732
only the enemies be- fore the gates.	wherfore they weren abasched wel sore, For that here kyng they syen not comen thore. and whanne they comen to-fore the town, thanne alle lost thei wende hadde ben jn virown.	14736
The 6000 Christians,	For but vj thousand of cristen ther were and jresch hethen xij thousand, as 3e mown here.	
in great trouble, fall back to the town.	Nedis the Sowdeours weren at gret mischef, So that to the cyte they gonnen relief.	14740
They collide afresh,	and euere the cetejeins, the sope to say, of þe Sowdeours weren sore aferd, in fay. whanne the Sowdeours and here compenye among the hethen weren entrid, Sekyrlye,	14744
fight desper- ately,	there began a ful gret stowr	

14713. *hethene, eth* on erasure.

14714. MS. *wce*.

14724. MS. *tylthat*.

14728. *worthy, w* corrected from *k*.—*leodagan*, see footnote to l. 14142.

14729, 14736. *thei, i* squeezed in afterwards.

Ful of angwysch & of dolowr;
 the wheche Endured ful longe than,
 For there was slayn ryht many a man : 14748
 For a thousand there fyllen jn that pres
 atte ferste entre, with-owten les,
 that neuere recouerede aftyr ageyn,
 as j 3ow Seye now jn certeyn. 14752

and kill a
 thousand
 men.

On the tothir partye, whanne þe knyhtes of the rounde
 table

As for the
 knights of
 the Round
 Table and the
 42 fellows,

and the xliij Sowdeoures, with-owten fable,
 hadden discomfyt Sonigrenx the kyng,
 and to flyht was put, with-owten lesyng, 14756
 they wolden non lenger aftyr hym chase;
 For merlyne hem withheld jn that plase,
 and drowh hem jnto on partye
 of that feld, ful Sekyrlye, 14760
 and to hem alle seide ryht anon :

they are told
 by Merlin not
 to pursue the
 enemy,

“herkeneth now, Lordynges Everichon,
 3e scholen non ferthere Sewen hem here,
 but doth now as j schal 3ow Lere : 14764
 Alyhteth of 3oure hors jn this tyde
 Hem to Refreschen, there to Abyde ;
 For 3owre hors ful wery they be,
 al be-swet and be-bled, as 3e mown se.” 14768
 and they deden anon his comandement,
 as j 3ow Seye, with ful good Entent.

but to alight
 and rest their
 horses,

[*leef 144 b*]

which are
 weary,
 and covered
 with sweat
 and blood.

So that there they alyhten alle anon,
 and refresched hem thanne Everichon, 14772
 for therto they hadden ful gret mester,
 alle the compenye of hem jn fer.

They all do
 so.

Anon ther spak kyng leodagan,
 and vnto merlyne Seyde he than : 14776
 “Sire, wylen 3e that these goode men here
 with 3oure xliij myhte ben alle jn fere?”

King Leode-
 gan suggests
 to Merlin that
 the 250 and
 the 42 should
 be together.

“3e certis, Sire,” quod merlyne thanne,
 “to vs js welcomen Every good manne. 14780

Merlin says
 that every
 good man is
 welcome to
 them.

- For mochel the bettere scholen we do
al jn on wyng to-gederis forto go.”
- The king
tells Herry
of Rivel to
join the 42.
Anon thanne clepyd kyng leodagan
herry the ryvel, his banorer, than, 14784
and preyde hym thanne forto comen ner
jn compenye with these goode men to dwellen her—
“and 3oure Feleschepe *with* 3ow also,
For jn on compenye now scholen we go.” 14788
Herry gladly
obeys: “Ful gladliche, sire,” quod herry ryvel,
“For Of here compenye vs lyketh ful wel,
3if that so here wyll now be.”
“3is,” quod kyng leodagan, “certeinle, 14792
For from this day heus forward
but on compenye to ben both styf & hard.”
“For good is
the fellow-
ship of good
men.” “For good is the Feleschepe of ryht good menne.” 14796
- Thanne to-gederis weren they alle
jn on compenye, as gan be-falle.
They start
for the city,
and merlyne to-fore be-gan to ryde;
thanne alle they hym seweden þat ilke tyde. 14800
And whilles they reden thus jn fere,
as 3e han me herd rehersen here,
where Cleo-
dalis is up-
holding the
battle against
king Sorta-
rins’ men.
Al the while the steward Cleodalis
with vj thousand jn his compenye, j-wis, 14804
agens kyng Sorpharynes fawht he tho,
that *with* hym hadde xij thousand men & mo.
These fight
dispersedly,
but Enbataylled non thing they were,
but ay fylytyng they weren here & there, 14808
ever thinking
the Chris-
tians will suc-
cumb,
for they wendyn han mad an ende
of Cleodalis meyne, & so thanne they wende,
For at gret mischef, certeyn, they were,
they that with Cloadalis weren there, 14812
For jn poynt to 3elden they weren echone
and ek here place to forsaken welsone.
Now Merlin’s
banner is
sighted,
thanne they lokede hem beside
and Syen merlynes Baner that tyde, 14816
the dragon that the feer blew so hygh,

14803. MS. *Althc.* 14806. *hym* added in the left margin.
14810. *they* added in the right margin.

as hit hem Semede, jn-to the Skyhe,
 that al the eyr semede on fyre there ;
 Swich wondris they syen that pere were. 14820
 And whanne that the ladyes vppon þe cyte walle
 behelden merlynes Banere alle,
 anon they cryden to Cleodalis,
 that vndir the walles fawht, j-wys : 14824
 “ ha, Cleodalis, of good comfort thou be,
 For here cometh socour anon to the ! ”

The ladies on
 the city wall

cry to Cleo-
 dalis :

“ Be of good
 cheer ;
 for help is
 coming ! ”

And whanne Cleodalis herd hem so crye
 that on the walles stooden an hye, 14828
 he loked anon toward the valeye,
 and beheld where thanne comen theye.
 Thanne wyste he wel that jn tyme comenge
 that sone scholde he hauen Socourenge, 14832
 and thankede god omnipotent,
 that thider Socour hath hym sent.
 thazne clepede he his men jn vyrown,
 that abowtis hym comen wel son : 14836
 “ now mowen ȝe ben bothe glad & save,
 For here comen they pat we desired haue.”
 thanne Cleodalis for gret joye of herte
 Amonges the hethene than gan he sterte, 14840
 And His meyne Forth With hym ;
 thanne wax the bataylle wondir Grym.

Cleodalis
 looks towards
 the valley,

thanks God,

calls his men,

and makes
 another rush.
 [leaf 144 c]

with that cam on this othir meyne,
 and of hem Slown ful gret plente : 14844
 .ccc. they Slown atte ferste set
 Jn here ferst comenge, with-owten let,
 that neuere to lyve restored ageyn
 more thanne they that jn helle ben, certeyn ; 14848
 Ne non departeson they maden, j-wys,
 til they comen to þe steward Cleodalis.

Merlin's
 companions
 arrive,

slay at once
 300,

and straight
 make their
 way to
 Cleodalis.

Whanne they weren entred alle jn fere,
 anon merlyne gan forto ascryen there : 14852
 “ haa, lordynges, knyhtes, & bachelere,
 let se how ȝe konne beren ȝow here.

Merlin ex-
 horts every-
 one to do his
 best.

14853. *haa* corrected from *and* (*h* added in the margin, *d* erased).

	For 3e ben comen now to 3oure asay : therfore let now se how 3e konne play."	14856
Arthur laughingly calls this fight a good joke.	whanne that kyng Artheur herde this, To kyng Ban & kyng Bors he seyde, j-wys, ryht hertely lawghenge jn his manere, to tho two kynges thanne seide he there	14860
Merlin asks them to stop joking; there will be time enough for that all the week.	that—" neuere a bettere boorde was thanne now is be-gonnen jn this plas." thanne seide merlyne to hem anon : " beleve 3oure boordying now everichon,	14864
They dash against the enemies.	For al this wyke 3e mown jn fere bothe Lawghen & boorden & make good chere." whanne they vndirstod merlyne So speke, amonges here Enemyes gonne they reke	14868
	welful of jre and maultalent. there began a gret Stour present : the sorrest that was of al theke day, at that tyme there began, jn fay.	14872
Arthur excels.	There began Arthewr a merveyllous thing be his owne handis as jn werkyng, as merlyne hym cownseyllde at that tyde, that al the world of hym spak so wyde.	14876
Gonnore	and Gonnore, that on the walles was than, the dowhter of kyng leodagan,	
and the other ladies	alle the ladyes and pe maydenis also, to hevene ward here hondis heldyn tho,	14880
weepingly pray for his saving,	and preyden for Artheuris Savaciown, that with Enemyes was be-set jn virown, and wepten for rowthe and for pyte.	
the Chris- tians being so few and so young.	So manye hethene azens crystyente merveille to suffren there hit was, So 3onge as they weren jn that plas. but kyng Arthewr amongis hem echon distroyede most of alle here fon.	14884 14888
With his sword Cali- brand,	For [with] his sward, that hyhte Calybrond, whiche that he bar pere jn his hond, bothe on pe ryhte syde & on the lefte	
he kills	manye hedis & scholderis he hem berefte,	14892

legges, armes, & thyes also ;		and maims,
bothe knyhtes & hors to grownde gonne go.		
he made here helmes fleen jnto pe feld		
and knyhtes ded fallen vndir here scheld.	14896	
Ek the Sercles, that weren mad of Stel,		cutting even
agens his strok holden nyhten non del.		through steel.
but Ewere abowtes hym good warde pere was		
hym forto saven there jn that plas.	14900	
For agens kyng Bors and kyng Ban		Boors and
non maner of armure myhte duren than.		Ban are irre-
thane so they wrowhten there jn fere,		sistible ;
that here strokis dorste non man abyden there,	14904	
what of hem of the Rownde table		so are their
and of the xlij Sowdiowrs, with-owten fable.		companions.
For amongis hem was forȝeten non thyng,		
whanne that they comen to here bekeryng.	14908	
Ful strong was pe bataylle and the stowr		The violent
that to-forn pe cyte of Torayse was pat owr		battle outside
(and Every knyht Jn his owne degre		the city walls
Ful boldly there hym bar, ful Sykirle),	14912	
and dured al the day, as j ȝow telle,		lasts all day.
tyl that hit rang with Evesong belle.		
that So nygh they weren to the cyte,		
Not thens A stones cast, Sykerle.	14916	[leaf 144 d]
but whanne hit cam to pe owr of noon tho,		At the ninth
of al that day fowhten they not So,		hour,
that xij thowsend Jnto nyne was browht ;		3000 foes are
at that tyme so sore the crystene pere fowht.	14920	fallen.
Whanne Sorpharynes Sawhe that hit wente so,		Sorfarins
anon be his creauunce Swor he tho		swears he
that he wolde neuere from that grownd gon,		will be
tyl that he were venged of his fon.	14924	avenged ;
Anon he clepede his kynnes-men than,		
Sire Gaydone & also Sire Sotybran,		he calls his
Sire Senebant & Sire Claryown,		kinsmen,
Sire mallors & sire Freellent jn virown ;	14928	
They weren knyhtes bothe goode & bolde,		

	as jn this Storrye here hit is tolde.	
makes an attack,	they dressed hem forth alle jn fere amonges theke worthy Sowdyowrs there.	14932
and throws down Hervy of Rivel,	hit happede kyng Sorpharyn to meten tho Sire hervy the Ryvel, as hit gan go. and Sire Ryvel he smot so sore that tyde, that down to þe Erthe gan he glyde.	14936
Ankor (An- tron),	and aftyr Ancor he smot also, that down to grownde thanne gan he go.	
and Gyrles.	Sethen Sire gyrles smot he there, that hors & man to grownd he bere.	14940
Each of his followers unhorses an adversary.	and ech of his felawes smot a knyht, that to the grownde he fyl anon ryht ; thanne ech of his felawes bar hym so, and maden here aduersarye to grownde go. but there nas non wondid to þe ded that felden were jn thyke sted.	14944
Thus Lucans, Kay, Bretel, and several others	Sire Lucans þe botelers happed thanne thus, Sire meraungis & sire Gorvayns Caradus, Sire blyobers, sire galeys luchauns, as telleth this tale, Sire kay þe steward & sire guniret of lambale, ek Sire Godam and Sire staungot, the nithe was sire Bretel, wel j wot :	14948
are thrown to the ground.	alle these jn the feld j-feld they were. but non man wyste the sothe there, whethir be strok of lawnce hit was or be defawt of here hors jn that plas.	14952
	thanne a ful gret noysse there began and a wondir gret dlowst forsothe than, that non of hem othir myhten se, as this storrye reherset herteynle.	14956
There is great din and blinding dust.	but evere the hethene peynede hem faste the cristene to distroyen Jn alle haste.	14960
The unhorsed knights defend them- selves on loot,	Anon these worthy nyne knyhtes vppon here Feet keuerede anon ryhtes. with here naked swerdis on honde Styfly to-gederis gonne they stonde, and Fowhten with hem with alle here myht	14964

- For there began thanne a ful strong fyht. 14968
 but lytel hit awayllede at that Tyde,
 For the jeauntes on hem ful sore gonnen abyde.
 thanne cam merlyne to here socour
 with his Baner on hande jn that stowr. 14972
 Anon kyng Sorpharynes, that jeaunt, tho
 To kyng leodagan thanne gan he go,
 and smot hym evene amyddis the scheld,
 that hors and man Fyl jn the Feld. 14976
 So lowe bar Sorpharynes his spere there :
 kyng leodagan[s] hors Slowh he there,
 So that bothe they lyen atte crownde,
 kyng leodagan & his hors, that stownde. 14980
 whanne they of the cyte behelden this,
 Gret sorwe they maden & cryden, j-wys,
 For they wendyn kyng leodagan hadde be ded ;
 So sore he Fyl there jn that sted. 14984
 thanne to here reskews Eche man wente,
 and sore they fowhten with good Entente.
 whanne that kyng Artheur herde this
 of that stowt jeawnt & crym, j-wys, 14988
 That feld hadde fowre so worthy men,
 kyng Artheur swor anon Ryht then
 that on þeke jeaunt hym-self wolde asaye
 To Weten Whethyr of Hem Bettere cowde playe. 14992
 Jnto that reng kyng arthewr wente
 with a boystous spere on honde, veramente,
 the hed ful Scharpe and wel j-grownde,
 and forth he rod jn that Stownde. 14996
 hit happede that aʒens hym cam kyng ban,
 and to kyng Artheur there seide he than :
 " with whom thenken ʒe to josten here ?
 not with this jeaunt jn non manere ! 15000
 For to ʒow he is to strong jn this Felde,
 For ʒe ben ʒit but of ʒong Elde.
 but let now me aʒens him go
 Forto asayen what j may do. 15004
 For j am Eldere of age than ʒe

but cannot
do much.

Merlin ap-
proaches.

Sorfarina
rides against
Leodagan,

and fells man
and horse.

The people
in the city
lament,
thinking that
the king is
dead.

Arthur, hear-
ing of the
giant's ex-
ploits,

swears to
have a try
with him,

[leaf 145 a]

and rides
forth
spear in
hand.

Ban meets
him,

dissuades
him,

and offers to
go in his
stead.

14978. MS. *Leodagan hors.*

14998. *to*, MS. *two.*

14983. See footnote to l. 14142.

- and ek, j trowe, strengere, certeinle.”
- But Arthur perseveres. “ Now god Forbede,” quod kyng arthur tho,
 “ that evere ony man but j hym go to. 15008
 For the more pat dowted the jeaunt Js,
 the sonnere asayen hym j schal, j-wys.
 For Elles my-selve j scholde neuere knowe
 what j myhte don anothyr throwe.” 15012
- Merlin, seeing the delay, harshly tells Arthur to hurry. Whanne merlyne Sawh Arthewr Taryen So,
 wondirly he ascryede hym anon tho :
 “ what Taryest thou here, pou fowle coward ?
 dredyst thou the jeaunt jn this part ? 15016
 Go, coward, and do as thou scholdest do.”
- Arthur feels ashamed, and whanne kyng Arthur herde merlyne speken so,
 and that coward he clypede hym thanne,
 Ful sore aschamed was pat worthy manne. 15020
 and rides on. Anon he prekede jnto that pres,
 that for non thing ne wolde he ses.
- Bau remonstrates with Merlin. thanne anon bespak kyng Ban,
 and pere to merlyne seyde he than : 15024
 “ me thynketh hit is not ryht wel do
 to chargen Arthur forto don so,
 So 3ong a man as Arthewr now js
 azens that gret devel to josten, j-wys.” 15028
- Merlin tells him not to mind, but to follow after with Boors and Ulfen. “ there-offen non warde,” quod merlyn tho,
 “ but tak 3oure spere and aftyr hym 3e go,
 and 3owre brothir and Vlphyn jn compenye ;
 aftyr hym faste that 3e don hye.” 15032
 his comandement they fulfylden in haste,
 also swithe as here hors myhten laste.
- When Sorfarins sees Arthur, he rides against him. whanne kyng Sorpharynes Sawh Arthewr there,
 anon azens hym he gan forto bere. 15036
 And whanne they of the reng behelden this,
 thanne hovenen they alle style, j-wys.
- All look anxiously on. For of Arthewr they hadden gret drede,
 lest that the jeawnt hym scholde oner-lede. 15040
- The spears burst. So sore to-gederis they metten atte laste,
 that bothe here speres there al to-barste.

15011. MS. *my selvel.* 15017. *and*, a corrected from *d.*
 15033. *hafte* corrected from *hye.* 15042. MS. *alto barfte.*

Sorpharynes Artheur jn þe flanke hyrte,
 that a lytel hit gan hym smerte. 15044 Arthur is
slightly hurt
in the side;
 and Artheur smot him so sore ageyn
 thorwh Scheld and hauberk, jn certeyn,
 that thorwgh the chyne the spere owt glod
 an arme lengthe behynde, Er hit with-stod, 15048 Sorfarins is
pierced,
and falls.
 that bothe hors and man to grownde they wente
 Erene tope ouer tayl thanne, veramente.

These Justes beheld this lady gonnore,
 the dowhter of kyng Leodegan, þat was thore, 15052 Gonnore,
watching the
combat,
 as sche atte a fenestre wyndowe lay;
 sche beheld al theke bataylle that day,
 and merveyllde what this Bacheler was,
 that there so wel bar hym jn that plas. 15056 marvels at
the young
man
whose name
nobody
knows.
 Non wyht his name cowde tellen that owr,
 but that hit was on a worthy Sowdyowr—
 “that ȝoure fadyr hath now with-holde;
 what so Ewere he be, he is a man ful bolde.” 15060
 “Sertes,” quod the mayden tho,
 “From goode men nedis cam he fro.
 For but ȝif of hygh blood that born he were,
 he cowde neuere so handelen neþer scheld ne spere.”
 So that al thyke day jnto the Ende 15065 and keeps on
speaking of
the soldiers.
 of the sowdiours to speken sche wolde not lende.

Anon kyng Bors and kyng Ban
 Juto that Reng anon entred than, 15068 Ban and
Boors ap-
proach;
[leaf 145 b]
 eche of Hem With a spere Bothe myhty and strong,
 with hedis sharpe j-grownden, bothe stordy and long.
 There kyng Bors smot Soryþran,
 and kyng ban smot Claryel than; 15072 they strike
two enemies;
 Vlphynes smot Sire Gaydon jn þat plas,
 that of his lyf bereft he was.
 so that these jeauntes to dethe weren browht;
 thanne Eche man his Enemy owt pere sowht. 15076 Ufin kills a
third.
 ȝit forthere these thre gonnoun to ryde,
 So that eche of hem anoþer slowhe that tyde.
 the ton slowh moras, the tother Laundon,
 the thrydde senebawnt he slowh anon, 15080

15063 *but* added above the line.

	So that styлле they leften there, tyl that away they were born on bere.	
Arthur attacks Mallore	Anon kyng Artheur his swerd gan drawe, For eft to fyhten he was ful fawe.	15084
	Sire mallore there he smot that day thorwh-out the helm, the sothe to say, For that he lay vppon kyn[g] Ban ; ful bytterly he smot hym than,	15088
and Freelent, who try to slay Ban.	and so he dede Sire Freelent, that bothen purposeden with good entent For to han had kyng bannes hed Evene from the body jn that sted.	15092
	For the ton his helm wolde han of drawe, the toper with a mas wold han hym Slawe. thane lefte not kyng Artheur for non of this,	
Mallore's head flies off.	but welsone mallore; hed he hadde, j-wys, and mad hit flen jnto the feld bothe from body and ek from scheld.	15096
Freelent	Whanne Freelent Sawh his felawe ded, that was his cosyn, jn that sted,	15100
lifts his mace ;	his mas he gan lyften ful hye kyng Artheur to han smeten, Sekerlye.	
Arthur throws up his shield.	Artheur his scheld threw vpe anon, that þe strok hym scholde not lyhten vppon.	15104
The blow makes the shield drop,	and so sore he smot jn that tyde, that jnto þe feld þe scheld gan glyde	
and descends on Arthur's shoulder.	and vppon the lefte scholdere decendyd adowne, that on þe hors nekke hit stynte wel son.	15108
Freelent tries another blow ; but Arthur evades,	and vpe azen freellent wolde han rekured his mas ; another thowhte Artheur jn that plas. he smot his hors with his speres tho,	
makes a fresh attack, and slits Freelent's head.	and azen to Freellent gan he go, and vppon the helm hym hytte pere jn hy, that Jnto the gorget hit wente ful ny.	15112
The heathen cry out in dismay.	thane the hethene gonnen forto crye, For sore aferd weren they, sekerlye.	15116
	For socowr non hadden they thar	

15087. MS. *kyn*. 15112. *ffreellent*, *r* corrected from *c*.
 15113. MS. *an ky*.

but only of Raundolk, þat the baner bar.
to hym rod kyng Ban wel swithe,
and a good strok hym rawhte ful blythe,
that bothe the arm and baner also
juto the feld bothe flowen tho.

Their banner-
bearer is dis-
limbed by
Ban.

15120

thussone welfaste þese theves gonne crye,
and awayward faste they gonne hem hye.
hanne the chas so longe dyde laste,
yl thyke day was al apaste.

Then they
flee;

15124

the others
pursue.

So that many men j-slayn ther were,
that of th[e] ix thowsend þat weren there,
nas left but .v. thousand, þe sothe to say,
whiche that faste gonne fleen here way.

15128

Only 5000
escape;

and to kyng ryown they wenten ful faste,
where as at þe sege he was ful preste,
and tolden kyng ryown Everydel
how that be hem hit be-fyl,
and of the grete mortalite

15132

they repair
to king Rion,
at the be-
sieged city
(ll. 13648),
and tell him
what has
happened.

that amonges hem was, ful sekerle.

15136

hanne swor kyng ryown be his Sewrte
þat he wolde not owt of that contre,
Tyl he hadde taken kyng Leodagan
And Jn His presown to Hauen Hym than.

He swears
not to leave
the country,
till he has
captured king
Leodegan.

15140

[leaf 145 c]

Thanne sente kyng ryown juto his lond
aftyr more meyne, as j vndirstond,
thorwh-owt denmark, al that contre,
bothe high & lowgh, of Eche degre,

King Rion
sends to
Denmark for
more people

15144

and viaunde jnowh with hem to brynge,
that may two 3er to-gederis ben durenge

and two
years' pro-
vision

For cc thousand of Fyhtyng men ;

for 200,000
men.

that vytaylle mowe Sufficen than.

15148

For that werre he wolde begynne wel strong
and vigerously werren hem among.

So that they sembleden Every day,
that with-jinne a monthe, [the sothe] forto say,
cc thousand and Fyfty men

Within a
month
250,000
men are
assembled,

15152

15124. *hem*, MS. *hym*.15128. MS. *th ix*.15132. *þ* daubed.15134. *hem*, *e* corrected from *y*.15148. MS. *movē*.15152. MS. *moūthe forto say*.

with-june that mounthe weren sembled than,
 of wheche xx kynges ther were
 To kyng Ryown comen there. 15156
 Gret karyage they browhten with hem also
 of wyne, of vytaylle, as was forto do.
 So that here ost they kepten ju fere,
 that for non vyaunde ferreyen scholden they there, 15160
 but 3if hit be ju-to on partye;
 For plente of viannde hadden they, Sekerlye.
 Faste they asaylleden the cyte there,
 but they with-june of hem hadden non fere, 15164
 For the cyte was bothe byg and strong.
 But skars of vetaylle was hem among,
 that was here drede for Enfamyneng,
 lest the Sege were longe dureng. 15168
 thus cam Socour thanne Every day
 To kyng Ryown, the sothe to Say.
 For welsore agreved he was
 of the meyne he hadde lost ju that plas. 15172
 Now leveth of this mater here,
 Of kyng Ryown & of his ost ju fere
 and of hem with-june the cyte.
 And of kyng Arthewr speke now we 15176
 and of his felawes ju compenye;
 Now to that mater let vs faste hye.

This Storye here declareth a newe tale,
 how these hethene jeauntes weren browht in bale, 15180
 and how glad that they of the cyte
 and joyful weren, whanne they gonnen fle,
 Ek that so lytel a compenye
 hem hadde j-scomfyted, certainlye, 15184
 that ju al but vj thousand an ccc were;
 azens xv thousand they fowhten there.
 and the scomfyture only hit was
 be merlynes helpe and goddis gras. 15188
 whanne the hethen they hadde chased jnto þe nyht,
 thanne to Torayse they torneden anon ryht,
 where as was kyng leodagan;
 Ful joyful and merye weren they than. 15192

amongst
whom 20
kings,

with plenty
of wine and
food,

so as to
render torays
unnecessary.

The city is
assailed
vigorously.

But it is big
and strong:

only famine
is threaten-
ing.

Now we will
leave this,

and speak of
king Arthur
and his com-
panions.

The people
of Toraise are
full of joy
to see the
heathen dis-
comfited by
so small a
body of men.

The pursuers
return to
Toraise.

For leodagannes men hadden hym vp take,
 whilles the Sowdiours wrowhten the hethen wrake.
 And whanne Leodegan wiste the Sowdiours comenge,
 15196 King Leodegan goes to meet them.
 aȝens hem he wente jn cowntrynge.
 Wondir gret joye thanne made the kyng,
 whanne they to-gederis comen jn metyng.
 But Whanne Sire Antron And Girflet they fownden þere, [leaf 145 d]
 Sire kay & Sire Lucawns the Botelere, 15200
 and alle here oper Feleschepe, bothe hol & sownd, All rejoice.
 thanne weren [they] joyful vppon that grownd.
 For they wenden, ded that they hadden be
 oper ellis taken presoner, certeynle. 15204
 and they hadden wonne good gret plente ;
 Anon kyng leodagan, Sekerle—
 anon to the Sowdeowrs hit was to sent,
 with that good hem forto present. 15208
 For better he wolde, and he bettere myhte do,
 but natheles that thedyr sent he tho.

Whanne they seyen the grete curtesye
 that kyng leodegan dede openlye, 15212 The soldiers thankfully
 they hym thankede a thouse[n]d Sythe,
 and to that messenger seyden as blythe :
 “we thanken the kyng of his gret sonde ;
 let hym depart yt forth Jn his londe ! 15216 decline the gift.
 and anothyr tyme, whanne we hauen nede,
 we wylen resceyven that he vs bede.”
 thanne cam merlyne Faste anon,
 and to the thre kynges gan he gon, 15220 But Merlin asks them to accept it.
 and bad hem Resceyven ouer alle thyng
 the presentes that to hem sente þe kyng.
 So they hit took, as meriyn hem bad,
 and amonges þe peple distrebucioun they mad, 15224 Then they do so, and distribute it amongst the people.
 and leften not the valw of on peny
 To here owne partis, ful Sekerly.

15196. *hem*, *c* corrected from *y*.15200. *lucawns*, *c* more like an *s*. At the end of *the* there is something like a daubed *a*. 15202. MS. *were joyful*.

15207. The first to added above the line.

15213. MS. *athouful*. 15216. MS. *departyd*.15521. MS. *boden hem Resceyved*.

All praise the
soldiers ;

So that alle men of that contre
Tho Sowdyowrs preyseden ful hertele. 15228

even such as
never saw
them.

So that the contre repleynsched was abowte
of þe goodis þat they ȝoven, with-owten dowte.
For hem that the Sowdeours neuere Sye,
mochel worschepe hem spoken, certeynlye, 15232
and al for here largenesse & here good dede
thorwh-owt the rem of hem gan sprede.

Arthur gives
his host and
hostess
money,
clothing, and
horses.

And al this was be merlynes counsaile,
as j ȝow Seye with-owten faylle. 15236
Arthur to his ost he ȝaf that day
bothe Richesse, and Robes, and many palfray ;
that alle the dayes aftyr of here lyve
moche bettere myhten they bothen thryve. 15240

After the
distribution
of the spoil,

Whanne that kyng Arthour hadde thus j-do,
and alle the richesches departyd so,
that vppon the hethene they hadden gete
(hit was departyd, er he wolde lete), 15244

the soldiers
enter the
town.

thanne they ȝonnen Entren jnto þe town
with al here feleschepe jn virown.
thanne seide kyng Leodegan tho
to alle the Sowdiowrs, as they ȝonne go, 15248
and wolde non Suffren with al his myhte

King Leode-
gan invites
them to his
palace,

Jn that town there Forto alyhte
Sauf only at his owne paleys ;
he hem besowhte, with-owten les. 15252

to stay with
him and the
knights of
the Round
Table.

Nether neuere owt of his compenye
he ne wolde not Suffren hem, trewelye,
but with the knyhtes of the rownde table
with hem jn compenye to ben, with-owten fable. 15256

They unarm.

And whanne vnarmed that they were,
kyng leodagan his dowhter to hem sente there
with the richest robes that he hadde,
dame gonnore, his dowhter, to hem ladde, 15260
and hot water to waschen hem Jn

The king
sends his
daughters
with rich
garments.

and hot water
for washing.

jn bacenis of gold bothe goode & fyn.

15228. *hertele*, the last *e* corrected from *y*.

15247. *thāne* corrected from *thal*.

15258. *dowhter*, *r* corrected from *t*.

but Arthewr of hem wolde taken non Servyse,
 Tyl kyng leodagan comaunded jn alle wyse
 and merlyne Bad hem there also
 The Servyse of hem to taken tho.
 So that the gentyl damysele anon
 whisch tho thre kynges be on and on,
 bothe Artheuris Body and his nekke also
 and face, & with a towaylle wypte hem tho.
 And Ek bothe kynges jn the Same manere
 that gentyl gonnore wesch ryht There.
 and the tothyr gonnore, pat begeten was
 on cleodalis wyf with-jinne his plas,
 Servede al the tothyr compenye
 With Helpe of othere Damyselys, certeynlye.
 whanne that gonnore Leodaganes dowhtyr, J-wys,
 these thre kynges hadde Servyd thus,
 thanne hire owne fadyr, kyng leodagan,
 hym forto waschen this mayden gan than.
 and whanne that thus j-waschen they were,
 Gonnore to Ech of hem a mentyl took there.
 kyng Arthewr was a man ful of Bewte,
 and that beheld this mayden, ful certeynle.
 And kyng Artheur beheld hyre also ;
 So mochel of Bewte hadde sche tho.
 thanne so they spoken betwixen hem tweyne,
 that to Arthour this damysele gan Seyne
 that glad jn herte sche was, Sekerle,
 of swich a worthy body beloued to be.

15264 Arthur will
accept no
service,
but Leodegan
and Merlin
persuade
him.

15268 Gonnore
washes and
wipes the
three kings.

15272 Her half-
sister and
other damsels
serve the
rest of the
company.

15276 [leaf 146 a]
Gonnore also
washes her
father,

15280 and brings
each one a
mantle.

15284 She notices
Arthur's
beauty,
and Arthur
sees hers.

15288 She would
fain be loved
by such a
man.

Thanne whanne al this was J-do,
 on the morwe to mete scholden they go.
 So that they weschschen & seten a-down,
 these worthy thre kynges & amonges hem non.
 And alle the knyhtes of þe rownde table
 benethen the Sowdiours seten, sauns fable.
 but bothe kyng Bors and kyng Ban
 betwixen hem bothe setten Artheur than.
 For they deden hym ful gret honour,

15292 At table,

15296 the knights
are placed
beneath the
soldiers.
Arthur sits
between
Boors and
Ban.

	For he was a man of gret valour.	15300
King Leodegan notices the respect paid to Arthur.	kyng leodagan took gret kep tho of the neuerece they gonne hym do, and vnderstood wel be here Seruise	
He wonders who he is,	that here souereyn he was jn alle wyse, and merveyllede gretly what he scholde be, For fayn wolde he han wylt, Sykerle.	15304
and wishes that he would marry his daughter.	and to hym-Self he thowhte ryht there that he hadde weddid his dowhter gonnore. For he sawh neuere man of swich Entaylle, but of hygh blood he were, saunȝ faille.	15308
"Or perhaps the Lord has sent me a spirit in man's likeness,	"Oper ellis the goode Lord jn maieste thys man for socour hath sent to me, a spiryt to ben jn mannes lyknesse this rewme to defenden from distresse, j wot wel, not only for the loue of me, but for the Sustenaunce of crystyente and ek holy chirche Forto meyntheyne."	15312
for the sustenance of Christianity."	thus to hym-Self kyng Leodagan gan seyne.	15316
Leodegan muses on his wonderful rescue	At that mete moche thowhte than this worthy kyng Leodagan how that he reskewed was, jn feye, with xliȝ felawes jn the valeye,	15320
from imprisonment,	that hym reskewed of .v. hundred men, whiche that to prison ward ladden hym then, and browhten hym a-geyn with gret richesse, and Slouen alle tho that weren jn that prese. So that for thowht that he was june ther,	15324
and eats nothing. Hery of Rivel	nothyng he Ete at his dener. Thanne that aspyde hery the Revelle, and þere-offen hadde merveylle enerydelle.	15328
goes to the king,	Anon to the table to hym he wente, and there hym aresoned, veramente.	15332
and asks him	he seide that neuere sethen he was bore— "Say j ȝow neuere of swich chere before, ne neuere abasched So, jn good fay, as ȝe ben here this jlike day.	15336

15303. *weel*, *w* corrected from an uncompleted *b*.15312. *thys*, *y* corrected from *e*; *man* added above the line.

- For 3e owhten gret joye to make
 only for these goode mennis sake ;
 and 3e faren wondirly for the nones,
 as thowgh 3e weren not of these wones." 15340
 Anon kyng leodegan hym bethowhte,
 how merveillously this man hadde wrowhte,
 and Seyde : " herry, my dere Frende,
 J thenke here of a wondyr Ende, 15344
 of the beste dede of on worthy man,
 that of al the world now tellen j kan.
 wherfore j ne may not with-holden me,
 but on hym to thenken, certeynle. 15348
 and therefore, goode Sire, so blame me nowht,
 For this day for me hath he Sore wrowht."
 " Sire, 3it may j that leven ryht wel,
 But At this time 3e most Leven hit Eche del. 15352
 and whanne tyme cometh, thenk what 3e lyst,
 For what now 3e thenken, may not be wylt.
 but to hem maketh joye and Ek Solas,
 For 3e han gret cause here Jn this plas. 15356
 therfore abaschscheth non thing 3oure chere,
 For a3ens hem 3e mistaken 3ow here."
 " Sauf vostre grace," quod kyng Leodagan tho,
 " jn non wise that wil j now do. 15360
 now goth and Sittyth down to 3oure mete,
 and al pensifnesse now schal j lete."

to be cheerful
 for the guests'
 sake.

Leodegan
 explains why
 he is so
 pensive,

and says he
 cannot help
 it.

Herry asks
 him to put
 [leaf 146 b]
 away all
 pensiveness
 for the time.

Leodegan
 promises
 to do so.

- Thanne Sette hym sire herry down to mete
 amonges his felawes, with-owten lete, 15364
 and the kyng to tho Barowns spak ful meryely.
 thanne gonnere Leodagans dowhter, trewely,
 of wyn Servyd hire fadir jn a cowpe of goold
 and kyng Artheur on knees ; pat lette sche nold. 15368
 kyng Artheur here beheld ryht wel,
 and of alle hyre fetures hym lykede Eche del.
 hym thowhte sche was the fairest lady
 of that Lond or of al breteygne, sekerly. 15372
 that mayden al dischevele sche wente,

Herry re-
 turns to his
 seat.

The king
 speaks
 merrily.
 Gonnere
 serves him
 with wine.
 In serving
 Arthur, she
 kneels.
 He admires
 her features.

Her dis-
 hevelled hair,

15351. 3it added in the left margin. 15368. MS. *kyng*.

15369. *here*, the first *e* corrected from *y*.

her figure,	with strawht Sydes, & myddel ful gente. On hire hed a chapelet of gold was set Ful of precyous stones, with-owten let.	15376
her complexion.	hyre vysage was bothe Bryht and schene, entermellyd whyt and with red betwene Ful naturely, as hit Scholde be, neper more ne lasse be qwantyte ;	15380
her arms	hire scholderis wel large, hyre armes ful gent, bothe longe and smale, verament ; with a merveillous faire Schapen Body	
and legs.	and <i>perto</i> Fayre schapen loynes, Sekerly ;	15384
her feet	with smale feet wel schapen & gent : Fairere cowde non man devysen, verament ;	
and hands,	hire handis white, fyngres longe and smale :	
are delightful.	of hire bewte joye hit is to tellen ony tale.	15388
And yet her virtues are still greater than her beauty.	3if that this mayde hadde al this Bewte, 3it hadde sche dubble fold moche more bownte, bothe prowessse, largenesse, & kurtesye, of gret wyt and valour, Sekerlye.	15392
Arthur,	Whanne kyng Artheur thus beheld this mayde, as tofore this tyme j haue 3ow sayde, he beheld hire pappes smale & gent, bothe harde & rownde, verament ;	15396
seeing her delicious breasts	as two smale apples Semed they there.	
and her flesh, white as snow	hire Flesch was whyt and wondirly clere ; there nas neuere snow, pat snaw on grownde, whittere thanne hire flesch that stownde ;	15400
and red as drops of blood,	and as bryht coloured forto se as drops of blod jn snow, certeinle. So that kyng Artheur, verament.	
covets her with all his desire.	that mayden coveytede <i>with</i> al his entent, and anon for love he tornede his chere ; but that parceyved not the two kynges there.	15404
She offers him the wine, and says: "Drink, Sir Bachelor!	This lady hym profered the wyn ryht thanne : "drynketh, Sire Bacheler, and as a worthi manne!	15408

15377. *hyre*, *y* corrected from *c*.15381. *hyr'*, *h* corrected from *a*.15388. *is* added above the line.—*Ony*, *o* corrected from *a*.15394. MS. *tyme this tyme*, the former *tyme* crossed out.

Sire, blameth me not of my Servyse,
 For 3owre name knowe j not jn non wyse,
 but o^per name of 3ow knowe j non,
 and 3if that j dede, j wolde rehersen son.

15412

Excuse me for
 not saying
 your name : I
 know it not.

nomore abasched be 3e of 3oure mete
 thanne 3e ben 3oure armure to lete,
 whiche was wel sene 3isterday
 vppon the .v. hundred jn þe valay,

15416

Now be as
 brave at your
 meat as be-
 fore in the
 fight."

From whom 3e reskewede my fadyr dere.
 Sire, drynketh, j preye 3ow, & maketh good chere !"

he hym tornede anon gentyلمانly wyse,
 and seide : "damysele, graunt mercy of 3oure Servyse,
 and graunt me grace, Er that J dye,

15421

Arthur re-
 plies : " Many
 thanks ! May
 I be able to
 requite you."

3oure gwerdoun to qwyten, as 3e ben worthye."
 "sire, 3e han me qwyte a thousand fold more
 thanne j can rehersen 3ow before.

15424

Gommore says :
 " You have
 done so, more
 than I can
 tell.
 [leaf 146 c]

For What mown 3e more Don For me
 thanne my fadir to reskewen from his Enyme ?
 what thorwgh 3ow & 3oure compenye
 From preson 3e deliuered hym, trewelye,

15428

You have
 saved my
 father from
 prison,
 and rescued
 him when he
 was felled,

and 3it more, sire Bacheler, dyden 3e
 my fadyr, that whanne feld was he
 afor the 3ates of this towne,
 Sone hym recovered with Renowne.

15432

For 3e slowhen hym that him so bet,
 that he lay ded there at his fet,
 and putten 3oure-seluen jn aventure
 of 3oure lyf, J 3ow ensure.

15436

staking your
 own life,

For so Sore 3e wrowhten jn that bataylle,
 that alle they flodden, with-owten faylle."

and putting
 all to flight."

Jn this maner spak this maydyn 3yng
 To that 3onge bacheler, Artheur the kyng.

15440

but non word he ne spak ageyn,
 but took the cowpe & drank, certeyn,
 and sethen that damysele to sitten comaunded he,
 that so longe to-forh hym kneled on hire kne ;
 but that hire Fadyr ne wolde not so,

15444

Arthur
 silently takes
 the cup and
 drinks.

He asks the
 kneeling
 damsel to sit ;
 but her father
 does not
 allow it.

15412. *that*, the second *t* blotted.

15425. *mown* added above the line.

- For with alle reuerence that he myhte do,
 he wolde that Bacheler Servyd had be ;
 For his name knew he not, certeinle. 15448
- At the end of the meal, And whanne that the clothes J-drawen were,
 and ek that they hadde waschen there,
 Ban asks king Leodegan thazne anon be-spak kyng Ban
 To that kyng there, Leodagan. 15452
 thazne kyng Ban be-gan to spelle,
 and to kyng leodagan he gan to telle :
- why he has not married his daughter “ Sire, j me merveille mochel now, trewelye,
 of on thyng that j se with myn eye, 15456
 and of 3ow, that ben so wys a man,
 that 3oure dowhter maryen 3e ne kan.
 For sche hath age, wit, and discressioun
 to a man of renown, who could help him to defend his land, to ben weddid to ony hygh man of renown, 15460
 that 3oure lond myhte helpe to defende,
 Sethen god no mo children doth 3ow sende,
 and be his heir. 3oure Eyr to ben aftyr 3oure day,
 3oure lond to gouvernen and hauen for ay.” 15464
- Leodegan says he has been prevented by the war, “ Now certis,” seyde kyng Leodagan tho,
 “ xe hadde pe werre j-ben, hit hadde be do ;
 For hit ful sore hath greved me.
 kyng Ryown of Yrlond, Sykerle, 15468
 and of denmark also, the bolde,
 thys vij 3er werre with me hath he holde,
 and neuere j ne kan Bryngen hit to an ende.
 for sethen þat tyme non man hidir cam wende 15472
 to whom that j myhte my dowhter take
 me to defenden, myn Enemyes to wrake.
- which has lasted seven years ; but so me god helpe, ful wytterly :
 and ony worthy 3ong bacheler fynden myhte j, 15476
 that jn armes were goode and Sure,
 and that with travaylle he myhte endure
 and my werres forto meynteyngne,
- he should like his daughter to have him, Swych on j wolde my dowhter hadde, certeyngne, 15480
 and al my Lond aftyr my deces,
 that j myhte lyven jn reste & pes ;
 al thowh he were of non hygh lynage,
- even if he were not of high birth.

15453. *leo* crossed out before *Ban*.15454. *telle*, the first *e* corrected from an uncompleted *h*.

of hygnesse of Lordschepe, ne of gret parage. 15484
 and wolde god hit were now fullyche j-wrowht,
 as that j now thynke jn my thowht,
 Er that thre dayes fully don wende,
 that mater wolde j bryngen to an ende, 15488
 To ryht a fair 3ong Bachelor ;
 bope the beste and þe worthiest this is owher.
 For j knowe ful wel, certeynly,
 that he is a mochel more heyghere man than j." 15492
 Anon toward kyng Bors loked merlyn than,
 and to hym a signe sone make he be-gan
 that for kyng Artheur spak he tho ;
 And certeynly so gan he do. 15496

Could he have
his wish,

the matter
would be
quickly
settled
with the best
of bachelors.

Merlin gives
Boors a sign
that
Leodegan is
alluding to
Arthur

Thanne gonnen they to speken of othyr thyng.
 where-offen Sory was Leodegan the kyng,
 that he ne spak no more of that matere ;
 neþer of whens they weren, cowde he not lere. 15500
 And euere he beheld with herte wel saddle
 what joye þe sowdeours of Artheur made,
 whiche that maden hym to smerte
 and forto ben ryht hevy jn herte. 15504
 For so worthy men these xliþ Sowdiours were,
 but abouen hem alle Artheur hadde most chere.
 wherfore the kynges dowhter dame gonnore
 Fulsore hire loue on hym caste thore, 15508
 and desired jn herte ful pryvyle,
 to hym j-weddid that sche myhte be
 abouen alle tho that Ewere sche say ;
 thus this storye reherseth jn fay. 15512

[leaf 146 d]

Then they
begin to talk
of other
things, much
to the regret
of the king

Gonnore is
greatly in
love with
Arthur.

Furthermore telleth 3it this storye
 that the fairest & wysest sche was, vtterlye,
 of alle the ladyes of Bloye bretayngne
 and best beloved, Jn certeygne, 15516
 the fairest, the bryttest of al that lond
 Sauf Elayne Saunþ pere, j vndirstonde,
 whiche was Percy's wif of þe Rous,
 and sche þe dowhtyr of kyng Pellous, 15520

In beauty,
wisdom, and
popularity,

she is sur-
passed only
by Elaine.

daughter of
king Pellous.

and aftyr was sche wyf to kyng Alayn,
 that hurt was *with* þe veniable spere, certayn.
 or Pellenors, Ek this Pellenors, that pellous callen we,
 with the maimed thighs, thorwgh bothe thyes j-maymed was he, 15524
 as the seint Graal schal maken mynde,
 lyk as here-aftyr jn this storie scholen 3e fynde.

This mayden, of whiche 3e vndirstond,
 was the fairest thorwh-owt ony Lond. 15528
 Now sesen we now of this matere,
 whereof more in the story of the Holy Graal.
 and til Eftsones non more to speke þerof here,
 tyl that thaventuris of seint Graal
 holy discuren hit Somme an al. 15532
 and spoken we forth of this meyne oure fille,
 that jn kyng leodagannes court abyden style.

ryaly at here Soper weren they dyht,
 as hit belougede to men of myht. 15536
 After supper, Merlin takes the three kings aside,
 And whanne that the tables j-drawen were,
 the thre kynges on syde merlyn took there,
 and openly he seide there to hem alle :
 "wilen 3e now heren what is jn breteyne befaller?"
 "3e certes," quod kyng Artheur tho, 15541
 "that wolde j weten, er that J go."

and tells them what has happened in Britain : the invasion of the heathen,
 "wile 3e weten," quod merlyn, "with-owten faylle,
 aforn Londone hath ben ful gret Bataylle 15544
 azens the hethene, that there j-entrid Js
 and þat lond dispoillid han & robbed, J-wys.
 their great transport of prey,
 So that with the pray that they hadden take,
 Towardis douer here weye gonne they make 15548
 jnto the ost to leden that cariage
 with ten thousand men of gret parage.
 thanne so hit behapped jn that tyde,

the arrival of Arthur's five nephews,
 that fyve of thy nevews comen pere Ryde, 15552
 that from here moderis departyd were
 and vnkneweng of ony of here fadris dere.
 thanne how these forreyeris that they mette,
 j schal 3ow tellen, with-owten ony lette. 15556

15529. *here* crossed out after *we*.

☞ The Society intends to complete, as soon as its funds will allow, the Reprints of its out-of-print Texts of the year 1866, and also of nos. 20, 26, and 33. Dr. Otto Glauning has undertaken *Seinte Marherete*; and *Hali Meidenhad* is in type. As the cost of these Reprints, if they were not needed, would have been devoted to fresh Texts, the Reprints will be sent to all Members in lieu of such Texts. Though called 'Reprints,' these books are new editions, generally with valuable additions, a fact not noticed by a few careless receivers of them, who have complained that they already had the volumes.

A gratifying gift is to be made to the Society. The American owner of the unique MS. of the Works of John Metham—whose Romance of Amoryus and Cleopas was sketched by Dr. Furnivall in his new edition of *Political, Religious and Love Poems*, No. 15 in the Society's Original Series—has promised to give the Society an edition of his MS. prepared by Dr. Hardin Craig of Princeton, and it will be issued next year as No. 132 of the Original Series. The giver hopes that his example may be followed by other folk, as the support hitherto given to the Society is so far below that which it deserves.

The Original Series Texts for 1910 were No. 139, *John Arderne's Treatises on Fistula in Ano*, &c., edited by D'Arcy Power, M.D., Englished about 1425 from the Latin of about 1380 A.D.; No. 140, *Capgrave's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham*, A.D. 1451, edited by John Munro.

The Original Series Texts for 1911 were, No. 141, *Earth upon Earth*, all the known texts, edited by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A.; No. 142, *The English Register of Godstow Nunnery*, Part III, containing Forewords, Grammar Notes and Indexes, edited by Dr. Andrew Clark; and No. 143, *The Wars of Alexander*, edited from the Thornton MS. by J. S. Westlake, M.A. (still at press).

The Original Series Texts for 1912 were, No. 144, *The English Register of Oseney Abbey, by Oxford*, Part II, containing Forewords, Grammar, Notes and Indexes, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark, and No. 145, *The Northern Passion*, Part I, containing the four parallel texts of the poem, with variants from other manuscripts, edited by Miss Frances A. Foster.

Mr. John Munro has at press a revised and enlarged edition of Original Series, No. 26, the shorter pieces from the Thornton Manuscript, originally edited by the Rev. G. G. Perry, and this will be sent out to all subscribers to the Original Series for 1913. A revised edition of Dr. MacCracken's *Minor Poems of Lydgate*, Part I, will be issued to subscribers of 1910.

The Texts for future years will be chosen from Part III of *The Brut*; Part III of the *Alphabet of Tales*, edited by Mrs. M. M. Banks; Part II of Mr. A. O. Belfour's *Twelfth Century Homilies*; and Part IV of Miss Dormer Harris's *Coventry Leet Book*. Later Texts will be Part III of Robert of Brunne's *Handlyng Syme*, with a Glossary of Wm. of Wadlington's French words in his *Manuel des Pechiez*, and comments on them, by Mr. Dickson Brown; Part II of the *Exeter Book*—Anglo-Saxon Poems from the unique MS. in Exeter Cathedral—re-edited by Professor Gollancz; Part II of Prof. Dr. Holthausen's *Vices and Virtues*; Part II of *Jacob's Well*, edited by Dr. Brandeis; the Alliterative *Siege of Jerusalem*, edited by the late Prof. Dr. E. Kölbing and Prof. Dr. Kaluza; an Introduction and Glossary to the *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.* by H. Hartley, M.A.; Alain Chartier's *Quadrilogue*, edited from the unique MS. Univ. Coll. Oxford No. 85, by Prof. J. W. H. Atkins; and the *Early Verse and Prose* in the Harleian MS. 2253, re-edited by Miss Hilda Murray. Canon Wordsworth of Marlborough having given the Society a copy of the *Leofric Canonical Rule*, Latin and Anglo-Saxon, Parker MS. 191, C. C. C. Cambridge, Prof. Napier will edit it, with a fragment of the English *Capitula* of Bp. Theodulf: it is now at press.

The Extra Series Texts for 1910 were No. CVI, *Lydgate's Troy Book*, Part III, containing Books IV and V, completing the text, edited by Hy. Bergen, Ph.D.; and No. CVII, *Lydgate's Minor Poems*, Part I, *Religious Poems*, with the Lydgate Canon, edited by H. N. MacCracken, Ph.D.

The Extra Series Texts for 1911 were, No. CVIII, *Lydgate's Siege of Thebes*, Part I, the text, edited from the MSS. by Dr. A. Erdmann; and No. CIX, *Partonope*, Part I, edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Böttker.

The Extra Series Texts for 1912 were, No. CX, *Caxton's Mirrour of the World*, edited with reproductions of all the woodcuts, by Dr. O. H. Prior, M.A., and No. CXI, *Caxton's History of Jason*, Part I, the text, edited by Mr. John Munro (both at press).

Future Extra Series Texts will be Lydgate's *Minor Poems*, Part II, *Secular Poems*, ed. by Dr. H. N. MacCracken; *Lydgate's Troy Book*, Part IV, edited by Dr. Hy. Bergen; *De Medicina*, re-edited by Prof. Delcourt; *Lovelich's Romance of Merlin*, re-edited by Prof. E. A. Kock, Part II; Miss Eleanor Plumer's re-edition of *Sir Gower and Sir Percyvalle*; Miss K. B. Locock's re-edition of Hylton's *Ladder of Perfection*; Miss Warren's two-text

edition of *The Dance of Death* from the Ellesmere and other MS.; *The Owl and Nightingale*, two parallel Texts, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes; Dr. Erbe's re-edition of *Mirk's Festial*, Part II; Dr. M. Kourath's re-edition of *William of Shoreham's Poems*, Part II; Professor Gollancz's re-edition of two Alliterative Poems, *Winner and Waster*, &c.; about 1360; Dr. Norman Moore's re-edition of *The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London*, from the unique MS. about 1425, which gives an account of the Founder, Rahere, and the miraculous cures wrought at the Hospital; *The Craft of Nombrunge*, with other of the earliest english Treatises on Arithmetic, edited by R. Steele, B.A.; and the Second Part of the prose Romance of *Melusine*—Introduction, with ten facsimiles of the best woodblocks of the old foreign black-letter editions, Glossary, &c., by A. K. Donald, B.A.

Later Texts for the Extra Series will include *The Three Kings' Sons*, Part II, the Introduction, &c., by Prof. Dr. Leon Kellner; Part II of *The Chester Plays*, re-edited from the MSS., with a full collation of the formerly missing Devonshire MS., by Mr. G. England and Dr. Matthews; Prof. Jespersen's editions of John Hart's *Orthographie* (MS. 1551 A.D.; black-letter 1569), and *Method to teach Reading*, 1570; Deguillville's *Pilgrimage of the Sowle*, in English prose, edited by Mr. Hans Koestner. (For the three prose versions of *The Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*—two English, one French—an Editor is wanted.) Members are asked to realise the fact that the Society has now 50 years' work on its Lists,—at its present rate of production,—and that there is from 100 to 200 more years' work to come after that. The year 2000 will not see finished all the Texts that the Society ought to print. The need of more Members and money is pressing. Offers of help from willing Editors have continually to be declined because the Society has no funds to print their Texts.

Before his death in 1895, Mr. G. N. Currie was preparing an edition of the 15th and 16th century Prose Versions of Guillaume de Deguillville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, with the French prose version by Jean Gallopes, from Lord Aldenham's MS., he having generously promised to pay the extra cost of printing the French text, and engraving one or two of the illuminations in his MS. But Mr. Currie, when on his deathbed, charged a friend to burn all his MSS. which lay in a corner of his room, and unluckily all the E. E. T. S.'s copies of the Deguillville prose versions were with them, and were burnt with them, so that the Society will be put to the cost of fresh copies.

Guillaume de Deguillville, monk of the Cistercian abbey of Chaalis, in the diocese of Senlis, wrote his first verse *Pèlerinage de l'Homme* in 1330-1 when he was 36.¹ Twenty-five (or six) years after, in 1355, he revised his poem, and issued a second version of it,² a revision of which was printed ab. 1500. Of the prose representative of the first version, 1330-1, a prose Englishing, about 1430 A.D., was edited by Mr. Aldis Wright for the Roxburghe Club in 1869, from MS. Ff. 5. 30 in the Cambridge University Library. Other copies of this prose English are in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, Q. 2. 25; Sion College, London; and the Laud Collection in the Bodleian, no. 740.³ A copy in the Northern dialect is MS. G. 21, in St. John's Coll., Cambridge, and this is the MS. which will be edited for the E. E. Text Society. The Laud MS. 740 was somewhat condensed and modernised, in the 17th century, into MS. Ff. 6. 30, in the Cambridge University Library:⁴ "The Pilgrime or the Pilgrimage of Man in this World," copied by Will. Baspoole, whose copy "was verbatim written by Walter Parker, 1645, and from thence transcribed by G. G. 1649; and from thence by W. A. 1655." This last copy may have been read by, or its story reported to, Bunyan, and may have been the groundwork of his *Pilgrim's Progress*. It will be edited for the E. E. T. Soc., its text running under the earlier English, as in Mr. Herrtage's edition of the *Gesta Romanorum* for the Society. In February 1464,⁵ Jean Gallopes—a clerk of Angers, afterwards chaplain to John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France—turned Deguillville's first verse *Pèlerinage* into a prose *Pèlerinage de la vie humaine*.⁶ By the kindness of Lord Aldenham, as above mentioned, Gallopes's French text will be printed opposite the early prose northern Englishing in the Society's edition.

The Second Version of Deguillville's *Pèlerinage de l'Homme*, A.D. 1355 or -6, was englished in verse by Lydgate in 1426, and, thanks to the diligence of the old Elizabethan tailor and manuscript-lover, John Stowe, a complete text of Lydgate's poem has been edited for the Society by Dr. Furnivall. The British Museum French MSS. (Harleian 4399,⁷ and Additional 22,937⁸ and 25,594⁹) are all of the First Version.

¹ He was born about 1295. See Abbé GOUJER's *Bibliothèque française*, Vol. IX, p. 73-4.—P. M. The Roxburghe Club printed the 1st version in 1893.

² The Roxburghe Club's copy of this 2nd version was lent to Mr. Currie, and unluckily burnt too with his other MSS.

³ These 3 MSS. have not yet been collated, but are believed to be all of the same version.

⁴ Another MS. is in the Pepys Library

⁵ According to Lord Aldenham's MS.

⁶ These were printed in France, late in the 15th or early in the 16th century.

⁷ 15th cent., containing only the *Vie humaine*.

⁸ 15th cent., containing all the 3 Pilgrimages, the 3rd being Jesus Christ's.

⁹ 14th cent., containing the *Vie humaine* and the 2nd Pilgrimage, de l'Âme: both incomplete.

Besides his first *Pèlerinage de l'homme* in its two versions, Deguilleville wrote a second, "de l'ame separee du corps," and a third, "de nostre seigneur Iesus." Of the second, a prose Englishing of 1413, *The Pilgrimage of the Soule* (with poems, by Hoccleve, already printed for the Society with that author's *Regement of Princes*), exists in the Egerton MS. 615,¹ at Hatfield, Cambridge (Univ. Kk. 1. 7, and Caius), Oxford (Univ. Coll. and Corpus), and in Caxton's edition of 1483. This version has 'somewhat of additions' as Caxton says, and some shortenings too, as the maker of both, the first translator, tells us in the MSS. Caxton leaves out the earlier englisier's interesting Epilogue in the Egerton MS. This prose englishing of the *Soule* has been copied and will be edited for the Society by Mr. Hans Koestner. Of the *Pilgrimage of Jesus*, no englishing is known.

Members are reminded that *fresh Subscribers are always wanted*, and that the Committee can at any time, on short notice, send to press an additional Thousand Pounds' worth of work.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints*, sooner or later. The Standard Collection of Saints' Lives in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS., the Harleian MS. 2277, &c. will repeat the Laud set, our No. 87, with additions, and in right order. (The foundation MS. (Laud 108) had to be printed first, to prevent quite unwieldy collations.) The Supplementary Lives from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes.

Besides the Saints' Lives, Trevisa's englishing of *Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the mediæval Cyclopædia of Science, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking. Prof. Napier of Oxford, wishing to have the whole of our MS. Anglo-Saxon in type, and accessible to students, will edit for the Society all the unprinted and other Anglo-Saxon Homilies which are not included in Thorpe's edition of Ælfric's prose,² Dr. Morris's of the Blickling Homilies, and Prof. Skeat's of Ælfric's Metrical Homilies. The late Prof. Kölbing left complete his text, for the Society, of the *Ancoren Riwele*, from the best MS., with collations of the other four, and this will be edited for the Society by Dr. Thümmeler. Mr. Harvey means to prepare an edition of the three MSS. of the *Earliest English Metrical Psalter*, one of which was edited by the late Mr. Stevenson for the Surtees Society.

Members of the Society will learn with pleasure that its example has been followed, not only by the Old French Text Society, which has done such admirable work under its founders Profs. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, but also by the Early Russian Text Society, which was set on foot in 1877, and has since issued many excellent editions of old MS. Chronicles, &c.

Members will also note with pleasure the annexation of large tracts of our Early English territory by the important German contingent, the late Professors Zupitza and Kölbing, the living Haunskecht, Einkenel, Haenisch, Kaluza, Hupe, Adam, Holthausen, Schick, Herzfeld, Brandeis, Sieper, Konrath, Wülfing, &c. Scandinavia has also sent us Prof. Erdmann and Dr. E. A. Kock; Holland, Prof. H. Logeman, who is now working in Belgium; France, Prof. Paul Meyer—with Gaston Paris as adviser (alas, now dead);—Italy, Prof. Lattanzi; Austria, Dr. von Fleischhacker; while America is represented by the late Prof. Child, by Dr. Mary Noyes Colvin, Miss Rickert, Profs. Mead, McKnight, Triggs, Hulme, Bryce, Craig, Drs. Bergen, MacCracken, &c. The sympathy, the ready help, which the Society's work has cald forth from the Continent and the United States, have been among the pleasantest experiences of the Society's life, a real aid and cheer amid all troubles and discouragements. All our Members are grateful for it, and recognise that the bond their work has woven between them and the lovers of language and antiquity across the seas is one of the most welcome results of the Society's efforts.

ORIGINAL SERIES. (One guinea each year.)

- | | | |
|--|---------|------|
| 1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 16s. | 1864 |
| 2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. | 4s. | " |
| 3. Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. | 4s. | " |
| 4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 10s. | " |
| 5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. | 4s. | 1865 |
| 6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. | 8s. | " |
| 7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 8s. | " |
| 8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock. | 7s. | " |
| 9. Thynne on Spegh't's ed. of Chaucer, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall. | 10s. | " |
| 10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley. | 2s. 6d. | " |
| 11. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A. | 3s. | " |

¹ Ab. 1430, 106 leaves (leaf 1 of text wanting), with illuminations of nice little devils—red, green, tawny, &c.—and damnd souls, fires, angels, &c.

² Of these, Mr. Harsley is preparing a new edition, with collations of all the MSS. Many copies of Thorpe's book, not issued by the Ælfric Society, are still in stock.

Of the Vercelli Homilies, the Society has bought the copy made by Prof. G. Lattanzi.

12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1s. 1865
13. Seinte Marherete 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne; re-edited by Dr. Otto Glanving. [Out of print. 1866
14. Kyng Horn, Floris and Blanchefleur, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby, D.D., re-ed. Dr. G. H. McKnight. 5s. "
15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. 6d. "
16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s. "
17. Parallel Extracts from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 1s. "
18. Hali Meidenhad, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne, re-edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. [At Press. "
19. Lyndesay's Monache, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3s. 6d. "
20. Richard Rolle de Hampole, English Prose Treatises of, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 1s. [At Press. "
21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s. "
22. Partenay or Lusignen, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
23. Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Inwyrt, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. 6d. "
24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s. 1867
25. The Stacions of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Cleene Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s. "
26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Thornton's MS., ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 2s. [At Press. "
27. Levins's Manipulus Vocabulorum, a ryming Dictionary, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 12s. "
28. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, 1362 A.D.; Text A, Part I., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
29. Old English Homilies (ab. 1220-30 A.D.). Series I, Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 7s. "
30. Pierce the Ploughmans Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 2s. "
31. Myre's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4s. 1868
32. Early English Meals and Manners: the Boke of Nourture of John Russell, the Bokes of Keruyng. Curtesye, and Demeanor, the Babees Book, Urbanitatis, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall. 12s. "
33. The Knight de la Tour Landry, ab. 1440 A.D. A Book for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A. [Reprinting. "
34. Old English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.). Series I, Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. "
35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall. 2s. "
36. Merlin, Part III. Ed. H. B. Wheatley. On Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie. 12s. 1869
37. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part IV., Ane Satyre of the Three Estais. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s. "
38. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, Part II. Text B. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. 6d. "
39. Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy. Ed. D. Donaldson & G. A. Panton. Pt. I. 10s. 6d. "
40. English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D. Edit. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by Dr. L. Brentano. 21s. 1870
41. William Lauder's Minor Poems. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s. "
42. Bernardus De Cura Rei Familiaris, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 2s. "
43. Ratis Raving, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 3s. "
44. The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathe, or The Holy Grail: from the Vernon MS.; with W. de Worde's and Pynson's Lives of Joseph: ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 5s. 1871
45. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, by Henry Sweet, Esq., B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. 10s. "
46. Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
47. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 3s. "
48. The Times' Whistle, and other Poems, by R. C., 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "
49. An Old English Miscellany, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, and Religious Poems of the 13th cent., ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 10s. 1872
50. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. Part II. 10s. "
51. The Life of St Juliana, 2 versions, A.D. 1230, with translations; ed. T. O. Cockayne & E. Brock. 2s. "
52. Palladius on Husbandrie, englisht (ab. 1420 A.D.), ed. Rev. Barton Lodge, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
53. Old-English Homilies, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. 1873
54. The Vision of Piers Plowman, Text C: Richard the Redeles (by William, the author of the Vision) and The Crowned King; Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
55. Generydes, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D., ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I. 3s. "
56. The Gest Hystoriale of the Destruction of Troy, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10s. 6d. 1874
57. The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"; in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. Morris, M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d. "
58. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. Part I. 8s. "
59. The "Cursor Mundi" in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 15s. 1875
60. Meditacyuns on the Soper of our Lorde (by Robert of Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper. 2s. 6d. "
61. The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Ercelesdoun, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 10s. 6d. "
62. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 15s. 1876
63. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 7s. "
64. Francis Thynne's Embleames and Epigrams, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. "
65. Be Domes Dæge (Rede's De Die Judicii), &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, B.D. 2s. "
66. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV., with 2 autotypes. 10s. 1877
67. Notes on Piers Plowman, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 21s. "
68. The "Cursor Mundi," in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part V. 25s. 1878
69. Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II., &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s. "
70. Generydes, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4s. "
71. The Lay Folks Mass-Book, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmonds. 25s. 1879

72.	Palladius on Husbandrie, english (ab. 1420 A.D.). Part II. Ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A.	15s.	1879
73.	The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III.	10s.	1880
74.	English Works of Wyclif, hitherto unprinted, ed. F. D. Matthew, Esq.	20s.	"
75.	Catholicon Anglieum, an early English Dictionary, from Lord Monson's MS. A.D. 1483, ed., with Introduction & Notes, by S. J. Hertridge, B.A.; and with a Preface by H. B. Wheatley.	20s.	1881
76.	Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, in MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A.	Part I. 10s.	"
77.	Beowulf, the unique MS. autotyped and transliterated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.	25s.	1882
78.	The Fifty Earliest English Wills, in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439, ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A.	7s.	"
79.	King Alfred's Orosius, from Lord Tollemache's 9th century MS., Part I, ed. H. Sweet, M.A.	13s.	1883
79 b.	Extra Volume. Facsimile of the Epinal Glossary, ed. H. Sweet, M.A.	15s.	"
80.	The Early-English Life of St. Katherine and its Latin Original, ed. Dr. Eickenel.	12s.	1884
81.	Piers Plowman: Notes, Glossary, &c. Part IV, completing the work, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A.	18s.	"
82.	Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D.	Part II. 12s.	1885
83.	The Oldest English Texts, Charters, &c., ed. H. Sweet, M.A.	20s.	"
84.	Additional Analogs to 'The Wright's Chaste Wife,' No. 12, by W. A. Clouston.	1s.	1886
85.	The Three Kings of Cologne. 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann.	17s.	"
86.	Prose Lives of Women Saints, ab. 1610 A.D., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann.	12s.	"
87.	Early English Verse Lives of Saints (earliest version), Laud MS. 108, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann.	20s.	1887
88.	Hy. Bradshaw's Life of St. Werburgh (Pynson, 1521), ed. Dr. C. Horstmann.	10s.	"
89.	Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen.	Part I. 8s.	1888
90.	Anglo-Saxon and Latin Rule of St. Benet, interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Logeman.	12s.	"
91.	Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books, ab. 1430-1450, edited by Mr. T. Austin.	10s.	"
92.	Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter, from the Trin. Camb. MS., ab. 1150 A.D., ed. F. Harsley, B.A.	Pt. 1. 12s.	1889
93.	Defensor's Liber Scintillarum, edited from the MSS. by Ernest Rhodes, B.A.	12s.	"
94.	Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part III., ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D.	15s.	1890
95.	The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller.	Part I, § 1. 18s.	"
96.	The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller.	Pt. I, § 2. 15s.	1891
97.	The Earliest English Prose Psalter, edited from its 2 MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.	Part I. 15s.	"
98.	Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., Part I., ed. Dr. C. Horstmann.	20s.	1892
99.	Cursor Mundi. Part VI. Preface, Notes, and Glossary, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	10s.	"
100.	Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall.	20s.	1893
101.	Cursor Mundi. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe.	10s.	"
102.	Lanfranc's Chirurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.	Part I. 20s.	1894
103.	The Legend of the Cross, from a 12th century MS., &c., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.	7s. 6d.	"
104.	The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS. by I. Gollancz, M.A.	Part I. 20s.	1895
105.	The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book, Camb. Univ. MS., ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales.	Part I. 10s.	"
106.	R. Misy's Fire of Love and Mending of Life (Hampole), 1434, 1435, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A.	15s.	1896
107.	The English Conquest of Ireland, A.D. 1166-1185, 2 Texts, 1425, 1440, Pt. I, ed. Dr. Furnivall.	15s.	"
108.	Child-Marriages and -Divorces, Trothplights, &c. Chester Depositions, 1561-6, ed. Dr. Furnivall.	15s.	1897
109.	The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book, ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales.	Part II. 10s.	"
110.	The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller.	Part II, § 1. 15s.	1898
111.	The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller.	Part II, § 2. 15s.	"
112.	Merlin, Part IV: Outlines of the Legend of Merlin, by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.	15s.	1899
113.	Queen Elizabeth's Englishings of Boethius, Plutarch &c. &c., ed. Miss C. Penberton.	15s.	"
114.	Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, Part IV and last, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D.	10s.	1900
115.	Jacob's Well, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandeis.	Part I. 10s.	"
116.	An Old-English Martyrology. re-edited by Dr. G. Herzfeld.	10s.	"
117.	Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.	Part II. 15s.	1901
118.	The Lay Folks' Catechism, ed. by Canon Simmons and Rev. H. E. Nolloth, M.A.	5s.	"
119.	Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall.	Pt. I. 10s.	"
120.	The Rule of St. Benet, in Northern Prose and Verse, & Caxton's Summary, ed. Dr. E. A. Kock.	15s.	1902
121.	The Laud MS. Troy-Book, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing.	Part I. 15s.	"
122.	The Laud MS. Troy-Book, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing.	Part II. 20s.	1903
123.	Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall.	Pt. II. 10s.	"
124.	Twenty-six Political and other Poems from Digby MS. 102 &c., ed. by Dr. J. Kail.	Part I. 10s.	1904
125.	Medieval Records of a London City Church, ed. Henry Littlehales.	Part I. 10s.	"
126.	An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks.	Part I. 10s.	"
127.	An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks.	Part II. 10s.	1905
128.	Medieval Records of a London City Church, ed. Henry Littlehales.	Part II. 10s.	"
129.	The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark.	Pt. I. 10s.	"
130.	The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark.	Pt. II. 15s.	1906
131.	The Brut, or The Chronicle of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie.	Part I. 10s.	"
132.	John Metham's Works, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Hardin Craig. [At Press.]		"
133.	The English Register of Oseney Abbey, by Oxford, ed. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark.	Part I. 15s.	1907
134.	The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dornier Harris.	Part I. 15s.	"
135.	The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dornier Harris.	Part II. 15s.	1908
135 b.	Extra Issue. Prof. Manly's Piers Plowman & its Sequence, urging the livefold authorship of the Vision.		"
136.	The Brut, or The Chronicle of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie.	Part II. 15s.	"

137. Twelfth-Century Homilies in MS. Bodley 343, ed. by Prof. A. O. Belfour, M.A. Part I, the Text. 15s. 1909
 138. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part III. 15s. 1910
 139. John Arderne's Treatises on Fistula in Ano, &c., ed. by D'Arcy Power, M.D. 15s. 1910
 139 *b, c, d, e, Extra Issue.* The Piers Plowman Controversy: *b.* Dr. Jusserand's 1st Reply to Prof. Manly; *c.* Prof. Manly's Answer to Dr. Jusserand; *d.* Dr. Jusserand's 2nd Reply to Prof. Manly; *e.* Mr. R. W. Chambers's Article; *f.* Dr. Henry Bradley's Rejoinder to Mr. R. W. Chambers (issued separately). 10s. "
 140. Capgrave's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham, A.D. 1451, ed. by J. J. Munro. 10s. "
 141. Earth upon Earth, all the known texts, ed., with an Introduction, by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A. 10s. 1911
 142. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part III. 10s. "
 143. The Wars of Alexander the Great, Thornton MS., ed. J. S. Westlake, M.A. [At Press.] 10s. "
 144. The English Register of Cseney Abbey, by Oxford, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part II. 10s. 1912
 145. The Northern Passion, ed. by Miss F. A. Foster. Part I, the four parallel texts. 15s. "
 146. The Coventry Leet Book, ed. Miss M. Dormer Harris. Introduction, Indexes, etc. Part IV. [At Press.] 1913
 147. The Northern Passion, ed. Miss F. A. Foster, Introduction, French Text, Variants and Fragments, Glossary. Part II. [At Press.] "

EXTRA SERIES. (One guinea each year.)

The Publications for 1867-1910 (one guinea each year) are:—

- I. William of Palerne; or, William and the Werwolf. Re-edited by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 13s. 1867
 II. Early English Pronunciation with especial Reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I. 10s. "
 III. Caxton's Book of Curtesye, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 5s. 1868
 IV. Havelok the Dane. Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. "
 V. Chaucer's Boethius. Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 12s. "
 VI. Chevelere Assigne. Re-edited from the unique MS. by Lord Aldenham, M.A. 3s. "
 VII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II. 10s. 1869
 VIII. Queene Elizabethes Achademy, &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald. 13s. "
 IX. Awdeley's Fraternitey of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat, &c. Ed. E. Viles & F. J. Furnivall. 5s. "
 X. Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyetary of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the Berde, 1542-3. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 18s. 1870
 XI. Barbour's Bruce, Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12s. "
 XII. England in Henry VIII.'s Time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole & Lupset, by Thom. Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II. 12s. (Part I. is No. XXXII, 1878, 8s.) 1871
 XIII. A Supplicacyon of the Beggars, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with A Supplication to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde; A Supplication of the Poore Commons; and The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "
 XIV. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III. 10s. "
 XV. Robert Crowley's Thirty-One Epigrams, Voyce of the Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth, &c., A.D. 1550-1, edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 12s. 1872
 XVI. Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 6s. "
 XVII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., with 4 Tracts (1542-48), ed. Dr. Murray. Part I. 10s. "
 XVIII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., ed. Dr. Murray. Part II. 8s. 1873
 XIX. Oure Ladyes Myroure, A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A. 24s. "
 XX. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail (ab. 1450 A.D.), ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part I. 8s. 1874
 XXI. Barbour's Bruce, Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 4s. "
 XXII. Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderick Mors (ab. 1542): and The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Citie of London, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper. 9s. "
 XXIII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV. 10s. "
 XXIV. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part II. 10s. 1875
 XXV. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 20s. "
 XXVI. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part II. 14s. 1876
 XXVII. Bp. Fisher's English Works (died 1535), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. Part I, the Text. 16s. "
 XXVIII. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part III. 10s. 1877
 XXIX. Barbour's Bruce. Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 21s. "
 XXX. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part IV. 15s. 1878
 XXXI. The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
 XXXII. Starkey's "England in Henry VIII's time." Pt. I. Starkey's Life and Letters, ed. S. J. Hertridge. 8s. "
 XXXIII. Gesta Romanorum (englisht ab. 1440), ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s. 1879
 XXXIV. The Charlemagne Romances:—1. Sir Ferumbras, from Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Hertridge. 12s. "
 XXXV. Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Sege off Melayne, Sir Otuell, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 12s. 1880
 XXXVI. Charlemagne Romances:—3. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. I., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 16s. "
 XXXVII. Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. II., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 15s. 1881
 XXXVIII. Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowdone of Babylone, ed. Dr. Hausknecht. 15s. "
 XXXIX. Charlemagne Romances:—6. Rauf Colyear, Roland, Otuel, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s. 1882
 XL. Charlemagne Romances:—7. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part I. 15s. "

XLI.	Charlemagne Romances:—8. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A.	Pt. II.	15s.	1883
XLII.	Guy of Warwick: 2 texts (Auchinleck MS. and Caius MSS.), ed. Prof. Zupitza.	Part I.	15s.	"
XLIII.	Charlemagne Romances:—9. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A.	Pt. III.	15s.	1884
XLIV.	Charlemagne Romances:—10. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss Octavia Richardson.	Pt. I.	15s.	"
XLV.	Charlemagne Romances:—11. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss O. Richardson.	Pt. II.	20s.	1885
XLVI.	Sir Bevis of Hamton, from the Auchinleck and other MSS., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D.	Part I.	10s.	"
XLVII.	The Wars of Alexander, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D.		20s.	1886
XLVIII.	Sir Bevis of Hamton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D.	Part II.	10s.	"
XLIX.	Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Pt. II., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.		15s.	1887
L.	Charlemagne Romances:—12. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A.	Part IV.	5s.	"
LI.	Torrent of Portyngale, from the unique MS. in the Chetham Library, ed. E. Adam, Ph.D.		10s.	"
LII.	Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1578 (ed. 1, 1564). Ed. M. & A. H. Bullen.		10s.	1888
LIII.	Vicary's Anatomie of the Body of Man, 1548, ed. 1577, ed. F. J. & Percy Furnivall.	Part I.	15s.	"
LIV.	Caxton's Englishing of Alain Chartier's Curial, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall & Prof. P. Meyer.		5s.	"
LV.	Barbour's Bruce, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D.	Part IV.	5s.	1889
LVI.	Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S.	Pt. V., the present English Dialects.	25s.	"
LVII.	Caxton's Eneydos, A.D. 1490, coll. with its French, ed. M. T. Culley, M.A. & Dr. F. J. Furnivall.		13s.	1890
LVIII.	Caxton's Blanchardyn & Eglantine, c. 1489, extracts from ed. 1595, & French, ed. Dr. L. Kellner.		17s.	"
LIX.	Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Part III., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.		15s.	1891
LX.	Lydgate's Temple of Glass, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schick.		15s.	"
LXI.	Hoccleve's Minor Poems, I., from the Philipps and Durham MSS., ed. F. J. Furnivall, Ph.D.		15s.	1892
LXII.	The Chester Plays, re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deimling.	Part I.	15s.	"
LXIII.	Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi, english ab. 1440, & 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram.		15s.	1893
LXIV.	Caxton's Godfrey of Boloyn, or Last Siege of Jerusalem, 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin.		15s.	"
LXV.	Sir Bevis of Hamton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D.	Part III.	15s.	1894
LXVI.	Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philisoffres. ab. 1445—50, ed. R. Steele, B.A.		15s.	"
LXVII.	The Three Kings' Sons, a Romance, ab. 1500, Part I., the Text, ed. Dr. Furnivall.		10s.	1895
LXVIII.	Melusine, the prose Romance, ab. 1500, Part I, the Text, ed. A. K. Donald.		20s.	"
LXIX.	Lydgate's Assembly of the Gods, ed. Prof. Oscar L. Triggs, M.A., Ph.D.		15s.	1896
LXX.	The Digby Plays, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.		15s.	"
LXXI.	The Towneley Plays, ed. Geo. England and A. W. Pollard, M.A.		15s.	1897
LXXII.	Hoccleve's Regement of Princes, 1411-12, and 14 Poems, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.		15s.	"
LXXIII.	Hoccleve's Minor Poems, II., from the Ashburnham MS., ed. I. Gollancz, M.A. [At Press.		"	"
LXXIV.	Secreta Secretorum, 3 prose Englishings, by Jas. Yonge, 1428, ed. R. Steele, B.A.	Part I.	20s.	1898
LXXV.	Speculum Gudeonis de Warwyk, edited by Miss G. L. Morrill, M.A., Ph.D.		10s.	"
LXXVI.	George Ashby's Poems, &c., ed. Miss Mary Bateson.		15s.	1899
LXXVII.	Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall.	Part I.	10s.	"
LXXVIII.	The Life and Death of Mary Magdalene, by T. Robinson, c. 1620, ed. Dr. H. O. Sommer.		5s.	"
LXXIX.	Caxton's Dialogues, English and French, c. 1483, ed. Henry Bradley, M.A.		10s.	1900
LXXX.	Lydgate's Two Nightingale Poems, ed. Dr. Otto Glauning.		5s.	"
LXXXI.	Gower's Confessio Amantis, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A.	Vol. I.	15s.	"
LXXXII.	Gower's Confessio Amantis, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A.	Vol. II.	15s.	1901
LXXXIII.	Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall.	Pt. II.	10s.	"
LXXXIV.	Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality, edited by Dr. E. Sieper.	Part I.	5s.	"
LXXXV.	Alexander Scott's Poems, 1568, from the unique Edinburgh MS., ed. A. K. Donald, B.A.		10s.	1902
LXXXVI.	William of Shoreham's Poems, re-ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. M. Konrath.	Part I.	10s.	"
LXXXVII.	Two Coventry Corpus-Christi Plays, re-edited by Hardin Craig, M.A.		10s.	"
LXXXVIII.	Le Morte Arthur, re-edited from the Harleian MS. 2252 by Prof. Bruce, Ph.D.		15s.	1903
LXXXIX.	Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality, edited by Dr. E. Sieper.	Part II.	15s.	"
XC.	English Fragments from Latin Medieval Service-Books, ed. by Hy. Littlehales.		5s.	"
XCI.	The Macro Plays, from Mr. Gurney's unique MS., ed. Dr. Furnivall and A. W. Pollard, M.A.		10s.	1904
XCI.	Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, Part III., ed. Miss Locock.		10s.	"
XCIH.	Lovelich's Romance of Merlin, from the unique MS., ed. Dr. E. A. Kock.	Part I.	10s.	"
XCIV.	Respublica, a Play on Social England, A.D. 1553, ed. L. A. Magnus, LL.B.		12s.	1905
XCIV.	Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, Pt. V.: The Legend of the Holy Grail, by Dorothy Kempe.		6s.	"
XCVI.	Mirli's Festival, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Erbe.	Part I.	12s.	"
XCVII.	Lydgate's Troy Book, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen.	Part I, Books I and II.	15s.	1906
XCVIII.	Skelton's Mynnyfyence, edited by Dr. R. L. Ramsay, with an Introduction.		7s. 6d.	"
XCIX.	The Romance of Emaré, re-edited from the MS. by Miss Edith Rickert, Ph.D.		7s. 6d.	"
C.	The Harrowing of Hell and The Gospel of Nicodemus, re-ed. by Prof. Hulme, M.A., Ph.D.		15s.	1907
CI.	Songs, Carols, &c., from Richard Hill's Balliol MS., edited by Dr. Roman Dyboski.		15s.	"
CII.	Promptorium Parvulorum, the 1st English-Latin Dictionary, ed. Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A.		21s.	1908
CIH.	Lydgate's Troy Book, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen.	Part II, Book III.	10s.	"
CIV.	The Non-Cycle Mystery Plays, re-edited by O. Waterhouse, M.A.		15s.	1909
CV.	The Tale of Beryn, with the Pardoner and Tapster, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall and W. G. Stonor.		15s.	"
CVI.	Lydgate's Troy Book, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen.	Part III.	15s.	1910
CVII.	Lydgate's Minor Poems, edited by Dr. H. N. MacCracken.	Part I, Religious Poems.	15s. [At Press.	"
CVIII.	Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann.	Pt. I, The Text.	15s.	1911
CIX.	Partonope, re-edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Bédier.	The Texts.	15s.	"
CX.	Caxton's Mirrour of the World, with all the woodcuts, ed. by O. H. Prior, M.A., Litt.D.		15s. [At Press.	1912
CXI.	Caxton's History of Jason, the Text, Part I, ed. by John Munro.		15s.	[At Press.

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY TEXTS PREPARING.

Besides the Texts named as at press on p. 12 of the Early English Text Society's last Announcements, the following Texts are also slowly preparing for the Society:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

- The Earliest English Prose Psalter, ed. Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part II.
 The Earliest English Verse Psalter, 3 texts, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A.
 Anglo-Saxon Poems, from the Vercelli MS., re-edited by Prof. I. Gollancz, M.A.
 Anglo-Saxon Glosses to Latin Prayers and Hymns, edited by Dr. F. Holthausen.
 All the Anglo-Saxon Homilies and Lives of Saints not accessible in English editions, including those of the Vercelli MS. &c., edited by Prof. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.
 The englisht Disciplina Clericalis, Worcester Cathedral MS. 172, ed. Prof. W. H. Hulme, Ph.D.
 The Statutes of Black Roger, Worcester Cathedral MS. 172, ed. Prof. W. H. Hulme, Ph.D.
 The Anglo-Saxon Psalms; all the MSS. in Parallel Texts, ed. Dr. H. Looman and F. Harsley, B.A.
 Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., edited by a Pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 Byrhtferth's Handboec, ed. by Prof. G. Hempl.
 Early English Confessionals, ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 The Seven Sages, in the Northern Dialect, from a Cotton MS., edited by Dr. Squires.
 The Master of the Game, a Book of Huntynge for Hen. V. when Prince of Wales, ed. G. A. Beacock, B.A.
 Ailred's Rule of Nuns, &c., edited from the Vernon MS., by the Rev. Canon H. R. Bramley, M.A.
 A Lapidary, from Lord Tollemache's MS., &c., edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morsbach.
 Gilbert Banastre's Poems, and other Boccaccio englishings, ed. by Prof. Dr. Max Förster.
 Lanfranc's Chirurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part II.
 William of Nassington's Mirror of Life, from Jn. of Waldby, edited by J. A. Herbert, M.A.
 Early Canterbury Wills, edited by William Cowper, B.A., and J. Meadows Cowper.
 Alliterative Prophecies, edited from the MSS. by Prof. Brandl, Ph.D.
 Miscellaneous Alliterative Poems, edited from the MSS. by Dr. L. Morsbach.
 Bird and Beast Poems, a collection from MSS., edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Scire Mori, &c., from the Lichfield MS. 16, ed. Mrs. L. Grindon, LL.A., and Mrs. R. Taylor.
 Nicholas Trivet's French Chronicle, from Sir A. Acland-Hood's unique MS., ed. by F. W. Clarke, M.A.
 Early English Homilies in Harl. 2276, &c., c. 1400, ed. J. Friedländer.
 Extracts from the Registers of Boughton, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
 The Diary of Prior Moore of Worcester, A.D. 1518-35, from the unique MS., ed. Henry Littlehales, Esq.
 The Pore Caitif, edited from its MSS., by Mr. Peake.
 Trevisa's englisht Vegetius on the Art of War, MS. 30 Magd. Coll. Oxf., ed. L. C. Wharton, M.A.
 Poems attributed to Richard Maydenstone, from MS. Rawl. A 389, edited by Dr. W. Heuser.
 Knighthood and Battle, a verse-Vegetius from a Pembroke Coll. MS., Cambr., ed. Dr. R. Dyboski.
 Othea and Hector, 3 texts—2 from MSS., 1 from Wyer's print, edited by Hy. N. MacCracken, Ph.D.
 Minor Poems of the Vernon MS. Part III. Introduction and Glossary by H. Hartley, M.A.
 Sir David Lyndesay's Works. Part VI. and last. Edited by the Rev. Wm. Bayne, M.A. [*At Press.*]
 Prayers and Devotions, from the unique MS. Cotton Titus C. 19, ed. Hy. Littlehales Esq. [*Copied.*]

EXTRA SERIES.

- Bp. Fisher's English Works, Pt. II., with his Life and Letters, ed. Rev. Ronald Bayne, B.A. [*At Press.*]
 Sir Tristrem, from the unique Auchinleck MS., edited by George F. Black.
 De Guilleville's Pilgrimage of the Sowle, edited by Mr. Hans Koestner.
 Vicary's Anatomie, 1548, from the unique MS. copy by George Jeans, edited by F. J. & Percy Fumivall.
 Vicary's Anatomie, 1548, ed. 1577, edited by F. J. & Percy Fumivall. Part II.
 A Compilacion of Surgerye, from H. de Mandeville and Lanfrank, A.D. 1392, ed. Dr. J. F. Payne.
 William Sauntton's St. Patrick's Purgatory, &c., ed. Mr. G. P. Krapp, U.S.A.
 Trevisa's Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum, re-edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 Bullen's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1564, 1573, 1578. Ed. A. H. and M. Bullen. Part II.
 The Romance of Boetius and Sidrac, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 The Romance of Clariodus, and Sir Amadas, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Sir Degrevant, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. Luick.
 Robert of Brunne's Chronicle of England, from the Inner Temple MS., ed. by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.
 Maundeville's Voiage and Travaile, re-edited from the Cotton MS. Titus C. 16, &c. [*Editor wanted.*]
 Avowynge of Arthur, re-edited from the unique Ireland MS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Guy of Warwick, Copland's version, edited by a pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 Awdelay's Poems, re-edited from the unique MS. Douce 302, by Prof. Dr. E. Wülfing.
 The Wyse Chylde and other early Treatises on Education, Northwich School, Harl. 2099, &c., ed. G. Collar, B.A.
 Caxton's Dictes and Sayengis of Philosophers, 1477, with Lord Tollemache's MS. version, ed. S. J. Butler, Esq.
 Lydgate's Lyfe of our Lady, ed. by Prof. Georg Fiedler, Ph.D.
 Lydgate's Life of St. Edmund, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Axel Erdmann.
 Richard Coer de Lion, re-edited from Harl. MS. 4690, by Prof. Hausknecht, Ph.D.
 The Romance of Athelstan, re-edited by a pupil of the late Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.

EXTRA SERIES (continued).

The Romance of Sir Degare, re-edited by Dr. Breul.
The Gospel of Nichodemus, edited by Ernest Riedel.
Mulcaster's Positions 1581, and Elementarie 1582, ed. Dr. Th. Klaehr, Darmstadt.
Walton's verse Boethius de Consolatione, edited by Dr. H. C. Schümmer.
Sir Landeval and Sir Launfal, edited by Dr. Zimmermann.
Rolland's Seven Sages, the Scottish version of 1560, edited by George Mackay.
Burgh's Cato, re-edited from all the MSS. by Prof. Dr. Max Förster.
Wynkyn de Worde's English and French Phrase-book, etc., edited by Hermann Oelsner, Ph.D.
Extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers, ed. Hy. Littlehales.
The Coventry Plays, re-edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Matthews.
Walter Hilton's Ladder of Perfection, re-edited from the MSS. by Miss K. L. Lock.

Among the MSS. and old books which need copying or re-edition, are:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

English Inventories and other MSS. in Canterbury Cathedral (5th Report, Hist. MSS. Com.).
Maumetrie, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
The Romance of Troy. Harl. 525, Addit. Br. Mus.
Biblical MS., Corpus Cambr. 434 (ab. 1375).
Hampele's unprinted Works.
De Clowde of Unknowyng, from Harl. MSS. 2373, 959.
Bibl. Reg. 17 C 26, &c. Univ. Coll. Oxf. 14.
A Lanterne of Ligt, from Harl. MS. 2324.
Soule-hele, from the Vernon MS.
Boethius de Consol.; Pilgrim, 1426, &c. &c.
Early Treatises on Music: Descant, the Gamme, &c.
Skelton's englisshing of Diodorus Siculus.
Boethius, in prose, MS. Auct. F. 3. 5, Bodley.
Penitential Psalms, by Rd. Maydenstoun, Brampton, &c. (Rawlinson, A. 389, Douce 232, &c.).
Documents from the early Registers of the Bishops of all Dioceses in Great Britain.
Ordinances and Documents of the City of Worcester.
T. Breus's Passion of Christ, 1422. Harl. 2338.
Jn. Crophill or Crephill's Tracts, Harl. 1735.
Memoriale Credencium, &c., Harl. 2398.
Early English Verse Lives of Saints, Standard Collection, from the Harl. MS.
Early Norwich Wills.

Book for Recluses, Harl. 2372.
Lollar Theological Treatises, Harl. 2343, 2380, &c.
H. Selby's Northern Ethical Tract, Harl. 2388, art. 20.
Supplement to Early English Lives of Saints.
Select Prose Treatises from the Vernon MS.
Lyrical Poems from the Fairfax MS. 16, &c.
Prose Life of St. Audry, A.D. 1595, Corp. Oxf. 120.
English Ecclesiastical MSS., Corp. Oxford.
Miscellaneous from Oxford College MSS.
Disce Morti, Jesus Coll. Oxf. 39; Bodl. Laud 99.
Mirrour of the blessed lijt of Ihesu Crist. MSS. of Sir Th. Ingilby, Bart., Lord Aldenham, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 143, &c.
Poems of Virtues and Vices, &c., Harl. 2269.
Maundeville's Legend of Gwydo, Queen's, Oxf. 383.
Book of Warrants of Edw. VI., &c., New Coll. Oxf. 328.
Adam Boulfuit's Heraldic Tracts, Harl. 6149-50.
Notes for Gunpowder and Ordnance, Harl. 6355.
John Watton's englisht Speculum Christiani, Corpus, Oxf. 155, Laud G.12, Thoresby 530, Harl. 2250, art. 20.
Verse and Prose in Harl. MS. 4012.
Notes of Hereford's English Bible.
The Chickyng of Love, Harl. 2254, Vernon, &c.
MS. Early English Wills from the Probate Registry at Somerset House.

EXTRA SERIES.

Erle of Tolous. Ypotis.
Sir Eglamour. Alexander.
Orfeo / Digby, 86.
Dialogues between the Soul and Body.
Barlaam and Josaphat.
Amis and Amiloun.
Sir Generides, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
The Troy-Book fragments once called Barclay's in the Camb. Univ. Library and Douce MSS.
Poems of Charles, Duke of Orleans.
Carols and Songs.
Songs and Ballads, Ashmole MS. 1062.

Octavian.
Gybeaus Desconnis.
Ywain and Gawain. Sir Isumbras.
Pilgrimage to Jerusalem, Queen's Coll. Oxf. 357.
Other Pilgrimages to Jerusalem, Harl. 2333, &c.
Horae, Penitential Psalms, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxf. 207.
St. Brandan's Confession, Queen's Coll. Oxf. 210.
Scottish Heraldry Tracts, copy of Caxton's Book of Chivalry, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxford 161.
Stevyn Scrope's Doctryne and Wysedome of the Auncyent Philosophers, A.D. 1450, Harl. 2266.

The Subscription to the *Original Series*, which constitutes membership, is £1 ls. a year for the ORIGINAL SERIES, and £1 ls. for the *Extra Series*, due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Note, or Money-Order, cross 'Union of London and Smiths Bank,' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DAWKIN, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts printed to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1s. for the Original Series, and 1s. for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.

Foreign Subscriptions can be paid, and the Society's Texts delivered, through Asher & Co., 17, Behrenstrasse, Berlin.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

The Publications for 1911 (one guinea) were:—

141. *Earth upon Earth*, all the known texts, ed., with an Introduction, by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A. 10s.
 142. *The English Register of God's Bounty*, ed. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part III. 10s.
 143. *The Wars of Alexander the Great*, Thornton MS., ed. J. S. Westlake, M.A. [At Press.] 10s.

The Publications for 1912 (one guinea) are:—

144. *The English Register of Osney Abbey*, by Oxford, ed. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part II. 10s.
 145. *The Northern Passion*, four parallel texts and the French original, edited from the MSS. by Frances A. Foster. *The Parallel Texts*, Part I. 15s.

The Publications for 1913 (one guinea) are:—

146. *The Coventry Leet-Book*, ed. from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Introduction, Indexes, &c., Part IV. 10s.
 147. *The Northern Passion*, the French Text, Variants and Fragments, &c., ed. Miss F. A. Foster. Part II. [At Press.]

[Together with an enlarged Reprint of No. 26, originally edited by the Rev. G. G. Perry, *Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse*. (At Press.)]

The Publications for 1914 will be chosen from:—

- An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part III.
 Twenty-six Political and other Poems from Digby MS. 102, &c., edited by Dr. J. Kail. Part II.
 The Brut, or The Chronicles of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part III. Notes, &c.
 The Laud Troy-Book, edited from the unique MS. Laud 595, by Dr. J. Ernst Wülfing. Part III.
 The Old-English Rule of Bp. Chrodegang, and the Capitula of Bp. Theodulf, ed. Prof. Napier, Ph.D. [At Press.]
 Robert of Brunne's *Handlyng Synne*, 1303, and its French original. Part III.
 The Alliterative Siege of Jerusalem, edited by Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D., and Prof. Kaluza, Ph.D. [At Press.]
 Alain Chartier's *Quadrilogue*, englished, edited from the unique MS. by Prof. J. W. H. Atkins, M.A.
 Jacob's Well, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandeis. Part II.
 Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Prof. Dr. F. Holtzhausen, Part II. [At Press.]
 The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-ed. from the unique MS., by Prof. Gollancz, Litt.D. Part II. [At Press.]
 North-English Metrical Homilies, from Ashmole MS. 42 &c., ed. G. H. Geronld, D. Litt.
 Vegetius on the Art of War, edited from the MSS. by L. C. Wharton, M.A.
 Shirley's Book of Gode Maners, edited from the unique MS. by Hermann Oelsner, Ph.D.
 Verse and Prose from the Harl. MS. 2253, re-ed. by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A., of the Royal Holloway College.
 Early Lincoln Wills and Documents from the Bishops' Registers, &c., ed. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark.
 A Stanzaic Exposition of the Feasts of the Church and the Life of Christ based on the *Legenda Aurea*, ed. from the MSS. Harl. 3909, Harl. 2250, and Addit. 38666, by Miss F. A. Foster. [At Press.]
 The Earliest English Apocalypse with a Commentary, edited by Dr. Anna C. Faues.
 Dives and Pauper, ed. from the MSS. by Mr. Richardson, M.A.
 A Fifteenth-Century Courtesy Book and Two Franciscan Rules, edited by R. W. Chambers, M.A., Litt.D., and W. W. Seton, M.A. [At Press.]

EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1911 (one guinea) were:—

- CVIII. *Lydgate's Siege of Thebes*, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Part I, The Text. 15s.
 CIX. *Partonope*, re-edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Böttcher. The Texts. 15s.

The Publications for 1912 (one guinea) are:—

- CX. *Caxton's Mirror of the World*, with all the Woodcuts, edited by O. H. Prior, M.A. 15s.
 CXI. *Caxton's History of Jason*, edited by John Munro. Part I, the Text. 15s.

The Publications for 1913 (one guinea) are:—

- CXII. *Lovelich's Romance of Merlin*, edited from the unique MS. by Prof. Dr. E. A. Kock. Part II. 15s.
 CXIII. *Poems by Sir John Salusbury, Robert Chester, and others*, from Christ Church MS. 184, ed. by Dr. Carleton Brown. [At Press.]

The Publications for 1914 will be chosen from:—

- De Medicina*, a 12th-century Englishing, re-edited by Prof. Joseph Delcourt. [At Press.]
Lydgate's Minor Poems, ed. Dr. H. N. MacCracken. Part II, Secular Poems. [At Press.]
Lydgate's Troy Book, ed. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part IV, Introduction, Notes, &c. [At Press.]
Lydgate's Dance of Death, edited from the MSS. by Miss Florence Warren.
Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Part II, Notes, &c.
The Owl and Nightingale, 2 Texts parallel, ed. G. F. H. Sykes, Esq. [At Press.]
The Court of Sapience, once thought Lydgate's, edited by Dr. Jäger.
Mirk's Festial, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Erbe. Part II.
William of Shoreham's Poems, re-edited by Dr. M. Konrath. Part II.
Winner and Waster, &c., two Alliterative Poems, re-edited by Prof. I. Collancz, Litt.D.
Melusine, the prose Romance, from the unique MS., ab. 1500, ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. Part II. [At Press.]
Secreta Secretorum: three prose Englishings, ab. 1440, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part II. [At Press.]
The Craft of Nombryng, the earliest English Treatise on Arithmetic, ed. R. Steele, B.A.
The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London. MS. ab. 1425, ed. Dr. Norman Moore. [Sec.]
The Chester Plays, Part II., re-edited by Dr. Matthews. [At Press.]
Lichfield Gilds, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall: Introduction by Prof. E. C. K. Gonner. [Text done.]
John Hart's Orthographie, from his unique MS. 1551, and his black-letter text, 1569, ed. Prof. Otto Jespersen, Ph.D.
John Hart's Methode to teach Reading, 1570, ed. Prof. Otto Jespersen, Ph.D.
The Three Kings' Sons, Part II, French collation, Introduction, &c., by Dr. L. Kellner.
The Ancrer Riwe, edited from its five MSS., by the late Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D., and Dr. Thümmeler.
Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, Part VI.
The Awnturs of Arthur, 2 Texts from the 3 MSS., edited by Wilhelm Wolff.
Caxton's Book of the Order of Chynualry, edited by Miss Alice H. Davies.
Early English Fabliaux, edited by Prof. George H. McKnight, Ph.D.
Ragman Roll, The Chaume of the Dyse, Ballads, Complaints, and other Pieces, from MS. Fairfax 16, edited by Prof. Edith Morley.
Piers Plowman, the A Text, re-edited from the MSS. by R. W. Chambers, M.A., Litt.D., and J. H. G. Grattan, M.A. [At Press.]
Caxton's Prologues, ed. by Henry Wheatley, Litt.D.

LONDON: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,
 BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.
 AND HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIV. PRESS, AMEN CORNER, E.C.
 BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 17, BEHRENSTRASSE.



PR
1119
E5
no.93,
112

Early English Text
Society
[Publications]
Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

